

LIBRARY

RESEARCH

RHODES UNIVERSITY

Grahamstown • 6140 • South Africa

CALENDAR 2000





**RHODES UNIVERSITY**  
Grahamstown • 6140 • South Africa

## RHODES UNIVERSITY : VALUES AND OBJECTIVES

### Values

Rhodes University has a history of high achievement and is an institution committed to meeting the challenges of the present and the future. It is an internationally accepted educational centre of excellence, which recognises its southern African setting and the need to meet international standards in a non-racial society. The University is dedicated to cultivating powerful intellects in people who will courageously pursue the truth whatever the circumstances, as summarised in the motto of our coat of arms, *Vis, Virtus, Veritas*.

### Objectives

In fulfilling this aim, the University has as its most important objectives to:

- acquire, advance and impart knowledge;
- maintain and enhance its already high standards of teaching, research, scholarship and service;
- attract academic and research staff of the highest quality;
- recognise the inadequate educational preparation of many of its students and to offer special assistance to them, without prejudicing the high academic standards of the University;
- provide the society with well-educated and thinking people;
- undertake fundamental research to advance knowledge; conduct applied research so as to contribute to the general welfare of the people of southern Africa, and to meet their special needs;
- improve continually the quality of teaching and teaching staff;
- oppose any form of outside interference which prejudices scholarship, research or teaching;
- encourage freedom of speech on campus, eschew violence, promote frank inquiry and tolerance of different viewpoints;
- encourage in all its members, and in society in general, attitudes of understanding, tolerance and a respect for others and for the environment, and to act as a forum for conciliation within our society.

**The University rejects discrimination on the grounds of race, gender, belief or nationality. It is committed to non-discrimination particularly in the constitution of its student body, and in the selection, and promotion of its staff and in its administration.**







TABLE

# RHODES UNIVERSITY

GRAHAMSTOWN • SOUTH AFRICA

## CALENDAR 2000

### THE FRONTISPIECE

The University motto 'Vis, virtus, veritas', means 'Strength, courage, truth'.

#### Heraldic description of the arms

Or on a Pile Sable an Open Book inscribed with the words 'Sapientiam Exquiret Sapiens' between three Escallops of the first. On a Chief Argent a Lion passant Gules between two Thistles slipped and leaved proper. And for the crest a Wreath of the Colours upon a Rock the Figure of a Man mounted on a Horse representing 'energy' all Argent.

#### Derivation of the coat of arms

Black and gold are the livery colours of the Graham family. The pile (inverted triangle) is characteristic of the Graham coat of arms, as are the escallops (shells), an emblem of pilgrimage. The lion and two thistles were taken from the coat of arms granted posthumously to Cecil John Rhodes. The crest is a representation of the famous statue by Watts which forms part of the Rhodes Memorial in Cape Town. The open book is a common feature of the arms of a college or university e.g. Oxford University.

Frontispiece: NB Hodnett

© 2000 by Rhodes University, Grahamstown, South Africa

*All rights reserved*

ISSN 1018-774X

*Cover Photograph:*

- *John McKinnell*  
An aspect of the Eden Grove Complex

*Reverse of Frontispiece:*

- *John McKinnell*  
The Clock Tower through the Drostdy Gateway  
by night

*Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa  
by Cadar Printing and Silkscreening, Port Elizabeth*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Useful Addresses and Telephone numbers               | 6   |
| Diary for 2000                                       | 7   |
| The University, Grahamstown Campus                   | 12  |
| The University, East London Campus                   | 17  |
| Dedication - Academic Freedom, and Constitution      | 19  |
| Officers of the University                           | 20  |
| Admission and Registration of Students               | 26  |
| General Rules  | 30  |
| Faculty Rules  | 41  |
| Faculty of Commerce                                  | 41  |
| Faculty of Education                                 | 53  |
| Faculty of Humanities                                | 65  |
| Faculty of Law                                       | 92  |
| Faculty of Pharmacy                                  | 97  |
| Faculty of Science                                   | 101 |
| Academic Departments and Staff                       | 113 |
| Research Institutes and Units                        | 235 |
| The Library Service                                  | 248 |
| Administrative Senior Staff                          | 251 |
| Rhodes University Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates | 253 |
| The Residences                                       | 256 |
| Student Disciplinary Code                            | 261 |
| Student Affairs                                      | 272 |
| General Information                                  | 275 |
| Lecture Timetable for 2000                           | 280 |
| Student Fees   | 287 |
| Index  | 306 |

# USEFUL ADDRESSES, TELEPHONE AND TELEFAX NUMBERS 1877

Correspondence with the University should be addressed to:

**Rhodes University**  
**PO Box 94**  
**6140 Grahamstown**

**Rhodes University East London Campus**  
**PO Box 7426**  
**5200 East London (043) 704 7000**

**Johannesburg Office**  
**PO Box 52303**  
**2132 Saxonwold (011) 7885543**

Completed applications should be sent to:

**Student Bureau**  
**Rhodes University**  
**Private Bag X1033**  
**6140 Grahamstown**

*NB All mail for students in residence should be addressed to the house and hall concerned. See index for "Mail to Residences"*

**University Telephone Exchange**  
 (046) 603 8111 (for all departments not listed)

## SPECIFIC ENQUIRIES AND TELEPHONE NUMBERS

**Admissions and Residences**  
 Mrs D Wicks, Student Bureau  
**6038102, 6038213, 6038214, 6038276**

**Advice on Careers 6038180**  
 Mr MG Rainier, Student Adviser

**Dean of Students 6038183**  
 Dr MA Motara

**Financial Aid 6038175**  
 Mrs M van Hille, Financial Aid Administrator

**Examinations and Graduation 6038176**  
 Mr AJ Cook, Examinations Officer

**Fees 6038153**  
 Mrs D Norton, Senior Accounts Clerk

**Sanatorium 6225135**  
 Mrs RM Büchner, Sister-in-Charge

**Sports Clubs and Facilities 6038366**  
 Mr PH Andrew, Head: Sports Administration

**Students' Representative Council 6227122**  
 The Secretary

**Transport Office 6038234**  
 Mrs C Schäfer

## ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS 6038111

### DEANS OF THE FACULTIES

**Humanities**  
 Professor IA Macdonald **6038350**

**Commerce**  
 Professor P van der Watt **6038346**

**Education**  
 Professor PR Irwin **6038393**

**Law**  
 Professor JR Midgley **6038427**

**Pharmacy**  
 Professor I Kanfer **6038381**

**Science**  
 Professor PD Terry **6038292**

### TELEFAX NUMBERS

**Administration 6225049**

**Student Bureau 6222845**

**Conference Office 6223659**

**Dean of Students 6223049**

**East London Campus (043)-704 7112**

**Library 6223487**

**Student Fees 6222770**



# DIARY FOR 2000

## JANUARY

|    |        |       |   |
|----|--------|-------|---|
| 14 | Friday |       | Last day for submission of Master's degree theses (All Faculties) |
| 31 | Monday | 08:30 | <b>Supplementary Examinations begin</b>                           |

## FEBRUARY

|    |           |       |   |
|----|-----------|-------|---|
| 10 | Thursday  | 17:00 | <b>Supplementary Examinations end</b>   |
| 12 | Saturday  | 14:00 | Residences open for first year students   |
| 14 | Monday    | 08:30 | New Students' Orientation Course begins   |
|    |           | 17:00 | Vice-Chancellor's Opening Address   |
| 17 | Thursday  |       | Academic Registration of first-year undergraduate students                      |
| 18 | Friday    |       | Academic Registration of second-, third- and fourth-year undergraduate students |
| 21 | Monday    | 07:45 | <b>First term and lectures in all undergraduate courses begin</b>               |
|    |           | 14:15 | Executive Committee: Board of Residences  |
| 22 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Joint Physical Planning Committee   |
|    |           | 15:30 | Library Committee (Room 224)  |
| 23 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Marketing Liaison Committee (Council Chamber)                                   |
| 24 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Humanities Higher Degrees Committee   |
| 25 | Friday    | 14:15 | Information Technology Steering Committee                                       |
| 28 | Monday    | 14:00 | Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus)                    |
|    |           | 14:15 | Quality Assurance Committee (Room 224)  |
|    |           | 15:30 | Theatre Management Committee  |
| 29 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee  |

## MARCH

|    |           |       |   |
|----|-----------|-------|---|
| 1  | Wednesday | 14:00 | Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Law                   |
|    |           | 15:30 | CSD Board of Control (Room 224)               |
| 2  | Thursday  | 11:00 | Finance and General Purposes Committee        |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Pharmacy              |
| 3  | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of Residences                           |
| 6  | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Education             |
| 7  | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Standing Committee of Humanities              |
| 8  | Wednesday | 14:15 | ISER Board of Management                      |
|    |           | 15:30 | Student Services Council                      |
| 9  | Thursday  | 10:30 | East London Board                             |
|    |           | 14:15 | Ethical Standards Committee (Room 224)        |
| 10 | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Commerce              |
| 13 | Monday    | 14:15 | ISEA Executive Committee (Gold Fields Centre) |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Science               |
| 14 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Joint Research Committee                      |
| 15 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Humanities            |
| 16 | Thursday  | 10:30 | <b>Council</b>                                |
|    |           | 14:15 | Research Institutes Committee                 |
| 20 | Monday    | 14:15 | Executive Committee of Senate                 |
| 21 | Tuesday   |       | <b>Human Rights Day</b>                       |

## DIARY FOR 2000

|    |           |       |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|
| 22 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Teaching and Learning Committee              |
| 23 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Academic Freedom Committee                   |
| 24 | Friday    | 14:15 | RMR Advisory Board                           |
| 25 | Saturday  | 09:00 | Institutional Forum                          |
| 29 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Humanities Departments Library Research Fund |
| 31 | Friday    | 14:15 | <b>Senate</b>                                |
|    |           | 16:50 | <b>First term ends</b>                       |

### APRIL

|    |           |       |   |
|----|-----------|-------|---|
| 6  | Thursday  |       | Board of Governors: Grahamstown                     |
| 7  | Friday    |       | <b>Graduation Ceremonies: Grahamstown</b>           |
| 8  | Saturday  |       | <b>Graduation Ceremonies: Grahamstown</b>           |
| 10 | Monday    | 07:45 | <b>Second Term begins</b>                           |
| 11 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | CSD Board of Control                                |
|    |           | 15:30 | Executive Committee: Board of Residences            |
| 12 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Humanities Higher Degrees Committee                 |
| 13 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Library Committee                                   |
| 14 | Friday    | 14:15 | Quality Assurance Committee                         |
| 17 | Monday    | 14:15 | Social Studies Committee                            |
| 18 | Tuesday   | 14:00 | Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)        |
|    |           | 14:15 | Orientation Week Committee                          |
| 19 | Wednesday | 14:15 | RMR Advisory Board                                  |
| 20 | Thursday  | 14:00 | Humanities and Education Academic Board             |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the School of English (Gold Fields Centre) |
| 21 | Friday    |       | <b>Good Friday</b>                                  |
| 24 | Monday    |       | <b>Easter Monday</b>                                |
| 25 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Law (Room 224)              |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of Residences                                 |
| 26 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Language and Literary Studies Committee             |
| 27 | Thursday  |       | <b>Freedom Day</b>                                  |

### MAY

|    |           |       |   |
|----|-----------|-------|---|
| 1  | Monday    |       | <b>Workers Day</b>                              |
| 3  | Wednesday | 14:15 | ISER Board of Management                        |
| 4  | Thursday  | 11:00 | Finance and General Purposes Committee          |
|    |           | 14:15 | Research Institutes Committee                   |
| 5  | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Commerce                |
| 8  | Monday    | 14:15 | Teaching and Learning Committee                 |
| 9  | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Standing Committee of Humanities                |
| 10 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Marketing Liaison Committee                     |
| 11 | Thursday  | 10:30 | East London Board                               |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Science                 |
| 12 | Friday    | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee        |
| 15 | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Pharmacy                |
| 16 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Student Services Council                        |
| 18 | Thursday  | 09:00 | Financial Aid Committee                         |
|    |           | 14:15 | Information Technology Steering Committee       |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Education (East London) |
| 19 | Friday    | 11:00 | <b>Council (East London)</b>                    |



## DIARY FOR 2000

---

|    |           |       |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|
|    |           | 18:00 | <b>Graduation Ceremonies : East London</b> |
| 20 | Saturday  | 10:30 | <b>Graduation Ceremonies : East London</b> |
| 22 | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Humanities         |
| 25 | Thursday  | 15:30 | Joint Physical Planning Committee          |
| 26 | Friday    | 16:50 | <b>Lectures for undergraduates end</b>     |
| 27 | Saturday  | 09:00 | Institutional Forum                        |
| 29 | Monday    | 14:15 | Honorary Degrees Committee                 |
| 30 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Executive Committee of Senate              |
| 31 | Wednesday | 14:00 | Commerce Academic Board                    |

### JUNE

|    |          |       |   |
|----|----------|-------|---|
| 2  | Friday   | 14:00 | Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London) |
| 5  | Monday   | 08:30 | <b>Mid-year Examinations begin</b>                    |
| 6  | Tuesday  | 09:00 | Joint Research Committee                              |
| 9  | Friday   | 14:15 | <b>Senate</b>   |
| 15 | Thursday | 11:00 | Finance and General Purposes Committee                |
| 16 | Friday   |       | <b>Youth Day</b>                                      |
| 24 | Saturday | 17:00 | <b>Second term and mid-year examinations end</b>      |
| 29 | Thursday | 10:30 | <b>Council</b>  |
|    |          | 14:15 | Research Institutes Committee                         |

### JULY

|    |           |       |   |
|----|-----------|-------|---|
| 24 | Monday    | 07:45 | <b>Third term begins</b>                      |
|    |           | 14:15 | Quality Assurance Committee                   |
| 25 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Humanities Higher Degrees Committee           |
| 26 | Wednesday | 14:15 | CSD Board of Control (Room 224)               |
|    |           | 15:30 | Executive Committee: Board of Residences      |
| 27 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Honorary Degrees Committee                    |
| 28 | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Education             |
|    |           | 14:15 | ISEA Executive Committee (Gold Fields Centre) |
| 31 | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Law                   |
|    |           | 15:30 | Library Committee (Room 225)                  |

### AUGUST

|    |           |       |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|
| 1  | Tuesday   | 14:00 | Humanities and Education Academic Board (East London Campus) |
|    |           | 14:15 | Teaching and Learning Committee (Room 225)                   |
| 2  | Wednesday | 14:15 | Standing Committee of Humanities                             |
| 3  | Thursday  | 14:00 | Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)                 |
|    |           | 14:15 | RMR Advisory Board   |
| 4  | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of the School of English (Gold Fields Centre)          |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of Residences  |
| 7  | Monday    | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee                     |
| 8  | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Science                              |
|    |           | 15:30 | Information Technology Steering Committee (Room 225)         |
| 9  | Wednesday |       | <b>National Women's Day</b>                                  |
| 10 | Thursday  | 14:15 | ISER Board of Management                                     |
| 11 | Friday    | 15:30 | Board of the Faculty of Commerce                             |

# DIARY FOR 2000

|    |           |       |  |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|--|
| 14 | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Pharmacy       |  |
| 15 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Humanities     |  |
| 16 | Wednesday | 10:30 | East London Board                      |  |
|    |           | 15:30 | Student Services Council               |  |
| 17 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Joint Physical Planning Committee      |  |
| 21 | Monday    | 14:15 | Marketing Liaison Committee            |  |
| 22 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Executive Committee of Senate          |  |
| 24 | Thursday  | 11:00 | Finance and General Purposes Committee |  |
| 26 | Saturday  | 09:00 | Institutional Forum                    |  |
| 28 | Monday    | 14:15 | Orientation Week Committee             |  |
| 31 | Thursday  | 09:00 | Financial Aid Committee                |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Academic Freedom Committee             |  |

## SEPTEMBER

|    |           |       |   |  |
|----|-----------|-------|---|--|
| 1  | Friday    | 14:15 | <b>Senate</b>   |  |
| 7  | Thursday  | 10:30 | <b>Council</b>  |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Research Institutes Committee                         |  |
| 8  | Friday    | 16:50 | <b>Third term ends</b>                                |  |
| 12 | Tuesday   |       | <b>Founders Day</b>                                   |  |
| 18 | Monday    | 07:45 | <b>Fourth term begins</b>                             |  |
|    |           | 14:00 | Commerce Academic Board (East London Campus)          |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Humanities Higher Degrees Committee                   |  |
|    |           | 15:30 | Joint Research Committee (Room 224)                   |  |
| 19 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Law                           |  |
| 20 | Wednesday | 14:00 | Humanities and Education Academic Board               |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | CSD Board of Control (Room 224)                       |  |
|    |           | 15:30 | Executive Committee: Board of Residences              |  |
| 21 | Thursday  | 15:30 | Board of the Faculty of Commerce                      |  |
| 22 | Friday    | 10:30 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee (Promotions) |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee (Promotions) |  |
| 25 | Monday    |       | <b>Heritage Day</b>                                   |  |
| 26 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Standing Committee of Humanities                      |  |
| 27 | Wednesday | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Science                       |  |
| 28 | Thursday  | 14:15 | Ethical Standards Committee                           |  |
| 29 | Friday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Education (Room 224)          |  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of Residences                                   |  |

## OCTOBER

|    |           |       |   |  |
|----|-----------|-------|---|--|
| 2  | Monday    | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee      |  |
| 3  | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Theatre Management Committee                  |  |
| 4  | Wednesday | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Pharmacy              |  |
| 5  | Thursday  | 14:15 | Student Services Council                      |  |
|    |           | 15:30 | Library Committee (Room 224)                  |  |
| 6  | Friday    | 14:15 | Information Technology Steering Committee     |  |
| 9  | Monday    | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Humanities            |  |
| 10 | Tuesday   | 14:15 | Teaching and Learning Committee               |  |
| 11 | Wednesday | 14:15 | RMR Advisory Board                            |  |
|    |           | 15:30 | ISEA Board of Management (Gold Fields Centre) |  |

|    |          |       |   |
|----|----------|-------|---|
| 12 | Thursday | 10:30 | East London Board                                     |
|    |          | 14:15 | Joint Physical Planning Committee                     |
| 13 | Friday   | 14:15 | Quality Assurance Committee                           |
| 17 | Tuesday  | 14:15 | Executive Committee of Senate                         |
| 20 | Friday   | 10:30 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee (Promotions) |
|    |          | 14:15 | Academic Planning and Staffing Committee (Promotions) |
| 21 | Saturday | 09:00 | Institutional Forum                                   |
| 27 | Friday   | 14:15 | Senate  |
|    |          | 16:50 | Lectures for undergraduates end                       |

## NOVEMBER

|    |           |       |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|
| 1  | Wednesday |       | <b>Last day of submission for Doctoral Degree theses for Graduation 2001 (All Faculties)</b> |
| 6  | Monday    | 08:30 | <b>End of Year Examinations begin</b>  |
| 8  | Wednesday | 14:15 | ISER Board of Management   |
| 14 | Tuesday   | 10:30 | Final East London Board  |
| 16 | Thursday  |       | Board of Governors : Johannesburg  |
| 22 | Wednesday | 09:00 | Joint Research Committee (Budget)  |
| 23 | Thursday  | 11:00 | Finance and General Purposes Committee   |
| 24 | Friday    | 14:15 | Humanities Higher Degrees Committee  |

## DECEMBER

|    |           |       |  |
|----|-----------|-------|--|
| 1  | Friday    | 17:00 | <b>End of year examinations end</b>  |
| 4  | Monday    | 11:00 | Examinations Committee   |
| 8  | Friday    | 14:15 | Senate   |
| 11 | Monday    | 09:00 | Board of the Faculty of Education  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Law  |
| 12 | Tuesday   | 09:00 | Board of the Faculty of Science  |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Commerce   |
| 13 | Wednesday | 09:00 | Board of the Faculty of Humanities   |
|    |           | 14:15 | Board of the Faculty of Pharmacy   |
| 14 | Thursday  | 10:30 | <b>Council</b>   |
| 15 | Friday    |       | <b>Last day for submission of Master's theses and Research Projects for Graduation 2001 (Faculty of Education)</b> |
|    |           | 16:50 | <b>Fourth term ends</b>  |

## DATES OF TERMS

|        |        |                                    |
|--------|--------|------------------------------------|
| Term 1 | Monday | 21 February to Friday 31 March     |
| Term 2 | Monday | 10 April to Saturday 24 June       |
| Term 3 | Monday | 24 July to Friday 8 September      |
| Term 4 | Monday | 18 September to Friday 15 December |

# THE UNIVERSITY

## GRAHAMSTOWN CAMPUS

**RHODES** owes its unique character among South African universities to a combination of factors - historical, geographical, cultural and architectural. Its history is a chronicle of those whose intellect, vision and courage created and sustained a university, often against seemingly insuperable odds. Successive generations of Rhodians, imbued with their independence of thought, have had an influence on southern African and world affairs out of all proportion to their small number.

### **In the beginning**

University education in the Eastern Cape began in the college departments of four schools: St Andrew's, Grahamstown, Gill College, Somerset East, Graaff-Reinet College, and the Grey Institute in Port Elizabeth. By the turn of the century only St Andrew's and Gill still prepared candidates for the degree examinations of the University of the Cape of Good Hope. Limitations in staff, laboratory equipment and libraries made tuition inadequate. It was obvious that only a central university college could provide a satisfactory standard of university education.

Grahamstown, out of the mainstream of commercial and industrial life, seemed an unlikely choice for a university city, but local residents were strongly in favour of the idea. The chief obstacle was lack of funds. The South African War of 1899-1902 almost extinguished the project.

In December 1902 Josiah Slater, Member of Parliament for Albany and editor of the *Graham's Town Journal*, called a meeting to try to rekindle public interest. He succeeded beyond all expectations, but enthusiastic promises of local financial support were not enough. The newly-formed committee applied, unsuccessfully, to the Rhodes Trustees for the financial backing they needed.

Selmar Schonland, distinguished botanist and curator of the Albany Museum, then tried a direct approach to one of the Rhodes Trustees, Dr Leander Starr Jameson. Jameson, soon to be elected Member of Parliament for Albany and Prime Minister of the Cape Colony, promised £50 000 without consulting his fellow Trustees. At first they refused to confirm the grant; then, persuaded by Schonland, they made over De Beers Preference Shares to the value of £50 000 to Rhodes University College, founded by Act of Parliament on May 31, 1904.

### **The early years**

The four St Andrew's College professors, Arthur Matthews, George Cory, Stanley Kidd and G F Dingemans, became the founding professors of the Rhodes University College and Matthews's outstanding survey class provided the nucleus of the Rhodes student body. The new university college prepared its students for the examinations of the University of the Cape of Good Hope.

At the beginning of 1905, Rhodes moved from cramped quarters at St Andrew's to the Drostdy building, which it bought from the British Government in 1909. During 1905 seven new professors, including Schonland, joined the original four.

One of the distinctive features which evolved early in Rhodes's history was the tutorial system, adapted from the Oxbridge model. Students were assigned to staff members who took a personal interest in their work and welfare. As numbers increased, students were assigned to tutors and tutorial groups within academic departments, providing a forum for the lively debate characteristic of a Rhodes education.

### **Expansion**

The foundations of the Rhodes residential system were also laid within the first decade. Steadily growing student numbers put pressure on available accommodation in school hostels and approved boarding houses as well as class and laboratory space in the motley collection of military buildings housing the college.

At this point, Baker and Kendall, the firm started by an architect of growing reputation, Herbert Baker, offered their services to the Council to draw plans for a new Rhodes. Their design won the competition held by the Council in 1910.

Within five years a new Chemistry-Zoology block and the first residences for men and women, College and Oriel, were built to Baker and Kendall plans.

Moves by the South African College in Cape Town and the Victoria College in Stellenbosch to become autonomous universities began as early as 1905. The Rhodes Senate and Council quickly realised that an independent Cape Town University might threaten the still precarious existence of Rhodes. Fears were only allayed when Rhodes became a constituent college of the new University of South Africa in 1918.

By 1917 Rhodes's finances had ebbed to the point where staff retrenchment became unavoidable.

However, expansion was essential for survival. Increased postwar subsidies, a government bond on all Rhodes property and further help from the Rhodes Trustees made possible the construction of the first part of the Baker Arts Block and more residences.

#### **Hard times**

Sir John Adamson became first Master of Rhodes in 1925. Further loans and another government bond were negotiated and building continued. The first sign of trouble ahead was a sharp drop in enrolment between 1927 and 1929.

The full force of the Depression struck Rhodes amidsthips in 1931 and 1932.

Government grants were drastically reduced and De Beers did not declare a dividend in 1932. At the height of the crisis, Cullen Bowles, Professor of Classics, succeeded Adamson as Master.

Sudden national economic recovery in 1933 meant restored government subsidies and an end to staff salary cuts. Armed with grants from the government and the Rhodes Trustees, and loans from various municipalities, the Council went ahead with the building of more residences and the completion of the Baker main block and tower. Bowles retired in 1937 after seven stormy years as Master and 26 years at Rhodes. Professor John Smeath Thomas succeeded him.

At the end of 1938 the Carnegie Corporation made a Carnegie Library Fellowship available to train the first Rhodes Librarian, F G van der Riet. A substantial grant to buy books for the Rhodes Library followed.

Despite the outbreak of war, student numbers continued to rise. The ambitious building programme went on throughout the war and postwar years with funds borrowed from the municipalities of Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, East London, King William's Town and Cape Town. Rhodians served their country well in both World Wars. Forty-seven lost their lives in World War I and seventy died in World War 2.

#### **The day of reckoning**

When the future of the University of South Africa came under review in 1947, Rhodes opted to become an independent university. However, £150 000 in free capital was needed for endowment. So, far from funds being available, Rhodes was soon forced to pledge its remaining De Beers Preference Shares to the bank as security against a soaring overdraft.

At this crucial point, Dr Thomas Alty succeeded

Smeath Thomas as Master of a College owing £561 015. Alty's courageous decision to ride out the storm was soon confirmed by events. Just as it seemed Rhodes was finally facing dissolution, the partners in a Grahamstown printing firm, Hugh and Vincent Grocott, knocked on Dr Alty's door one evening and, almost apologetically, handed him a cheque for a considerable sum of money. Their gift seemed to act as a catalyst.

#### **Birth of a university**

The government and the Grahamstown City Council took steps to help extricate Rhodes from its predicament, and a large insurance company lent the college £200 000 on favourable terms. When the Rhodes University Private Bill was passed in April 1949 an appeal for funds was launched. Response from the Rhodes Trustees, the directors of De Beers Consolidated Mines and numerous other public and private organisations and individuals was overwhelming. Soon £100 000 had been subscribed and a further £50 000 promised, with a one for one donation pledged by the government.

Rhodes University was inaugurated on 10 March 1951. Sir Basil Schonland, son of Selmar Schonland, became the first Chancellor of his alma mater, and Alty the first Vice-Chancellor. In terms of the Rhodes University Private Act, the University College of Fort Hare was affiliated to Rhodes University.

This mutually beneficial arrangement continued until the government decided to disaffiliate Fort Hare from Rhodes. The Rhodes Senate and Council objected strongly to this, and to the Separate University Education Bill, which they condemned as interference with academic freedom. However, the two bills were passed, and Fort Hare's affiliation to Rhodes came to an end in 1959.

Negotiations with the Port Elizabeth City Council culminated in the opening of the short-lived Port Elizabeth Division of Rhodes University in 1961. Rhodes withdrew from Port Elizabeth at the end of 1964 after the government decided to replace the Division with an independent, dual-medium University of Port Elizabeth.

#### **A new departure**

The promise held out by the Port Elizabeth Division is being fulfilled in the East London Campus, inaugurated in 1981 with 50 students. The now rapidly expanding campus moved into its own premises, the former East London Wool Exchange, at the beginning of 1982. By 1997 nearly all of the city

block containing the old Wool Exchange had been acquired by the University and further expansion is envisaged.

### Continued growth

James Hyslop succeeded Alty in 1963, at a time of rapid expansion which continued throughout the decade. Facilities at Rhodes Grahamstown were strained to the limit and when the Community of the Resurrection closed the Grahamstown Training College, the University was provided with a solution to the critical shortage of space. Negotiations began in 1971 to buy the Training College buildings and grounds and a number of adjacent buildings. The Law and Religion and Theology Departments moved into the St Peter's complex in 1975, followed by Education in 1977 and Music and Musicology in 1979.

Derek Henderson succeeded Hyslop in October 1975, during the continuing development of the University. Four St Peter's residences, Canterbury, Winchester, Salisbury and Truro, were in university use by 1979. The beautiful Chapel of St Mary and All the Angels, designed by Kendall, is now the Rhodes University Chapel. It was proclaimed a National Monument in 1980. The deconsecrated Chapel of the Resurrection now houses the Rhodes University Museum. The former mother house was restored with generous outside assistance

and reopened as the Gold Fields Centre for English during its centenary month of July, 1992.

New buildings linking the University's main quadrangles and the Library were formally opened in

May 1986. They include Geography, which completes the second quadrangle and which, with English, Geology and the existing Library, form a third quadrangle that completes the development of the University's central area. Generous gifts from mining houses enabled the University to complete the Kimberley Hall complex by opening Gold Fields House in 1985 and De Beers House in 1988. A new residence in the Drostdy Hall was constructed as a result of a generous donation by Allan Gray Investments, and named Allan Gray House. It was opened to students in 1993. In addition, a new residence, New House, was built in the Jan Smuts Hall complex, and was commissioned in 1994.

A further significant expansion to the Grahamstown campus began late in 1997. The Eden Grove complex containing the Registrar's Division, Cory Library and lecture accommodation was commissioned in mid-1999.

Student enrolments passed 3000 in 1982, 4000 in 1991 and reached 4930 in 1997 in Grahamstown and East London. Dr David Woods, an Old Rhodian and distinguished scientist, succeeded Dr Henderson in May 1996. Despite steady growth, Rhodes is still a small university whose excellence is in part a product of its smallness. About half of the students live in the 35 residences. Classes are still small enough to make individual tuition in tutorial groups feasible. The future of Rhodes lies not in greater numbers, but in increasing academic excellence and building upon almost a century of academic achievement.



# RHODES UNIVERSITY

EAST LONDON • SOUTH AFRICA

Chairman of the Board  
WM Munro

Director  
TA Marsh

## **ENQUIRIES**

Correspondence with Rhodes University, East London, should be addressed to:

**The Director  
Rhodes University  
PO Box 7426  
5200 East London**

**Telephone:** (043) 704 7000  
**Facsimile:** (043) 704 7112  
**Email:** [director@dolphin.ru.ac.za](mailto:director@dolphin.ru.ac.za)

*Photograph on reverse:*

*The historic Wool Exchange Building, main entrance to the East London Campus.*



## EAST LONDON CAMPUS

**Director**

TA Marsh, MSc, STD, BEd(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

**Secretary to the Director**

J Gibbons

**Administrative Officer, Campus Administration**

C Davies

**Administrative Officer, Student Affairs**

C Milne, BSocSc(Rhodes), BSocSc(Hons) (UNISA)

**Administrative Personnel**

L Drinkrow

I Jooste

J Mitchell

B Mtose

N Rasi

M Rens

R Robertson

JA Smith

**Senior Librarian-in-charge**

M Lötter, BA, PGDip.Lib&Info.Sc (Cape Town),

HDipJourn (Rhodes)

**Systems Administrator**

E Bentley, BSc (UNISA)

N Summers

**Counsellor/Student Services Administrator**

S van Musschenbroek

**Handyman/Caretaker**

P Bessinger

**ENQUIRIES** Correspondence with Rhodes University, East London, should be addressed to:

**The Director**

Telephone: (043) 704 7000

Rhodes University

Facsimile: (0431) 438 307

PO Box 7426

Email: [director@dolphin.ru.ac.za](mailto:director@dolphin.ru.ac.za)

5200 East London

**A growing community**

Rhodes University opened in East London in 1981, sharing premises with the Technical College. It was intended to serve the needs of articled accounting clerks studying to be chartered accountants. There were 50 students, one member of staff and three courses offered.

The campus has grown beyond expectations. In 1982 it moved into the Wool Exchange building which it soon outgrew, necessitating the purchase of new buildings in 1988, 1992 and 1993. Another new building was acquired in 1995, and yet another in 1997. The campus now has some 1 000 students and a full-time academic staff of 51 running several degree and diploma courses.

The campus is evolving into a city campus with an expansion potential to double the size of the present student body within the near future. Major growth has occurred in the field of primary teacher education with a fully fledged Department of Primary Education having been established.

Another full department is that of Social Work which was transferred to East London in 1995.

There is a well-developed tutorial system where classes are divided into small groups and students are able to benefit from informal class discussion. An elected Students' Representative Council is responsible for student affairs and for organising regular cultural and social events. A Sports Union administers a variety of sports codes.

**Courses available**

The University currently offers several curricula including all the popular major subjects, leading to a Bachelor of Commerce degree. Bachelor of Social Science, Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) and Bachelor of Primary Education degrees are also offered. A limited range of courses introduced in 1990 enables students to study towards the Bachelor of Arts degree. The Diploma in Education (non-graduate) was introduced in 1994, the Higher Diploma in Education (non-graduate) in 1996, and the University Diploma in Manufacturing Management in 1997. Other diplomas introduced over the period 1997-1998 are the Further Diplomas in Education in Mathematics, Science and Technology. These are run collaboratively with three NGOs, RUMEP, CASME and ORT-STEP respectively.

The Master's degree by coursework in Social Work has been running since 1995.

It is a logical extension beyond the Social Work Honours degree which has been on offer since 1982. Following the Bachelor of Arts with Honours in Psychology which was introduced in 1995, 1997 saw the introduction of several new postgraduate courses, namely the Bachelor of Commerce with Honours in Information Systems and the interdisciplinary Honours course in African Studies or Development Studies. New postgraduate degrees as of 1998 are the Honours in Industrial Relations and the Master's in Counselling Psychology.

The Bachelor of Education degree which has been running in two-yearly cycles since 1984 has remained



a popular option.

### **Affiliated organisations**

Several vibrant organisations are affiliated to the campus. These are the Johnson & Johnson Leadership Development Institute (formerly the Institute for Social and Individual Development in Africa), a branch of the University's Institute for Social and Economic Research, a Population Research Unit, the Birch Resource Centre for primary teachers, the East London Health Resource Centre, RUMEP, CASME and ORT-STEP.

### **Facilities**

The historic Wool Exchange building and the surrounding buildings in Church, Cambridge and Commissioner Streets house excellent lecture rooms, a new library, computer laboratories, a student coffee bar and staff offices. The facilities available to students are being, and will continue to be, extended as this becomes necessary. Sports facilities are currently shared with various local sports authorities.

Although the University does not own any residences in East London, suitable accommodation is available in the city, with specially negotiated student rates offered by some establishments.

**The Director** The Director, Rhodes East London, is responsible for the day to day running and directing of the activities of the campus. The Director, assisted by a Student Adviser, is available for consultation to provide students with information on degree and diploma courses and to offer career guidance and general counselling.

**East London - The City** A city of considerable beauty, East London is the only city in the country which has a river port. Set on the Buffalo River, the port serves the hinterland as well as the industries in East London. Along with the electrical, food, clothing, pharmaceutical and motor industries integral to East London, the city is also an important educational centre.

### **The Board**

WM Munro *Chair*

Vice-Chancellor

Vice-Principal

Registrar

Registrar *Finance*

Director, EL Campus

JH Badenhorst

L Borman

DT Briceland

CC Gardner

A Mbolekwa

P Miles

PM Moore

SAL Muthayan

S Nicol

J Schewitz

GE Staude

CR Stones

SK Whitfield

*Staff members (academic):*

P Kemp

SK Sparrius

*Students' Representative*

*Council:*

C Ramsay

## DEDICATION - ACADEMIC FREEDOM

At a meeting of the Academic Freedom Committee of Rhodes University on May 3, 1983, those present solemnly re-affirmed their belief in academic freedom as follows:

It is our duty to uphold the principle that a university is a place where men and women, without regard to creed or colour, are welcome to join in the acquisition and advancement of knowledge.

That it is the duty of the university to guarantee the rights of participants in the opportunities and privileges made available by belonging to a university.

That academic freedom is essential to the integrity of institutions of higher education and the unfettered pursuit of truth.

That the ideals of academic and human freedom are intimately bound up with each other, and that free universities cannot exist in an unfree society.

We pledge ourselves to work for the attainment of these ideals in South Africa within our respective institutions, and to continue faithfully to defend them against encroachment in any form.

## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNIVERSITY

THE University consists of the Chancellor, the Principal (who is also the Vice-Chancellor), the Vice-Principal (who is also the Pro-Vice-Chancellor), the Council, the Senate, the Convocation, the professors, lecturers and other teachers, the researchers and the students.

The Chancellor, elected by the Council, is the Head of the University and is empowered, in the name of the University, to confer all degrees. For this purpose a Congregation of the University is held at least once a year under his presidency.

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor is the chief academic and administrative officer of the University and is *ex officio* a member of the Council and the Chairman of the Senate.

The Council, which elects its own Chairman, is the governing body of the University, administers its affairs and property, and is empowered, in consultation with, or upon the recommendation of the Senate, to frame statutes and rules governing the general conduct and organisation of the University and to make all appointments to the staff.

The Council consists of a maximum of 34 members, as follows: The Principal, the Vice-Principal, four members appointed by the State President, four elected by the Senate, three elected by Convocation, two elected by the donors, a representative of each of the Municipalities of Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, East London, King William's Town, Queenstown and Uitenhage, one representative of schools in the Eastern Cape Province, one representative of

associated institutions, two representatives of the Board of the East London Campus, one representative on organised industry and labour, not more than four persons appointed by such bodies as may be prescribed in the Statute, and not more than four co-opted members. The Senate controls and superintends discipline and instruction within the University. It consists of the Principal, the Vice-Principal, the heads of all departments, the professors, the Librarian, two representatives appointed by the Council, and six members appointed by the lecturers. Certain other officers of the University may be especially appointed as Members of Senate.

The University has six Faculties: Humanities, Science, Law, Education, Commerce and Pharmacy, for each of which there is a Board which acts as a committee of the Senate in respect of all matters affecting that Faculty. The Chairman of the Board is the Dean of the Faculty.

Convocation, which elects its own President, consists of all graduates of the University together with the Principal, the Vice-Principal, Librarian, Registrar and all permanent full-time teaching staff of the University. Convocation is required to meet at least once a year, elects three members of Council, and may discuss and express its opinion on any matter relating to the University.

The Registrar of the University is the Secretary of Council, Senate and Convocation.

# OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

## **Chancellor**

Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons) (Western Cape), Lic  
Germ.Phil, D Litt et Phil (Brussels)

## **Principal and Vice-Chancellor**

DR Woods, BSc(Rhodes), DPhil (Oxon), FRSSAf

## **Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor**

MAH Smout, MSc(Natal), MA(Newcastle), PhD (London)

## **Chairman of Council**

The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones, BA, LLB (Rhodes)

## **Vice-Chairman of Council**

NE Woollgar, BCom(Rhodes)

## **President of Convocation**

TSN Gqubule, PhD, DD (Rhodes)

## **Registrar**

S Fourie, BTh, BD(Rhodes), DTh(UNISA)

## **Dean of Students**

MA Motara, BSc, MSc (Punjab), PhD (Notre Dame)

## **Public Orator**

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA), PhD(Cape  
Town)

## **Disciplinary Officers: Proctors**

JD Haydock; MJ Oelschig

## **Investigating Officer**

GW Barker

## **THE COUNCIL**

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Principal & Pro-Vice-Chancellor

The Registrar

(Dates in brackets indicate the year at the end of  
which each member's present term of office expires)

## **Appointed by the Minister of Education**

M Sanassiee, HDE (UWC) (2000)

The Hon Mr Justice L Mpati, BA, LLB(Rhodes) (2001)

GE Nkwinti, BAdmin(UNISA) (2002)

To be appointed (2003)

## **Elected by Convocation**

DC Baker, MSc (Rhodes), PhD (Pennsylvania State)(2002)

The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones, BA, LLB (Rhodes) (2002)

NE Woollgar, BCom(Rhodes) (2002)

## **Elected by Senate**

IA Macdonald, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas) (2000)

GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes) (2001)

PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal),

DPhil(Oxon) (2002)

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA), PhD (Cape  
Town) (2003)

## **Appointed by the Board of the East London Campus**

To be appointed (2002)

To be appointed (2002)

## **Elected by the academic staff**

SK Sparrus, BA (Soc Work) (Witwatersrand), BScSc  
(Hons) (UNISA), MSocSc, MA (I-O Psych) (Cape  
Town)(2002)

## **Elected by the administrative/support staff**

MC Allen (2002)

To be appointed (2002)

## **Appointed by the Grahamstown City Council**

N Nojoko (2002)

## **Appointed by the Port Elizabeth City Council**

RB Riordan, BA(Hons)(Rhodes) (2002)

## **Appointed by the East London City Council**

JH Badenhorst, BCom, BEd (Cape Town), MEd (Rhodes)  
(2002)

## **Appointed by the Municipality of King William's Town**

PN Njoli (2002)

## **Appointed by the Municipality of Queenstown**

To be appointed (2002)

## **Appointed by the Municipality of Uitenhage**

NB Schwartz (2002)

## **Elected by the Donors**

C Murray, BCom, UED(Rhodes), CTA, MA(Ed)  
(Chicago) (2002)

TCS Tagg, BCom(Rhodes), CTA(Cape Town), CA(SA)  
(2002)

## **Appointed by Associated Research Institutes**

M Crampton, BSc(Hons), HDE, (Natal), HDLS(UNISA),  
MPhil (Southampton) (2002)

## **Appointed by Schools**

PA Reed, BA, UED (Rhodes), BEd (Cape Town) (2003)

## **Co-opted Members**

GS Craig, BSc(Agric), BD(Rhodes) (1999)

KH Moodley, MBBCh, LLMRCP&S (Eire) (1999) ;

WM Munro, BCom(UNISA) (2001)

To be appointed

## **Appointed by the Rhodes University Foundation**

PM Searle (2002) BS Rayner (2002)

Alternates DB Riley (2002) WS Yeowart (2002)

## **THE SENATE**

### **Chairman**

The Principal and Vice-Chancellor

The Vice-Principal

The Registrar

## OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

---

### The Deans of the Faculties, 2000

|                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Humanities</b>       | IA Macdonald |
| <b>Science</b>          | PD Terry     |
| <b>Law</b>              | JR Midgley   |
| <b>Education</b>        | PR Irwin     |
| <b>Commerce</b>         | ACM Webb     |
| <b>Pharmacy</b>         | I Kanfer     |
| <b>Dean of Research</b> | JR Duncan    |

### Professors

|      |                 |
|------|-----------------|
| 1976 | B Potgieter     |
| 1978 | DB Gain         |
| 1978 | DW Welz         |
| 1978 | MG Whisson      |
| 1979 | GE Staude       |
| 1979 | M van Wyk Smith |
| 1980 | I Kanfer        |
| 1981 | PD Terry        |
| 1982 | J Charteris     |
| 1982 | WJ Kotzé        |
| 1984 | IA Macdonald    |
| 1985 | DJA Edwards     |
| 1986 | ME Brown        |
| 1986 | T Hecht         |
| 1986 | HR Hepburn      |
| 1986 | PS Walters      |
| 1987 | JK Coetzee      |
| 1987 | PT Kaye         |
| 1987 | CEJ Botha       |
| 1988 | PL-M Fein       |
| 1988 | PR Irwin        |
| 1988 | PT Mtuze        |
| 1989 | BP Gaybba       |
| 1989 | PGR de Villiers |
| 1989 | JR Duncan       |
| 1989 | JS Gouws        |
| 1989 | CA Lewis        |
| 1990 | R Kirby         |
| 1990 | CR Stones       |
| 1990 | RE Jacob        |
| 1990 | LS Wright       |
| 1991 | VA de Klerk     |
| 1991 | PR Maylam       |
| 1991 | GG Antrobus     |
| 1991 | RJ Southall     |
| 1991 | JM Moore        |
| 1991 | CD McQuaid      |
| 1992 | PG Clayton      |
| 1992 | JS Marsh        |
| 1992 | GE Gordon       |

|      |               |
|------|---------------|
| 1993 | JR Midgley    |
| 1994 | GJEG Berger   |
| 1995 | CJ de Wet     |
| 1995 | PD Rose       |
| 1996 | GP Barkhuizen |
| 1996 | DA Sewry      |
| 1996 | PH Skelton    |
| 1996 | EP Wentworth  |
| 1996 | RTF Bernard   |
| 1997 | RB Mqeke      |
| 1997 | CE Lucia      |
| 1997 | M Haywood     |
| 1997 | H Nel         |
| 1998 | V Møller      |
| 1998 | AJ Gilbert    |
| 1998 | F Edwards     |
| 1998 | EM Stack      |
| 1999 | PA Scott      |
| 1999 | PJ Schwikkard |
| 2000 | S Daya        |

### Head of Department

*Education* GJ Euvrard

*Geography* RC Fox

*Management* PW Court

*Philosophy* MD Vermaak

*Physics & Electronics* AWW Poole

*Political Studies* P-H Bischoff

*Sociology & Industrial Sociology* FT Hendricks

*Statistics* SE Radloff

*Zoology & Entomology* AJFK Craig

### Elected by Council

GS Craig

M Sanassiee

### The Librarian

FN Ubogu

### East London Campus

#### Head: Primary Education Department

DW McKellar

#### Head: Social Work Department

FJ Coughlan

#### Lecturer-in-charge: Departments

AJ Gilbert *Psychology*

RA Roets *Information systems*

SK Whitfield *Accounting*

#### Research Institutes and Units repr.

#### LIRI Technologies

DJ Sweetnam, *Director*

JLB Smith *Institute of Ichthyology*

PH Skelton, *Director*

**Institute of Social and Economic Research**

V Møller, *Director*

**Institute for the Study of English in Africa**

LS Wright, *Director*

**Information Technology Services**

To be appointed, *Director*

**Albany Museum**

L Webley *Acting Director*

**National English Literary Museum**

MM Hacksley, *Director*

**Dictionary Unit for South African English**

K Kavanagh, *Editor and Executive Director*

**Academic Development Programme**

CM Boughey, *Director*

**Elected by the Lecturers**

H Alfery, AC Garman, T Nyokong, LN Steenveld,

H van der Mescht, GM Watkins

**THE RHODES UNIVERSITY FOUNDATION**

The Board of Governors of the Rhodes University Foundation administers capital funds donated to Rhodes University, investing general donations and its own surplus income in a portfolio of shares and interest-bearing investments. These investments provide capital growth and the income from which grants are made to the University for research, development, bursaries and scholarships.

**THE BOARD OF GOVERNORS**

Dr PM Searle (Chairman)

Dr DR Woods (Vice-Chancellor)

CR Baillie DD Band

Rt Revd D Buchanan Dr GC de Bruin

AR Evans T Evans

Professor GJ Gerwel RD Hamilton

HS Herman Dr BE Hersov

AM Jensen

The Hon Mr Justice RJW Jones

PG Joubert Dr I Mackenzie

SJ Macozoma Dr MEN Magomola

RJL Matthews BC McCarthy

Dr EQ Mohapi-Thahane

Dr KM Mossie C Murray

Dr RA Plumbridge CHB Pringle

BS Rayner DB Riley

RB Savage Dr CB Strauss

Dr DA Tew AJ Trahar

WS Yeowart

**CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY**

Sir Basil Schonland, CBE, MA, PhD, ScD, DSc, LL.D, FRS (1951-1962)

PJ du Toit, BA, PhD, DrMedVet, DSc, DVetSc, LLD, FRS (1963-1965)

WJ Busschau, MCom, DPhil, LLD, CA (1966-1976)

I Mackenzie, DSO, MA, LLD, CA (1977-1990)

GWH Relly, MA, LLD (1991-1998)

Professor GJ Gerwel, BA (Hons) (Western Cape), Lic Germ.Phil, DLitt.et Phil (Brussels) (1999-present)

**MASTERS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY COLLEGE**

Sir John Adamson, CMG, MA, DLitt (1925-1930)

CW Bowles, MA, LLD (1931-1937)

J Smeath Thomas, DSc, LLD, FIC, FRSSAf (1938-1947)

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1948-1950)

**VICE-CHANCELLORS OF RHODES UNIVERSITY**

T Alty, PhD, DSc, LLD, FinstP, FRSC, FRSE (1951-1963)

J M Hyslop, MA, PhD, DSc, LLD, FRSE (1963-1975)

DS Henderson, BSc, MA, PhD, FCSSA, FRSSA, FRSSAf (1975-1996)

DR Woods, BSc, DPhil(Oxon), FRSSAf (1996-present)

**PROFESSORS EMERITI**

SG Shuttleworth, MSc, PhD, DSc, FBSI, Director of the Leather Industries Research Institute 1941-1974

E Ramstad, CandPharm, DrPharm, Professor of Pharmaceutical Sciences 1974-1979

HH Smith, MCom, PhD, Professor of Business Administration 1961-1981

EE Locke, BSc, DLC(Hons), Professor of Physical Education 1967-1981

RC Beuthin, BA, LLB, LLD, Professor of Law 1969-1984

JL Cattaneo, MA, BSLettres Diplôme de l'Ecole Supérieure de Professorat de l'Université de Paris Certificat de Phonétique Française, Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, Professor of French 1958-1985

A Noble, BSc, MEd, Professor of Education 1971-1985

DEA Rivett, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), Professor of Organic Chemistry 1981-1986

JK Black, CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1977-1987

FG Butler, MA(Unisa), MA(Oxon), DLitt(Natal), Professor of English 1952-1986

JW Brommert, BSc(Hons)(UoVS), BSc (Hons) (Witwatersrand), Vice-Pncipal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1978-1986

D Fivaz, MA(HartfordSeminary), PhD(Witwatersrand), Professor of African Languages 1972-1988

R Mayr, DrPhil(Innsbruck), LRSM, Graduate in Organ and Piano of the Bruckner Conservatory (Linz), Graduate in Conducting of the Mozarteum Academic of Music (Salzburg), Professor of Music & Musicology 1973-1988  
 BRAllanson, PhD(CapeTown), Dsc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS, Professor of Zoology 1963-1987  
 E Higgins, MA(Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes), Professor of Sociology and Industrial Sociology 1973-1987  
 JB McDaniel, MA(Cantab), PhD, UED(Natal), Professor of Geography 1971-1987  
 JAB Holland, MB, BS, BA, BD(Sidney), PhD(Edin), Professor of Divinity 1969-1988  
 JN Suggit, MA(Oxon), Professor of New Testament Studies 1976 Professor of Divinity 1969-1988  
 TRH Davenport, MA(Unisa), PhD(Oxon), PhD(Cape Town), FRHistS, Professor of History 1975-1990  
 CW Cook, BA(UNISA), MA(Cantab), ThD(Princeton), Professor of Ecclesiastical History 1970-1990  
 TMD Kruger, BA(Stell), MA(Pret), DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Professor of Psychology 1974-1989  
 R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes), Vice-Principal and. Pro-Vice-Chancellor 1986-1991  
 DR Cooper, BSc(UNISA), MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), AFISA, FSLTC, Director, LIRI Technologies 1975 -1991  
 AJ Kerr, BA (UNISA), LLB (Witwatersrand), LLM, PhD(Natal), Professor of Law 1968-1991  
 WRG Branford, MA(Cantab), BEd(CapeTown), PhD (Natal), Professor of Linguistics and English Language 1966-1991  
 R Tunmer, BA, BEd(Natal), BA (Hons) (Cantab), Professor of Education 1977-1991  
 TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon), Professor of Political Studies 1977 -1991  
 HV Eales, PhD(Rhodes), FGSSA, Professor of Geology 1970-1992  
 RT Bell, BCom(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Vanderbilt), PhD(Rhodes), Professor of Economics and Economic History 1984-1994  
 RB Brooks, MFineArt(Rhodes), Professor of Fine Art 1981-1996  
 ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal), Professor of Law 1985-1997  
 EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS, Professor of Physics 1969-1998  
 H Parolis, PhD(Rhodes), MRPharmS, MPS(SA), FRSSAf, Professor of Pharmaceutical Chemistry 1978-1999  
 PG Surtees, MCom(Rhodes), CA(SA), Professor of Accounting 1984-1998

#### ASSOCIATE PROFESSORS EMERITI

FL Coleman, PhD(Edin), DipEd.(Glas), FRHS, FR.HistS, Associate Professor of Economic History 1976-1987  
 HW Page, MSc(Natal), Associate Professor of Psychology

1967-1988

G Roberts, BSc(Pharm), MSc(GUB), PhC(NI), Associate Professor of Pharmacy 1960-1983  
 NC Charton, MA Admin (Pret), BA (UNISA), UED(Rhodes), BTheol(UNISA), Associate Professor of Political Studies 1968-1985  
 MEH Dickerson, MA(Rhodes), LTCL, LRAM(Lond), PGDEd, Acad DipEd (Lond) Associate Professor of Drama 1966-1991  
 DAC MacLennan, MA(Hons)(Edin), MA(Witwatersrand), Associate Professor of English 1984-1994  
 KS Hunt, BA, UED(Natal), MA(Rhodes), PhD(London), FRHistS, Associate Professor of History 1980- 1986, Registrar 1986-1995  
 ME Donaldson, PhD(Rhodes), MA(Durham), Associate Professor of Ecclesiastical History, 1994-1995  
 DJ Eve, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), FRSD, CChem, Associate Professor of Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry 1981-1995  
 JA Nell, DipFineArt(Rhodes), Associate Professor of Fine Art 1982-1995

#### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED RESEARCH AWARD

**1991** CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town), Professor of Zoology  
**1992** RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal), Professor of Zoology  
**1993** JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Cape Town), Professor of Law  
**1994** PG Clayton, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), Professor of Computer Science  
**1995** No award  
**1996** MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes), Associate Professor in Organic Chemistry  
**1997** EA Pakhomov, PhD (Moscow), Research Officer, Southern Ocean Group  
**1998** ME Brown, BSc(Hons) (Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf  
**1999** HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf *Senior Award*  
**1999** M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt (Oxon), PhD (Rhodes) *Senior Award*  
**1999** BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM (Cantab) *Research Award*  
**1999** PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes) *Research Award*

#### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S DISTINGUISHED TEACHING AWARD

**1991** EE Baart, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Liverpool), FRAS  
**1992** PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM  
**1993** GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil(UNISA), Couns.Psychol  
**1994** PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon)



# OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

1995 No award

1996 H van der Mescht, BA(Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)

PSWalters, BA(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

1997 S Sparrius, BA(SocWork)(Witwatersrand),

BSocSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych) (Cape Town)

1998 T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)

1999 DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol

## HONORARY GRADUATES

1951

Sir Philip Moms\*

LLD

Sir Basil FJ Schonland\*

LLD

Sir Arthur Trueman \*

LLD

Sir William K. Hancock \*

DLitt

Lionel Bernard Goldschmidt \*

LLD

Hendrik Johannes van Eck \*

LLD

1952

Josephine Ethel Wood \*

MA

1953

Sir Ernest Oppenheimer \*

LLD

Hugh Le May \*

LLD

1954

Rt Revd Archibald Howard Cullen DD

Davidson Don Tengo Jabavu \*

PhD

Hon Johannes Hendrik Viljoen \*

LLD

Hon Percival Carlton Gane \*

LLD

Arthur Stanley Kidd \*

LLD

1955

Ronald Fairbridge Currey \*

LLD

1957

Rt Hon Viscount Malvern \*

LLD

Hon Albert vd Sandt Centlivres \*

LLD

1958

Petrus Johann du Toit \*

LLD

1959

Samuel Bonnin Hobson \*

LLD

John Edward Holloway \*

LLD

Revd Joseph Benjamin Webb \*

DD

1961

Alexander Kerr \*

LLD

Zachariah Keodirelang Matthews\*LLD

1962

The State President:

Charles Robberts Swart \*

LLD

1963

Ernst Gideon Malherbe \*

LLD

Hon Oliver Deneys Schreiner\*

LLD

1964

Thomas Alty \*

LLD

Margaret Livingstone Ballinger \*

LLD

Thomas Bouchier Bowker \*

LLD

Cullen Walter Bowles \*

LLD

Sir Evelyn Dennison Hone \*

LLD

Harry Albert Kendall \*

LLD

John Smeath Thomas \*

LLD

Charles Haynes Wilson \*

LLD

Sir John Douglas Cockcroft \*

DSc

1965

Percival Robson Kirby \*

DLitt

Harry Frederick Oppenheimer

LLD

Very Revd

Robert Henry Wishart Shepherd \*

DD

1966

William John Busschau \*

LLD

Nicolaas Petrus van Wyk Louw \*

DLitt

Alfred William Burton \*

LLD

William James Belt Slater \*

LLD

Most Revd Robert Selby Taylor \*

DD

Revd Abraham Johannes

van der Merwe \*

DD

1967

Col John Augustus I

Agar- Hamilton \*

DLitt

Hon Henry Gluckman \*

LLD

Hon Johannes Nicolas Malan \*

LLD

Frederick John Todd \*

LLD

Mary Agard Pocock \*

DSc

Jacobus Petrus Duminy \*

LLD

Major the Hon Peter Voltelyn

Graham van der Byl \*

LLD

Adolf Schauder \*

DSocSc

1968

The Hon Mr Justice

Oscar Hendrik Hoexter \*

LLD

Revd John McDowall \*

DD

Vivian Frederick M Fitzsimons

DSc

Charles John Ross-Spencer \*

LLD

1969

John Frederick Vicars Phillips \*

DSc

Revd Cedric Edgar Wilkinson \*

DD

Marjorie Emma McKerron \*

LLD

Sir de Villiers Graaff

LLD

Sally Herbert Frankel \*

DLitt

1970

Monica Wilson \*

DLitt

Ian Douglas MacCrone \*

LLD

Reginald Arthur Jubb \*

DSc

1971

Marjorie Courtenay-Latimer

DPhil

Hon Edgar H Brookes \*

LLD

Clement Martyn Doke \*

DLitt

Mattheis Uys Krige \*

DLitt

1972

Alan Paton \*

DLitt

Andries Charles Cilliers \*

LLD

William J Waddell \*

DSc

1973

The Hon Mr Chief Justice

Newton Ogilvie Thompson

LLD

Richard William Varder \*

DSc

Victor Norton \*

DLitt

1975

Ian Mackenzie

LLD

Thomas Hugh Grocott \*

MA

1976

Margaret Stuart Fuller \*

DSocSc

Charles Sidney Barlow \*

LLD

James Morton Hyslop \*

LLD

1977

The Hon Mr Justice

Johannes Dante Cloete \*

LLD

John Vernon Lockhart Rennie \*

LLD

Rt Revd Alpheus Hamilton Zulu \*

DD

1978

The Hon Mr Justice

Allen Gilmour Jennett \*

LLD

Sir Laurens van der Post \*

DLitt

Frederick Johannes van Wyk \*

LLD

William Hofmeyer Craib \*

DSc

Edgar Donald Mountain \*

DSc

John Douglas Roberts \*

LLD

1979

Winifred Alice Maxwell \*

DLitt

Hugh James Chapman \*

LLD

Francis John Hewitt

DSc

Donald Bell Sole

LLD

1980

The Most Revd

Bill Bendyshe Burnett \*

DD

Louis Dubb \*

LLD

Sir Michael Owen Edwardes

LLD

1981

Lucy Buyaphi Mvubelo

DSocSc

John Hemsworth Osborn Day \*

DSc

Jack Cope \*

DLitt

1982

Herbert Walter Pahl \*

DLitt

James Beaufort Sutherland\*

LLD

Cuthbert John Skead

PhD

1983

Basil Edward Hersov

LLD

Athol Fugard

DLitt

Joel Mervis \*

DLitt



# OFFICERS OF THE UNIVERSITY

|                              |       |                              |        |                              |          |
|------------------------------|-------|------------------------------|--------|------------------------------|----------|
| <b>1984</b>                  |       | Douglas James Livingstone *  | DLitt  | Alexander McGregor           | LLD      |
| John Ashton Chubb *          | LLD   | Gwendolen Truda Brock *      | LLD    | Allan William Buchanan Gray  | LLD      |
| Cornelis Johannes Frederick  |       | Helen Suzman                 | LLD    | <b>1996</b>                  |          |
| Human *                      | LLD   | Denis Ian Gough              | DSc    | Frene Noshir Ginwala         | LLD      |
| Denys Graham Kingwill *      | LLD   | <b>1991</b>                  |        | Cecil Edwin Frans Skotnes    | DFineArt |
| <b>1985</b>                  |       | Gavin Walter Hamilton Relly  | LLD    | Wilhelmus Hendricus Welling  | DSocSc   |
| Richard Stanley Cooke *      | LLD   | Peter Humphry Greenwood *    | DSc    | <b>1997</b>                  |          |
| Thomas Lodewyk Webb          | DSc   | Leonard Walter Lanham *      | DLitt  | Kader Asmal                  | LLD      |
| Ernst van Heerden *          | DLitt | Kathryn Freda Jagoe          | PhD    | The Hon Mr Justice           |          |
| <b>1986</b>                  |       | <b>1992</b>                  |        | Arthur Chaskalson            | LLD      |
| Norman Stanley Bailey        | DMus  | Miriam Toba Dakile           | MEd    | Derek Scott Henderson        | LLD      |
| Es'kia Mphahlele             | DLitt | Brian Robert Allanson        | DSc    | The Most Revd                |          |
| Raymond Ackerman             | LLD   | Peter Malcolm Searle         | LLD    | Winston Njongonkulu Ndungane | DD       |
| <b>1987</b>                  |       | <b>1993</b>                  |        | Conrad Barend Strauss        | DCom     |
| Margaret Mary Smith *        | LLD   | Thomas Rodney Hope Davenport | DLitt  | Pieter Dirk Uys              | DLitt    |
| George Howe Randell *        | LLD   | Bennett Alexander Jacobson   | MPha   | <b>1998</b>                  |          |
| <b>1988</b>                  |       | Nganani Enos John Mabuza *   | LLD    | Aron Bacher                  | LLD      |
| Cyril Lincoln Sibusiso       |       | <b>1994</b>                  |        | Alexander Lionel Boraine     | LLD      |
| Nyembezi                     | DLitt | Auriol Ursula Batten         | PhD    | Gert Johannes Gerwel         | LLD      |
| Michael Roberts *            | DLitt | Frederick Guy Butler         | DLitt  | John Kani                    | DLitt    |
| Stanley Gordon Shuttleworth  | DSc   | Govan Archibald              |        | Anthony O'Reilly             | LLD      |
| Julian Ogilvie Thompson      | LLD   | Mvunyelina Mbeki             | LLD    | <b>1999</b>                  |          |
| <b>1989</b>                  |       | Michael Conway O' Dowd       | LLD    | JM Coetzee                   | DLitt    |
| Robin Allan Plumbridge       | LLD   | <b>1995</b>                  |        | A Klaaste                    | DLitt    |
| Theodoor van Wijk            | LLD   | Omar Hajee Suliman           |        | J Martin                     | LLD      |
| Vernon Siegfried Forbes *    | DLitt | Ebrahim, JP *                | DSocSc | WM Tsotsi                    | LLD      |
| Noel Arthur Francis Williams | LLD   | Theocritus Simon Ndziweni    |        |                              |          |
| <b>1990</b>                  |       | Gqubule                      | DD     |                              |          |
| The Hon Mr Chief Justice     |       | Alastair James Kerr          | LLD    | * deceased                   |          |
| Michael McGregor Corbett     | LLD   |                              |        |                              |          |

# ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

**COMPLETED** application forms for admission to all Faculties should be received by 30 September in the Student Bureau, Private Bag X 1033, Grahamstown for enrolment in the following year. Applications received after the end of September will be subject to a late registration fee of R100, and will be considered at the discretion of the Dean and the Registrar.

**NB** No late applications from foreign students will be considered.

## Admission requirements

The normal admission requirement for any degree at Rhodes University is a matriculation exemption certificate from the Matriculation Board. Over and above this each faculty has laid down its own minimum requirements for admission.

## Conditional exemptions

Certificates of Foreign Conditional Exemption from the Matriculation Examination may be granted to candidates who have passed O and A level courses from outside of the Republic of South Africa. Applicants from these countries must obtain their exemption certificates through the University's Student Bureau after registration.

All students intending to register as candidates for degrees must produce their Matriculation Exemption Certificates either before, or as soon as possible after, entering the University. Failure to do so will result in a change in registration status.

## Conditional Exemption for Mature Age students

Candidates who are 23 years of age and older may be admitted to a University degree course with a Mature Age Exemption Certificate and special permission from the Dean of the relevant Faculty. Details may be obtained from the Student Bureau. Application for mature age exemption must be made through the University to the Matriculation Board.

## Courses not requiring an Exemption Certificate

A Matriculation Exemption Certificate is not required for entrance to certain diploma and certificate courses, including the Diplomas in Fine Art, and the Licentiate Diplomas in Music. The usual entrance requirement for these courses is a Senior Certificate or recognised equivalent, but students without these qualifications may be admitted to some courses on

grounds of mature age or exceptional ability.

**Students who have attended courses at another university** should arrange to have a certificate of conduct and a transcript sent to Rhodes by the university previously attended. Application for exemption for courses completed at another university should be directed to the Student Bureau.

## Registration

The academic year begins in February. Students are expected to register on the stipulated date in February. Late registrations may be accepted with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty and the heads of departments concerned. However, a late registration fee will be charged. A department may apply special regulations which set dates for late registration which are earlier than this. (See the table below.)

## Arrangements of curricula

Students must have their curricula approved by the Deans of the Faculties in which they are to study at the beginning of each year. The Deans will advise on courses and approve curricula on behalf of the Senate.

## Discontinuing courses

A candidate who wishes to give up a course or courses must consult the Faculty Officer concerned. Courses may not be dropped after the last official day of undergraduate lectures in October.

## Changes of course

Undergraduates who wish to change from one course to another must discuss the proposed change with the Dean of the Faculty concerned and, if a change of Faculty is involved, with the Dean of the Faculty to which they wish to transfer.

## Closing dates for change of course

The final closing date for changes of courses is the third day of the second term (Wednesday 12 April 2000). However, a student may discontinue a course after this date with the permission of the Dean.

**In the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy no changes of course are permitted after the end of the second week of the first term. In the Faculty of Education course changes will normally only be allowed within fourteen days after the official registration date.**

## ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION OF STUDENTS

Departments in other Faculties specify closing dates for changes of courses before the final date of the third day of the second term.

The departmental closing dates approved by the Senate are shown in the accompanying table.

| Department                       | Course               | Closing date after beginning of course                                   |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| Accounting                       | All courses          | End of second week   |
| African Languages                | Xhosa 1 (MT)         | End of third week  |
|                                  | Xhosa 1 (NMT)        | End of third week  |
| Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies | All courses          | End of third week  |
| Anthropology                     | All courses          | End of sixth week  |
| Drama                            | All courses          | End of fourth week   |
| Economics                        | All courses          | End of second week   |
| Education                        | All courses          | Within fourteen days of registration                                     |
| English                          | All courses          | End of fourth week   |
| English Language & Linguistics   | All courses          | End of third week  |
| Fine Art                         | All courses          | End of first term  |
| History                          | All courses          | End of fifth week  |
| Information Systems              | All courses          | End of second week   |
| Journalism & Media Studies       | All courses          | End of second week   |
| Law                              | All courses          | End of second week   |
| Management                       | All courses          | End of third week  |
| Philosophy                       | All courses          | End of third week  |
| Political Studies                | 2 and 3 year courses | First day of fifth week  |
| Psychology                       | All courses          | End of third week; thereafter with permission of HOD until end of week 5 |
| Religion and Theology            | All courses          | End of fifth week  |
| School of Languages              | German               | End of fourth week   |
| Sociology&Industrial Sociology   | All courses          | End of fourth week   |
| Statistics                       | All courses          | End of third week  |

### Full-time students

A full-time undergraduate student is a student who either is engaged in full-time university studies or is following a full curriculum.

A full-time postgraduate student is a student who is engaged full-time in university studies.

### Part-time students registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

A part-time undergraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies and is not following a full curriculum.

A part-time postgraduate student is a student who is not engaged full-time in university studies.

### Part-time students not registered for a degree, diploma or certificate

**Occasional Students** are those not registered for a degree, diploma or certificate, but who are following a course recognised as a credit towards a degree, diploma or certificate. See the Fees and Charges section.

1. Occasional students must be in possession of a Matriculation or Senior Certificate, and will be admitted to a course only if the Head of Department is satisfied that they will profit by the lectures for the course.

2. Occasional students must follow courses in full, which implies attending all classes, completing all class work and assignments, and writing

examinations. They must earn Duly Performed (DP) certificates before being permitted to write the final examinations in any course.

3. The University reserves the right to ask occasional students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

*NB The Vice-Chancellor's approval is required before an occasional student who does not intend to take a degree, diploma or certificate may be admitted.*

**Continuing Education Students** are those who are not in possession of a Matriculation or School Leaving Certificate; are not registered for a degree, diploma or certificate; and are following either a whole course in a subject or part of a course in a subject, or a course which does not form part of a degree, diploma or certificate curriculum.

Rules for occasional students do not apply to students in this category.

**Casual Students** are those who take a course for interest, and will only be admitted to a course if:

1. the Head of the Department concerned is prepared to accept them; and
2. the Department's facilities will not be over-extended as a result; and
3. the Vice-Chancellor's approval is obtained.

Such students must comply with the appropriate DP requirements, but may not write examinations for the purpose of obtaining credit towards any degree, certificate or diploma without converting their status and paying the requisite fee.

Casual students wishing to convert their status must comply with the admission criteria and regulations of the University. The University reserves the right to ask casual students to leave if their work or conduct is unsatisfactory at any time.

### **Admission to Residence**

Only full-time students are admitted to residence.

### **Additional matriculation requirements for specific courses**

#### **Mathematics**

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or an equivalent pass. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate may not take Chemistry 1L, or 1S, Computer Science

1, Mathematics 1A, 1B or 1P, Physics 1S or 1L, without a Higher Grade pass in Mathematics. See Regulation S.1 in the Faculty of Science.

For admission to the Accounting curriculum in the Faculty of Commerce, a candidate must have obtained at least an F symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or an E symbol in Mathematics Standard Grade, or equivalent pass.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade.

#### **Biology or Physical Science**

For admission to the Faculty of Science, a candidate must have obtained at least a Standard Grade E symbol in either Biology or Physical Science.

For admission to the Faculty of Pharmacy, a candidate must have obtained a Higher Grade D symbol in either Biology or Physical Science or a Standard Grade B symbol in either Biology or Physical Science.

#### **English or Afrikaans**

A candidate may not take any course in English, Afrikaans or Afrikaans-Nederlands without a Matriculation pass in that subject in either First or Second Language Higher Grade, or an equivalent pass e.g. the 'S' or 'A' level examinations of the Associated Examining Board.

#### **Other Languages**

For entry into African Languages 1, French 1, German 1 or Latin 1, a candidate must have a Matriculation pass in that subject on the Higher Grade or Standard Grade, or an equivalent pass at another examination. However, candidates fluent in the language concerned are sometimes admitted to African Languages 1 without a Matriculation pass. French Preliminary, German 1 (Foreign Language), Greek 1, Hellenistic Greek or Hebrew 1 may be taken without a Matriculation pass in the language in question.

Students who achieve a sufficiently high standard in the examination may be allowed to go on to the second course in the language.

See the relevant Faculty of Humanities Rules.

#### **DP (Duly Performed) certificates**

See Rule G.19 in the General Rules.

## Advice to students

Students requiring advice on academic problems should consult either the relevant Dean of the Faculty, the Faculty Officer or the head of department concerned. For advice on non-academic matters, they should consult their House Wardens, or the Student Bureau.

For career advice, please contact the Student Adviser.

## Examination results

The results of June and November examinations will

be posted to students as soon as they are available.

The results are also available on the Rhodes University Web Page, <http://www.ru.ac.za>, under the heading ROSS (Rhodes Online Student Services).

*NOTE: to maintain confidentiality, it is necessary for students to obtain their PIN numbers from the Student Bureau, without which they will not be able to access their results over the Internet.*

# GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

The conditions under which the University grants degrees, diplomas and certificates are laid down in the Rhodes University Act (No 15 of 1949) as amended, the Rhodes University Statute printed in Government Notice No. R749 of 18/5/62 as amended, the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997) and these rules framed in terms of Section 32 of the Higher Education Act (No 101, 1997).

## GENERAL RULES

### ADMISSION AND REGISTRATION

#### G.1

A candidate for a degree, diploma or certificate in any Faculty must comply with the conditions and meet the selection criteria set out in the University's admissions policy. The Council has the right to refuse admission to any student should it consider it to be in the interests of the University to do so.

#### G.2

Students are required, on admission, to register by signing the official registration form. Students must also pay the prescribed registration fee. They must renew their registration and pay the prescribed fee annually as long as they continue to be students of the University; provided that students may be refused permission to renew their registration for any year of study if they fail to satisfy the prescribed minimum requirements of study. (See Rule G.7.)

#### G.3

Candidates for a degree in any Faculty must be registered as matriculated students of the University and for this purpose must be in possession of a Matriculation Certificate issued by the Matriculation Board, or an Exemption Certificate of that Board stating that they have satisfied the conditions of exemption from the Matriculation examination. In addition, applicants for admission may be required to have attained such minimum standard in a specified subject or subjects at the Matriculation or equivalent examination, or such other qualifications as may be prescribed.

#### G.4

The Senate may refuse to admit any student to a post-graduate course of study in any subject if the standard of proficiency which the student has previously attained is not, in the opinion of the Senate, sufficiently high.

#### G.5

Registered students of another higher education

institution in the Republic who desire to be admitted to the University must produce a certificate, satisfactory to the Senate, as to their conduct at the other higher education institution.

#### G.6

6.1 Students may not be admitted to any course in any subject until their curricula have been approved by the Senate.

6.2 Such curricula may be modified only with the permission of the Senate.

**NB** Students are responsible for ensuring that there are no timetable clashes in their proposed curriculae.

*In the rules which follow, unless otherwise specified or clear from the context, "course" means a course that extends over one academic year. Two half-courses or two semester courses are deemed to be equivalent to one course. "Qualifying courses" means courses accepted as credits towards a degree, diploma or certificate.*

#### G.7

The Senate may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed;

7.1 at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete two qualifying courses: or

*in the Faculties of Education, Humanities, and Science*

7.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete four qualifying courses; and

7.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to complete six qualifying courses, including two non-initial courses: or

*in the Faculty of Commerce*

as full-time candidates for the BAcc, BBusSc or BCom degrees:

7.4 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain credit in at least five qualifying courses; or

7.5 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain credit in at least seven qualifying courses, of which at least two shall be non-initial courses; or

7.6 at the end of their fourth year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain

credit in at least nine qualifying courses, of which at least three must be non-initial courses; or

**7.7** at the end of their fifth year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain credit in at least eleven qualifying courses, of which at least one must be a final course in a three-year major subject for the degree; or

**7.8** at the end of their sixth year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain credit in at least twelve qualifying courses, of which at least two must be the final courses of major subjects for the degree; or

*as candidates for the BEcon degree*

**7.9** to obtain credit in less than two qualifying courses for the degree for every year of full-time attendance at this or any other university; or  
*in the Faculties of Humanities and Commerce*

**7.10** as part-time candidates at this or any other university failed to obtain credit in less than three qualifying courses for every two years of part-time study for the degree where, for this purpose, the final course in a major subject is reckoned to be the equivalent of two courses. Part-time candidates may also be excluded if they fail to obtain at least one credit after the first year of attendance; or  
*in the Faculty of Pharmacy*

**7.11** in the year of entry into the second year of the BPharm curriculum at this or any other university to complete second year courses to the value of ten credit points, plus all courses of the first year curriculum;

**7.12** in the subsequent years of full time attendance at this or any other university to complete courses to the value of ten credit points per year.

#### **G.8**

The Senate may, after the mid-year examinations in any year, cancel students' registrations for the remainder of that year, and may refuse students permission to renew registration in any Faculty if the students are unable to satisfy, by the end of the year, the minimum requirements of study prescribed by the Faculty in which they are registered, and if they are not completing, will not be registered for more than one course in the semester following the mid-year examinations.

#### **G.9**

Except with the special permission of the Senate, a student who has been excluded on account of failure to satisfy the minimum requirements of study prescribed for in one Faculty may not be admitted to

any other Faculty of the University.

*NB Periods of attendance and examination results at another university are taken into account in the same manner as periods of attendance and examination results at this University.*

#### **G.10**

A student may not be registered for more than one degree or diploma at the same time, or be registered as a student of another university, without the permission of the Senate.

### **ATTENDANCE AND WORK**

#### **G.11**

A candidate for a degree or a diploma must attend the courses, perform the work and pass the examinations which are prescribed for that degree or diploma.

#### **G.12**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, students are not deemed to have attended the University in any academic year or any semester unless they have attended for at least three-quarters of that year or that semester.

*For the purposes of these rules "academic year" and "semester" are defined in the University Calendar (Calendar page 26).*

#### **G.13**

A candidate who is not a full-time student may be required to devote to the curriculum for a degree, diploma or certificate at least one year more than the normal period specified in these rules. The distribution of the courses in the curriculum of a part-time candidate is subject to the approval of the Dean of the Faculty concerned.

### **COMPLETION OF COURSES**

#### **G.14**

Candidates for a degree, diploma or certificate must comply with all the requirements which Senate has approved for each subject taken by them for that degree, diploma or certificate.

#### **G.15**

An undergraduate course in any subject consists of not less than sixty separate class meetings in any year, and half-courses and semester courses consist of not less than thirty separate class meetings in any year.

#### **G.16**

Except as provided for in terms of Rules G.44 to G.48 or in terms of Faculty Rules, a candidate obtains credit for a course on meeting the

requirements set for that course.

**G.17**

Except where otherwise provided in Faculty rules, or where in exceptional circumstances Senate waives this rule, students may not

**17.1** enter upon the work of the second or subsequent course in any subject unless they have obtained credit for the preceding course in the subject; or

**17.2** take examinations in more than one course in the same subject in a single semester.

**G.18**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student must have obtained a minimum number of credits in first year courses, as specified in Faculty Rules, before entering on the second course of any subject.

**ADMISSION TO EXAMINATIONS**

**G.19**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a student may not be admitted to an examination in any course unless the Head of the Department concerned has certified that the student has satisfactorily attended the class meetings for the course under examination, and has satisfactorily performed the work of the class.

**19.1** Certification of attendance and performance under Rule G.19 (usually known as "the issue of Suly Performed (DP) certificates") will be notified by Heads of Departments to the Registrar after the last class meeting for the course, and after the last class meeting of a Summer or Winter School.

**19.2** Students failing to present themselves at the June examinations in any non-semesterized course in which any examination is set, without a medical certificate or other reason acceptable to the Senate, shall not qualify for a DP certificate for that course. Exemption from this rule may be granted by the Senate to a department which applies therefor.

**19.3** In exceptional circumstances the Board of the Faculty, with the approval of the Head of the Department concerned, may permit a student to write the examinations in a particular course without the award of a DP certificate.

**19.4** The following exceptions to Rule G.19 have been approved by the Senate:

**19.4.1** DP certificates issued in another university may be accepted by the Board of the Faculty provided the Head of Department is satisfied that the standard and syllabus of the other university in the course concerned are equivalent to those of Rhodes

University in that course;

**19.4.2** Candidates for the BA, BJourn, BCom, BEcon, BSc, BSc(InfSys) or BSocSc degree who have completed the final courses of their major subjects, have attended the university for three years, have not more than two subsidiary courses or four subsidiary semester courses outstanding for the degree, and have left the University, may write the examinations in such subsidiary courses without re-attaining DP certificates; provided that, where practical work is required, evidence must be submitted to the satisfaction of the Head of Department concerned that the candidate has received adequate practical training.

**G.20**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, certification in terms of Rule G.19 will be valid only for the examination of the year in which it is issued.

**20.1** The following exceptions to Rule G.20 have been approved by the Senate:

**20.1.1** A candidate granted a non-continuing pass may rewrite at a subsequent examination in order to obtain a continuing pass, provided that no special examination has to be set for the purpose. Students who have obtained a non-continuing pass in a course may enter for examination in that course without earning a new DP certificate, provided they already had a DP certificate.

**20.1.2** With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, the validity of the DP certificate of a student who is in attendance at the University may be extended by one year. In the Faculty of Commerce such extension will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level and students would normally be required to write and perform satisfactorily in class tests and in the June examinations.

**20.1.3** In the case of students who do not return to the University in any year, the validity of their DP certificates for courses in which they failed or did not write the examination in the previous year may be extended by one year by the Dean of the Faculty after consultation with the Head of the Department concerned. In the Faculty of Commerce such extensions will normally only be granted for subjects failed at the FI level. Extension in terms of this rule will not be granted, however, to students who are refused readmission in terms of Rule G.7.

**G.21**

A student, before being admitted to an examination or degree, diploma or certificate shall pay such fees as may be prescribed in each case.



**G.22**

The Council may refuse to admit to an examination or to a degree, diploma or certificate a student who has failed to pay any fees due to the University or to an affiliated institute.

**EXAMINERS**

**G.23**

An examination of the University qualifying in any subject for a degree, diploma or certificate shall be conducted by at least two examiners, of whom at least one shall be an examiner who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination; provided that, in the case of an examination qualifying in a first or second year course, other than a final course for a degree, or any examination qualifying for a diploma or certificate, the Senate may waive the requirement that one of the examiners shall be a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the student for that examination; provided that if a student asks for a re-mark the script be examined by an examiner other than the original examiner

**23.1** Under Rule G.23 the University will appoint as one of the examiners for the examinations set out below a person who has not been connected with the preparation of the students for that examination, and who is not in receipt of any remuneration other than examiner's fees from the University or from an affiliated institute:

**23.1.1** All written examinations in final courses of degree and diploma subjects;

**23.1.2** Practical examinations in final courses of degree subjects where required by departments;

**23.1.3** All method courses for the HDE;

**23.1.4** The written examinations for the final year of the Music Licentiate Diploma, and all instrumental, practical and oral examinations in the Department of Music and Musicology;

**23.1.5** All half-courses in the Department of Religion and Theology that are the equivalent of final papers for BTh and BA courses and the extended essay done for each Special Study paper in the second year of BD Part 1.

**G.24**

The Heads of the University Departments in which the subject under examination is taught shall, *ex officio*, act as examiners; provided that they may, with the permission of the Senate, delegate their examining duties to any member of the staff of their Departments.

**EXAMINATIONS**

**G.25**

The Senate shall be the final authority in deciding the result of an examination.

**G.26**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the results of examinations for all courses shall be published under seven heads, four for successful candidates namely, class 1, class 2 (divisions A and B) and class 3, and three for unsuccessful candidates, namely, Failure 1, Failure 2 and Failure 3, in all cases in decreasing order of marks according to the marks obtained by the candidates.

**G.27**

The Senate may permit a student to have a re-count and re-check of all marks, calculations and transcriptions of marks in respect of the examination in any particular course, on payment of the prescribed fee.

**G.28**

The Senate may permit students who are registered in the Faculties of Education, Humanities or Law to have their scripts re-examined on payment of the prescribed fee.

*(Re-examination of scripts is not permitted in the Faculties of Commerce, Pharmacy or Science).*

**G.29**

Applications under Rules G.27 and G.28 in respect of the June or November examinations must reach the Registrar accompanied by the prescribed fee by 15 July or 15 January respectively. In exceptional circumstances Senate may permit relaxation of this rule.

**29.1** The fee under G.27 and under G.28 will be refunded if the re-examination effects a change to the students' advantage in the classification of their results.

**29.2** The result of the re-examination and/or re-count shall supersede the result of the original examination. Thus a student who applies for a re-examination may be awarded a lower mark and thereby forfeit any advantage (e.g. permission to write a supplementary examination) accruing from the original mark.

**29.3** Re-examination of scripts and/or re-count and re-check in supplementary examinations is not permitted.

**G.30**

Unless the contrary should appear from the context of these rules, an examination shall consist of such written, oral or other form of test as the Senate may prescribe in each case.

**G.31**

The examiners may require students to present themselves for *viva voce* questioning, in addition to the tests prescribed by the Senate under Rule G.30.

**G.32**

The results of an examination written in a subsequent year on an extended DP Certificate shall normally be calculated by taking into account the same component elements, and the same proportions, as those used for the examination for which the certificate was earned.

**G.33**

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass in the June or November examinations and who re-write in January/February will, if successful, receive an unclassified pass.

**G.34**

Students who obtain a non-continuing pass and who re-write the examination later than the January/February immediately after the award of the non-continuing pass, shall be placed in the class which reflects the final mark which has been achieved.

**G.35**

The final marks for students re-writing an examination in terms of G.33 and G.34 above will be calculated in accordance with Rule G.32.

**G.36**

Except as may otherwise be prescribed in these rules, ordinary examinations shall be held only at the end of each semester; provided that the ordinary examinations for the degree of Bachelor with Honours in any subject may also be held before the beginning of the following academic year, as may be decided by the Senate; provided further that a part-time candidate for the degree of Bachelor with Honours may, on completion of two years as a registered candidate, and with the permission of the Senate, write a special examination before the beginning of the following academic year.

**36.1** Ordinary examinations will usually be held during June and November, save that examinations for the BEd degree will be held in February.

**36.2** The Senate will permit the examinations for the Honours degree to be held before the beginning of the academic year only in exceptional circumstances.

**G.37**

The ordinary examinations may be extended by holding supplementary examinations in November and/or before the start of the next academic year.

**37.1** The results of the supplementary examinations

shall be calculated by taking into account the same component elements as those used for the ordinary examinations.

**37.2** The conditions under which a candidate may be admitted to supplementary examinations shall be prescribed by the Senate.

**37.2.1** Except in circumstances provided for in this Rule or in Faculty Rules no supplementary examinations will be allowed in any second-or third-year courses.

**37.2.2** Candidates registered for first-year first-semester courses may write supplementary examinations in November if they fail the course in June but attain the required sub-minimum.

**37.2.3** Candidates in first-year courses may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department after consulting examiners, be admitted to supplementary examinations in January/February in at most two courses (four semester-credits) in which they have failed in the ordinary examinations in November.

**37.2.4** In all cases, the number of supplementary examinations awarded and the conditions attached to the awards will be at the discretion of the Board of the Faculty in which the candidate is registered.

**37.2.5** Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses (or two semester-courses) prescribed for their degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course (or two semester-courses) may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course (or two semester-courses), provided that, subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, such course (or two semester-courses) is(are) not the final course(s) of a major subject. \*

In addition candidates in the Faculty of Humanities will be subject to the provisions of Rule H.3.3.

*\* Exceptions approved by the Senate are: Accounting 3, Biblical Studies 3, Commercial Law 3, Economics 3, History 3, History of Christianity 3, Information Systems 3, Legal Theory 3, Management 3, Pastoral Theology 2, Politics 3 and Systematic Theology 3.*

**37.2.6** Candidates who have passed all but one of the courses prescribed for the BPharm degree and who have failed the examination in such an outstanding course, may be admitted to a supplementary examination in that course.

**37.2.7** Candidates who have failed in two half-courses for Part I of the Bachelor of Divinity degree, may be admitted to supplementary examinations in

such outstanding course or courses.

**37.3** Unless otherwise provided for in Faculty rules, candidates admitted to January/February supplementary examinations in terms of Rule G.37.2 above will, if successful, receive an unclassified pass.

### **G.38**

Under exceptional circumstances, the Senate may admit a candidate to a special examination at any time, provided that:

**38.1** The provisions of these rules are otherwise complied with;

**38.2** The full cost of such examination is paid by the candidate.

## **AEGROTAT CASES**

### **G.39**

An aegrotat examination may be granted by the Senate to candidates who by reason of illness, duly attested by a medical certificate on the prescribed form, or who for other reason acceptable to Senate have been unable to present themselves at an ordinary examination in any subject.

**39.1** Applications must be made within one week of the date of the examination missed.

**39.2** Other reason above would include the serious illness or death of a near relative at the actual time of the examination. In such a case evidence of the circumstances should be attached in support of the application.

*(Forms are obtainable at the Sanatorium and from the Student Bureau.)*

### **G.40**

Candidates who have been admitted to aegrotat examinations in terms of Rule G.39 but who are unable to write those examinations for similar reasons, may be permitted, if their previous work in that subject is deemed by the Senate to be satisfactory, to proceed to the next course in that subject and, on completing that course to be given credit for both courses. Alternatively the Senate may, subject to Rule G.39 above being complied with admit such candidates to subsequent aegrotat examinations. Such subsequent examinations, which may be in written or oral form are normally required to be held before the end of the following semester.

### **G.41**

In cases where a student has already completed part of an examination, the Dean of the Faculty will consult with the internal examiners and the Head of the Department concerned before deciding whether or not to approve the aegrotat examination. In such

cases the Dean shall have the power -

**41.1.1** not to award an aegrotat; or,

**41.1.2** to award an aegrotat in the whole examination, or

**41.1.3** to award an aegrotat in those parts which have not been completed.

**41.2** An aegrotat examination will not normally be granted to candidates who have entered the examination hall and seen any one of the papers or practicals of an examination and who subsequently report that they were ill at the time of the examination.

*(Candidates who are unwell should report immediately at the Sanatorium. If it is found on medical examination that they are unfit to write, the Sister-in-Charge will arrange for the necessary doctor's certificate to be obtained on the aegrotat application form, which should be submitted as soon as possible thereafter.)*

### **G.42**

An aegrotat examination will not be granted to a candidate who is unfit to write as a result of having taken drugs.

### **G.43**

No application for aegrotat examinations will be considered unless DP certificates have been obtained in the courses concerned.

## **EXEMPTIONS**

### **G.44**

The Senate may accept, as part of the attendance of a student of the University qualifying for admission to a degree of Bachelor, periods of attendance as a registered matriculated student at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, or accept examinations passed in any subject at such university or institution, or passed by an external student of the University of South Africa, or other examinations recognised by the Senate for the purpose, as granting exemption from examinations of the University in such subject.

### **G.45**

Students exempted in terms of Rule G.44 shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor unless:

**45.1** they have attended approved courses at the University:

**45.1.1** in the case of the Faculties of Humanities, or of Science, or of Commerce, or of Pharmacy, for at least two academic years;

**45.1.2** in the case of the Faculties of Law for at least the final two years; and,

**45.1.3** in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

**45.2** their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

**45.3** they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

**45.4** they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

**45.5** they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

**G.46**

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

**46.1** Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by Senate; provided that:

**46.1.1** candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

**46.1.2** credit may be given for one final course for the BTh degree subject to the provisions of Rule H.105;

**46.2** Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University;

**46.3** Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

**G.47**

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

**47.1** Exemption may be given by the Senate in not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.2** Exemption may be given only for first courses

in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

**47.3** Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.4** The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

**G.48**

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art the following rules apply:

**48.1** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

**48.2** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

**ADMISSION TO EQUIVALENT STATUS**

**G.49**

The Council may on the recommendation of the Senate:

**49.1** admit graduates of any other university (whether in the Republic or elsewhere) to a status in the University equivalent to that which they possess in such other university;

**49.2** accept as candidates for postgraduate diplomas or degrees people who have, in the opinion of Senate, obtained qualifications from other institutions which are equivalent to the Rhodes qualification required for admission to the applicable postgraduate diploma or degree.

**G.50**

A graduate of any other university, who has been admitted by the Council to an equivalent status in terms of Rule G.49 may be accepted as a candidate for the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, upon such conditions and on payment of such fees as may be prescribed, and the Council may, for the purpose of Rules G.53 or G.65, prescribe a date from which such status is to take effect.

**G.51**

A person who has been accepted as a candidate for the honours degree of Bachelor or the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, or as a candidate for a postgraduate diploma in any Faculty, in terms of Rule 49, must satisfy such conditions and pay such fees as may be prescribed.

**AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS**

**G.52**

Persons who have graduated at another university, or who are able to give satisfactory evidence of their qualifications, may be specially exempted from the Matriculation Examination of the Matriculation Board, and may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master or Doctor; provided that they before being so admitted:

**52.1** have paid such fees as may be subscribed;

**52.2** have been registered as a student of the University for not less than two years;

**52.3** have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

**52.4** have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

**52.5** have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

**52.6** have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

**DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)**

**G.53**

Subject to the provisions of Rules G.49 and G.52 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, or the degree of Master of Theology in the Faculty of Humanities, until at least two years after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or the degree of Bachelor of Divinity; or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor. Special entry criteria for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and

thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

**53.1** Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

**53.2** Normally only students holding an honours degree will be accepted as candidates for the degrees of MA, MSc, MCom, or MSocSc. Students holding an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

**53.3** Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Laws.

**53.4** Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

**53.5** Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

**G.54**

No persons shall be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned.

**G.55**

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.53: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

**G.56**

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purpose of this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff.

**56.1** The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.55 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate

## GENERAL RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

**45.1.3** in the case of the Faculty of Education for at least the final year;

**45.2** their periods of attendance at such recognised university or institution, and at the University, are together not less than the complete period ordinarily prescribed for the degree;

**45.3** they have passed such examinations of the University as the Senate may prescribe;

**45.4** they have paid such fees as the Council may prescribe;

**45.5** they have complied with any other requirements for the degree.

### **G.46**

The following rules have been framed in respect of students who claim credit towards a degree of Rhodes University for subjects passed at another university -

**46.1** Credit for courses passed at another university subsequent to registration at Rhodes University is subject to approval by Senate; provided that:

**46.1.1** candidates for the BCom and BEcon degrees who have completed their major subjects may be granted credit for not more than three outstanding courses passed at other universities;

**46.1.2** credit may be given for one final course for the BTh degree subject to the provisions of Rule H.105;

**46.2** Credit will not be given for more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree at Rhodes University;

**46.3** Candidates who have registered for a degree at Rhodes University for at least three years, who have completed at least one of their major subjects for the degree, and who leave the University, may be given credit for at most one final course of a major subject passed at another university, provided that the Head of the Department at Rhodes University is satisfied that the standard of the other university in the course concerned is equivalent to that of Rhodes University in that course;

### **G.47**

Graduates in the Faculties of Humanities, Science, Commerce, or Pharmacy of the University who wish to proceed to a Bachelor's degree in another of these Faculties and who seek exemptions towards the degree in the second Faculty on the ground of having already passed in courses common to both Faculties are governed by these rules:

**47.1** Exemption may be given by the Senate in not more than half of the courses prescribed for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.2** Exemption may be given only for first courses

in any subject (the year in which such courses are required to be taken being immaterial), except in the case of three course subjects, in which exemption may be given for the first and second courses.

**47.3** Any course passed for a degree in one Faculty, for which exemption is not granted for the degree in the second Faculty, may not be taken again as a course for the degree in the second Faculty.

**47.4** The minimum period of attendance as a student in the second Faculty shall be two years.

### **G.48**

In the case of a student holding the degree of Bachelor of Arts who wishes to proceed to the degree of Bachelor of Music or the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art the following rules apply:

**48.1** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years' work towards the degree of Bachelor of Music to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Music as a major subject.

**48.2** The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Arts, may grant exemption from not more than two years work towards the degree of Bachelor of Fine Art to specially gifted or distinguished students who have obtained the BA degree with Fine Art Studies as a major subject.

## **ADMISSION TO EQUIVALENT STATUS**

### **G.49**

The Council may on the recommendation of the Senate:

**49.1** admit graduates of any other university (whether in the Republic or elsewhere) to a status in the University equivalent to that which they possess in such other university;

**49.2** accept as candidates for postgraduate diplomas or degrees people who have, in the opinion of Senate, obtained qualifications from other institutions which are equivalent to the Rhodes qualification required for admission to the applicable postgraduate diploma or degree.

### **G.50**

A graduate of any other university, who has been admitted by the Council to an equivalent status in terms of Rule G.49 may be accepted as a candidate for the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, upon such conditions and on payment of such fees as may be prescribed, and the Council may, for the purpose of Rules G.53 or G.65, prescribe a date from which such status is to take effect.

### G.51

A person who has been accepted as a candidate for the honours degree of Bachelor or the degree of Master or Doctor in any Faculty, or as a candidate for a postgraduate diploma in any Faculty, in terms of Rule 49, must satisfy such conditions and pay such fees as may be prescribed.

### AD EUNDEM GRADUM STUDENTS

#### G.52

Persons who have graduated at another university, or who are able to give satisfactory evidence of their qualifications, may be specially exempted from the Matriculation Examination of the Matriculation Board, and may be admitted as students to courses of special study and research at the University. Such persons may, on completion of such courses, be admitted to a degree of Master or Doctor; provided that they before being so admitted:

**52.1** have paid such fees as may be subscribed;

**52.2** have been registered as a student of the University for not less than two years;

**52.3** have attended at the University such courses as may be prescribed;

**52.4** have undertaken research upon a subject approved by the Senate;

**52.5** have presented a satisfactory report, dissertation or thesis upon the research undertaken; and

**52.6** have complied with such further conditions as may be prescribed by the Senate.

### DEGREE OF MASTER (ALL FACULTIES)

#### G.53

Subject to the provisions of Rules G.49 and G.52 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Master in the Faculty of Humanities (except the degree of Master of Music and Master of Fine Art), or of Science, or of Commerce, or the degree of Master of Theology in the Faculty of Humanities, until at least two years after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor or one year after admission to the degree of Bachelor with Honours in such Faculty, or the degree of Bachelor of Divinity; or, in the case of the degrees of Master of Education by thesis, Master of Fine Art, Master of Laws and Master of Music, until at least one year after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor. Special entry criteria for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and thesis are listed in the Faculty of Education Rules. Except with the permission of Senate a candidate for the degree of Master of Education by coursework and

thesis will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

**53.1** Candidates for Master's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

**53.2** Normally only students holding an honours degree will be accepted as candidates for the degrees of MA, MSc, MCom, or MSocSc. Students holding an ordinary degree will be accepted only in exceptional cases.

**53.3** Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Laws and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Laws.

**53.4** Only students who have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor of Pharmacy and who have attained a sufficiently high academic standard will be admitted as candidates for the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Pharmacy.

**53.5** Candidates who have obtained the BPharm degree may not present their thesis for a Master's degree until at least 18 months after the date of registration for the MSc or MPharm degree.

#### G.54

No persons shall be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master unless they have obtained the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned.

#### G.55

Candidates for the degree shall be registered for and attend an approved course of study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule G.53: provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

#### G.56

The Faculty shall appoint a supervisor, or supervisors, to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purpose of this Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff.

**56.1** The Senate has decided that candidates for the degree of Master who are exempted from attendance under Rule G.55 will be required to report in person to their supervisors from time to time as directed by the latter, and that the time in which such a candidate



may qualify for the award of the degree will be extended by one year (i.e. they must be registered candidates for the degree for at least two years); provided that Senate may waive the additional year in the case of candidates who are conducting full-time research under approved conditions.

**G.57**

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty concerned, convert the registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis to registration for the PhD degree if they consider that the work is of a standard normally expected of a doctoral student.

**G.58**

At least two months before the candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so, and pay the prescribed examination fees.

**G58.1** Candidates must submit their theses not later than 15 January in the year in which they hope to graduate.

**G.59**

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

**59.1** Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

**59.2** The Senate requires that two, three or four copies of a thesis, suitably bound, be presented for examination. The Registrar will inform the student of the exact number of copies needed once the student has given the written notification of intention to submit the thesis for examination.

**59.3** After the examination process has been completed and any corrections have been made, the Senate normally requires one loose-leaf copy of the thesis together with a copy in a form acceptable to Senate that can be stored and retrieved electronically.

**G.60**

A thesis shall be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidates as to the extent to which it represents their own work. This declaration must be approved by the supervisor.

**G.61**

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University

may, for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

**G.62**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not present themselves for the examination for the degree more than twice in the same subject.

**62.1** An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

**G.63**

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

**G.64**

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Master of Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

**DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY (ALL FACULTIES)**

**G.65**

Subject to the provisions of Rules G.49 and G.52, a candidate shall not be admitted to the degree of Doctor of Philosophy until at least three years after admission to the degree or status of Bachelor with Honours (in any Faculty), or of Bachelor of Laws, or of Bachelor of Education, or of Bachelor of Divinity, or of Bachelor of Music, or until at least two years after admission to the degree of Master.

**G.66**

Candidates for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in any Faculty shall be registered for and attend an approved course of special study or research at the University for the period prescribed in Rule 65; provided that the Senate may exempt candidates from such attendance or part thereof, and may instead require them to perform such work as it may prescribe during that period.

**66.1** Candidates for Doctor's degrees should register at the beginning of the academic year. New applicants may register up to 1 May.

**G.67**

Before registration, candidates for the degree shall obtain the approval of the Senate to the subject of special study or research which they propose to pursue.

**67.1** When a candidate's subject of research has been approved, such approval will remain in force so long as the annual registration fee is paid.



**G.68**

The Senate shall appoint a supervisor or supervisors to advise a candidate. At least one of the supervisors so appointed must be a member of staff. For the purposes of the Rule, members of associated institutes who are also members of a Faculty of the University are regarded as members of staff.

**68.1** The candidate shall work in such association with the supervisor as the Senate may direct.

**G.69**

Candidates shall submit a thesis on the results of their study which shows evidence of originality and independent research.

**G.70**

At least three months before candidates present their theses, they shall give notice in writing to the Registrar of their intention to do so, and pay the prescribed examination fees.

**70.1** Candidates must submit their theses not later than 1 November in the year preceding that in which they hope to graduate.

**G.71**

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each thesis. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

**G.72**

The Senate may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

**72.1** Such copies, when submitted, shall become the property of the University.

**72.2** The Senate normally requires that up to six copies of a thesis be presented, typed or printed, suitably bound except for one in loose-leaf form, the one corrected loose-leaf copy being required after the examination process has been completed and before the award of the degree. The loose-leaf copies are for deposit in the Library. In certain instances candidates may be required to provide more bound copies than indicated. In special cases Senate may allow some relaxation of this rule, in respect of material other than the text.

**72.3** After the examination process has been completed and any corrections have been made, the Senate normally requires a copy to be presented in a form acceptable to Senate that can be stored and retrieved electronically. This copy is also for deposit in the Library.

**72.4** Every thesis must be accompanied by a double spaced typewritten abstract in English of not more than 350 words. In addition, if the thesis is in a

language other than English, it must be accompanied by an abstract in the language of the thesis. No illustrative materials such as tables, graphs or charts should be included. The abstract must be approved by the supervisor of the thesis and will, in the case of successful doctoral candidates, be submitted to University Microfilms International for publication and distribution. The abstract must be bound together with the thesis and be placed immediately after the title page.

**G.73**

Candidates shall submit a declaration, satisfactory to the Senate, stating to what extent the thesis is their original work, and certifying that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

**G.74**

If, at the date of its presentation, the thesis has not been published in a manner satisfactory to the Senate, the University shall have the right to make copies of the thesis from time to time, for deposit in other universities or research libraries, and to make additional copies of it, in whole or in part, from time to time, for the purposes of research. The University may for any reason, either at the request of the candidate or on its own initiative, waive its rights.

**G.75**

Candidates may be required by the Senate, if the examiners so recommend, to submit to a written or oral examination on the subject of their thesis and on the whole field of study which it covers.

**G.76**

An application to re-submit a thesis which has been rejected shall not be entertained, but the Senate may, on the advice of the examiners, invite a candidate to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form.

**G.77**

A thesis accepted by the University, and subsequently published in whatever form, shall bear the inscription: "Thesis approved for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", or "Thesis approved in partial fulfilment of Doctor of Philosophy of Rhodes University", as the case may be.

**G.78**

In the case of a candidate for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Music, the word "thesis" includes a set of musical compositions in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate.

**GENERAL RULES FOR HIGHER DEGREES**

**G.79**

Senate may suspend or cancel the registration of any

candidates whose progress it considers to be unsatisfactory.

**79.1** If candidates have not completed their Master's degree within three years from first registration or their PhD degree within six years from first registration, their candidacy will lapse unless the Senate is satisfied that an extension is warranted.

#### **GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR DOCTORATES**

##### **G.80**

When applicants indicate their wish to submit work for a Senior Doctorate, the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, will consider recommending to Senate the acceptance of the work for examination.

##### **G.81**

If Senate approves the acceptance of work for a Senior Doctorate, the candidate must submit for the approval of the Senate, six copies of published work suitably bound dealing with some subject falling within the scope of the studies represented in the University, or, in the case of the degree of Doctor of Music, a set of musical compositions, in such form as may be prescribed by the Senate. Such work shall constitute a distinguished contribution to the advancement of knowledge in that field.

**81.1** Copies so submitted shall become the property

of the University.

##### **G.82**

The Senate shall appoint at least three examiners for each candidate. In exceptional circumstances one examiner may be internal to the University.

##### **G.83**

Every work submitted for the degree must be accompanied by a declaration on the part of the candidate, satisfactory to the Senate, to the effect that it has not been submitted for a degree at any other university.

*Candidates for a Senior Doctorate should communicate with the Registrar, in the first instance.*

#### **BREACHES OF RULES**

##### **G.84**

Subject to the provisions of the Higher Education Act, the Rhodes University Act, and the Statute, the Senate may *ex post facto* condone any breach of the rules governing a curriculum, if it is satisfied that:

**84.1** the students concerned are not themselves responsible for the breach of rules;

**84.2** if the breach is not condoned the students concerned would be put to undue hardship; and

**84.3** the rule broken is not of fundamental importance.

# FACULTY RULES

## FACULTY OF COMMERCE

### General Information

#### Bachelor of Accountancy

This is a four-year degree intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession. The degree is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the requirements for admission to Part 1 of the South African Institute's qualifying examination. Graduates are entitled to complete their training contracts in three years instead of five and Bachelor of Accountancy graduates are entitled to write Part 1 of the qualifying examination at the first opportunity after being awarded the degree.

#### Bachelor of Business Science

The degree of Bachelor of Business Science is a four-year career-focused degree.

The curriculum for this degree aims to provide a thorough grounding in the principles of the candidate's chosen field of expertise to the postgraduate level, supported by ancillary subjects which will equip candidates for the professional and managerial requirements of their chosen field at the highest level. To this end Rule C.13 provides for six specialised curricula, enabling a student to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Quantitative Management, and Social Science. Entry into the fourth year of study for the degree is by permission of the Faculty Board.

#### Bachelor of Commerce

This is a three-year degree aimed at providing the graduate with a good academic grounding in the major subject areas of Commerce. The curricula provide for specialisation up to third year level in two or more of any of the following fields : Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Law, Management, Science, Social Science and Statistics, in any of four curricula as follows :

*The General Curriculum* allows for a wide combination of subjects in second and third year including at least two major subjects. Provided the appropriate combination of courses is chosen, the curriculum enables students to qualify as members of the Chartered Institute of Secretaries and Administrators with the minimum of additional

examinations. Further particulars are available from the Student Adviser. Extensive exemption is also available from the examinations for the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA). Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting.

*The Accounting Curriculum* is intended for students wishing to enter the accounting profession or to take the BCom degree with an accounting emphasis. If this curriculum is followed, the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy can be completed in one further year of study after credit is also obtained Taxation 1 and one other prescribed course. Students who obtain a BCom degree with this curriculum will qualify for membership of the Institute of Commercial and Financial Accountants after a period of practical experience.

Such students will also qualify for exemption from the entire Foundation Stage of the Chartered Association of Certified Accountants (ACCA) examinations together with papers 5 and 8 in the Certificate stage. Extensive exemption is also available from the examinations for the Chartered Institute of Management Accountants (CIMA). Further particulars may be obtained from the Head of the Department of Accounting. *The Law curriculum* is intended for students wishing to enter the legal profession, or to take a BCom degree with a legal emphasis. Following this curriculum, a candidate can obtain enough exemptions from LLB degree subjects to complete the LLB requirements in two further years of study.

*The Inter-Faculty curriculum* enables students to include a major subject in the Social Sciences in their BCom degree, and, depending on the subjects chosen, is suitable for candidates interested in personnel management or industrial relations. This curriculum also enables students to include a Science major or any Humanities major in their degree.

#### Bachelor of Economics

This degree is designed for students who wish to include the maximum number of Economics courses and related subjects in their curriculum. The BEcon degree offers a suitable preparation for candidates interested in economic forecasting and analysis and economic planning, in both the public and private sectors.

The Bachelor of Economics (Mineral Economics) is intended for students who wish to become economists with a geological background. The curriculum is designed to apply economic principles to the exploitation of mineral resources, and combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce. Because of timetable constraints this degree cannot be completed in the minimum period of three years.

## Commerce Foundation Programme

This programme is intended to upgrade the academic and life skills of under-prepared candidates and specifically those whose first language is not English. Successful completion of the programme is recognised by the award of a certificate. Candidates earn five degree credits during the programme (which extends over one year of full-time study) and may then proceed to a normal degree programme.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy

This diploma is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the requirements for admission to Part I of the South African Institute's qualifying examination. However the diploma does not confer any professional rights. Graduates are entitled to complete their training contracts in three years instead of five and graduates with the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy are entitled to write Part I of the South African Institute's qualifying examination at the first opportunity after being awarded the Diploma.

## Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management

The diploma equips graduate students who have not majored in Management or its equivalent with knowledge and expertise to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business.

## University Diploma in Manufacturing Management

This three year undergraduate diploma trains students to world-class standards in manufacturing management. It is presently offered in the Johnson & Johnson Institute for Leadership Development at the University's East London Campus.

## Bachelor of Science (Information Systems)

The degree of Bachelor of Science (Information

Systems) has been introduced for students wishing to become computer specialists in a commercial environment. This degree combines courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce, and is administered by the Faculty of Science. See Faculty of Science Rule S.13.

## RULES FOR DEGREES AND CERTIFICATES

*See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.*

The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Commerce only. Rules C.3 to C.11 apply to all Bachelors degrees in the Faculty. Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules no candidate shall be admitted to any of the degrees of Bachelor in the Faculty unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least the minimum time specified for each degree.

### C.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Commerce:

| Name   | To be denoted by the letters |
|--|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Accountancy                        | BAcc                         |
| Bachelor of Business Science                   | BBusSc                       |
| Bachelor of Commerce                           | BCom                         |
| Bachelor of Commerce with Honours              | BCom(Hons)                   |
| Bachelor of Economics                          | BEcon                        |
| Bachelor of Economics with Honours             | BEcon(Hons)                  |
| Master of Commerce                             | MCom                         |
| Master of Economics                            | MEcon                        |
| Doctor of Philosophy                           | PhD                          |
| Doctor of Economics                            | DEcon                        |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy DipAcc(PG) |                              |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management  | DipEntMan(PG)                |
| University Diploma in Manufacturing Management | UDMM                         |

### C.2

Candidates for Bachelors degrees in the Faculty may present themselves for examination in the following courses; unless otherwise indicated each course listed is equivalent to two credits:

#### 2.1

- Accounting 1,2,3
- Anthropology 1,2,3
- Applied Statistics 3
- Auditing 1
- Commercial Law 1,2, 3
- Computer Science 1,2,3
- \*Computer Science 101

\*Computer Science 102

Customary Law

Economics 1,2,3 and 3B

\*Geography 1H (Commerce)

Industrial Psychology 2,3

Industrial Sociology 2,3

Information Systems 2,3

Introduction to Philosophy

Latin 1 or 1B

+Legal Theory 1,2A,2B,3

English Language & Linguistics 1,2,3

\*Logic

Management 1,2,3

Management Accounting and Finance 1

Mathematical Statistics 2,3

\*Theory of Finance and \*Statistics

\*Mathematics 1F and \*Statistics 1F

Mathematics 1,1C,2,3

Politics 1,2,3

\*\*Practical and Commercial French

\$Professional Communication

Psychology 1,2,3

Sociology 1,2,3

Taxation 1

A course in a modern language

*\*Each of these is a one-credit course.*

*+Legal Theory 2A and Legal Theory 2B are both one-and-a-half credit courses.*

*\*\*This is a one-credit course which will normally be offered in the second semester.*

*\$This is a one-credit course offered by the Department of English Language and Linguistics.*

*For major subjects in the Faculty see Rule C.11.*

2.2 Any approved course offered in the Faculties of Humanities or Science.

2.3 Any approved sequence of three courses leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or in the Faculty of Science.

### C.3

For the purpose of the BAcc, BCom, BEcon and BSc(InfSystems) degrees, credit in both Mathematics 1F or 101 and Statistics 1D or 1F will be deemed to be equivalent to credit in Mathematics 1C. Credit in both Mathematics 1E(1) and 1E(2) will be deemed to be a credit in Mathematics 1E, which is equivalent to Mathematics 1. (See Rule S.23.1).

Credit in both Computer Science 101 and Computer Science 102 will be deemed to be equivalent to credit in Computer Science 1. Credit in both Accounting 1F and 1G will be deemed to be equivalent to credit

in Accounting 1.

### C.4

For the purpose of these Rules, and in Rule G.1 *this* as it applies to Commerce, unless otherwise indicated or clear from the context, "course" will mean a course which is equivalent to two credits, a one-semester course being equivalent to one credit.

### C.5

The onus is on students to ensure that they register for a curriculum which will lead to a degree or diploma as the case may be. The Dean's approval of a curriculum does not imply permission to obtain a degree or diploma following a curriculum different from those contained in these Rules. Choices of subjects offered for a degree or certificate may be limited by the University timetable. Students who wish to take a degree over more than the minimum period of time are urged to consult the Dean, Deputy Dean, or Faculty Officer, to ensure that their choice of curriculum is feasible on the University timetable.

### C.6

Credit shall not be given for:

Afrikaans-Nederlands 1 and 2 and also Afrikaans 1 and 2

Commercial Law 1 and Legal Theory 2 or 3

Commercial Law 2 and any course in Legal Theory

Psychology 2 and also Industrial Psychology 2

Psychology 3 and also Industrial Psychology 3

Sociology 2 and also Industrial Sociology 2

Sociology 3 and also Industrial Sociology 3

More than one of Statistics 1D, Mathematics 1C and Statistics

More than one of Mathematics 1 and 1C

Legal Theory 1 and 2 and also Commercial Law 1 (credit in both Legal Theory 1 and 2 will be deemed to be equivalent to a non-continuing credit in Commercial Law 1)

### C.7

7.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not proceed to any course listed in Group 1 below unless they have obtained credit in, or have been exempted from, the corresponding prerequisite course listed in Group II.

#### GROUP I

Applied Statistics 3

Auditing 1

Computer Science 3

Industrial Psychology 3

#### GROUP II

Mathematics 1 or 1E and Mathematical Statistics 2

Accounting 2

Computer Science 2 and Mathematics 102

Industrial Psychology 2

## FACULTY OF COMMERCE

|                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Industrial Sociology 2              | Sociology 1   |
| Information Systems 2               | Computer Science 101  |
| Legal Theory 3                      | any one of Legal Theory 2A and 2B   |
| Management 3                        | Accounting 1 and one of Mathematics IE(1) or IF or 101, or Theory of Finance and Statistics         |
| Management Accounting and Finance 1 | Accounting 2<br>for the second semester course: one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics IE(1) or IF |
| Mathematical Statistics 2           | Theory of Finance and Statistics or Mathematics 1C or 1E  |
| Mathematical Statistics 3           | Mathematics 1 or 1E and Mathematical Statistics 2   |

7.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses Theory of Finance and Statistics unless they have obtained at least an F symbol in Mathematics Higher Grade or an E symbol in Mathematics Standard Grade at the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics at another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto.

7.3 Candidates who have credit in Management 1 may register for Management 2 only if they have credit in, or are concurrently registered for, Accounting 1.

7.4 Candidates who obtain credit in Latin 1B may proceed to Latin 2 only with the permission of the Head of the School of Languages.

7.5 Candidates who have passed Industrial Psychology 2 may be permitted by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department to take Psychology 3. Candidates who have completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3 except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set, in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

7.6 A candidate who obtained a C symbol or better for Computer Science Higher Grade in the Matriculation examination, or who can satisfy the Head of the Department of Information Systems of satisfactory competency in computer literacy, will be exempt from Computer Science 101 as pre-requisite for registration for Information Systems 2. A candidate exempted will not be deemed to have a

credit in Computer Science 101.

7.7 A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2.

7.8 Owing to physical constraints, it may be necessary to limit the numbers of students admitted to Information Systems 2 and 3. Should this become necessary, candidates may be required either to have completed the first year towards a degree or to have obtained at least ten credits before being admitted to Information Systems 2. Should the number of candidates qualifying for admission to Information Systems 2 and 3 exceed the number that can be admitted, admission will be on merit, and those who fail to be thus admitted will be given priority for the following year.

7.9 Save with the permission of the Head of the Department of English Language and Linguistics, a student deemed to be in the first or second year of study may not register for the course Professional Communication.

### C.8

Candidates taking a course in the Faculty of Humanities shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.3, H.4, H.5, H.6, H.13, H.14.

### C.9

Candidates taking Mathematics or a course given only in the Faculties of Science and Pharmacy shall be governed by the provisions of the Rules S.4 and S.27.

### C.10

10.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than twelve credits in the first academic year and ten credits in the second academic year.

10.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not present themselves for examination in courses amounting to more than six credits in any year of study in which they are engaged on the final course of a major subject.

Exceptions approved by the Senate are:

Accounting 3 when taken with Auditing 1, Management Accounting and Finance 1, Taxation 1 and Professional Communication; a fourth course with the final course of a major subject if at least one of the four courses taken is one which was previously failed. For the purpose of C.6(1) and C.6(2) only, English Language for Academic Purposes will be counted as two courses (four credits).

10.3 For all Bachelors degrees, candidates with fewer than six credits shall be deemed to be in the first year

of study for the degree. Candidates with six or more credits, but with fewer than sixteen credits, shall be deemed to be in the second year of study unless they are registered for the final courses of at least two major subjects for the degree. Candidates who have at least sixteen credits towards the degree, or who are registered for the final courses in at least two major subjects shall be deemed to be in the third year of study.

10.4 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before they may enter on the second course in any subject.

## C.11

The degree certificates of candidates for three-year Bachelor's degrees who pass in Class I in the third-year course of any subject listed in C.1(1) and C.1(3), shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. These subjects shall be regarded as major subjects within the Faculty. For the purpose of this Rule the final mark in these courses shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of their component semester courses.

*NB Auditing 1, Taxation 1 and Management Accounting and Finance 1 are not regarded as third-year courses for the purpose of this Rule.*

*Candidates who registered before 1998 and who wish to claim commercial Law 2 as a major subject must pass in six papers as directed by the Head of the Department of Law, and such candidates who also wish to claim Accounting 3 as a major subject must do work in addition to Accounting 3 as directed by the Head of the Department of Accounting.*

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ACCOUNTANCY

This degree is accredited by the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants as fulfilling part of the entry requirements for the Part 1 of the qualifying examination. The curriculum for the fourth year of study for the degree is the same as that of the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy which is available to BCom and other graduates. (See Rules C.32 to C.34)

## C.12

12.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Accountancy shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

12.2 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the

Faculty. Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not obtained credit in or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

12.3 Candidates who are admitted to the fourth year of study for the degree and who fail will be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce.

12.4 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree, or who pass all the courses for the first three years of the degree excepting for Taxation 1 may elect to be awarded the BCom degree. Such candidates, or those who obtain the BCom degree on grounds of having completed Curriculum 2 for the BCom degree may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Accountancy, but may be admitted to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy.

12.5 Candidates must pass all the papers in the fourth year simultaneously in the aggregate. A subminimum of 40% is required in Auditing 2; a pass is required in each of the three other individual subjects.

## Year 1

- (1) Accounting 1
- (2) Commercial Law 1
- (3) Computer Science 101
- (4) Economics 1
- (5) Mathematics 1 or 1C; or Theory of Finance and Statistics
- (6) A course in a modern language or Sociology 1 or Psychology 1, or another course selected from the list of courses in C.1(1).

## Year 2

- (1) Accounting 2
- (2) Commercial Law 2
- (3) Economics 2
- (4) Information Systems 2

## Year 3

- (1) Accounting 3
- (2) Auditing 1
- (3) Taxation 1
- (4) Management Accounting and Finance 1
- (5) Professional Communication

## Year 4

- (1) Accounting 4
- (2) Management Accounting and Finance 2
- (3) Auditing 2
- (4) Taxation 2

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF BUSINESS SCIENCE

### C.13

13.1 The curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Business Science shall extend over not less than four years of full-time study.

13.2 Admission to the fourth year of study for the degree is subject to approval by the Board of the Faculty. Candidates will not be admitted to any fourth-year course for the degree if they have not obtained credit in or been exempted from all the courses prescribed for the first three years of study for the degree.

13.3 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who fail the fourth year will, depending on courses passed, be awarded the degree of Bachelor of Commerce or the degree of Bachelor of Economics.

13.4 Candidates who complete the third year of study for the degree and who have the required credits, may elect to be awarded the BCom or BEcon degree. Such candidates may not subsequently be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Business Science, but may be admitted to an Honours degree.

*Candidates for the degree should note that they may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.13.2, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule.*

*NB It is important that candidates plan their curricula fully in advance to ensure feasibility on the lecture timetable.*

### CURRICULUM 1 (Economics)

#### Year 1

- (1) Economics 1
- (2) Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D
- (3) Management 1
- (4) Mathematics 1

#### Year 2

- (1) Economics 2
- (2) Accounting 1
- (3) Management 2
- (4) One of: A course in a language; Mathematics; Mathematical Statistics 2; Psychology 1; Sociology 1

#### Year 3

- (1) Economics 3 and 3B
- (2) \*Commercial Law 1

- (3) Management 3 or the final course in another approved three-year major subject

#### (4) Professional Communication

*\* This course may be taken in Year 1*

#### Year 4

- (1) Four Honours papers in Economics chosen in consultation with the Head of the Department.
- (2) Strategic Management

### CURRICULUM 2 (Information Systems)

#### Year 1

- (1) Accounting 1
- (2) Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D
- (3) Economics 1
- (4) Management 1
- (5) Mathematics 1

#### Year 2

- (1) Information Systems 2
- (2) Economics 2
- (3) Management 2
- (4) One of: a course in a modern language; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Psychology 1; Sociology 1

#### Year 3

- (1) Information Systems 3
- (2) Commercial Law 1
- (3) One of: Economics 3; Management 3; the final course in an approved three-year major subject.
- (4) Professional Communication

#### Year 4

- (1) Information Systems Honours or Joint Honours. (as prescribed in Rule C.16)
- (2) Strategic Management

### CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

#### Year 1

- (1) Legal Theory 1
- (2) Accounting 1
- (3) Economics 1
- (4) Management 1
- (5) Mathematics 1

*Candidates who intend to take Information Systems 2 in this curriculum must take Computer Science 101 as a credit in Year 1. See Rule C.7.*

#### Year 2

- (1) Legal Theory 2A and 2B
- (2) Economics 2
- (3) One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2;



(4) One of: Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D;  
A course in a language

Year 3

(1) Legal Theory 3

(2) One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

(3) Professional Communication

Year 4

(1) Courses from the LLB curriculum enabling the candidate to complete the Law courses prescribed for the first three years of the LLB degree.

(2) Strategic Management

#### CURRICULUM 4 (Management)

Year 1

(1) Management 1

(2) Accounting 1

(3) Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D

(4) Economics 1

(5) Mathematics 1

Year 2

(1) Management 2

(2) Economics 2

(3) Information Systems 2

(4) One of: a course in a modern language; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Psychology 1; Sociology 1

Year 3

(1) Management 3

(2) Commercial Law 1

(3) One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; A final course in an approved major subject.

(4) Professional Communication

Year 4

Management Honours, or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).

#### CURRICULUM 5 (Quantitative Management)

Year 1

(1) Accounting 1

(2) Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D

(3) Economics 1

(4) Management 1

(5) Mathematics 1

Year 2

(1) Mathematical Statistics 2

(2) Commercial Law 1

(3) Economics 2

(4) Management 2

(5) Mathematics 201

Year 3

(1) Applied Statistics 301

(2) One of: Applied Statistics 302; \*Management Science

(3) One of: Economics 3; Management 3

(4) Professional Communication

*\*This course is part of the Honours Operations Research curriculum and its being offered is dependent on student numbers.*

Year 4

(1) Statistics Honours or Joint Honours (*as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2*).

(2) Strategic Management

#### CURRICULUM 6 (Social Science)

Year 1

(1) One of: Anthropology 1; English Language and Linguistics 1; Politics 1; Psychology 1; Sociology 1

(2) Computer Science 101 and Statistics 1D0

(3) Economics 1

(4) Management 1

(5) Mathematics 1

Year 2

(1) One of: Anthropology 2; Industrial Psychology 2; Industrial Sociology 2; English Language and Linguistics 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2; Sociology 2

(2) Accounting 1

(3) Commercial Law 1

(4) Economics 2

(5) One of: Information Systems 2; Management 2; Another approved second-year course

Year 3

(1) One of: Anthropology 3; Industrial Psychology 3; Industrial Sociology 3; English Language and Linguistics 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3

(2) One of: Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

(3) Professional Communication

Year 4

(1) Honours or Joint Honours in one or more of the subjects listed in Items (1) and (2) of Year 3

*(as prescribed in Rules C.16 and C.17.2)*

(2) Strategic Management

#### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF COMMERCE

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

##### A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

C.14

14.1 Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain at least twenty-three credits in the courses contained in one of the curricula set out in Rule C.15.

14.2 Candidates offering more than the minimum number of courses for the degree must select the additional courses from those listed in C.2.1.

14.3 Candidates for the degree may, subject to the constraints imposed by Rules G.17, C.7, C.10, C.3.2, and those imposed by the lecture timetable, offer courses in a curriculum in a different order to that set out in this Rule. Thus, for example, a candidate wishing to include Computer Science 2 in Curriculum 1 must take Computer Science 1 as the option in item 4 of Year 2, but must take the course in Year 1, and the course it displaces in Year 1, in Year 2. Similarly a candidate wishing to take Information Systems 2 in Year 2 must take Computer Science 101 in Year 1 and any semester course in Year 1 omitted as a consequence, in Year 2 or thereafter.

#### C.15

##### CURRICULUM 1 (General)

*This curriculum is intended for candidates who wish to specialise in one or more of the following fields: Economics, Information Systems, Management, Statistics.*

Year 1

- (1) Accounting 1
- (2) Commercial Law 1
- (3) Economics 1
- (4) Management 1
- (5) Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1C

NB See Rule C.14.3 above. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 1F or 101.

Year 2

- (1) Economics 2
- (2) One of : Accounting 2; Commercial Law 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2
- (3) One of : A course listed in (2) above not already taken; Computer Science 2; Mathematical Statistics 2
- (4) Any other two-credit course, or two one-credit courses, from C.1.

*(Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)*

Year 3

- (1) One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics

3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

(2) One of: A course listed in (1) above not already taken; Applied Statistics 3; Commercial Law 3; Computer Science 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3

(3) Professional Communication

##### CURRICULUM 2 (Accounting)

Year 1

- (1) Accounting 1
- (2) Commercial Law 1
- (3) Computer Science 101
- (4) Economics 1
- (5) Management 1
- (6) Theory of Finance and Statistics,

Year 2

- (1) Accounting 2
- (2) Commercial Law 2
- (3) Economics 2
- (4) Information Systems 2

Year 3

- (1) Accounting 3
- (2) Two of: \*  
Auditing 1  
Management Accounting and Finance 1  
Taxation 1
- (3) Professional Communication

\* Candidates who intend to take the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy should include all three of these subjects in their curriculum.

##### CURRICULUM 3 (Law)

Year 1

- (1) Legal Theory 1
- (2) Accounting 1
- (3) Economics 1
- (4) Management 1
- (5) One of the following: A course in a modern language; Latin 1A or Latin 1B; Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E, or Theory of Finance and Statistics

NB See Rule C.14.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 1F or 101.

Year 2

- (1) Legal Theory 2A and 2B
- (2) Economics 2
- (3) One of: Accounting 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2

(4) Any one-credit course from C.1.

*(Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)*

Year 3

(1) Legal Theory 3

(2) One of: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

(3) Professional Communication

#### CURRICULUM 4 (Inter-Faculty)\*

NB *Candidates are reminded of the need to plan any proposed curriculum with regard to its viability in terms of the University lecture timetable.*

Year 1

(1) Accounting 1

(2) Economics 1

(3) Management 1

(4) A first-year course leading to a major in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

(5) One of the following: Commercial Law 1; Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E

NB *See Rule C.14.3. Candidates are reminded that they shall not be permitted to register for Management 3 until they have obtained a pass in Accounting 1 and one of Theory of Finance or Mathematics 1E(1) or 1F or 101.*

Year 2

(1) A second-year course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

(2) Economics 2

(3) One of the following: Accounting 2; Commercial Law 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2

(5) Commercial Law 1; if already taken: any two-credit course or two one-credit courses from C.1.

*(Attention is drawn to Rule C.6)*

Year 3

(1) The final course of a major subject offered in the Faculty of Humanities or the Faculty of Science.

(2) One of the following: Accounting 3; Economics 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3

(3) Professional Communication

*\* For the purpose of this curriculum a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science will be any major subject which can be taken for the BA, BSocSc and BSc degrees, excluding Accounting, Commercial Law, Economics, Information Systems, Legal Theory and Management.*

## B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

### C.16

The degree of Bachelor of Commerce with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree (excepting Commercial Law and Legal Theory), or in Operations Research, or in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

### C.17

17.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course in the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to the honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

17.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided that:

17.2.1 they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to Honours in that subject;

17.2.2 the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

17.2.3 the Heads of the Departments concerned and the Dean of the Faculty approve such arrangements.

17.2.4 Accounting Honours may not be taken jointly with any other subject.

### C.18

Candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after being admitted to the ordinary degree or to the status of that degree and shall pursue a course of advanced study in the chosen subject.

### C.19

The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another department concurrently with their honours degree.

### C.20

Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the

Department of Economics and Economic History, a full-time candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree may be permitted to take the Honours and Master's degree in Economics concurrently. The candidate shall write the full Honours examination in no more than two years, and if successful may submit the Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements, provided the candidate remains a registered student.

**C.21**

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit a student to take an honours course as a part-time student: Provided that:

21.1 the honours classes are attended within the normal timetable of the Department; and

21.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of Senate, not more than two years.

**C.22**

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

**C.23**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates shall not be permitted to present themselves for the examinations for the degree more than once in the same subject.

**C.24**

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate candidates must write all parts of the examination at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate, or a candidate taking the degree over two years, may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

**C.25**

Exceptions have been approved by Senate for the following subjects, and in these subjects parts of the Honours examination may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department, be written at any official examination session of the University pertaining to the period of study prescribed in Rules 6 and 8: Computer Science, Economics, Information Systems, Management, Mathematics, Statistics.

**C.26**

Candidates will not be admitted for the Honours degree in Accounting unless they have satisfied the requirements for admission to the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy set out in Rules C.32 and C.33.

**C.27**

Candidates for the Honours degree in Accounting are required to pass papers 1 to 6 in the aggregate and to satisfy the requirements of Rule C.23.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ECONOMICS**

**C.28**

28.1 The degree of Bachelor of Economics may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

28.2 Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Rules, no candidates shall be admitted to the ordinary degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

**A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE**

**C.29**

Candidates must obtain at least twenty-three credits as set out in the following curricula.

**CURRICULUM 1 (Business Sciences)**

**Year 1**

(1) Economics 1

(2) Theory of Finance and Statistics,, or Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E

(3&4) Two from: Accounting 1; Commercial Law 1; Computer Science 1; Management 1; Statistics; one other approved course.

*See Rules C.6 and C.7.1.*

**Year 2**

(1) Economics 2

(2&3) Two from: Accounting 2; Computer Science 2; Information Systems 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; one other approved non-initial course.

(4) Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses from C.6.

*See Rule C.2.*

**Year 3**

(1) Economics 3 and 3B

(2) One from: Accounting 3; Applied Statistics 3; Computer Science 3; Information Systems 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3;

## FACULTY OF COMMERCE

Mathematics 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

(3) Professional Communication

### CURRICULUM 2 (Social Sciences)

Year 1

(1) Economics 1

(2) Theory of Finance and Statistics, or Mathematics 1 or 1C or 1E

(3&4) Two from: Anthropology 1; History 1; Introduction to Philosophy; Management 1; Politics 1;

Psychology 1; Sociology 1; one other approved course.

Year 2

(1) Economics 2

(2&3) Two from: Anthropology 2; History 2; Industrial Psychology 2; Industrial Sociology 2; Management 2; Mathematical Statistics 2; Mathematics 2; Philosophy 2; Politics 2; Psychology 2;

Sociology 2; one other approved non-initial course.

(4) Any two-credit course, or two one-credit courses, from C.1(1).

Year 3

(1) Economics 3 and 3B

(2) One of: Anthropology 3; History 3; Industrial Psychology 3; Industrial Sociology 3; Management 3; Mathematical Statistics 3; Mathematics 3; Philosophy 3; Politics 3; Psychology 3; Sociology 3; the final course of an approved major subject.

(3) Professional Communication

### CURRICULUM 3 (Mineral Economics)

*This degree may be required to be taken over more than three years because of timetable clashes which cannot be resolved.*

Year 1

(1) Accounting 1

(2) Chemistry 101 and 102

(3) Economics 1

(4) Geology 1

(5) Management 1

Year 2

(1) Economics 2

(2) Geology 201 and 202

(3) Management 2

(4) Theory of Finance and Statistics

Year 3

(1) Economics 3

(2) Geology 301 and 302

(3) Professional Communication

### B. THE HONOURS DEGREE

#### C.30

The degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours may be taken in any major subject for the degree, or in Operations Research, or in a combination of any two of these subjects.

#### C.31

Rules C.17 to C.25 above shall also apply to the degree of Bachelor of Economics with Honours.

### COMMERCE FOUNDATION PROGRAMME

#### Curriculum

Only English second-language speakers are eligible for admission to this programme which extends over one year of full-time study. Because of the nature of the programme, the number of students admitted to it in any year will be limited. Candidates who complete the Foundation programme will not normally be admitted to the BCom or BAcc programmes unless they have obtained an aggregate mark of at least 60% in two of their one-credit courses and English Language for Academic Purposes.

#### Courses

##### First Semester

Accounting 1F

English for Academic Purposes

##### Second Semester

Accounting 1F

English for Academic Purposes

Theory of Finance (Foundation)

Theory of Finance (Foundation)

Commerce Foundation Studies

Statistics 1D

Computer Literacy

### POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN

#### ACCOUNTANCY

The curriculum for the Diploma is the same as that for the fourth year of the Bachelor of Accountancy degree.

#### C.32

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless :

32.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor and

32.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the head of the Department of Accounting.

### C.33

33.1 Candidates who have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor and who subsequently wish to obtain the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy must obtain or have credit in Information Systems 2, Theory of Finance and Statistics, Economics 1, Commercial Law 1 and 2, Accounting 3, Auditing 1, Management Accounting and Finance 1, Taxation 1, and such other courses as directed by the Board of the Faculty before being admitted to study for the Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy. The distribution of outstanding courses over a further year or years of study shall be at the discretion of the Board of the Faculty, provided that not more than five courses may be taken in any one year.

33.2 Where candidates have passed in courses covering portions of the syllabus of pre-requisite courses they may be exempted from those courses provided they attend such courses and/or pass such papers or half papers as may be required by Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty.

### C.34

Candidates must pass all courses simultaneously in the aggregate. A sub-minimum of 40% is required in Auditing 2, while a sub-minimum of 50% is required in each of the other three courses.

## POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT

### C.35

Candidates for the Diploma shall not be admitted to the course unless :

35.1 they have a Bachelor's degree or have been admitted to the status of bachelor, and

35.2 they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Management.

### C.36

Candidates who have credit in Management 3 (or its equivalent) are not eligible for admission to the Diploma.

### C.37

Candidates must pass in the aggregate in the following papers and the Alpha project:

Paper 1: Marketing and Strategic Management

Paper 2: Information Systems (*half course*)

Paper 3A: Introduction to Accounting (*half course*)

Paper 3B: Financial Management (*half course*)

Paper 4: Human Resource Management

Paper 5: Operations Management

Paper 6: Legal aspects of Small Business (*half course*)

## UNIVERSITY DIPLOMA IN MANUFACTURING MANAGEMENT

The admission requirements for the Diploma are matriculation exemption or other qualification approved by the Senate, and satisfactory evidence of committed service in a production environment over a five year period prior to registration for the Diploma.

The Diploma is awarded after the candidate has either completed or been exempted from all the courses set out below:

### Year 1

#### Semester 1

Applied Economics

#### Semester 2

Contemporary Management Practice 1

Business Accounting and Finance

Principles of Marketing

### Year 2

#### Semester 1

Logistics & Distribution

#### Semester 2

Contemporary Management Practice 2

Resources Planning

Management Information

Manufacturing Facilities

Systems

Design

Quality Management Systems

### Year 3

#### Semester 1

Performance

#### Semester 2

Contemporary Management Practice 3

Management Systems

Strategic Manufacturing

Strategic Manufacturing

Systems 2

Systems 1

The Diploma will be awarded with distinction to candidates who achieve an aggregate mark of 75% or better in each of the second and third years of study.

## HIGHER DEGREES

The Faculty's Rules for the Degree of Master of Commerce, Degree of Master of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Economics, Degree of Doctor of Philosophy, are identical to those set out for Master's and Doctoral degrees in the General Rules.

# FACULTY OF EDUCATION

The following diplomas and degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Education:

| Name   | To be denoted by the letters |
|--|------------------------------|
| Diploma in Education (Foundation phase)                            | DE(FP)                       |
| Diploma in Education (Intermediate phase)                          | DE(IP)                       |
| University Education Diploma (Foundation phase)                    | UED(FP)                      |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Foundation phase)                     | HDE(FP)                      |
| University Education Diploma (Intermediate phase)                  | UED(IP)                      |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Intermediate phase)                   | HDE(IP)                      |
| University Education Diploma (Secondary)                           | UED(SEC)                     |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Secondary)                            | HDE(SEC)                     |
| Bachelor of Primary Education                                      | BPrimEd                      |
| University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Foundation phase)      | UED(PG)(FP)                  |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Foundation phase)       | HDE(PG)(FP)                  |
| University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Intermediate phase)    | UED(PG)(IP)                  |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Intermediate phase)     | HDE(PG)(IP)                  |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Pre-Primary)                          | HDE(PrePrim)                 |
| University Education Diploma (Postgraduate)(Secondary)             | UED(PG)(SEC)                 |
| Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate)(Secondary)              | HDE(PG)(SEC)                 |
| Further Diploma in Education (Technology Education)(GET)           | FDE(TechEd)                  |
| Further Diploma in Education (Science Education)(GET)              | FDE(ScEd)                    |
| Further Diploma in Education (Mathematics Education)(GET)          | FDE(Maths Ed)                |
| Further Diploma in Education (Educational Leadership & Management) | FDE (ELM)                    |
| Bachelor of Education  | B Ed                         |
| Master of Education  | M Ed                         |
| Doctor of Philosophy   | Ph D                         |

## RULES FOR DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Education only.

Course changes will normally only be allowed within the first fourteen days after the official registration date.

Students wishing to register for an additional credit over and above such credits required by the standard curriculum for the course for which they are registered, shall obtain the permission of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of Department and lecturers concerned.

On registering in the Faculty of Education, all students whose curricula require teaching practice or research in schools shall sign a Declaration of Professional Ethics in the following terms:

"I do solemnly declare that:

(i) I shall not improperly divulge any information which may be disclosed to me in my capacity as a student while working in any school or with any group of pupils or teachers.

(ii) I shall conduct myself as becomes a professional person, and refrain from bringing the University and the teaching profession into disrepute."

All diploma candidates and candidates for the Bachelor of Primary Education degree should note that teacher qualifications are governed by statutory regulations.

Furthermore it should be noted that the possession of an approved educational qualification with language endorsements in two of the official languages is a requirement for a permanent appointment in a South African state school.

NB

(i) *The attention of students registered in the Faculty of Education is drawn to the fact that certain Provincial Departments of Education may require a medical certificate of fitness as a prerequisite to appointment.*

(ii) *Students embarking on professional courses in the Faculty should note that periods of teaching practice are obligatory and will be undertaken in towns within 200km of the University.*

## DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (for Foundation phase or Intermediate phase teachers)

This diploma is offered only at the East London Campus of the University.

### E.1

A candidate shall not be admitted to the course for the diploma unless the candidate has been awarded a

school leaving certificate and a recognised two-year primary teaching qualification.

**E.2**

The course for the diploma must extend over not less than one year of full-time, or two years of part-time study. Full-time candidates holding a recognised two-year qualification will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the diploma.

**E.3**

The curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions: A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

3.1 Education (DE)

3.2 EITHER Professional Studies (Intermediate phase)(DE) - Curriculum courses for the Intermediate phase, OR Professional Studies (Foundation phase)(DE) - Curriculum courses for the Foundation phase.

3.3 Computer Literacy (DE).

3.4 Practical skills (Foundation or Intermediate phase) in one of the following: Primary School Art, Primary School Music, Primary School Handwork (including Design and Technology).

3.5 Teaching practice as determined by the national criteria.

**E.4**

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum.

4.1 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once. A candidate who fails in more than one, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

4.2 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

**HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION**

*(for Foundation phase or Intermediate phase teachers)*

This diploma is offered only at the East London Campus of the University.

**E.5**

A candidate will not be admitted to the course for the diploma unless the candidate has been awarded a school leaving certificate and a recognized three-year primary teaching qualification.

**E.6**

The course for the Diploma must extend over not less

than one year of full-time study, or two years of part-time study. Full-time candidates will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the diploma.

**E.7**

The curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions:

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

7.1 Education (HDE)

7.2 EITHER

Professional Studies (HDE) - Education: Intermediate phase Studies 2

OR

Professional Studies (HDE) - Education: Foundation phase Studies 2

7.3 Computer Literacy (HDE)

7.4 Teaching Practice of not less than five weeks.

**E.8**

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum.

8.1 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once. A candidate who fails in more than one, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

8.2 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

**HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (PRE-PRIMARY)**

This diploma is offered only at the East London Campus of the University.

**E.9**

A candidate will not be admitted to the course for the diploma unless the candidate has been awarded a school leaving certificate and a recognised three-year primary teaching qualification.

**E.10**

The course for the diploma must extend over not more than one year of full-time study, or two years of part-time study. Full-time candidates will be allowed a maximum of two years and part-time candidates a maximum of three years in which to fulfil all requirements for the diploma.

**E.11**

The curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions:

A candidate must obtain or be granted credit in:

11.1 Education studies (Pre-Primary)



- 11.2 Professional studies (Pre-Primary)
- 11.3 Pre-Primary studies:
  - 11.3.1 Language, including Early Childhood Literature
  - 11.3.2 Pre-Mathematics and Pre-Writing
  - 11.3.3 Development Play, Art, Music and Handwork
  - 11.3.4 Environment Studies
  - 11.4 Art/Art Education/Arts and Crafts
  - 11.5 Religious Education
  - 11.6 Language Endorsement
  - 11.7 Teaching Practice (minimum of 5 weeks).

#### E.12

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses of the curriculum:

12.1 A candidate may fail in only one subject and in that subject only once. A candidate who fails in more than one, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

12.2 A candidate who fails in only one subject will qualify for a supplementary examination in that subject.

### HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (POSTGRADUATE)

(for Intermediate phase or Foundation phase teachers)

This diploma, following an approved degree, is recognised by Statute and employing authorities as equivalent to a Bachelor of Primary Education degree. Candidates who do not fulfil the language admission requirements of this diploma are referred to Rule E.42.

#### E.13

A candidate shall not be admitted to the course unless

- 13.1 the candidate has been awarded an appropriate bachelor's or higher degree; or
- 13.2 the candidate has been admitted to the status of such a degree; or
- 13.3 the candidate has satisfied all the requirements for a bachelor's degree except that the candidate has still to obtain credit in one minor course, provided the Dean of the Faculty approves the admission of such a candidate; AND
- 13.4 the composition of the candidate's degree is such that it includes

- 13.4.1 a course in English or Afrikaans
- 13.4.2 course from Afrikaans/English/an African language/an Indian language provided not taken in 13.4.1 above.

NB One of these may be a practical or special

course such as Afrikaans IP;

and at least three courses in at least two of the following subjects:

- Afrikaans (provided not taken under 13.4.1 above)
- English (provided not taken under 13.4.1 above)
- An African language (provided not taken under 13.4.2 above)
- An Indian language (provided not taken under 13.4.2 above)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Biblical Studies   | Biology                                  |
| Botany   | Chemistry                                |
| (provided Biology is not chosen)   |  |
| Drama  | Fine Art                                 |
| Geography  | History                                  |
| Human Movement Studies or Physical Education   |  |
| Linguistics and English Language (provided the candidate has a credit in at least English 1 or 1A) |  |
| Mathematics  | Music (class and instrumental)           |
| Physics  | Zoology (provided Biology is not chosen) |

and

13.5 the candidate has passed an official language on the higher grade and another language (grade unspecified) - either Afrikaans, or English, or an African language, or an Indian language - in the matriculation examination or in another examination deemed to be equivalent thereof.

#### E.14

A candidate admitted to the course in terms of Rule E.13.3 may, at the discretion of the Dean, take the outstanding course required for an approved degree concurrently with diploma studies externally, but the candidate shall not be awarded the diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been completed.

#### E.15

15.1 The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year.

15.2 The curriculum for the diploma shall be governed by the provisions of Rules E.23, E.25 and E.34.

15.3 The curriculum for the diploma shall be:

- 15.3.1 selections of work from Education 1,2 or 3;
- 15.3.2 Professional Studies (teaching methods) for either Foundation phase teaching or Intermediate phase teaching;
- 15.3.3 one course from Primary School Art, Primary School Handwork, Design Technology, Primary School Music or Primary School Physical Education;
- 15.3.4 language work to meet the requirements of E.23.1, E.23.2 and E.23.3;

15.3.5 teaching practice for not less than seven weeks;

15.3.6 Computer Literacy;

15.3.7 Religious Education;

15.3.8 Teaching Aids.

#### **E.16**

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum.

#### **E.17**

17.1 The proficiency of a candidate in teaching shall be judged by means of continuous assessment.

17.2 The assessment of teaching practice also takes due account of the professional conduct of the candidate during the year. If a passing grade is not obtained in teaching practice, the candidate, after a period of teaching recommended by the Head of Department and approved by the Board of the Faculty of Education, may be permitted re-assessment. Any re-examination will not take place before the month of May in the following year.

#### **E.18**

The diploma will be awarded "with distinction" and the parchment endorsed to this effect if the student achieves a Class I pass in *all* of the following:

18.1 Education Theory

18.2 Professional Studies

18.3 Teaching Practice

### **HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION**

(for *Secondary teachers*)

Candidates who do not fulfil the language admission requirements of this diploma are referred to Rule E.25.

#### **E.19**

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the diploma unless they are matriculated students of the University as defined in the General Rules.

#### **E.20**

A candidate must attend University for not less than four years. This diploma, taken over one year at fourth-year level, is only open to candidates who have been registered for a bachelor's degree but who have not yet fulfilled all the requirements of that degree.

#### **E.21**

A curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions:

21.1 a candidate must obtain credit in at least eight courses, five of which must be chosen from the following list, and must comprise at least two courses

in each of two subjects:

Accounting or Accountancy

African Languages

Afrikaans

Afrikaans en Nederlands

Art (Practical) (under certain conditions)

Biblical Studies

Biology or Biological Science

Botany

Business Economics

Chemistry

Commercial Law or Mercantile Law

Computer Science

Drama (provided the candidate has a credit in an official language at third-year level and in another subject on the list at least at first-year level)

Economics or Mathematical Economics

English

Fine Art

French

Geography

German

History

History of Art (under certain conditions)

History of Music (for BMus and BA Mus only) (under certain conditions)

Human Movement Studies or Physical Education

Latin

Linguistics and English Language (provided the candidate has a credit in at least English I or IA)

Management

Mathematics

Music (Practical) (under certain conditions)

Physics

Zoology

21.2 a candidate taking English, Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands shall be subject to the provisions of

Rule H.13 of the Faculty of Humanities Rules;

21.3 the candidate's fourth year of study shall be governed by the provisions of Rules E.13 to E.18 inclusive, except that if the candidate has completed two courses in each of two subjects in the Faculty of Science, one of the candidate's method courses must be General Science Method;

21.4 candidates may not enter the fourth year of study unless they have credits in at least seven of the courses prescribed in sub-paragraph 21.1 above.

#### **E.22**

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the

courses in the curriculum.

**E.23**

23.1 A candidate must demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Head of the Department proficiency on the higher grade in the use of at least one official language of the Republic, and must also pass a test on the higher or standard grade in one of Afrikaans (provided the official language chosen is English), English (provided the official language chosen is Afrikaans), an African language, or an Indian language. The candidate's certificate shall be endorsed accordingly.

23.2 The language test shall consist of written and oral components.

23.3 On the recommendation of the Head of the relevant Department and of the language department concerned, the Board of the Faculty may exempt a candidate from the written component of the language test.

**HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION**

**(POST GRADUATE)** *(for Secondary teachers)*

**E.24**

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year, and no candidate shall be allowed to take additional or alternative courses during that academic year except as provided in Rule E.14.

**E.25**

A candidate may be admitted to the course for the postgraduate diploma if

25.1 the candidate has been awarded an approved bachelor's degree, or has been admitted to the status of such a degree, or has not completed all the requirements for an approved bachelor's degree but the Dean of the Faculty approves the admission of such a candidate; provided that the statutory requirements for admission to the diploma have been met;

25.2 the candidate has passed an official language on the higher grade and another language (grade unspecified) - either Afrikaans, or English, or an African language, or an Indian language - in the matriculation examination or in another examination deemed to be equivalent thereto.

**E.26**

A candidate will not receive the diploma until all the requirements of the degree have been fulfilled. A candidate may be awarded the Higher Diploma in Education (Non-graduate) which can be upgraded to the Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) on

completion of the degree (see E.19).

**E.27**

The approved degree referred to in E.26 shall comply with the requirements as laid down from time to time by the Committee of Heads of Education, as listed below, or shall comply with specific requirements prescribed by other employing authorities for whom the candidate intends to work. Except as indicated in Rules E.28.2.4 to E.28.2.6, a degree approved for purposes of the diploma shall contain credits in at least five courses in the subjects listed below and in one of the following combinations:

27.1 three courses being in one subject and two in another subject, or

27.2 two courses in each of two subjects and one course in another subject, or

27.3 three courses in one subject and at least one course in each of two other subjects.

Accounting or Accountancy

African Languages

Afrikaans

Afrikaans en Nederlands

Art (Practical) (under certain conditions)

Biblical Studies

Biology or Biological Science

Botany

Business Economics

Chemistry

Commercial Law or Mercantile Law

Computer Science

Drama (provided the candidate has a credit in an official language)

Economics or Mathematical Economics

English

Fine Art

French

Geography

German

History

History of Art (under certain conditions)

History of Music (for BMus and BA Mus only) (under certain conditions)

Human Movement Studies or Physical Education

Latin

Linguistics and English Language (provided the candidate has a credit in at least English 1 or 1A)

Management

Mathematics

Music (Practical) (under certain conditions)

Physics

Psychology or School Guidance (provided the candidate has credit in this subject at third-year level and in another subject on this list at at least second-year level, i.e., in accordance with combination (a) above, combinations (b) and (c) being inapplicable) Zoology

NB (i) *Industrial Psychology is not accepted as an alternative to Psychology.*

(ii) *For the subject method Physical Science, Physics and Chemistry, one at least at second-year level, are pre-requisites. For the subject method Biology, Botany and Zoology, one at least at second-year level, are pre-requisites.*

(iii) *For the subject method General Science (Physical Science), Physics and Chemistry, both at least at first-year level, are pre-requisites. For the subject method General Science (Biology), Botany and Zoology, both at least at first-year level, are pre-requisites.*

#### **E.28**

A curriculum for the diploma shall include the following:

28.1 a course in Educational Studies (which includes work in the Philosophy, Psychology, and Sociology of Education, and in General Educational Method);  
28.2 at least two method courses, except as indicated in sub-paragraph 28.2.4 below, in approved teaching subjects as follows:

28.2.1 method of instruction up to the Grade 12 level in a subject chosen from the list in E.27 and in which a candidate has obtained credit at least at second-year level;

28.2.2 method of instruction up to the Grade 9 level for degree courses passed only at first-year level (in terms of options in E.27.3);

28.2.3 the School Guidance and Counselling method course may only be taken by candidates who have a degree credit in Psychology at third-year level;

NB *A candidate who takes the School Guidance and Counselling method course must have successfully completed the degree before the diploma can be awarded.*

28.2.4 candidates whose degree does not include any school subject other than Mathematics may obtain a recognised diploma which has only one method course, viz. Mathematics Method, provided they have a degree credit in Mathematics at third-year level;

28.2.5 candidates who have included Botany and Zoology, one at least at third-year level, and no other school subject in the degree, may obtain a recognised

diploma with methods in Biology and General Science (Biology);

28.2.6 candidates who have included Physics and Chemistry, one at least at third-year level, and no other school subject in the degree, may obtain a recognised diploma with methods in Physical Science and General Science (Physical Science);

28.3 a course in Religious Education;

28.4 a course in Computer Literacy;

28.5 teaching practice for not less than seven weeks;  
28.6 voluntary courses in the following subjects may be offered when resources permit:

26.6.1 Organisation and Coaching of Games;

28.6.2 Content and Method of Religious Education;

28.6.3 Use of School Media Centres;

28.6.4 Play Production.

#### **E.29**

University examinations covering the subjects referred to in Rule E.28 shall be held.

#### **E.30**

30.1 The proficiency of a candidate in teaching shall be judged by means of continuous assessment.

30.2 The assessment of teaching practice also takes due account of the professional conduct of the candidate during the year. If a passing grade is not obtained in Practice of Teaching (see Rule E.33), the candidate, after a period of teaching recommended by the Head of Department and approved by the Board of the Faculty of Education, may be permitted re-assessment. Any re-examination will not take place before the month of May in the following year.

#### **E.31**

Candidates must satisfy requirements for language work as listed in Rules E.23.1 to E.23.3.

NB *While, for the purpose of the diploma, the language endorsement need be obtained in only one official language, candidates intending to take up appointments in the Provincial Education Departments are strongly advised to take the language test in another official language, since permanent appointment and promotion may depend on the possession of a bilingual qualification.*

#### **E.32**

A candidate must pass each of the principal subjects of the examination. These principal subjects are defined in Rule E.33.

#### **E.33**

33.1 For the purpose of this Rule, the following shall be regarded as Principal Subjects, divided into two categories:

Principal Subjects (Theory)

Educational Studies;

Method Course A;

Method Course B;

Principal Subjects (Practical)

Practice of Teaching A;

Practice of Teaching B .

33.2 The diploma will be awarded "with distinction" if a candidate obtains a Class I pass in Education Studies and any two other principal subjects.

33.3 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Theory) at the FI level (ie. scoring between 45% - 49% ) shall normally be permitted to write a supplementary examination in that subject at the beginning of the following year.

33.4 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Theory) at below FI level shall normally be required to re-attend the course for that subject.

33.5 A candidate who fails one Principal Subject (Practical) shall submit to a further period of continuous assessment, subject to the provisions of Rule E.30.

33.6 A candidate who fails a written supplementary examination in a Principal Subject (Theory) or who fails to pass a Principal Subject (Practical) after a further period of continuous assessment may be required to re-attend the entire curriculum of the diploma or to re-attend such courses as determined by the Dean.

33.7 A candidate who fails two or more Principal Subjects shall be required to re-attend the entire curriculum for the diploma.

33.8 A candidate will be awarded the diploma *with distinction* if at least three distinctions are obtained in the Diploma, one of which is Educational Studies.

**E.34**

34.1 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, may exempt a candidate who already holds a teaching certificate granted by a recognised institution or educational authority from any of the principal or subsidiary subjects included in that certificate.

34.2 The Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, may on such conditions as it may prescribe exempt a candidate from any principal or subsidiary subject in which the candidate has previously taken courses and passed examinations deemed to be equivalent thereof, and may require such candidate to attend and pass examinations in other courses in lieu of those for which exemption is

given.

**FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION**

Further Diplomas in Education are offered to provide for the following identified needs:

\* re-education of already qualified teachers to teach in disciplines in which they were not originally qualified

\* to equip selected teachers for posts in the management and administration of education and other specialised fields of practice

\* to equip teachers to provide for the specialised needs of pupils

\* to equip teachers with a knowledge of contemporary developments in education and appropriate teaching strategies.

**E.35**

The minimum entry requirements for admission to an FDE course is the possession of an approved professional teacher's qualification (diploma or degree) evaluated as M+3 (Category C).

**E.36**

The duration of the course shall be at least one year full-time or the equivalent thereof by part-time and/or distance education.

**E.37**

The curriculum for the diploma shall be arranged in accordance with the following provisions:

37.1 at least five credits which are based on one of the following patterns: 2-1-1-1 or 2-2-1, the numbers denoting credit levels equivalent in standard and volume of work typically covered in a year of study at the University; or

37.2 at least four credits if three of the credits are in one or more of the subjects Physics, Chemistry, Mathematics, Botany, Zoology and Computer Science, and are based on one of the following patterns: 2-2, 2-1-1 or 1-1-1-1 subject to statutory approval.

**E.38**

Supplementary examinations will be permitted for candidates who obtained between 45% and 49% in their final examination and 50% or above in their year-mark. Candidates obtaining a mark between 40% and 44% overall in a course will not be granted a supplementary examination but will be allowed to repeat the course unless it is the only outstanding subject, in which case a supplementary examination will be granted.

The diploma shall be awarded "with distinction" if

candidates pass in Class 1 in their principal subject and obtain an overall average of 75%. Individual subjects on the back of the diploma shall also be endorsed "with distinction" where this applied.

**FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION  
(MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Grades 1-6**

This diploma consists of the following five credits:

- Teaching Mathematics
- Mathematics Education
- Research in Mathematics Education
- Curriculum Studies in Mathematics 1
- Curriculum Studies in Mathematics 2

**E.39**

**FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION  
(MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Grades 7-12**

This diploma consists of the following five credits:

- Curriculum Studies:
- Mathematics Education 1
- Curriculum Studies:
- Mathematics Education 2
- Technology Education in Mathematics Education
- Mathematics
- Research in the Classroom Practice of Mathematics Teaching

**E.40**

**FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION  
(SCIENCE EDUCATION)**

This diploma consists of the following five credits:

- Science Education Methods 1
- Science Education Methods 2
- Teaching and Learning of Physical Science
- Teaching and Learning of Biology
- Basic Mathematics

**E.41**

**FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION  
(TECHNOLOGY EDUCATION)**

This diploma consists of the following five credits:

- Technology Education 1
- Technology Education 2
- Mathematics
- Science
- Education Practice & Theory

**OTHER DIPLOMAS IN THE FACULTY OF  
EDUCATION**

**E.42**

The following courses are open to candidates who do not fulfil the language admission requirements of the Higher Diplomas in Education and Diplomas in

Education:

42.1 University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Secondary).

The curriculum is the same as that of the Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Secondary);

42.2 University Education Diploma (Secondary). The curriculum is the same as that of the Higher Diploma in Education (Secondary);

42.3 University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Foundation or Intermediate phase)

The curriculum is the same as that of the Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Foundation or Intermediate phase) except that Afrikaans in Rule E.13 may be replaced by another course from the list in Rule E.27 or English 2;

42.4 University Education Diploma (Foundation or Intermediate phase).

The curriculum is the same as that required for the Higher Diploma in Education (Foundation or Intermediate phase) except that Afrikaans may be replaced by a first-year subject applicable to primary school teaching.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PRIMARY  
EDUCATION**

*The degree is offered only at the East London Campus of the University.*

**E.43**

43.1 The candidate must fulfil the general rules for admission to a first degree.

43.2 The duration of the course shall not be less than four years.

**E.44**

The curriculum for the degree shall be as follows:

**YEAR 1**

- (a) English 1 or 1A;
- (b) Two of the following, of which one must be a language:  
Afrikaans 1P;  
Xhosa 1 MT or Xhosa 1 NMT;  
History 1;  
Social work 1;  
Psychology 1.

(c) Foundation Phase Studies 1 or Intermediate Phase Studies 1

*NB Under certain circumstances candidates may be exempted from the language requirements in (b) above, subject to alternative courses being approved by the Dean of Education.*

(Candidates should note that if they intend teaching

in South Africa, teachers are required to have completed two official languages in their degree if they are to be eligible for permanent status as a teacher.)

**YEAR 2**

- (a) Education 1
- (b) Foundation phase studies 2 or Intermediate phase studies 2

- (c) Professional studies 1

- (d) School Experience 1

**YEAR 3**

- (a) Education 2

- (b) Foundation phase studies 3 or Intermediate phase studies 3

- (c) Professional studies 2

- (d) School experience 2

**YEAR 4**

- (a) Education 3

- (b) Drama 1

- (c) Primary Special Study

- (d) Religious Education

- (e) School Experience 3

**E.45**

The curriculum for the degree shall include not less than three block School Experience periods of a total duration of at least twenty weeks.

**E.46**

Candidates must satisfy requirements for language work as listed in Rules E.23.1 to E.23.3.

**E.47**

Candidates may not proceed to the second year of study unless they have obtained credit in Foundation phase studies 1 or Intermediate phase studies 1, and two other subjects from Year 1 (a) and (b).

Candidates may not proceed to the third year of study unless they have obtained credit for Education 1, Foundation phase studies 2 or Intermediate phase studies 2, professional studies 1 and have satisfied the criteria outlined in Rule E.48.

Candidates may not proceed to the fourth year of study unless they have satisfied the requirements listed in Year 1 (a) and (b) of the degree, Education 2, Foundation phase studies 3 or Intermediate phase studies 3, Professional studies 2 and have satisfied the criteria outlined in Rule E.48.

**E.48**

A candidate must have performed satisfactorily in each block of School Experience in order to proceed further in or be awarded the degree.

**E.49**

A candidate must pass an examination in each of the courses in the curriculum. Furthermore a candidate must obtain a subminimum of 45% in the November examination in each of the following subjects:

**Education 1**

Foundation Phase Studies 1 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 1

**Education 2**

Foundation Phase Studies 2 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 2

**Education 3**

Foundation Phase Studies 3 OR Intermediate Phase Studies 3

**E.50**

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class 1 in any of the following subjects shall be endorsed "with distinction" in that subject:

**Education 3**

Foundation phase studies 3 or Intermediate phase studies 3

**Primary Special Study**

**School Experience 3**

The award of distinction in School Experience is based on the results achieved at the end of the School Experience period conducted in the fourth year of the degree.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF EDUCATION**

**E.51**

A candidate shall not be admitted to the course for the degree of Bachelor of Education unless

51.1 the candidate has been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor; and either

51.1.1 the candidate has been awarded the Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate), or has obtained a qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereof; or

51.1.2 the candidate has obtained some other recognised teaching qualification (admission may be conditional on the passing of such examinations as may be prescribed), or has documentary proof of alternative experience in education, either of which must have been approved by the Board of the Faculty of Education;

or

51.2 the candidate holds a four-year Higher Diploma in Education (Nongraduate), provided that its courses are equivalent either to a three-year degree, plus one year Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate), or to a four-year integrated degree in education; or

51.3 the candidate holds a three-year national technical certificate (or equivalent) plus a recognised diploma in education;

or

51.4 the candidate has any other qualification and experience deemed by the Senate to be appropriate; and

51.5 the candidate has had at least two years of experience in the educational field; and

51.6 the candidate has performed successfully in the placement test written by all Bachelor of Education candidates; and

51.7 the candidate's application has been approved by the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Education.

#### **E.52**

The duration of the course shall not be less than one academic year of study for full-time candidates, or two years of study for part-time candidates.

#### **E.53**

53.1 A candidate must obtain credit in the three foundation subjects: Philosophy of Education, Psychology of Education and Sociology of Education; and in three of the subject options listed in this Calendar under "Academic Departments: Education".

53.2 For part-time candidates, the first year of study will comprise Philosophy of Education, Psychology of Education and Sociology of Education.

#### **E.54**

54.1 Full-time candidates shall be required to present themselves for all parts of the final written examination at one and the same time.

54.2 The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in any of the six subjects shall be endorsed "with distinction" in that subject.

54.3 There are no supplementary examinations for the degree of Bachelor of Education.

54.4 A candidate who fails in more than one subject, or in one subject twice, will not be permitted to re-register.

54.5 A candidate who fails a subject at the F2level (ie scoring between 45 % and 49%) and provided that a sub-minimum of 45% is obtained on the written paper, must submit to re-examination in that subject when next it is examined, but will not normally be required to re-attend the course in that subject.

54.6 A candidate who fails in a subject below the F1 level (ie scoring less than 45 %) must normally repeat the course when next it is offered.

54.7 Candidates who, by reason of exceptional circumstances, are unable to write the prescribed examinations at the end of a year may, subject to the permission of Senate, be permitted to write the examinations in a later year.

*NB Candidates who do not present themselves for an examination without prior permission for such absence from the Head of Department may be deemed to have failed that examination and may be excluded from the Faculty.*

### **DEGREES OF MASTER OF EDUCATION, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LITERATURE**

*See General Rules.*

#### **E.55**

The following criteria govern admission to the degree of Master of Education (M Ed). For the MEd by thesis, the minimum entry requirement is normally the postgraduate Bachelor of Education (BEd) degree.

For the MEd by coursework and thesis in the fields of Biology Education, English First Language Education, History Education, Geography Education, Mathematics Education and Physical Science Education, the minimum entry requirement is normally either the postgraduate BEd degree or an honours degree plus HDE, with, in each case, a credit in the underlying discipline at at least the second-year level, and at least three years of teaching experience in the field of MEd specialisation.

For the MEd by coursework and thesis in the fields of Computers in Education, Educational Leadership and Management, English Second Language Education, Environmental Education, and Guidance and Counselling, the minimum entry requirement is normally a postgraduate BEd degree, or an appropriate honours degree, with, in either case, the additional requirement of relevant professional involvement in the field.

#### **E.56**

56.1 The degree of Master of Education (MEd) part-time or full-time shall consist of a thesis, or a combination of examination and thesis or a combination of examination and research projects.

56.2 The degree by examination and thesis or research projects runs over a two year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years.



Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study.

56.3 Prior to commencing thesis work the candidate shall submit a research proposal to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Departmental Research and Publications Committee. The research proposal of a candidate for the Master of Education Degree, whether by thesis only or by a combination of examination and thesis, must be accepted by the Faculty of Education on the recommendation of the University's Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

56.4 The examination must be completed during the first year of study, in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the thesis or research projects in the second year of study.

56.5 The registration of a candidate for the Master's degree by thesis only may be cancelled if an adequate research proposal has not been submitted within a period of four months from the date of acceptance of the candidate for the Master's degree.

56.6 Except with the permission of the Senate a candidate for the degree of MED by examination and thesis or research projects will be allowed a maximum of three years' registration in which to fulfil all requirements for the degree.

56.7 The final date for submission of a thesis or research project shall be 15 December in the year prior to when the candidate intends to graduate. While every endeavour will be made to provide candidates with a result of the examination of their work in time for April graduation if the examination is successful, the University does not guarantee this.

#### **E.57**

Degrees of Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) and Doctor of Literature (DLitt) may be awarded in this Faculty on the same terms as similar degrees in other Faculties.

In addition to General Rules G.53 to G.63 the Board of the Faculty of Education has laid down the following guidelines for candidates for the degrees of Master of Education and Doctor of Philosophy.

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION BY THESIS**

#### **E.58**

The thesis must show that the candidate:

58.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

58.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate literature;

58.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree.

In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

Save for exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for a thesis in the case of a Master's degree by thesis only will be 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND THESIS**

#### **E.59**

The coursework component should be spread over one year with examinations being written in November of that academic year.

The coursework component shall be valued at 50% of the final total mark. The thesis shall represent the other 50%.

With due consideration for the more limited nature of the work, criteria E.58.1 to E.58.3 above apply equally to the evaluation of the thesis component. The length of the thesis shall not exceed 30 000 words of text (approximately 100 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH PROJECTS**

#### **E.60**

The coursework for this degree shall be identical to that of the degree by coursework and thesis. The coursework shall likewise be valued at 50% of the final total mark. Guided research projects shall represent the other 50%.

These projects shall consist of the following components:

60.1 The study and application of a range of research methods used in the social sciences and education. This shall include learning how to conduct research in differing circumstances requiring different approaches, and by undertaking and critically evaluating a range of small-scale research projects using different methods.

60.2 Development of the theoretical and practical capacity to evaluate critically research being done in education in South Africa and abroad.

The overall examination procedure shall be as follows:

60.3 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the coursework examination as a whole as well as for the thesis or the research projects to qualify for an overall pass.

60.4 Candidates obtaining between 50% and 74% overall will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree.

60.5 A distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a Class 2A (70%-74%) or better has been obtained for the examination section and a Class 1 (75% or more) is obtained for the thesis or research projects, provided that a combined mark of a minimum of 75% is obtained.

60.6 No supplementary examinations for the coursework component will be permitted.

60.7 An examiner may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination. The same may apply for the research projects.

60.8 An external examiner will be appointed for the coursework examination.

60.9 When the candidate completes a thesis or the research projects, these may go to a different external examiner who may examine the thesis or individual research projects only.

60.10 The final assessment of the candidate is made

by the Head of the Department and the Dean, based on the external examiner's report on the coursework examination scripts and the examiners' reports on the thesis or research projects. Where there is clear conflict between internal and external examiners concerning the evaluation of the thesis or research projects, these documents along with all the examiners' reports will be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Faculty.

## **DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

### **E.61**

The thesis must show that the candidate:

61.1 is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

61.2 is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;

61.3 has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree;

61.4 has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book. In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

# FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

## RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The Rules that follow apply to the Faculty of Humanities only: The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities:

| Name   | To be denoted by the letters |
|--|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Arts   | <b>BA</b>                    |
| Bachelor of Arts with Honours                              | <b>BA(Hons)</b>              |
| Bachelor of Fine Art                                       | <b>BFA</b>                   |
| Bachelor of Music  | <b>BMus</b>                  |
| Bachelor of Journalism                                     | <b>BJourn</b>                |
| Bachelor of Social Science                                 | <b>BSocSc</b>                |
| Bachelor of Social Science<br>(Social Work)                | <b>BSocSc(SocWork)</b>       |
| Bachelor of Social Science<br>with Honours                 | <b>BSocSc(Hons)</b>          |
| Master of Arts   | <b>MA</b>                    |
| Master of Fine Art   | <b>MFineArt</b>              |
| Master of Music  | <b>MMus</b>                  |
| Master of Social Science                                   | <b>MSocSc</b>                |
| Doctor of Philosophy                                       | <b>PhD</b>                   |
| Doctor of Literature                                       | <b>DLitt</b>                 |
| Doctor of Music  | <b>DMus</b>                  |
| Doctor of Social Science                                   | <b>DSocSc</b>                |
| Diploma in Fine Art  | <b>DFA</b>                   |
| Postgraduate Diploma<br>in English Second Language         | <b>DipESL(PG)</b>            |
| Postgraduate Diploma<br>in English Language Teaching       | <b>DipELT(PG)</b>            |
| Postgraduate Diploma<br>in International Studies           | <b>DipIS(PG)</b>             |
| Postgraduate Diploma in<br>Local Government Administration | <b>DipLGA(PG) *</b>          |
| Licentiate Diploma in Music<br>(Performers)                | <b>RULM</b>                  |
| (Teachers of School Music)                                 | <b>RULS</b>                  |
| (Teachers of an Instrument or Singing)                     | <b>RUL ...</b>               |
| (Choirmasters)   | <b>RULC*</b>                 |
| (Church Organists)   | <b>RULCO</b>                 |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism                         | <b>DipJourn(PG)</b>          |
| Postgraduate Diploma<br>in Media Management                | <b>DipMedMgmt(PG)*</b>       |
| Certificate in Choral Work                                 | <b>CCW</b>                   |
| Certificate in Change Ringing                              | <b>CCR</b>                   |
| Certificate in African Music                               | <b>CAM**</b>                 |

\* *Not currently offered*

\*\* *Subject to Ministerial approval*

## DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS IN THE DEPARTMENT OF RELIGION AND THEOLOGY

The following degrees and diploma may be awarded in the Faculty of Humanities, in the Department of Religion and Theology:

| Name   | To be denoted by the letters |
|--|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Theology                         | <b>BTh</b>                   |
| Bachelor of Theology<br>with Honours         | <b>BTh(Hons)</b>             |
| Bachelor of Divinity                         | <b>BD</b>                    |
| Master of Theology                           | <b>MTh</b>                   |
| Doctor of Philosophy                         | <b>PhD</b>                   |
| Doctor of Divinity                           | <b>DD</b>                    |
| Diploma in Theology                          | <b>DipTh</b>                 |
| Postgraduate Diploma<br>in Pastoral Theology | <b>DipPTh(PG)</b>            |

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

### H.1

The degree of Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science may be awarded either as an ordinary degree or as an honours degree.

### H.2

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.48 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least three years.

### H.3

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain credit in not less than ten courses; they may present themselves for examination in not more than four of these in the first year of study, and not more than four in the second year of study; provided that:

3.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject;

3.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in the second year of study; this additional course being one in which they have previously failed, or one for which the permission of the Senate has been obtained; and

3.3 Candidates who have only one course, other than a major course, outstanding for the degree may be permitted by the Senate to present themselves at a

supplementary examination, provided that this concession will be granted only if candidates failed the course in the current year and obtained at least an F2 classification in the course;

3.4.1 Candidates may not enter the final course of any of the subjects listed in Rule H.10 for the BA degree or H.19 for the BSocSc degree until they have at least five credits towards the degree;

3.4.2 subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates who have obtained credit for the final course of a major subject may not present themselves for examination in the final course of any further major subject until they have at least seven credits towards the degree;

3.5 The final course in a major subject may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses.

*NB Students with the equivalent of A, B or C aggregate matriculation results will normally be granted permission to take a fifth course in their first year of study.*

#### **H.4**

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in two courses, including at least one of the subjects specified in Rule H.10 or H.19; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have passed the final course of a major subject; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

#### **H.5**

5.1.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Sociology 1 before proceeding to Industrial Sociology 2.

5.1.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial Sociology 2 may take Sociology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has passed Sociology 2 may not take Industrial Sociology 3 except with permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a satisfactory level of performance must be achieved.

5.2 A candidate must obtain credit in either Anthropology 1 or Introduction to Philosophy or Introduction to the Study of Religion or Journalism 1 or Legal Theory 1 or Politics 1 or Psychology 1 or Sociology 1 before entering Philosophy 2.

5.3.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Psychology 1 before proceeding to Industrial Psychology 2.

5.3.2 A candidate who has passed Industrial

Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3 but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

5.4.1 A candidate must obtain credit in Legal Theory 1 before being permitted to register for Legal Theory 2.

5.4.3 A candidate who has failed Legal Theory 2 may be permitted by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Law, to repeat this course concurrently with Legal Theory 3 subject to the following conditions:

5.4.3.1 that the candidate failed Legal Theory 2 at the level of F1; and

5.4.3.2 that credit in Legal Theory 3 would be contingent upon obtaining credit in Legal Theory 2; and

5.4.3.3 that permission will be granted only if the candidate has seven credits including the other major subject; and

5.4.3.4 that permission so granted will be valid only for the year in which it is granted.

5.5 In exceptional circumstances students in the second academic year of study in the Department of English Language and Linguistics who obtain 70% or higher in LING 101 may, with the permission of the Head of Department, register concurrently for LIN 102 and LING 202 in the second semester. Such students may, in the third academic year, register concurrently for LING 201 and LING 301 on condition that they obtain at least 65% for LING 202.

#### **H.6**

Save in cases approved by Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department in question a language course referred to in Rule H.15 may not be taken by a candidate who has passed in that language at the matriculation or other equivalent examination.

#### **H.7**

Credit shall not be given for:

7.1 any course in Theory of Art and also for General History of Art;

7.2 any course in Music and also for History and

## FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

---

Appreciation of Music;

7.3 Hellenistic Greek and also for Greek 1;

7.4 Biblical Studies 1A and also for 1B;

7.5 more than one of the following: Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1C or 1P, or Mathematics 1D and Statistics 1D, or both Mathematics 1F and Statistics 1F;

7.6 Psychology 2 and Industrial Psychology 2 or for Psychology 3 and Industrial Psychology 3.

7.7 Sociology 2 and 3 and also for Industrial Sociology 2 and 3.

7.8 Xhosa (mother-tongue) 1, 2, 3 and Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) 1, 2, 3.

7.9 Xhosa 1(mother-tongue) or Xhosa 1 (non-mother-tongue) and Sotho 1 (non-mother-tongue).

7.10 English 1 and English 1A.

### H.8

8.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may not enter upon the study of Customary Law during their first year of study.

8.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not enter upon the study of Visual Communications during their first year of study.

8.3 A candidate may enter the course Visual Communications only on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Fine Art in consultation with the Dean.

**NB** Admission will be by a test administered by the Department.

*The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts degree:*

### H.9

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

#### GROUP A

Afrikaans

Afrikaans en Nederlands

English

English in Africa<sup>1</sup>

French

German

Greek<sup>1</sup>

Hebrew

Latin<sup>1</sup>

Modern Fiction

Xhosa

Sotho<sup>3</sup>

Any other approved African language

#### GROUP B

Anthropology<sup>5</sup>

Economics<sup>6</sup>

English Language & Linguistics<sup>5</sup>

Environmental Science

Industrial Psychology

Industrial Sociology

Legal Theory

Philosophy<sup>5</sup>

Politics

Psychology

Social Work<sup>8</sup>

Sociology

#### GROUP C

Classical Civilization

History

Geography<sup>5</sup>

General History of Art

History and Appreciation of Music

#### GROUP D

Biblical Studies

History of Christianity

Judaica<sup>3</sup>

Pastoral Theology<sup>2</sup>

Systematic Theology

#### GROUP E

Logic<sup>7</sup>

Mathematics

Mathematical Statistics

Statistics

#### GROUP F

BA Studio Practice (Fine Art)

Drama

Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques

Human Kinetics & Ergonomics<sup>9</sup>

Journalism and Media Studies

Musical Education

Musicology & Compositional Techniques

Practical Studies (Music)

Theory of Art

Visual Communications<sup>1</sup>

#### GROUP G

Applied Physiology & Anatomy<sup>10</sup>

Biology

Botany

Chemistry  
Computer Science  
Environmental Science  
Geology  
Physics  
Zoology

<sup>1</sup> *Not necessarily offered in any particular year*

<sup>2</sup> *Only the first course in Pastoral Theology is available as a credit towards the BA degree.*

<sup>3</sup> *Not offered at present*

<sup>4</sup> *English Language for Academic Purposes limited to students admitted by Dean's discretion*

<sup>5</sup> *Access to Foundation courses other than English 1A will be limited to students admitted by Dean's discretion; such courses will only be offered to a minimum of ten students.*

<sup>6</sup> *Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the degree.)*

<sup>7</sup> *Logic is a one-semester course offered in the 1st semester only.*

<sup>8</sup> *Only first-and second-year courses in Social Work are permitted in the BA degree. No courses in Social Work are offered in Grahamstown.*

<sup>9</sup> *Students who do not major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics may only take the first-year course in this subject.*

<sup>10</sup> *Only available to students who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics..*

**NOTE** *Students are advised to take in their first-year curriculum the first courses of major subjects.*

#### H.10

A candidate must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects, which shall be selected from the following:

10.1 Major subjects in which three courses are required:

Afrikaans en Nederlands  
Anthropology  
Biblical Studies <sup>1</sup>  
Drama  
Economics  
English  
Environmental Science  
French  
Geography  
German  
Greek <sup>1</sup>

Hebrew  
History  
History of Christianity <sup>1</sup>  
Human Kinetics & Ergonomics <sup>2</sup>  
Journalism and Media Studies  
Linguistics and English Language  
Latin  
Legal Theory  
Mathematics  
Music  
Politics  
Psychology  
Sociology  
Theory of Art  
Xhosa

10.2 Major subjects in which two courses are required:

Classical Civilization  
Industrial Psychology  
Industrial Sociology  
Mathematical Statistics  
Philosophy  
Systematic Theology <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *First-year and second-year courses in these subjects will not be offered in 2000.*

<sup>2</sup> *Students who do not major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics may only take a first-year course in this subject.*

**NOTE** *Candidates who are permitted to register for the final courses of three major subjects in any one year will normally be required to write one in February of the following year.*

#### H.11

11.1 Candidates must select their courses from at least two of the groups of Rule H.9.

11.2 Candidates who take Drama as one of their major subjects must include in their curriculum at least one course in a Group A subject or English Language and Linguistics.

11.3 Candidates may not take a course in BA Studio Practice unless they are taking the corresponding course in Theory of Art in the same year, or unless they have obtained credit in the corresponding course in Theory of Art.

11.4 Candidates may not take a course in Musical Education unless they are taking the corresponding course in Music in the same year, or unless they have obtained credit in the corresponding course in Music.



**H.12**

The minimum number of courses in any curriculum may not include more than one course from Group G of Rule H.9, without the permission of Senate.

**H.13**

13.1 A candidate must obtain credit in at least four non-initial courses.

13.2 All second- and third-year courses, in addition to English in Africa and Modern Fiction, count as non-initial courses for the purposes of Rule H.13(1).

**H.14**

14.1 A candidate must have completed the first year of study in terms of Rule H.4 before entering English in Africa or Modern Fiction.

14.2.1 A candidate taking Mathematical Statistics as a major subject must obtain credit in Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1E.

14.2.2 A candidate must obtain credit in Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1C or 1E or Theory of Finance, and Mathematics 1F or Statistics 1D and 1F before entering the course Mathematical Statistics 2.

14.3 A candidate must obtain credit in BA Studio Practice 1 and 2 before entering on the third course in Theory of Art.

14.4.1 A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4, but will be permitted to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree. The Department limits the numbers of students in Journalism and Media Studies 2 and in Journalism and Media Studies 4.

14.4.2 A candidate who has not obtained a typing speed of at least 25 wpm by the end of the second term may be deregistered from Journalism and Media Studies 1.

14.3 No candidate may carry a workload of more than 10 credit points, except with the permission of the Head of the Department. The maximum workload permitted may not exceed 12 credit points.

14.4 Candidates may register for Labour Law, provided that they have obtained credits in either Legal Theory 1 or Commercial Law 1 and in either Industrial Psychology 2 or Industrial Sociology 2.

14.5 Candidates may register for Negotiation and Mediation provided that they have obtained credits in either Industrial Psychology 2 or Industrial Sociology 2. Registration shall be subject to the Department of Law being able to accommodate the additional

students in the class.

**H.15**

15.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must have attained the pass standard in Afrikaans, English, French, German, or Latin, at the matriculation examination or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent, prior to the commencement of a course in these subjects; Provided that this shall not apply to courses designated French Preliminary, German 1 (Foreign Language), Hebrew 1, Greek 1, Hellenistic Greek and Latin 1B.

15.2 A candidate who has obtained a symbol of E or lower in English First Language (Higher Grade) or a symbol of C or lower in English Second Language (Higher Grade) in the matriculation or other equivalent examination may be required by the Dean to take English Language for Academic Purposes in the first year of study. The course is a pre-requisite for students in the above categories who intend to take English 1. The course is not open to students who gained a D or higher in English First Language (Higher Grade) except with the permission of the Dean. This course may not be taken in conjunction with more than two other courses.

15.3 A candidate taking Mathematics or a course given in the Faculty of Science shall be governed for entry into such courses by the provisions of Rules S.1 and S.3.

**H.16**

16.1 A candidate who has passed Hebrew at the matriculation or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed directly to the second course in that language.

**NB** *A candidate who has passed the examination in French or German for the Cambridge Overseas School Certificate, or at the 'O' level for the General Certificate of Education, or an examination deemed to be of equivalent level, may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department concerned, be admitted to either the first course or the introductory course in that language.*

16.2 Save in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, students who have matriculated with German as a first language subject shall not be permitted to register for the course German 1 (Foreign Language).

16.3 Save in exceptional circumstances approved by Senate

16.3.1 students whose first language is an African

language shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa (NMT) courses; and

16.3.2 students who have passed Xhosa at the matriculation level or other equivalent examination shall not be permitted to register for Xhosa 1 (NMT).

16.4 Students who have passed Xhosa as 2nd or 3rd language at the matriculation level or other equivalent examination may be permitted to proceed to the second level course in Xhosa (NMT) on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the Head of the School of Languages.

#### H.17

17.1 Candidates who obtain credit in French Preliminary may proceed to the second course in that language if they have obtained a first-class pass or if they are permitted to do so by the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Languages.

17.2 A candidate who obtains credit in Hellenistic Greek may proceed to the second course in Greek if permitted to do so by the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the School of Languages.

#### H.18

Students who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics must include the following in their degree:

18.1 Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2, Applied Physiology and Anatomy, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3;

18.2 All the required courses in a second major subject to be selected from those listed in Rule H.10;

18.3 Applied Physiology and Anatomy to be taken in the second year; and

18.4 Such additional courses as may be required to complete the degree, selected from subjects listed in Rule H.9.

18.5 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than three courses additional to those prescribed.

18.6 Candidates must obtain credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2 and have taken, and have been examined in, Applied Physiology and Anatomy before entering Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3.

#### H.19

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in Class I in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE

The following additional Rules apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Social Science degree:

#### H.20

Candidates may present themselves for examination in subjects chosen from at least two of the following Groups and, except under exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the curriculum must be in conformity with the conditions applying to each Group:

#### GROUP A

At least five credits including at least one major subject must be chosen from this group:

Anthropology; Economics<sup>7</sup>; Industrial Psychology; Industrial Sociology; Politics; Psychology; Social Work; Sociology.

NOTE: *If Anthropology is chosen as a major subject the other major may be an African Language.*

#### GROUP B

A second major subject may be chosen from this group:

Biblical Studies<sup>8</sup>; English Language and Linguistics; Environmental Science; Geography; History; History of Christianity<sup>9</sup>; Information Systems<sup>6</sup>; Legal Theory; Management<sup>1</sup>; Mathematics; Mathematical Statistics; Pastoral Theology<sup>9</sup>; Philosophy; Statistics; Systematic Theology.

#### GROUP C

Not more than two credits may be chosen from this group:

Afrikaans; Afrikaans en Nederlands; African Languages; General History of Art; Classical Civilization; Customary Law; English; French; German; History and Appreciation of Music; Human Kinetics and Ergonomics; Judaica<sup>3</sup>; Journalism and Media Studies<sup>2</sup>; Labour Law (half-credit course); Logic<sup>4</sup>; Modern Fiction; Negotiation and Mediation (half-credit course); Theory of Art; Visual Communications<sup>5</sup>.

#### GROUP D

Not more than two credits may be chosen from this group, of which only one may be taken in the first year of study.

Candidates may not major in any of these subjects: Accounting<sup>1</sup>; Mathematics 1D and Statistics 1D<sup>1&4</sup>; Commercial Law.

#### GROUP E

Not more than one credit may be chosen from this



group:

Biological Science; Botany; Chemistry; Computer Science; Geology; Physics; Zoology.

**NB** *English Language for Academic Purposes (ELAP)* is not group specific and may be taken in the BSocSc degree at the discretion of the Dean.

<sup>1</sup> *Candidates who do not satisfy the Faculty of Commerce entry requirements for first time entering students may not be registered for more than one of Management 1, Accounting 1, Mathematics 1D and Statistics 1D.*

<sup>2</sup> *Only the first courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics and Journalism and Media Studies are available as credits towards the BSocSc degree.*

<sup>3</sup> *Not offered at present*

<sup>4</sup> *May be taken only if Management is to be offered as a major.*

<sup>5</sup>(i) *Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates may not enter upon the study of Visual Communications during their first year of study;*

(ii) *candidates may enter the course of Visual Communications only on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Fine Art in consultation with the Dean. (Not necessarily offered in any one year)*

<sup>6</sup>*A student deemed to be in the first year of study may not register for Information Systems 2. Refer also to Rule C.3(9).*

<sup>7</sup>*Economics 3B may also be offered as a credit provided credit has been obtained for Economics 2. (Economics 3B does not count as a major for the degree.)*

<sup>8</sup>*Logic is a one-semester course offered in the first semester only.*

<sup>9</sup> *First-year and second-year courses in these subjects are not available in 2000.*

<sup>10</sup> *No courses in Social Work are offered in Grahamstown.*

*Refer also to Rule H.22.*

## H.21

21.1 Only subjects from Groups A and B may be chosen as major subjects.

21.2 Candidates majoring in Anthropology may select an African Language as a second major subject.

21.3 Major subjects in which three courses are required:

Anthropology; African Languages (if Anthropology is chosen as a major subject); Economics;

Geography; History; Legal Theory; Linguistics and English Language; Management; Mathematics; Politics; Psychology; Sociology.

21.4 Major subjects in which two courses are required:

Industrial Sociology; Industrial Psychology; Mathematical Statistics; Philosophy.

21.5 With the permission of the Dean, the tenth course may be chosen from courses offered by another Faculty, provided that the curriculum as a whole is acceptable.

## H.22

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates may proceed to Management 2 only if they have obtained credit in, or are currently registered for, Accounting 1; and may proceed to Management 3 only if they have obtained credit in Accounting 1 and Economics 1 and either Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1C or Mathematics 1F and Statistics 1F.

## H.23

23.1 Candidates taking any course in Mathematics shall be subject to the provisions of Rule S.1(1).

23.2 Candidates taking a course in Mathematical Statistics shall be subject to the provisions of Rule S.9.

23.3 Candidates taking a course in Statistics shall be subject to the provisions of Rule S.1(1) for the purpose of this Rule being read as applying to single courses.

23.4 Candidates taking any course from Group E of Rule H.19 shall be subject to the provisions of S.1(1) and Rule 4 of the Faculty of Science; with S.1(1) for the purpose of this Rule being read as applying to single courses.

## THE HONOURS DEGREE

*The Rules that follow apply to candidates for the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) and Bachelor of Social Science (Honours) degrees.*

## H.24

The honours degree may be taken in any subject or combination of subjects approved by the Senate.

**NOTE:** *The Faculty offers Interdisciplinary Honours degrees in African Studies, Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Relations and Southern African Cultural Studies. See the entry under "Interdepartmental Studies" in the Calendar.*

**H.25**

25.1 A candidate who has been awarded the ordinary degree, or has been admitted to the status thereof or, being a graduate of another Faculty, has passed such examinations as are deemed by the Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the honours degree, or has completed all the requirements thereof except the requirement regarding attendance, may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.32-H.36 inclusive, be admitted to the course for the honours degree.

25.2 For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), candidates shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the said requirements and pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

25.3 As an alternative to sub-paragraph (1), a candidate may, subject to the provisions of Rules H.31 - H.33, be admitted to the course for the honours degree from the beginning of the third academic year of study for the ordinary degree.

25.4 For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3), a candidate shall attend the University for a further period of not less than two academic years and comply with such further requirements as may be prescribed by the Senate.

25.5 Subject to the approval of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, candidates who have been awarded the ordinary degree may be admitted to a two-year course to take the honours and Master's degrees concurrently. At the end of this period, they shall write the full honours examination, and, if successful, may submit their Master's thesis at any subsequent date without further attendance requirements.

**NB** *This paragraph does not apply to those Departments in which the Master's degree is taken by examination.*

**H.26**

26.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department or Departments concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

26.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in more than one subject, provided

26.2.1 that they satisfy for each subject involved the normal criteria for admission to honours in that subject;

26.2.2 that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination, and

26.2.3 that the Board of the Faculty approves such arrangements.

26.3 Except for the Honours degree in African Studies and the Honours degrees in Development Studies, Gender Studies, Industrial Society and Southern African Cultural Studies, candidates may normally not present themselves for examination in more than two subjects.

26.4 If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

**H.27**

Candidates taking the honours degree under Rule H.24 will be required to study and write examinations in only one of their major subjects, but they will be required to study that subject more widely and with greater thoroughness than in the case of candidates for the ordinary degree; they will be required to write such additional papers in that subject or some branch of it, or some subject closely allied to it, as the Head of the Department may require; and they may be required to take a compulsory ancillary subject, which shall not, however, be a third year course. In their final year, candidates will be required to pursue a course of advanced study in their chosen subject.

**H.28**

28.1 A candidate taking the honours degree under Rule H.25.3 will be required to take

28.1.1 a preliminary examination at the end of the third year of study; and

28.1.2 a final examination at the end of the fourth year of study.

28.2 In the preliminary examination the candidate will write, in addition to the normal examinations for the major, two or three 3-hour papers on topics prescribed by the Head of the Department concerned and approved by the Board of the Faculty.

**NB** *Both parts of the preliminary examination will be examined externally and the results recorded.*

28.3 The final examination shall consist of the same number of papers as required for the normal honours

course.

### H.29

The periods referred to in Rule H.25 are the periods of full-time study required of an honours degree candidate. Such candidates may not take up any full-time employment while engaged on the course. They may, however, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the approval of Senate, take up part-time employment. Candidates may on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend and write the examination in a course in the same or another Department concurrently with their honours degree.

### H.30

Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit students to take an honours course as a part-time student: provided that 30.1 they attend the honours classes within the normal timetable of the Department, and 30.2 the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, not more than two years.

### H.31

Candidates taking the honours degree may be required to satisfy the examiners that they have an adequate reading knowledge of an approved language other than the official languages.

### H.32

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.25.3, unless they have obtained credit in not less than eight courses in such a manner that all the requirements of the ordinary degree, except the requirements regarding attendance, could be fulfilled in one further year of study.

### H.33

33.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the combined honours degree in Philosophy, Politics and Economics, unless they have obtained at least three credits in each of two of those subjects and at least one credit in the remaining subject.

33.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the honours degree in African Studies unless they have a major in at least one of the following: Anthropology, Economics, History, Industrial Sociology, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology or Sociology. Students will normally be expected to offer at least two papers in the honours programme conducted by a Department in which they majored.

### H.34

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained credit in such compulsory ancillary courses as may be prescribed for that course.

### H.35

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, honours degree candidates may not present themselves more than once for examination for the honours degree in the same subject.

### H.36

Candidates must write all parts of the examination, other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and they shall not be exempted from any part of the examination: provided that part-time candidates may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department and with the permission of Senate, write part of their examination at the end of their first year of study and part at the end of their second year of study.

*NB Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, a research essay must be handed in before or at the same time as the other examinations are written. Normally a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words shall be regarded as the equivalent of one paper.*

### H.37

A candidate who has been admitted to the course for the honours degree in terms of Rule H.25, and has failed to satisfy the examiners, may be awarded the ordinary degree.

*The Rule that follows applies to the Bachelor of Arts (Honours) degree only:*

### H.38

Candidates who have obtained the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism may be accepted as candidates for the Honours or Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the candidate has passed such examinations as could be deemed by Senate to be equivalent to the prerequisites for the relevant degree. Candidates wishing to enrol for the Master's degree may be required to complete one or more papers from the honours degree and must satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degree in the Faculty of Humanities.

38.2 Candidates entering the Honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies are required to build up 10 credit points as follows: 8 from MS401,

MS412-421, and 2 from MS403-406 or MS303-306, or by substituting two of these points by taking an approved paper in another department.

## FINE ART

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF FINE ART

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Department of Fine Art only.

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

#### H.39

39.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in:  
39.1.1 two courses chosen from the following subjects, which must normally be taken during the first two years of study: Afrikaans; Afrikaans en Nederlands; an approved African Language; Anthropology; Classical Civilization; English; French; German; History; History and Appreciation of Music; Philosophy; Sociology or any other subject approved by the Board of the Faculty;  
39.1.2 All the courses listed below:

#### FIRST YEAR

##### Studio Practice 1

Drawing and introduction to specialist media  
Theory of Art 1

#### SECOND YEAR

##### Studio Practice 2

From the second year onwards each student is based in a specialist media area (Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but by arrangement with the appropriate staff, may work across the media areas.  
Theory of Art 2

#### THIRD YEAR

##### Studio Practice 3

##### Theory of Art 3

In years one to three practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by portfolio review.

#### FOURTH YEAR

##### Studio Practice 4

In Year Four practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

#### Theory of Art 4

Detailed information on the Theory of Art syllabus for individual years is available from the Department.  
39.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject.

#### H.40

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.39.

#### H.41

Candidates taking Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands, English, Latin, Greek, French, German, or an African language shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.15 and H.16(2) to (4).

#### H.42

42.1.1) Candidates who fail in Theory of Art 1 or 2 must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

42.1.2 Students who fail Paper B of Theory of Art 3 will be allowed to attend the course and rewrite the examination and also register for Theory of Art 4. Credit for Theory of Art 4 will not be given until Theory of Art 3 is successfully completed.

42.2 Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next year of study in that subject.

#### H.43

Practical Work: In first, second and third years work will be assessed by an advisory mid-year review and an end of year assessment by portfolio review. In the fourth year the practical work will be assessed with an advisory mid-year portfolio review and end of year final assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

**NOTE:** *Candidates who pass Basic Art will not automatically be admitted to their first choice of media area for Studio Practice 1. From time to time limitations of space and equipment may necessitate restrictions on the number of students entering a particular studio specialisation. In the event of an area being over-subscribed, DipFineArt or BfineArt students will normally be given preference over BA students and selection will be by portfolio review and interview.*

## H.44

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in class I of the final examination shall be endorsed with distinction in Studio Practice and/or Theory of Art, as the case may be.

**NOTE:** *Candidates may major in Theory of Art in the BA without doing the practical course; see Rule H.11.3.*

## FINE ART OPTIONS FOR THE BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

\* **BA Studio Practice and Theory of Art** may be taken at first and second year level as credits.

\* To obtain a **Fine Art major** a student must also take either **BA Studio Practice 3** or **Theory of Art 3**.

BA Studio Practice 3 comprises 50% Art Theory/History and 50% practical. Theory of Art may be taken as a major subject without the practical component. Credit for BA Studio Practice 1 and 2 will only be given if the corresponding Theory or Art course has been obtained. BA Studio Practice 4 may only be taken if the first- and second-year practical and theory courses have been completed.

The following one-year, single credit subjects may also be studied towards degrees or diplomas in other Departments within the Faculty of Humanities:

### General History of Art

A synopsis of world art, giving a broad outline of the major artistic movements.

### Visual Communications \*

The enhancement of visual literacy through the critical analysis of popular culture (including graphic and illustrative design, cinematography, television, and advertising).

\* *Not necessarily offered in any one year.*

## DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

The syllabuses for the various subjects taken for the Diploma are the same as for the degree of BFineArt, but students do not require the additional credits listed in Rule H39.1(a)

## H.45

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Diploma in Fine Art unless

45.1 they have passed the School Leaving Certificate

examination of the Independent Examinations Board, or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent; or

45.2 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department of Fine Art, is satisfied as to their suitability to take the course.

**NB 45.2.1** *For the purpose of this Rule the Senate will recognise a Cambridge Overseas School Certificate, plus passes in two matriculation subjects at subsidiary level in the Cambridge Overseas Higher School Certificate or at the "M" level examination conducted by the Associated Examining Board as equivalent to the School Leaving Certificate of the Independent Examinations Board*  
**45.2.2** *Admission in terms of Rule H.45.2 above is only considered on the grounds of mature age and/or exceptional ability.*

## H.46

A candidate for the diploma shall attend the University for not less than four years after being admitted to the course, and must obtain credit in all the following courses:

**First Year:** Studio Practice 1, Theory of Art 1

**Second Year:** Studio Practice 2, Theory of Art 2

**Third Year:** Studio Practice 3, Theory of Art 3

**Fourth Year:** Studio Practice 4, Theory of Art 4

**Examinations for practical subjects will be by assessment as follows:**

### Years 1-3

Advisory mid-year review of all practical work and end of year assessment by portfolio review of work produced during that year.

### Final Year

A mid-year portfolio review, and final end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review of work produced during that year.

## H.47

With the approval of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in not more than two courses additional to those prescribed in Rule H.46

## H.48

Candidates who fail in any other course must obtain credit in it before proceeding to the next years of study in that subject.

## H.49

The diploma certificate of candidates who pass in class I of the final-year examination shall be

endorsed with distinction in Studio Practice and/or Theory of Art, as the case may be.

### **DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART**

This degree may be taken by either coursework and thesis or by coursework and research essay.

A candidate for the Master of Fine Art Degree must spend at least one year in attendance at the University.

The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a thesis or research essay.

#### **Practical Section**

An exhibition or installation of work produced since admission to the Master's degree. This should be supplemented by a presentation of sketch books and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development.

#### **Studio Provision**

Under normal circumstances the maximum time for completion of an MFineArt degree is two years full time study; wherever possible individual studios will be provided for this period, but this facility cannot be guaranteed.

#### **Degree by coursework and research essay**

Students who obtain 70%, or more in their final practical examination may enrol for the degree by coursework, whereby 70% of the mark is for practical work and 30% for a research essay. The research essay should not exceed 10 000 words on a topic related to the candidate's practical work; the title of the essay must be approved by the Head of Department.

#### **Degree by coursework and thesis**

A thesis must be submitted for examination, the subject of which has been approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The thesis should give evidence of independent enquiry and familiarity with the literature of the candidate's subject.

The final mark for the degree by coursework and thesis comprises 50% for practical work and 50% for the thesis.

The completed thesis or research essay for the degree must be handed in at the Faculty Office by 15 January following the Final Practical Exhibition

which is normally held in November.

**NOTE** *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the thesis and the practical work is given to each candidate.*

### **MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)**

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of History of Art or Art Theory.

**NOTE** *A detailed set of departmental Rules concerning the thesis is given to each candidate.*

### **DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

Reference should be made to the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these Rules, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of PhD shall be required to submit a thesis for the approval of the Senate.
2. A thesis may be offered on a subject previously approved by the Senate. This must be a work of historical or theoretical research in Fine Art.
3. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.

## **MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY**

### **RULES FOR BMUS DEGREE**

#### **H.50**

A candidate for the BMus degree must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

#### **FIRST YEAR**

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Practical Studies 1  
Any Bachelor of Arts course

#### **SECOND YEAR**

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Practical Studies 2  
Any Bachelor of Arts course

### THIRD YEAR

*Students must choose two of the following*

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Practical Studies 3

### FOURTH YEAR

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5).

*Compulsory:* One of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) *or*  
Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2) *or*  
Paper 3: Public performance (2)

*Options:* Any combination of the following which amounts to at least 3 credit points. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4 or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)  
Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)  
Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)  
Paper 7: Music technology (½)  
Paper 8: Instrumental technology (½)  
Paper 9: Music and the media (½)  
Paper 10: Conducting (½)  
Paper 11: Acoustics (½)  
Paper 12: Short composition portfolio (½)  
Paper 13: Short public performance (½)

**NB** *As part of their DP requirements all students have to take part in at least one approved ensemble (e.g. Rhodes University Chamber Choir, Rhodes University Jazz Band or East Cape Philharmonic Orchestra) during their course of study.*

#### H.51

A candidate taking English, Latin, Afrikaans, Afrikaans en Nederlands, French or German shall be governed by the provisions of Rules H.15 and H.15.

#### H.52

52.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates who do not take Pianoforte as their Major Instrument, must study it as their Minor Instrument for three years.

52.2 On the recommendation of the Head of the Department, candidates may be exempted by the Senate from the study of the pianoforte, or other approved instrument, in one or more of the years of their curriculum, if they have already attained a sufficiently high standard of proficiency.

#### H.53

Candidates who are registered simultaneously for the BMus degree and a Licentiate are given credit for all

the subjects the two courses have in common.

#### H.54

Candidates shall receive credit for the courses in which they have passed, and may repeat in a subsequent year courses in which they have failed.

#### H.55

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in the first class in the Fourth Year Compulsory Paper, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

### RULES FOR LICENTIATE DIPLOMAS

#### H.56

The Licentiate Diploma in Music may be awarded as a diploma for Teachers of School Music, for Instrumental Teachers and for Performers, and should normally be taken in conjunction with a degree.

#### H.57

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course unless they have demonstrated a high level of practical ability and

57.1 have passed the School Leaving Certificate examination of the Independent Examinations Board, or another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent; or

57.2 the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Music Department, is satisfied as to their suitability to take the course.

#### H.58

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate shall attend the University for not less than three academic years.

#### H.59

59.1 Candidates must obtain credits in

59.1.1 all the courses for the first three years of the Bachelor of Music degree as prescribed in Rule H.51; and

59.1.2 all the courses prescribed in one of the three Licentiate courses.

**NB** *Students enrolled for the BMus degree in parallel with a diploma must choose the same options for the degree and the diploma in their third year.*

59.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before they may proceed to the second course in any subject.

59.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates who do not take Pianoforte as their Major Instrument must study it as their Minor

Instrument for three years. Pianoforte taken in terms of this sub-paragraph will be regarded as a half course requiring half the normal periods of instruction. Beginners on the instrument are advised to take it as a full course and pay accordingly.

**H.60**

A candidate who has been awarded the RUL..... may be given credit for the first two years of the corresponding Performers course.

**H.61**

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in these Rules, a candidate who has been awarded the degree of Bachelor of Music may be awarded the Licentiate Diploma for Teachers of School Music (RULS) or for Instrumental Teachers (RUL...) or for Performers (RULM) on the completion of the second and third year courses specific to these diplomas as set out in Rule H.59.1.2.

**H.62**

The Licentiate Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**BA AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR**

Normally not more than FOUR music subjects may normally be taken in the BA or BSc degrees (see the relevant Faculty Rules). Students who do not have the requisite knowledge or skills to enter first-year music courses may be required to do some or all of the Introductory courses of BMus.

**FIRST YEAR**

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc

**SECOND YEAR**

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc

**THIRD YEAR**

Students may choose *one* of the following:  
Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

**MUSICAL EDUCATION**

Musical Education is a two-year subject which may

be studied for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Credit is not given until a corresponding credit or credits have been obtained in a music subject. See also Rule H.11.4.

**MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)**

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

**DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC**

*See also the General Rules for Masters degrees.*

A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, by submission of a portfolio of compositions\*, or by performance in two public recitals\*. See also the General Rules for the Degree of Master.

\*Any culture or style may be included.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE (SOCIAL WORK)**

**H.63**

Except as provided in Rules 14 and 15 of the General Rules, no candidates shall be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least four years.

**H.64**

64.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in not less than eleven courses which must include the following:

64.2 Social Work 1, 2, 3 and 4;

64.3 A three-year course from Group A or B (Rule H.19); and

64.4 A two-year course from Group A, B or D (Rule H.19).

64.5 The remaining courses shall be selected from any of the subjects listed under Rule H.20.

**H.65**

65.1 Candidates who take any course in Social Work must perform such practical work as may be specified by the Head of the Department of Social Work.

65.2 Candidates who proceed to the second course in Social Work are required to subscribe to the following declaration before being admitted to the course: "As a student of Social Work at Rhodes University, I do solemnly declare:

65.2.1 that I shall not improperly divulge any information which may be disclosed to me in my capacity as a social work student, and



65.2.2 that I shall conduct myself as becomes a practitioner in social work. "

**H.66**

Candidates for the degree shall be subject to the provisions of Rules H.1 to H.6 and H.20.

**H.67**

67.1 Candidates may not present themselves for examination in the final course of a major subject or in Social Work 3 until they have at least five credits towards a degree.

67.2 Candidates who have obtained credit for the final course of a major subject or in Social Work 3 may not present themselves for examination in the final course in any further major subject until they have at least seven credits towards the degree.

**H.68**

On the recommendation of the Head of Department:

68.1 Candidates may be permitted to register for Social Work 3 and 4 concurrently only if they have a credit in one of Psychology 3 or Industrial Sociology 3, and a credit in the second-year course in the other, and are registered for their fourth year of study.

68.2 Candidates may be permitted to register for a third-year course (other than Social Work 3) with Social Work 4 only if they have 8 credits including one credit at third-year level and three at second-year level, and are in their fourth year of study.

68.3 Candidates who register in terms of 68.2 above will only be permitted to register for a further credit in that year if that credit is a first-year credit which would be the last outstanding credit for the degree.

**H.69**

Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Social Work 1 and at least one other course in another subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least seven credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Social Work 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.64.3; they shall be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least nine credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.64.3 and are engaged in the study of Social Work 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

**H.70**

The degree certificate of candidates who pass in Class 1 in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

**H.71**

No candidates may enter the second or any subsequent year of study unless the Senate is satisfied, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department, that they are physically and mentally fit to carry out the professional work involved in that year of study.

Candidates wishing to enter the second or any subsequent year of study shall present themselves for, and submit to, any assessment that the Senate may require in their cases.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF JOURNALISM**

**H.72**

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years.

**H.73**

73.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credit in at least eleven courses which must include the following:

73.1.1 Journalism and Media Studies 1, 2, 3 and 4; and

73.1.2 all the required courses in a subject to be selected from those major subjects listed in Rule H.10 or Rule S.3 of the Faculty of Science Rules, or Human Kinetics and Ergonomics or Information Systems, or Management.

73.1.3 No student may register for any course in Management or Information Systems, unless Management or Information Systems is intended as a major.

73.2 The remaining courses must be selected from those Humanities courses listed in Rule H.9; provided that:

73.2.1 Candidates who select a subject from Rule S.3 may select their remaining courses from paragraph S.4.

73.2.2 Candidates who select Management may include two courses in Accounting in their curriculum. The pre-requisite for a major in Management will apply.

73.2.3 Candidates who take Drama as one of their major subjects must include in their curriculum at least one course in a Group A subject or English Language and Linguistics.

**NB**

(1) Only the top 80 first-year students are guaranteed admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2. Another thirty places are allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation, and additional background experience. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 who fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try.

(2) A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A candidate who passes Journalism and Media Studies 2 will not automatically be admitted to the four-year degree but will be permitted to take Journalism and Media Studies 3 as a major in the Bachelor of Arts degree. A candidate who passes Journalism 3 will not automatically be admitted to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will be able to complete a Bachelor of Arts degree.

Candidates accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 4, and who are registered for a Bachelor of Arts degree, may change their registration to Bachelor of Journalism subject to the rules for a Bachelor of Journalism degree being met.

(2) A student registering for a Bachelor of Journalism degree with a major selected from Rule S.3 or a major in Management will be permitted into Journalism 4 subject to the successful completion of both majors at third-year level and subject to them having at least 8 credits.

**H.74**

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major subject from the subjects listed in H.10 or who major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Information Systems or Management, must either

74.1 major in a basic subject; provided that candidates majoring in Classical Civilization or Philosophy will be required to complete one other course from the list of basis subjects, (including Introduction to Philosophy); or

74.2 complete a first and second course of two basic subjects; or

74.3 complete a first and second course of one basic subject and first-year courses in two other basic subjects.

**NB** Basic subjects in the Faculty of Humanities are:

(1) Any language course listed in Group A of H.9; provided that this is not an introductory language course which has no literature component in its curriculum.

(2) Anthropology, Economics, Linguistics and English Language, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology, Sociology.

(3) Classical Civilization, History, Geography.

(4) Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Statistics.

(5) History and Appreciation of Music, Theory of Art.

**H.75**

Candidates for the Bachelor of Journalism degree who take their second major from the subjects listed in Rule S.3 must complete three courses from the following basic subjects: Biochemistry, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Economics, Entomology, Geography, Geology, Mathematics, Physics, Psychology, Zoology, Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, Microbiology.

**NOTE** Students intending to major in any of the subjects listed in Rule S.3 are referred to the prerequisite subjects listed in Rule S.12.

**H.76**

76.1 A candidate who has not obtained a typing speed of at least 25 wpm by the end of the second term may be deregistered from the course.

76.2 A candidate taking the course Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 3 must obtain credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 2, and Applied Physiology and Anatomy.

76.3 A candidate majoring in Management must have obtained credit in Accounting 1, and Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D or Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1P. Credit in Accounting 1 (and Economics 1) must be obtained before admission to Management 3. Theory of Finance and Statistics 1D, or Mathematics 1A or 1B or 1P may be taken concurrently with Management 3 with the permission of the Head of the Department of Management.

76.4 Candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained credit in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and credit in at least one course in one further subject; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study if they have at least six credits and are engaged in or have obtained credit in either Journalism 3 or the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.73; they shall

be deemed to be in their final year of study when they have at least eight credits including the final course of a subject taken under Rule H.73 and are engaged in the study of Journalism 4; otherwise they shall be deemed to be in their second year of study.

76.5 During their first, second and third years of study, candidates shall be subject to Rules H.3 , H.5 to H.8, H.11.1, H.12, to H.17, S.1.2, S.9 and S.15.

76.6 Candidates shall not be permitted to enter the course Journalism 4 until they have obtained at least eight credits including the final course, other than Journalism and Media Studies, of a subject taken under H.73.

Exceptions will be made to this rule under the following circumstances: Students who have failed their other major may be permitted to register for Journalism and Media Studies 4, provided that they are accepted into their specialisation stream in that year, and that their performance in Journalism and Media Studies 3 was at least 60%.

#### **H.77**

The degree certificates of candidates shall be endorsed "with distinction" if they obtain an average mark equivalent to a Class 1 pass for the modules of their Journalism and Media Studies 4 course taken together.

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN JOURNALISM**

#### **H.78**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate) if they:

78.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of Bachelor in any Faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies from Rhodes University will not be admitted to courses already covered within that student's major; or

78.2 have completed all the requirements for such degree except that the candidate:

78.2.1 has not satisfied all the requirements regarding attendance; or

78.2.2 has still to complete one course, other than a major course, which the candidate has failed; Provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision above may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

#### **H.79**

Candidates for the Diploma will be admitted on the recommendation of the Head of Department. The Department reserves the right to limit the enrolment for the Postgraduate Diploma in Journalism to 12 students for any one academic year.

#### **H.80**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain credit in all the following courses:

Paper 1: Introduction to Media

Paper 2: Core Skills

Paper 3: Core Theory

Paper 4: Media Skills and

Paper 5: Writing for the Media elective

(For details of the syllabus, refer to the Journalism and Media Studies departmental entry )

#### **H.81**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

#### **H.82**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

### **POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN MEDIA MANAGEMENT**

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

#### **H.83**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management if they

83.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty of the University; provided that a student with a major in Journalism and Media Studies or a credit in Management 1 from Rhodes University will not be admitted;

83.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

83.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

83.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course; provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been met.

#### **H.84**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least three of the following five papers and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% for the five papers combined:

Paper 1: Media Theory

Paper 2: Extended Essay

Paper 3: Management

Paper 4: Media Economics, Press Law and Policy

Paper 5: Media Management

**H.85**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

**H.86**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN  
INTERNATIONAL STUDIES**

**H.87**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies if they:

87.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

87.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

87.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

87.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course, in which the candidate has failed: provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

**H.88**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain a pass in at least three of the four papers and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50 percent in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. The examination consists of four papers of which Theories of International Relations and International Relations of Southern Africa are compulsory. Two other papers may be selected from:

International Organisations

Diplomatic History

International Law (subject to permission of the Head of the Department of Law)

Issues in International Studies.

**H.89**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

**H.90**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN LOCAL  
GOVERNMENT ADMINISTRATION**

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

**H.91**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Local Government Administration if they:

91.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any Faculty of the University; or

91.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that the candidate has still to complete one course in which the candidate has failed, other than a major course.

91.3 A candidate admitted to the course under the provision of (91.2) above may not receive the Diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

**H.92**

92.1 A candidate for the Diploma must pass in at least two of components 92.2.1 to 92.2.3 below, as well as pass the practical component, and obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma.

92.2 The basic components of the Diploma are:

92.2.1 Basics of Local Government

92.2.2 Local Government finance and administration

92.2.3 The role of Local Government in development and transformation

92.2.4 Practical in Local Government.

92.3 A pass will be obtained for the practical component by means of submission of a report by the candidate and by assessment of the performance of the candidate in the three-month placement.

**H.93**

The duration of the Diploma course shall be not less than one academic year.

**H.94**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENGLISH  
LANGUAGE TEACHING**

This postgraduate diploma is not necessarily offered in any particular year.

**H.95**

Candidates may be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching if they:

95.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor EITHER with a language major and at least one credit in English or Linguistics OR with an Education major and at least three language credits, one of which must be English or Linguistics; or

95.2 have completed all the requirements for such a degree except that they:

95.2.1 have not satisfied the requirements regarding attendance; or

95.2.2 have still to complete one course, other than a major course; provided that a candidate admitted to the course under this provision may not receive the diploma until all the requirements for the degree have been fulfilled.

#### **H.96**

A candidate for the Diploma must obtain an overall aggregate of at least 50% in order to qualify for the award of the Diploma. There will be four components to the assessment of the Diploma course, each contributing equal amounts to the final grade:

Paper 1: General linguistics

Paper 2: Teaching methodology and language testing

Paper 3: Psychology of second language learning and teaching AND Language in society and education  
Class record: Based on the course-work during the year.

#### **H.97**

The duration of the Diploma course shall not be less than one academic year.

#### **H.98**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

### **MASTER'S DEGREES**

In addition to Rules G.18 to G.25 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Master. The thesis must show that the candidate

(a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;

(b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature; and

(c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree. In addition, such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation. Except in exceptional circumstances approved by the Senate, the upper limit for masters' degrees in the Faculty of Humanities is 50 000 words of text (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing excluding footnotes, illustrative material and appendices).

### **MASTER'S DEGREE BY COURSEWORK**

1. Master's by coursework candidates will be required to register full-time in attendance for at least

one year except for the Master's in English Second Language, the Master of Theology degree, and Master's in Journalism and Media Studies.

2. The coursework section should be spread over one year with the examinations for that section written in November of that academic year, except in the case of part-time students in Journalism and Media Studies.

3. The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the initial examination.

4. The coursework degree shall normally comprise three papers of three hours' duration together valued at 50% of the total final mark. The thesis shall represent 50% of the total.

5. The length of a thesis in the Master's degree by coursework should normally not exceed 30 000 words, but should not under any circumstances exceed 50 000 words (approximately 150 A4 pages of double-spaced typing, excluding footnotes illustrative material and appendices).

6. The topics to be covered by the examination and the research project must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Board. The research proposal, including those for the MFA, must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

7. The examination procedure shall be as follows:

7.1 A candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass.

7.2 Candidates obtaining between 50% - 74% will obtain a pass mark for the Masters degree.

7.3 A distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a 2A (70%-74%) or better has been obtained for the examination section and over 75% is obtained for the thesis.

7.4 Candidates will not be permitted to rewrite any papers in the examination section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted.

7.5 The examiner may recommend that the thesis be revised and resubmitted for examination.

7.6 The formal examination plus a thesis are to be regarded as sub-components of an overall assessment and the examination should be handled in the same way as an honours examination. The scripts of the candidate and the thesis should go in the end to a single external examiner, who should have before him/her the internal examiner's marks for the scripts but not the internal examiner's mark for the thesis. The external examiner should be required to pass

judgment on the candidate's overall performance in the formal examination plus the writing of the thesis.

8. Candidates may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework and thesis in Journalism and Media Studies if they

8.1 have been admitted to an honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies,

8.2 or have been admitted to an honours degree in a different discipline, but have in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies; provided that

8.3 a student will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies,

8.4 a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,

8.5 a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,

8.6 candidates satisfy the general Rules governing the Master's degrees in the Faculty of Humanities.

9. A master's degree by coursework and thesis is also offered in Interdisciplinary Studies (refer to the Interdepartmental entry).

**NOTE** *The Board of the Faculty of Humanities has approved the following procedures for a Master's by examination in the Department of Psychology only:*

The formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the department should appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. When the student completes the thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the examination, this may go to an entirely different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate is made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external examiner's report on the formal examination scripts and the external examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is clear conflict between Part One and Part Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis are to be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

## **DEGREE OF MASTER OF SOCIAL SCIENCE (SOCIAL WORK)**

### **H.99**

Degree of Master of Social Science (Social Work) (MSocSc(SW)) part-time or full-time:

The degree shall consist of a thesis (see General Rules) or of a combination of examination and thesis. Full-time candidates can complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. Except with the permission of the Senate a candidate for the degree MSocSc (Social Work) will be allowed a maximum of three year's registration in which to fulfil the requirements for the degree.

Concurrent with the coursework, candidates are required to undertake field work relevant to the content of the coursework. This field work must be completed to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Head of Department within the first two years of registration.

Prior to commencing thesis work the candidate shall submit, through the required University channels, a research proposal to the satisfaction of the supervisor, in consultation with the Head of Department. The written examination associated with the coursework (but not the field work) must be completed during the first year of study in order for the candidate to proceed to work on the thesis.

Registration with the South African Council for Social Work is a prerequisite for registration on this programme because of statutory Rules governing field work.

## **DOCTORAL DEGREES**

In addition to Rules G.26 to G.37 the Board of the Faculty of Humanities has laid down the following guidelines for theses submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy:

The thesis must show that the candidate:

- (a) is sufficiently acquainted with the appropriate methods of research;
- (b) is sufficiently acquainted with the relevant literature;
- (c) has satisfactorily presented the results of independent research for the award of the degree; and

(d) has made a substantial and original contribution to knowledge in the discipline, the substance of which is worthy of publication in a scholarly journal or book.

In addition such thesis must be satisfactory as to literary style and presentation.

## DEPARTMENT OF RELIGION AND THEOLOGY

Since this Department offers all or most of the tuition required for the theology degrees listed at the beginning of the entry for this Faculty (viz., DipTheol, DipPTh(PG), BTh, BTh(Hons), BD, MTh, DD as well as supervision for PhD degrees in the area of religion or theology), all the rules pertaining to these degrees are listed here.

### DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF THEOLOGY

#### H.100

This is a three-year degree designed primarily for matriculated ordinands. It is normally a first degree, but where it follows a BA degree it may be taken in less than *three* years if the BA degree has included the appropriate courses.

#### H.101

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48, and Rule H.103 below, no candidate shall be admitted to the degree unless he/she has attended approved courses subsequent to his/her first registration as a matriculated student for at least three years.

### A. THE ORDINARY DEGREE

#### H.102

102.1 Candidates for the degree must obtain credits in ten or eleven courses, depending on whether they elect to complete the degree with full majors, or a combination of full majors and half-majors.

102.2 The degree must contain one of the following combination of third-year level theological subjects: two full majors; OR one full major and two half-majors; OR one full major and one half-major. A 'half-major' consists of a minimum of one semester's work in a third-year level course. The following are third-year level theological subjects: Biblical Studies

3, History of Christianity 3, Pastoral Theology 3 and Systematic Theology 3.

102.3 In addition to third-year level subjects, credits must be obtained in the following: Biblical Studies 1A & 2; History 1 (or History of Christianity 1) & History of Christianity 2; Introduction to the Study of Religion and Systematic Theology 2; Pastoral Theology 2.

102.4 In addition to the theological subjects mentioned above, credits may be obtained in either one or two electives.

102.4.1 If only *one* elective is chosen, then this must be a first-year level course and may be: *either* any course offered by Rhodes university; *or* a *theological* course not offered by Rhodes but credit for which either has or can be obtained at another university.

102.4.2 If *two* electives are chosen, then these may be either two first-year level or one first and one second-year level courses.

102.4.3 If *two first-year level courses* are chosen then at least one must be: *either* Greek 1 *or* Hebrew 1 *or* a first-year level theological subject not taught at Rhodes but credit for which can be obtained through another university.

102.4.4 If *one first-year level and one second-year level course* are chosen then: (a) the first-year level subject must comply with (4.i) above; and (b) the second-year level subject must be *either* a theological or theologically related subject taught at Rhodes *or*, if not taught at Rhodes, one for which credit either has been or can be obtained at another university. Greek 2, Hebrew 2 and Latin 2 are to be considered theologically related subjects. In other cases, the decision as to whether or not a particular subject is 'theologically related' will be made by the Dean following the advice of the Head of the Department of Religion and Theology. The basis for the decision will be whether or not the subject contributes clearly to the study of one or other of the majors being taken by the student.

#### H103

103.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, candidates must have obtained credit in at least two courses before entering on the second course in any subject.

103.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional course in each of the second and/or the third years of study; this additional course being one in which they have previously failed, or one for which the

permission of the Senate has been obtained.

103.3 The degree may be awarded with distinction.

A candidate who has written a full major in a subject and passed with a first class but has not qualified for an overall distinction for the degree, may be awarded a distinction in that subject.

#### **H104**

Candidates who have failed a third-year course, or who have for other reasons a third-year course outstanding may, at the discretion of the Dean, be permitted to obtain credit in an equivalent course at another university, and may be permitted to pursue such a course either before or after their *final* year of study; provided that permission shall not be granted to candidates to obtain credit from another university for more than one third-year course or for a full-major *in the case of a candidate wishing to complete the degree with one full-major and one sub-major, for a full major.*

#### **H105**

A candidate who is a graduate in another Faculty may be granted credit in not more than *four* courses for the BTh degree on account of credits obtained in that Faculty, and may be exempted from not more than *one* year of study for the BTh degree.

### **B. BTh HONOURS**

#### **H.106**

The honours degree may be taken in either of the following ways:

106.1 After completion of the ordinary BTh degree, in which case the honours course will consist of one year's full-time study (or two years if taken part-time). The attention of candidates is drawn to H.107 and H.108 below.

106.2 Upon such terms as the Board of the Faculty may determine, if the candidate is a graduate of another Faculty or university or holds the equivalent qualification from an institution of higher learning.

#### **H.107**

The honours degree shall consist of advanced study in one of the following disciplines: Old Testament, New Testament, Systematic Theology, History of Christianity, Pastoral Theology. The Board of the Faculty may permit combined honours in two of these disciplines.

#### **H.108**

108.1 Candidates for the degree in terms of H.106.1 shall not be admitted to the course unless they have

obtained a full major in the subject in which they wish to take honours.

108.2 No candidates shall be admitted to the course in Old Testament or New Testament unless they have obtained a credit, or its equivalent, in Hebrew 1 or Greek 1 respectively and, subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, have completed either the Hebrew exegesis paper (for Old Testament) or the Greek exegesis paper (for New Testament), or the equivalent of either, in Biblical Studies 3

108.3 In the case of Pastoral Theology, the Board of the Faculty may specify prerequisites to be taken before admission to the course.

#### **H.109**

Candidates must write all parts of the examination other than the translation test (if required) at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of the examination, provided that a part-time candidate may write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study and part at the end of the second year of study.

### **THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF DIVINITY** (*Postgraduate Degree with Honours*)

#### **H.110**

Except as provided in General Rules G.44 to G.48 and in Rule H.120 below, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of Bachelor of Divinity unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration for the degree for at least three years.

#### **H.111**

Candidates for the degree must previously have obtained the BTh degree or have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in another Faculty of the University, or must have satisfied all the requirements for admission to such a degree, except the requirements regarding attendance.

#### **H.112**

As it is normally expected that the previous degree would be a BA or BTh, if in the required papers the candidate has attained the prescribed standard (*viz.*, at least 60%) then sufficient exemptions from BD degree work may be given to enable him/her to complete the course in less than the usual period of three years. (See Rules H.113 & H.122)

#### **H.113**

113.1 The curriculum for the degree shall be divided into Part 1 and Part 2.



113.2 Part 1 shall consist of two years of general studies, unless a candidate is exempted from any course by reason of credits obtained towards the degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Theology in terms of Rule H122. Candidates who were registered before 1996 and who had obtained credits for Ecclesiastical History 1 Papers 1 and 2 and Christianity in Britain up to 1066 may be exempted for the appropriate credits in terms of the Calendar for 1995.

113.3 Part 2 shall consist of one year of special study in one of the following subjects:

Old Testament

New Testament

Systematic Theology

Ecclesiastical History

Pastoral Theology

#### H.114

114.1 Candidates must have obtained credit in either Hellenistic Greek or Greek 1 or Hebrew 1; provided that candidates who have not obtained such a credit may take it concurrently with the first-year curriculum; and provided that the candidates obtain the credit before commencing the second year of the curriculum.

114.2 candidates may not proceed to Part 2 of the curriculum until they have completed all the requirements of Part 1, and have obtained credit in Hellenistic Greek or Greek 1 or Hebrew 1, and also in the courses set out below:

For Old and New Testament, depending on the nature of the research demanded by the thesis, the candidate may first be required to obtain a credit in either Hebrew 2 or Greek 2(A or B), or its equivalent.

For Systematic Theology, in STH201-6 and *either* STH301-6 *or* any combination of second-year level Systematic Theology modules worth 6 points *or* any combination of third-year level Systematic Theology modules worth 6 points.

For Pastoral Theology in Pastoral Theology 3 (PT300-12) or an alternative approved by the Board of the Faculty; AND in Psychology 1 or Sociology 1 or Anthropology 1 or another course approved by the Board of the Faculty.

#### H.115

115.1 The curriculum for Part 1 shall include 16 half-courses of study selected from those set out below: Provided that every curriculum shall contain - *either* BS313-4 *or* BS333-4, *and* ST201-6; Provided further that candidates may, with the permission of

Senate present themselves for examination and obtain credit in one additional half-course of study.

115.2 Candidates shall normally write eight examinations each year in the half-courses of study provided in the four fields. In the half-courses which are special studies, candidates may be required to submit, at a time to be determined by the Senate on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, a long essay in lieu of writing an examination.

#### H.116

116.1 The following half-courses are those referred to in Rule H.115.1 above. The code numbers correspond to those for the modules offered in the BA and BTH. In choosing half-courses candidates must be aware that because the contents of certain modules are cycled and therefore overlap considerably, choice of one module may exclude choice of another (see the relevant entries under the section of the Calendar entitled "Department of Religion and Theology"):

##### *Old Testament*

BS101-6; BS201-6; BS301-4; BS313-4

##### *New Testament*

BS102-6; BS202-6; BS302-4; BS333-4.

##### *Introduction to the Study of Religion*

ISR101-6; ISR102-6

##### *Systematic Theology*

ST201-6; any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses) - ST202-3, ST203-3, ST204-3, ST205-3; ST301-6; any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses) - ST302-3, ST303-3, ST304-3, ST305-3

##### *History of Christianity*

HC101-6 *or* HC201-6; HC102-6 *or* HC202-6;

HC103-6 *or* HC203-6; HC104-6 *or* HC204-6.

HC301-6; HC302-6.

##### *Pastoral Theology*

Any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses): PT201-3, PT202-3, PT203-3, PT204-3; any combination of the following that totals 6 or 7 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses): PT301-2, PT302-2, PT303-2, PT304-3, PT305-3

##### *Special Study*

Old Testament

New Testament

Systematic Theology

History of Christianity

## Pastoral Theology

(2) Only two courses of Special Study may be chosen, and they shall be taken in the second year of study for the BD degree, Part 1.

### H.117

117.1 In Part 2 of the degree, candidates shall

117.1.1 write the examinations in four advanced half-courses of study in the chosen subject, and

117.1.2 prepare a thesis on a topic falling within their subject.

117.2 Candidates shall submit the title of their proposed thesis to the Board of the Faculty for approval, and if such approval is granted, the Board shall appoint supervisors to direct the studies of the candidates.

117.3 The Board of the Faculty may prescribe the form in which a thesis shall be submitted, and the number of copies required.

### H.118

The following requirements have been prescribed in respect of the examinations and the thesis:

118.1 Examinations shall be held at the end of the academic year unless the Senate, on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, agrees that in certain cases they may be held earlier.

118.2.1 The thesis must be approximately 20 000 words in length, and must be accompanied by a summary.

118.2.2 It must give evidence of the candidate's ability to pursue independent study.

118.2.3 In contents and format (including bibliography, detailed references and any appendices) it must be suitable for publication.

118.3 Three copies of the thesis and summary must be presented for examination and will become the property of the University.

### H.119

119.1 Candidates for Part 2 must submit their thesis for examination not later than 15 January in the year following that in which they have written the four papers, subject to any exceptions approved by Senate. An extension for a period exceeding two years after the prescribed date will be permitted only in exceptional circumstances, on the recommendation of the Dean of the Faculty.

119.2 Candidates must write the examinations in all the half-courses for Part 2 at one time, and they must also satisfy the examiners in respect of the thesis.

119.3.1 The Senate may, on the advice of the

examiners, invite candidates to re-submit a thesis in a revised or extended form, and in such case they must do so within three months of being so invited.

119.3.2 Candidates may submit a new thesis in place of a rejected thesis not less than 12 months after its rejection.

119.4 Candidates may not (a) write the examinations for Part 2 more than twice, or (b) submit a new thesis in place of a rejected thesis more than once.

### H.120

Candidates who desire, after completing the degree, to offer themselves for examination in a second subject, may be permitted by the Senate to do so and, if they are successful, their degree certificate shall be endorsed accordingly.

### H.121

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate

121.1 the results of the examinations for all courses in Part 1 shall be published under four heads, namely class I, class II (divisions 1 and 2) and class III, according to the marks obtained, by candidates, and 121.2 the results of the examination for Part 2 shall be published under four heads, namely: candidates who have obtained first class honours; candidates who have obtained second class honours (division 1); candidates who have obtained second class honours (division 2); candidates who have obtained third class honours; and the degree certificates of the successful candidates shall be endorsed accordingly.

### H.122

122.1 Candidates who have passed the modules making up the half-courses at the required BD standard (viz., at least 60%) in the BA or BTH will automatically be credited for those modules in the BD.

122.2 The Board of the Faculty may exempt graduates who have completed part of a BD degree in another university or who hold an equivalent qualification from a recognised institution from not more than eight half-courses of Part 1 of the degree.

### H.123

123.1 Candidates may be admitted as part-time students if they have obtained the degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Theology and have obtained credits towards either degree in the final courses of any two of the subjects Biblical Studies, Systematic Theology, History of Christianity, and have also complied with the provisions of Rule H.114, or if they did not obtain credits in the said major subjects, if they have obtained at an institution recognised for

this purpose by the Senate, degree credits deemed by the Board of the Faculty to be equivalent to the said major subjects, and have also complied with the provisions of Rule H.114: Provided that candidates who have not obtained credit in the prerequisite courses prescribed in Rule H.114 may take them during the first year of part-time study or, with the permission of the Board of the Faculty, during their second year.

123.2 In the case of a part-time student, the duration of the course shall be twice the period prescribed for a full-time candidate in similar circumstances.

123.3 The work of a part-time student shall be subject to supervision by a full-time member of the staff of the Department of Religion and Theology appointed by the Board of the Faculty, to an extent prescribed by the Senate.

123.4 Part-time candidates must write the examination in four papers for Part 2 at one time and must present their thesis according to the provisions of Rule H.119.1.

123.5 Notwithstanding the provisions of Rule H.115.3, a part-time candidate who has not obtained credit in Pastoral Theology 3 or its equivalent may be permitted in lieu thereof to pursue, concurrently with Part 2, such programme of supervised practical work as the Board of the Faculty may prescribe.

## **H.124**

Under Rule H.121, the Senate will require part-time students:

124.1 to complete satisfactorily such work as may be prescribed for them; and

124.2 to attend special courses of instruction for a minimum of twelve days during November or otherwise as may be required.

## **DIPLOMA IN THEOLOGY**

This diploma is designed to provide a basic theological training and will be of value to ordinands, missionaries and intending specialists in religious education. It is intended for mature non-matriculants sent to the University for training by their ecclesiastical authorities, who will be expected officially to sponsor such candidates.

## **H.125**

Candidates shall not be admitted to the course unless they have satisfied the Board of the Faculty of their maturity and of their competence to undertake the course.

## **H.126**

Candidates for the diploma shall attend the University for not less than three academic years.

## **H.127**

127.1 A candidate must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum and must include one of the following two options:

127.1.1 BS200-12 or BS200-6;

127.1.2 ST200-12 or ST200-6. This compulsory course need not be done in the second year of study.

## **First Year**

BS100-12; ISR100-12; one of the following options: History 1 or PT100-12 or another subject approved by Senate

## **Second Year**

*Either* three of the following: BS200-12, ST200-12, EH200-12, PT200-12; *or* two of these and one other subject approved by Senate.

## **Third Year**

ONE of the following combinations of courses:

## **Either**

(a) BS300-8, HC300-6 and one of the following: ST300-6 or any combination of modules in PT300 amounting to 6 points;

*or*

(b) Two of the following three options: BS300-12; EH300-12; either ST300-12 or PT300-12;

*or*

(c) The theological subject not yet taken at second year level AND any two of the following three options: BS300-8; HC300-6; either ST300-6 or any combination of modules in PT300 amounting to 6 points;

## **H.128**

Candidates shall receive credit for the courses in which they have passed, and may repeat in subsequent years subjects in which they have failed: Provided that candidates may not present themselves for examination in more than one additional course in each of the second and final years of study, except with the permission of the Board of the Faculty.

## **H.129**

Candidates taking a first course in Afrikaans shall be admitted to Afrikaans-Nederlands I unless they fail to satisfy the Head of the Department that they are competent to take that course, in which case they will be admitted to Afrikaans.

### **H.130**

The Diploma certificate of a candidate who passes in class I in the final course of the following major subjects: Biblical Studies, History of Christianity, Systematic Theology and Pastoral Theology, shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject.

### **ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN PASTORAL THEOLOGY**

### **H.131**

This is a professional course providing a foundation for pastoral ministry. Admission requirements: an acceptable Diploma in Theology.

### **POST-GRADUATE DIPLOMA IN PASTORAL THEOLOGY**

### **H.132**

This is a professional course providing a foundation for pastoral ministry. Requirements for registration are an undergraduate degree in Theology, or the equivalent thereof.

The course includes three components:

132.1 Pastoral Experience;

132.2 Written Assignments;

132.2 Attendance at the University for a period of 10 days, during which seminars and workshops are offered. *For further details consult the relevant entry under the Department of Religion and Theology.*

### **DEGREES OF MASTER OF THEOLOGY, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF DIVINITY**

### **H.133**

Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to read for a Master's or Doctoral degree in Old Testament or New Testament unless they have obtained credit in Hebrew 2 or Greek 2(A or B) respectively. Depending on the nature of their research they may, in addition, be required to have obtained a credit in the third level of one of the above languages.

*See also the General Rules.*

### **MASTER OF THEOLOGY BY COURSEWORK AND THESIS**

1. The degree shall consist of

1.1 a year's coursework (in the case of full-time candidates) or two year's coursework (in the case of part-time candidates) and

1.2 a thesis.

2. The course shall normally cover three areas of study, examinable by three or, with Faculty Board's permission, more examinations. In all cases, the coursework will amount to 50% of the total final mark.

2.1 The contents of each paper shall be decided on by the lecturer, or lecturers, concerned, preferably after consultation with the student, and shall be approved by the Board of the Faculty.

2.2 The coursework shall be examined in November of each academic year.

2.3 The thesis shall be on a topic approved by the Faculty Board and shall be between 15 000 and 21 000 words (i.e. approximately 70 to 100 pages double spacing). Under no circumstances shall it exceed 30 000 words (i.e. 140 pages double spacing), excluding footnotes, bibliographies and appendices.

3 The thesis shall be submitted not later than one year after the completion of the coursework examinations.

3.1 The thesis shall represent 50% of the total mark.

4. The examining procedure shall be as follows:

4.1 a candidate must obtain a minimum of 50% for the papers as a whole as well as for the thesis to qualify for an overall pass;

4.2 The final mark for each paper is made up of 30% for the coursework assignments and 70% for the examination.

4.3 candidates obtaining between 50% and 74% will obtain a pass mark for the Master's degree;

4.4 distinction may be awarded to a candidate only if a 2A (70 - 74%) or better has been obtained for the coursework section and over 75% is obtained for the thesis;

4.5 candidates will not be permitted to re-write any papers in the coursework section. No supplementary examinations will be permitted;

4.6 the examiner may recommend that the thesis be re-written and re-submitted for examination;

## FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

---

4.7 the formal examinations are regarded as Part One of the examination and the Department shall appoint an external examiner for those papers and publish the results of the examinations. The thesis, which is regarded as Part Two of the examination, may be submitted to a different examiner who may see the thesis only. The final assessment of the candidate's work is to be made by the Head of Department and the internal examiners, based on the external

examiner's report on the thesis. Where there is a clear conflict between Parts One and Two, the candidate's examination scripts and the thesis will be submitted to an arbiter approved by the Dean, acting on behalf of the Board of the Faculty;

4.8 one external examiner approved by the Board of the Faculty will be appointed for each candidate's thesis.

# FACULTY OF LAW

## GENERAL INFORMATION

*The Faculty of Law currently offers two law degrees, both called the LLB. Students registering in the Faculty for the first time will be required to follow the four-year undergraduate LLB curriculum. (See Rules L.1 to L.13 below.)*

### Bachelor of Laws (Undergraduate)

This LLB degree is a four-year undergraduate degree. Candidates who have a degree and who obtained credits at the standard set by the Faculty of Law, may be granted exemptions and may be permitted to complete the LLB degree in two years as full-time students, provided that they do not have more than thirty-two semester credits outstanding for the degree. Graduates who do not have sufficient law credits in their initial degrees may not complete the LLB in less than three years.

### Bachelor of Laws (Postgraduate)

This is a three-year postgraduate degree. Candidates for the degree must either have been admitted to, or have completed all requirements for a Bachelor's degree in any faculty. If they read for the BA, BCom or BSc degree and obtained in certain law courses the standard set by the Faculty of Law, such candidates may be granted exemptions and may be permitted to complete the LLB degree in two years as full-time students.

*Only those students who have been registered for a law curriculum at Rhodes University prior to 1998 may register for this degree.*

### Master of Laws, Doctor of Philosophy, and Doctor of Laws

A thesis on an approved topic must be submitted. The regulations are the same as those for similar degrees in the other faculties.

## REGULATIONS FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all faculties. The regulations that follow apply to the Faculty of Law only.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Law:

| Name                 | To be denoted by the letters |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Laws     | LLB                          |
| Master of Laws       | LLM                          |
| Doctor of Philosophy | PhD                          |
| Doctor of Laws       | LLD                          |

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS (UNDERGRADUATE)

*These rules shall apply to all candidates who register for the first time at Rhodes University.*

### L.1

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Regulations and in Rule L.9 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless they

- 1.1 have been registered for at least four years
- 1.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.3 below, and
- 1.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least two moots.

### L.2

2.1 The normal period of study for the degree shall be four years for candidates who are full-time students of the University and five years for candidates who are part-time students, i.e. who are in employment or serving articles.

2.2 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate candidates who

2.2.1 have been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty and completed all the requirements for that degree, or

2.2.2 been admitted to the status of such a degree; may be allowed

2.2.2.1 to qualify for the degree in three years; or

2.2.2.2 to qualify for the degree in two years, provided that they have no more than thirty-two semester courses to complete during this period of two years.

2.3 The curriculum of candidates who during the course of their studies for their degrees change from full-time to part-time status, or vice versa, may be arranged by the Dean.

### L.3

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.8 candidates must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

#### FIRST YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:* Introduction to Law

(2) *In the Second Semester:* Foundations of Law

(3) Three subjects selected from the list of subjects set out in Rule L.4 below.

#### SECOND YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:*

Constitutional Law A

Law of Contract A

Law of Persons

Law of Property and Security A

## Legal Interpretation

(2) *In the Second Semester:*

Constitutional Law B

Law of Contract B

Customary Law

Law of Husband and Wife

Law of Property and Security B

(3) One subject from the list set out in Rule L.4 at second-year level.

## THIRD YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:*

Administrative Law A

Business Structures A

Civil Procedure A

Collective Labour Law

Criminal Law A

Criminal Procedure A

Forms of Payment

Law of Lease and Agency

(2) *In the Second Semester:*

Administrative Law B

Business Structures B

Criminal Law B

Jurisprudence

Law of Evidence A

Legal Practice A

Legal Skills

## FINAL YEAR

(1) *In the First Semester:*

Civil Procedure B

Criminal Procedure B

Law of Delict A

Law of Succession and Administration of Estates

Legal Practice B

2 Electives offered in the First Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.5 below.

(2) *In the Second Semester:*

Constitutional Litigation

Law of Delict B

Law of Evidence B

Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies

Law of Sale and Insurance

2 Electives offered in the Second Semester, selected from the list set out in Rule L.5 below.

## L.4

4.1 Candidates may select their non-legal courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.3, from the following list:

Accounting

Afrikaans

Botany

Chemistry

Computer Science

Economics

English

Geography

History

Journalism

Linguistics and English Language

Management

Philosophy

Politics

Psychology

Sociology

Xhosa

Zoology

4.2 With the permission of the Dean, and subject to time-table constraints, a candidate may select any other non-legal course offered at the University.

## L.5

5.1 Candidates may select their elective courses, referred to in the curriculum set out in Rule L.3, from the following list:

*In the First Semester:*

Capita selecta Corporate Law

Capita selecta Customary Law

Capita Selecta Jurisprudence

Capita selecta Property Law

Copyright and Trade Marks

Criminology

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Forensic Medicine

Legal Accounting

Legal Information Systems

Negotiation and Mediation

Public International law

*In the Second Semester:*

Arbitration

Capita selecta Family Law

Capita selecta Jurisprudence

Environmental law

Individual Labour Law

International Trade Law

Introduction to Conveyancing

Law of Patent and Design

Specific Crimes

Tax and Estate Planning

Women and the Law

*In both the First and Second Semesters, for one semester credit:*

Clinical Law

Research Paper

5.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year and the semester in which electives are offered may also be varied. The availability of options, and the semester in which they will be taught, will depend upon teaching arrangements in the Faculty of Law.

5.3 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an Accounting course may not register for Legal Accounting.

**L.6**

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

**L.7**

Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than eighteen semester courses (including courses being repeated) in any one year of study.

**L.8**

8.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from attendance at, and examination in, any course or courses provided that

8.1.1 they have passed any equivalent course or courses; and

8.1.2 they have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

8.2 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph 8.1 hereof, but who for any reason acceptable to the Dean are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of Rule L.2, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in their Final Year they include at least eight semester courses prescribed for that year.

8.3 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 201 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 201 paper 3 gives exemption from Administration of Estates.

8.4 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 202 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 202 paper 1 gives exemption from the Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies; and a pass in COL 202 paper 3 gives exemption from Forms of Payment.

**L.9**

9.1 Candidates must pass both Introduction to Law and Foundations of Law and at least two non-legal courses in order to proceed into the second year of study.

9.2 In their second year of study candidates must write and pass the examinations in all the courses

prescribed for them, save two semester courses or their equivalent, before they will be permitted to proceed to the third year of study.

9.3 In their third year of study candidates must write and pass the examinations in all the courses prescribed for them in that year, save for four semester courses or their equivalent, before they will be permitted to proceed into the Final Year.

**L.10**

The Board of the Faculty of Law may permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in February of the next year of study in accordance with the following rules:

10.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 30%.

10.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than four semester courses, or their equivalent, in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

**L.11**

Candidates in their Final Year who have obtained credit in all semester courses for the degree, save two, may register at another university for a similar course or courses, and may, on successful completion, be granted credit for such course or courses.

**L.12**

Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

**L.13**

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

**DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF LAWS  
(POSTGRADUATE)**

*These rules shall apply to all candidates who registered for the postgraduate LLB degree in 1996 and thereafter. Candidates registered for the LLB degree before 1996 shall be governed by the provisions set out in the 1995 Calendar until completion of their degrees.*

**L.14**

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.46 of the General Regulations and in Rule L.20 below, candidates shall not be awarded the degree unless

14.1 they have been registered for at least three years  
14.2 have completed the curriculum set out in L.16 and

14.3 have performed satisfactorily in at least two moots.



### **L.15**

Candidates for the degree must previously have been admitted to the degree or status of a Bachelor in any faculty of a university, or must have satisfied all the requirements for admission to such degree except the requirements regarding attendance.

### **L.16**

Subject to the provisions of Rule L.20, candidates must obtain credit in all the courses set out in the following curriculum:

#### **PRELIMINARY YEAR**

Introduction to the Study of Law

Roman Law

Constitutional Law

Family Law

Jurisprudence A

Law of Property and Security

#### **INTERMEDIATE YEAR**

Administrative Law

Civil Procedure A (half course)

Business Structures

Criminal Law

Criminal Procedure A (half course)

Customary Law A (half course)

Forms of Payment (half course)

Law of Contract

Law of Evidence A (half course)

Law of Succession (half course)

Elective 1 (half course, see Regulation L.14 below)

#### **FINAL YEAR**

Civil Procedure B (half course)

Criminal Procedure B (half course)

Jurisprudence B (half course)

Collective Labour Law (half course)

Law of Delict

Law of Evidence B (half course)

Law of Insolvency (half course)

Law of Lease and Agency (half course)

Law of Sale and Insurance (half course)

Specific Crimes (half course)

Elective 2 (half course)

Elective 3 (half course)

Elective 4 (half course)

### **L.17**

17.1 All electives are half courses which shall not include any courses previously taken.

17.2 All electives will not necessarily be offered every year. The availability of options will depend upon teaching arrangements in the Department of Law.

17.3 Candidates who have obtained a university credit in an Accounting course may not register for Legal Accounting.

17.4 Candidates may select their electives from the following list:

Administration of Estates

Arbitration

Capita Selecta Corporate Law

Capita Selecta Customary Law

Capita Selecta Family Law

Clinical Law

Constitutional Litigation

Copyright and Trade Marks

Criminology

Environmental Law

Ethics and Professional Responsibility

Forensic Medicine

Individual Labour Law

Introduction to Conveyancing

Law of Taxation and Estate Planning

Legal Accounting

Legal Practice

Negotiation and Mediation

Patents and Designs

Public International Law

Research Paper

Women and the Law

### **L.18**

The order in which courses are taken may be varied by the Dean on good cause shown.

### **L.19**

19.1 Full-time candidates shall not be permitted to register for more than nine courses (including courses being repeated), whether law courses or other, in any one year of study. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

19.2 Part-time or occasional students shall not be permitted to register for more than six courses (including courses to be repeated), whether law courses, or other, in any one year of study. Two half courses shall be deemed to be the equivalent of one full course.

### **L.20**

20.1 Candidates may be granted exemption from attendance at, and examination in, any course or courses provided that

20.2 they have either

20.2.1 been admitted to the degree or status of bachelor in any faculty and completed all the requirements for that degree, or

20.2.2 been admitted to the status of such degree; and  
20.2 they have passed any equivalent course or courses; and

20.3 they have attained in such course or courses the standard required by the Faculty of Law.

20.4 Subject to any exceptions approved by Senate such candidates may be allowed to take the remaining courses of the Preliminary and Intermediate years in one year and to qualify for the degree of Bachelor of Laws in two years, provided that they have no more than sixteen courses to complete during this period of two years. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

20.5 Candidates who have been granted exemption in terms of sub-paragraph

20.5.1 hereof, but who for any reason acceptable to the Dean are unable to qualify for the degree in two years in terms of sub-paragraph

20.5.2 hereof, shall allocate the remaining courses to each of their three years of study in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in their final year they include at least four courses prescribed for that year.

20.6 Candidates shall be granted exemption from courses on the basis of papers taken as part of a Legal Theory course only if they have attained the standard required by the Faculty of Law in each of the papers in the undergraduate courses.

20.6.1 Senate may on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty of Law permit candidates who have passed a course in Legal Theory to write supplementary examinations in any paper in such course with a view to their achieving the standard required therein by the Faculty of Law.

20.7 A pass in Customary Law papers 1 and 2 at undergraduate level at this University prior to 2000 gives exemption from

20.7.1 Customary Law (half course) and

20.7.2 Capita Selecta Customary Law, provided that candidates have attained the standard required by the Faculty of Law in paper 2 of the undergraduate course.

20.8 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 201 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 201 paper 3 gives exemption from Administration of Estates.

20.9 Provided that the candidate has obtained a credit in COL 202 prior to 1999, a pass in COL 202 paper 1 gives exemption from the Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies; and a pass in COL 202

paper 3 gives exemption from Forms of Payment.

#### **L.21**

21.1 Candidates must write and pass all the examinations in the legal courses prescribed for them in any one year, save two, before they will be permitted to proceed to the next year of study.

21.2 Candidates who cannot proceed to the following year of study in terms of sub-paragraph 21.1 hereof, shall re-allocate their remaining courses in accordance with the direction of the Dean, provided that in the Final Year they include at least four courses prescribed for that year.

21.3 In order to complete the degree, a candidate must pass at least four Final Year courses, or their equivalent, in any one year, provided that they have passed at least four semester courses, or their equivalent, in that academic year.

#### **L.22**

The Board of the Faculty of Law may permit candidates to write supplementary examinations in February of the next year of study in accordance with the following rules:

22.1 Normally a supplementary examination will not be granted to a candidate who has obtained a result of less than 30%.

22.2 Candidates will be eligible for supplementary examinations in no more than two full courses or their equivalent in any one year.

#### **L.23**

Candidates in their Final Year who have obtained credit in all courses for the degree, save one, may register at another university for a similar course, and on successful completion of such course may be granted credit for the outstanding course, provided that the completed course is in the Dean's opinion substantially similar. Two half courses shall be deemed to be equivalent to one full course.

#### **L.24**

Candidates for examination in any course may be required to present themselves for oral examination.

#### **L.25**

The degree may be awarded with distinction.

### **BACCALAUREUS PROCURATIONIS**

This degree is no longer offered. For details of the BProc curriculum, see the 1996 Calendar.

### **DEGREE OF MASTER OF LAWS, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LAWS**

See General Rules.

# FACULTY OF PHARMACY

## GENERAL INFORMATION-

The Rhodes University School of Pharmaceutical Sciences is dedicated to achieving excellence in an environment of interdisciplinary co-operation, and mutual respect, consistent with the mission of the University and with the mission of the profession of Pharmacy.

## MISSION

The mission of the School is to promote pharmaceutical care through education, research, scholarship, creative endeavour and service.

Thus its priorities are to:

- \* Prepare its students for entry into the practice of pharmacy as informed, caring, ethical and enlightened citizens and professionals;
- \* Prepare pharmaceutical scholars and researchers through professional, graduate and post-doctoral programmes of distinction;
- \* Conduct postgraduate education to advance the knowledge, expertise and competence of pharmacists and pharmaceutical scientists;
- \* Discover, analyse and apply knowledge about pharmaceutical products and services, and their use in society through basic and applied research and to advance, communicate and preserve that knowledge;
- \* Promote, facilitate and conduct educational programmes to extend the knowledge of drugs and the rational and cost-effective use of medicines.

The course for the BPharm degree is four years' duration. The degree entitles holders, after serving their internship and **subject to the successful completion of the professional competency evaluation** to apply to the South African Pharmacy Council for registration as pharmacists. The SA Pharmacy Council requires a student admitted to the second year of study to be in possession of a 'Certificate of Registration as a Pharmacy Student'. *Attention is drawn to the Rules for the degree P.1 to P.11.*

The University is prepared to consider the granting of credits to students who have obtained credits in such courses or equivalent courses at another university or institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, subject to the provisions of Rule G.46 of the General Rules.

The number of places in second-year Pharmacy is limited. Preference will be given to students who have completed their first year at Rhodes University.

Performance in a course is assessed in terms of:

- (a) the results of prescribed examinations; and/or
  - (b) assessment of such essays, exercises, tests, reports and practical work as may be prescribed for a course.
- The registration in the Faculty of Pharmacy of any student who is convicted for the illegal use or possession of any drug or medicinal substance in a court of law (in any country) may be terminated by the Vice-Chancellor after consultation with the Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy.

## RULES FOR DEGREES

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties. The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Pharmacy only.

Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Pharmacy shall be the end of the second week of the first term.

The following degrees may be awarded in the Faculty of Pharmacy:

| Name                 | To be denoted by the letters |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Pharmacy | BPharm                       |
| Master of Science    | MSc(Pharm)                   |
| Master of Pharmacy   | MPharm                       |
| Doctor of Philosophy | PhD                          |
| Doctor of Science    | DSc                          |

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF PHARMACY

### P.1

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses for at least four years subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student.

### P.2

Candidates shall not be admitted to the courses for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy unless they have:

2.1 passed the Matriculation Examination of the Joint Matriculation Board, or obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and

2.2 normally obtained at least a D symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or

2.2.1 a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, in another examination, and  
2.2.2 a D symbol in Physical Science or Biology on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or

2.2.3 a B symbol in Physical Science or Biology on the Standard Grade, or

# FACULTY OF PHARMACY

2.2.4 a pass in Physical Science or Biology deemed to be the equivalent of one of the above, in another examination.

NB Due to limited facilities the School reserves the right to limit the intake to the top 80 eligible students. Preference will be given to those students who have completed their first year in the Faculties of Pharmacy or Science at Rhodes University.

## P.3

Candidates shall not be admitted to the degree of BPharm unless they have:

3.1 obtained credit in all courses of the following curriculum: (with the consent of the Board of the Faculty, courses may be taken in years other than

those specified);

3.2 candidates who have obtained at least a C symbol in Computer Science on the Higher Grade at the Matriculation examination, or a pass in Computer Science deemed to be the equivalent of the above in another examination, may be permitted to take Computer Science 102(P) or Electronics 1E2 instead of Computer Science 101(L);

3.3 obtained credit in electives chosen, with the approval of the Dean of the Faculty, from the electives listed under Rule P.9 or other courses approved by the Senate for this purpose;

3.4 passed the examination in family planning.

| Code number | Course Title            | Prerequisite (P) or Corequisite (C)                       | First semester |   |   | Second semester |   |   | Total credit points |
|-------------|-------------------------|---|----------------|---|---|-----------------|---|---|---------------------|
|             |                         |   | L              | T | P | L               | T | P |                     |
| FIRST YEAR  |                         |   |                |   |   |                 |   |   |                     |
|             | Biology 101             | See Departmental entries in Faculty of Science prospectus | 4              | 1 | 1 |                 |   |   | 3                   |
|             | Biology 102             |   |                |   |   | 5               |   | 1 | 3                   |
|             | Chemistry 101           |   | 4              | 1 | 1 |                 |   |   | 3                   |
|             | Chemistry 102           |   |                |   |   | 4               | 1 | 1 | 3                   |
|             | Computer Science 101(L) |   |                |   |   | 4               | 1 | 1 | 3                   |
|             | Mathematics 101         |   |                |   |   | 5               | 1 |   | 3                   |
|             | Physics 1E1             |   | 4              | 1 | 1 |                 |   |   | 3                   |
|             | Statistics 1F           |   | 4              | 2 |   |                 |   |   | 3                   |

# FACULTY OF PHARMACY

| Code number | Course Title           | Prerequisite (P) or Corequisite (C)   | First semester |    |    | Second semester |    |    | Total credit points |
|-------------|------------------------|---|----------------|----|----|-----------------|----|----|---------------------|
|             |                        |   | L              | T  | P  | L               | T  | P  |                     |
| SECOND YEAR |                        |   |                |    |    |                 |    |    |                     |
| PC 210      | Anatomy & Physiology   | Biology 101(P),<br>Biology 102(P), PC211(C)   | 4              |    | .5 | 4               |    | .5 | 4.5                 |
| PC 211      | Pharmaceutical Biochem | Biology 101(P),<br>Biology 102(P),<br>Chemistry 101(P),<br>Chemistry 102(P), PC220(C) | 2              | .5 |    | 2               | .5 |    | 2.5                 |
| PC 220      | Pharmaceutical Chem 2  | Chemistry 101(P),<br>Chemistry 102(P), PC211(C)                                       | 4              | 1  | 1  | 4               | 1  | 1  | 6                   |
| PC 230      | Pharmaceutics 2        | Chemistry 101(P),<br>Chemistry 102(P), PC220(C)                                       | 4              |    | .5 | 4               |    | .5 | 4.5                 |
| PC 240      | PharmAdmin&Practice2   |   | 2              | .5 |    | 2               | .5 |    | 2.5                 |
| THIRD YEAR  |                        |   |                |    |    |                 |    |    |                     |
| PC 321      | Pharmaceutical Chem 3  | PC220(P)  | 4              |    | 1  | 4               |    | 1  | 5                   |
| PC 331      | Pharmaceutics 3        | PC220(P) PC230(P)   | 5              | .5 | 1  | 3               | .5 | 1  | 5.5                 |
| PC 341      | PharmAdmin&Practice3   | PC240(P)  | 4              | .5 |    | 3               | .5 |    | 4                   |
| PC 350      | Pharmacology 3         | PC321(C) PC210(P) PC211(P)  | 6              |    | .5 | 6               |    | .5 | 6.5                 |
| FOURTH YEAR |                        |   |                |    |    |                 |    |    |                     |
| PC 422      | Pharmaceutical Chem 4  | PC321(P)  | 2              |    |    | 2               |    |    | 2                   |
| PC 432      | Pharmaceutics 4        | PC331(P) PC350(P)   | 3              |    | 1  | 3               |    | 1  | 4                   |
| PC 442      | PharmAdmin&Practice 4  | PC341(P) PC451(C)   | 4              | .5 | 1  | 4               | .5 | 1  | 5.5                 |
| PC 451      | Pharmacology 4         | PC350(P) PC442(C)   | 6              | 1  |    | 5               | 1  |    | 6.5                 |
|             | Elective               |   | 2              |    |    | 2               |    |    | 2                   |

## P.4

4.1 Candidates may not take any courses from the second year of the BPharm or of the Faculty of Science curricula until they have obtained credit in at least Chemistry 101, Chemistry 102, Biology 101, Biology 102 and any two other semester courses listed in the first year curriculum.

4.2 Students repeating second-year courses with a total value exceeding six credit points will be denied entry into later courses. With the permission of the Dean, candidates carrying six or fewer credit points from their second year may be admitted to the appropriate third-year courses.

4.3 Students transferring from other universities may not normally take courses from the second year of the BPharm curriculum unless they have obtained credits in courses deemed to be equivalent to those listed in

the first-year BPharm curriculum.

4.4 Normally, candidates will not be permitted to register for any course more than twice.

## P.5

5.1 Before admission to a course, a candidate must have obtained credit in all the prerequisites for that course except as provided for in 5.2 below.

5.2 On the recommendation of the Dean, Senate may permit a candidate to repeat one prerequisite course concurrently with the courses for which it is designated a prerequisite provided that

5.2.1 credit has been obtained in all other prerequisite courses, and that

5.2.2 such permission will not be granted in respect of courses which themselves lead to more advanced courses in the same subject area.

5.3 Credit in a course will be conditional on

## FACULTY OF PHARMACY

obtaining a pass in its prerequisite courses.

### P.6

Pharmacy Administration and Practice 4 may be taken only in the year in which a candidate is in a position to complete all the requirements for the degree.

### P.7

Candidates in other than the first academic year may, at the Dean's discretion, be granted a supplementary examination in one of the courses for which they are registered, provided that:

7.1 they are taking the full complement of courses for that year;

7.2 they have failed no other courses in that year;

7.3 they have no examination outstanding for that year of study.

### P.8

8.1 Courses in the Faculty of Pharmacy are measured in terms of credit points, one lecture or tutorial period, or one laboratory period per week over a full academic year being counted as one credit point.

8.2 Candidates must have the permission of the Dean to undertake a work-load exceeding 21 credit points in the second, third and fourth years.

8.3 Candidates may not undertake a work-load exceeding 24.5 credit points.

8.4 For the purpose of General Rule G.46.2, credit in courses to a total of 43 credit points must be obtained at the University towards the degree.

### P.9

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes with an average of not less than 3.0 merit marks per credit point in all courses of the second year and subsequent years shall be endorsed "with distinction". Merit marks are awarded in respect of each course on the basis of the credit points of the course multiplied by

the numerical value of the class as follows:

| Class      | Numerical value |
|------------|-----------------|
| I          | 4               |
| II (Div.1) | 3               |
| II (Div.2) | 2               |
| III        | 1               |

### P.10

The following may be taken as electives with permission of the Dean:

PC 428 Pharmaceutical Research Techniques PC 436

Bioavailability and Bioequivalence

PC 437 Dermatopharmacy

PC 445 Pharmaceutical Care

PC 446 Drug Information

PC 455 Toxicology

PC 460 Nutrition

PC 470 Special Elective

PC 490 Special Project

### P.11

The Calendar for the year in which students enter the second-year programme will govern their curriculum for the BPharm degree.

## DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE IN PHARMACEUTICAL SCIENCES AND MASTER OF PHARMACY

See General Rules and entry under Master's Degrees, Faculty of Pharmacy, in the Academic Departments section of the Calendar.

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE IN PHARMACEUTICAL SCIENCES

See General Rules.

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

## RULES FOR DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS

See the General Rules applicable to all Faculties.  
The following Rules apply to the Faculty of Science only.

See the Faculty Web Page

(<http://www.scifac.ru.ac.za>) for further information on activities and programmes in the Faculty of Science.

### S.1

The following degrees and diplomas may be awarded in the Faculty of Science:

| Name   | To be denoted by the letters |
|--|------------------------------|
| Bachelor of Science                            | BSc                          |
| Bachelor of Science<br>(Information Systems)   | BSc(InfSys)                  |
| Bachelor of Science<br>with Honours            | BSc(Hons)                    |
| Master of Science                              | MSc                          |
| Doctor of Philosophy                           | PhD                          |
| Doctor of Science                              | DSc                          |
| Diploma in Fisheries Science<br>(Postgraduate) | DipFisheriesSc               |
| Diploma in Leather Science                     | DipLeatherSc                 |

### S.2

S.2.1 Most undergraduate subjects in the Faculty of Science are offered as pairs of semester-courses, each of which can earn one semester-credit towards the total needed for a degree. A few subjects are offered as indivisible two-credit courses, and some are offered as single semester-credit courses.

S.2.2 In the rules and tables that follow, subjects are denoted sometimes by their full names, and sometimes by course codes and numbers (for example the subject Botany 1 (or BOT 1) consists of the two semester credit courses BOT 101 and BOT 102). The first or only digit of the number denotes the level (year) at which the subject is offered; a 3 digit number denotes a semester-course or semester-credit subject.

S.2.3 As a result of the semester structure of degrees it may happen that a major in a particular subject may sometimes be earned for a set of subjects that do not all carry the name of the major subject itself (see Rule S.23.5).

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE

### S.3

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47 of the General Rules, candidates shall not be admitted to the

degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

### S.4

S.4.1 Candidates shall not normally be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, or they have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Foundation Programme.

S.4.2 Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall not be admitted to any of the full curricula for the degree of Bachelor of Science unless they have obtained a pass in Physical Science or Biology in the matriculation examination, or in another examination deemed by the Senate to be equivalent thereto.

### S.5

Notwithstanding any exceptions to Rule S.4 approved by Senate, candidates will not normally be admitted to various courses in Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics or Statistics unless they have obtained a pass in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or have completed Mathematics 1E. It should be noted that these restrictions apply to some courses that act as ancillary requirements to certain major subjects (see Rule S.23.5); ineligibility to register for an ancillary course may thus preclude certain major subjects from being selected for a candidate's degree.

### S.6

A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.4 may be admitted to certain curricula that are arranged under the auspices of the Science Foundation Programme (see Rules S.43 to S.45).

### S.7

Candidates for the ordinary degree must obtain not less than eighteen semester-credits (or in some combinations, twenty semester-credits) in courses in various approved subjects.

## FACULTY OF SCIENCE

### S.8

Candidates may present themselves for examination in the following subjects:

#### S.8.1 Group A

| Subject                                       | Code | Courses   |
|---|------|---|
| (offered as 6 semester-credit major subjects) |      |   |
| Botany  | BOT  | 101,102,201,202, 302                            |
| Chemistry                                     | CHE  | 101,102,201,202, 301,302                        |
| Computer Science                              | CSC  | 1B0,101,102,201,202,301,302                     |
| Economics                                     | ECO  | 101,102,211 - 214,311 - 318                     |
| Geography                                     | GOG  | 101(P),102(H),201(P),202(H),301, 302(P), 302(H) |
| Geology                                       | GLG  | 101,102,201,202,301,302                         |
| Human Kinetics & Ergonomics                   | HKE  | 101,102,201,202,301,302                         |
| Mathematics                                   | MAT  | 1L0,101,102,1E1,1E2,201,202, 301,302            |
| Physics                                       | PHY  | 101,102,1E1,1E2,201,202, 301,302                |
| Zoology                                       | ZOO  | 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302                    |
| (offered as 4 semester-credit major subjects) |      |   |
| Applied Mathematics                           | MAP  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| Applied Statistics                            | AST  | 302   |
| Biochemistry                                  | BCH  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| Entomology                                    | ENT  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| Environmental Science                         | ENV  | 201,202,302                                     |
| Ichthyology                                   | ICH  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| Mathematical Statistics                       | MST  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| Microbiology                                  | MIC  | 201,202,301,302                                 |
| (offered as ancillary courses only)           |      |   |
| Anatomy & Physiology (Pharm)                  | PC   | 211   |
| Applied Physiology and Anatomy                | APA  | 201,202   |
| Biology                                       | BIO  | 101,102   |
| Biodiversity                                  | BIO  | 301   |
| Freshwater Ecology                            | ECL  | 301   |
| Electronics Literacy                          | PHY  | 1E2   |
| Logic   | LOG  | 101   |
| Statistics                                    | STA  | 101,102,110,130                                 |

#### S.8.2 Group B

Group B comprises all other subjects currently offered for credit towards any undergraduate Bachelor's degree at Rhodes University.

### S.9

S.9.1 A candidate for the degree must obtain credit in all the required courses in at least two subjects, to be known as major subjects.

S.9.2 A candidate who selects both major subjects from courses chosen from Group A shall obtain a minimum of 18 semester-credits, of which at least 14 semester-credits must be chosen from Group A. The remaining 4 semester-credits may also be chosen from Group A, or alternatively, may be chosen from subjects offered in a single department in Group B,

provided that the Dean is satisfied that the combination is academically sound.

S.9.3 A candidate may select at most one major subject from Group B. In this case the entire degree shall be made up of a minimum of 20 semester-credits. At least 14 of these shall be for courses chosen from Group A; provided that an exception may be made in the case where the major subject in Group B has prescribed ancillary requirements from among the other courses offered in Group B, and in the case of Music, where at most 8 semester-credits shall be allowed for courses in Music. Registration for a subject in Group B shall be subject to the rules of the Faculty in which the department which offers the subject is placed.



## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE (INFORMATION SYSTEMS)

This degree is intended for students who wish to become computer specialists in a commercial environment, and is composed of courses offered by departments in the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

### S.10

Except as provided in Rules G.44 to G.47, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as matriculated students for at least three years.

### S.11

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the full curriculum for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) unless they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom; and have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or a pass in Mathematics deemed to be the equivalent of the above, or have successfully completed a year of study under the provisions of the Science Foundation Programme.

### S.12

S.12.1 A limited number of students who do not meet the strict criteria of Rule S.11 may be admitted to certain curricula that are arranged under the auspices of the Science Foundation Programme (see Rules S.43 to S.45).

S.12.2 It should be noted that the curriculum for the degree requires students to obtain credit in Computer Science 102, for which entrance is restricted to those who have obtained a pass in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or are registered for Mathematics 1E.

### S.13

A candidate for the degree of Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) must obtain 20 semester-credits in courses as set out in the following curriculum:

#### FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. Computer Science (CSC 1 and CSC 2)
2. Information Systems (INF 201 and INF 202)
3. Economics or Management (ECO 1 or MAN 1)
4. Accounting (ACC 1)
5. Statistics (STA 110 or STA 130, or an alternative course in Statistics)
6. Logic (LOG 101)

7. Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2)

8. Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2) (taken in the first year of study) or, in exceptional circumstances, a subject chosen from the list in 9 below, at the discretion of the Dean.

9. Two further semester-credits in Management or Economics or Mathematics or Statistics or Mathematical Statistics or some other subject approved by the Dean.

### THIRD YEAR

1. Computer Science 3
2. Information Systems 3, or one of the following: Accounting 3, Applied Statistics 3, Economics 3, Mathematical Statistics 3, Management 3, Mathematics 3.

## RULES COMMON TO BSc AND BSc(InfSys)

The following Rules apply both to the degrees of Bachelor of Science and Bachelor of Science (Information Processing).

### S.14

If a candidate selects more than the minimum number of courses required for a degree, the additional courses may be in any of the subjects prescribed in Rule S.8.

### S.15

S.15.1 At the start of the year students will normally register for both components of a semesterised subject, unless they make it clear that they intend taking only one of the semester-courses to obtain a single semester-credit, or to complete an outstanding component of a semesterised subject.

S.15.2 Students will be allowed to register after July for semester-courses held in the second semester in subjects for which they have not previously been registered (provided that they have met the prerequisite requirements for such courses). Such registrations will be at the discretion of the Dean, in consultation with the Head of the Department concerned.

S.15.3 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, the last date for registration and change of course in the Faculty of Science shall be the end of the second full week of the semester in which the course begins.

S.15.4 Candidates who fail to perform adequately in the first semester component of a subject may have their registrations for the second semester component of that subject cancelled. This decision may sometimes be reversed, on appeal through the Head of Department to the Dean of the Faculty.

### S.16

S.16.1 In all first-year subjects, and in some second- and third-year (non-initial) subjects, where a subject



is offered at a given level as a pair of semester-credit courses, but where both credits are not obtained, an aggregate of at least 50% in the pair shall be deemed equivalent to credit in a full 2-credit aggregate course for that subject.

S.16.2 Students who do not obtain credit in both components, but who meet the requirements of an aggregated course, will have their academic transcripts amended to show that an aggregated continuing credit (ACR) or aggregated non-continuing credit (NCR) has been achieved in the appropriate subject, as the Department may allow.

S.16.3 Credit will not be given for an aggregate course in addition to credit for one or more of its semester-credit components.

#### S.17

S.17.1 Credit for any course requires that a student score an overall mark of at least 50%.

S.17.2 Credit for an aggregate course also requires that a student has met any adequate performance subminima imposed for each constituent.

S.17.3 Subjects for which aggregated credit may be granted are shown in the table that accompanies Rule S.23.

S.17.4 If an aggregate pass is not achieved, credit in any semester-credit course passed can still be earned towards the degree as a whole.

S.17.5 In the case of first-year first semester subjects, candidates awarded supplementary examinations in terms of Rule S.25.1 who have scored the necessary subminimum may be permitted either to write the supplementary examination in November, or to take a chance of obtaining an aggregate pass if the Department feels that their performance in the remaining (November) paper may achieve this. Students in this category will be required to elect in writing by the end of the third term which option they intend to exercise.

S.17.6 Aggregate course credit will only be granted on the basis of marks earned for the first semester course of a subject obtained in June (or for the replacement mark earned during the November supplementary examination for that course) and for the second semester course obtained in November of the same year, and will only be given for two semester-courses offered within a single subject, with the following exceptions:

#### Aggregated credit

Biology 1

Mathematics 1C

Physics

with Electronics 1E

Comprised of a semester-course in each of

Botany (BIO 101) and Zoology (BIO 102)

Mathematics (MAT 101 or MAT 1E1) and Statistics (STA 110 or STA 130)

Physics (PHY 1E1) and Electronics (PHY 1E2)

#### S.18

For the purposes of Rule G.7 as it applies to the Faculty of Science, students may be refused permission to renew registration in the Faculty if they are deemed to be unable to profit from further study, or if they have failed

S.18.1 at the end of their first year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain four semester-credits; or

S.18.2 at the end of their second year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain eight semester-credits; or

S.18.3 at the end of their third year of full-time attendance at this or any other university to obtain twelve semester-credits, including four non-initial semester-credits.

#### S.19

S.19.1 A candidate is not allowed to obtain credit for certain overlapping combinations of subjects. The table below lists, for each of certain subjects and courses, those other courses for which credit will not also be given:

| Subject     | Credit may not be obtained in more than one of: |
|-------------|---|
| Accounting  | ACC 1; ACC 1F; ACC 1G                           |
| Botany      | BIO 101; BOT 101                                |
| Mathematics | MAT 1; MAT 1C; STA 140; MAT 1E                  |
| Statistics  | STA 1; MAT 1C; STA 110; STA 130                 |
| Statistics  | MST 3; AST 3                                    |
| Physics     | PHY 1; PHY 1E1                                  |
| Psychology  | PSY 2; IND 2                                    |
| Psychology  | PSY 3; IND 3                                    |
| Zoology     | BIO 102; ZOO 101                                |

#### S.20

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates shall be deemed to be in their first year of study until they have obtained at least six semester-credits in the first level courses specified in Rule S.8 or S.13; they shall be deemed to be in their third year of study

when they have obtained at least ten semester-credits and are engaged in or have passed the final courses of a major subject. Otherwise they shall be in their second year of study.

#### S.21

S.21.1 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses in the first year of study; provided that the Senate may permit candidates to present themselves for examination and obtain credit in two additional semester-courses approved by the Senate.

S.21.2 Candidates may present themselves for examination in not more than eight semester-courses in their second year of study and not more than six semester-courses in their final year of study; provided that candidates in their final year of study may be permitted by Senate to present themselves at supplementary examinations for which they are eligible under Rule G.37, so as to obtain two additional semester-credits in subjects in which they have previously failed.

#### S.22

Except with the permission of Senate, candidates may not enter the second year of any subject unless they have obtained at least six semester-credits in first-year level courses, and may not enter the third year of any subject until they have obtained at least ten semester-credits.

#### S.23

S.23.1 Except with permission of the Senate, candidates may not enter courses in any subject unless they have satisfied all prerequisite conditions imposed for entry into such courses, and may not obtain credit for any subjects until they have obtained credit in all prescribed ancillary courses for such subjects.

S.23.2 There may be prerequisite (ancillary) requirements that must be met before a candidate may register for a particular course, and similar requirements that must be met before a candidate may obtain credit for a given course. Credit requirements will usually be stricter than registration requirements, which might stipulate "adequate performance" in an ancillary subject (or even at a lower level in the same subject) rather than "credit".

S.23.3 Permission of the Senate is necessary to attend any course concurrently with a higher level course for which it is a prerequisite. Permission will not normally be given to attend a required first course concurrently with a final course. Applications in this

regard should be made in writing to the Dean of the Faculty at Registration.

S.23.4 A candidate who has passed the final course of a major subject, but has failed in a prescribed ancillary subject, may rewrite the examination in that ancillary subject without being required to rewrite the examination in the related major subject.

S.23.5 The accompanying tables summarise, for each major subject, those constituent credits and ancillary subjects in which credit must be obtained, and, for specific constituents, the prerequisite credits needed for registration. The following notes apply to the courses marked with the appropriate superior numbers in the tables below; for further details, candidates should consult the departmental entries elsewhere in the Calendar.

1. Entry into the second semester-course requires that a candidate has performed adequately in the first semester-course.

2. Permission may be given to register for this course concurrently with the course for which it is a required ancillary.

3. Either Applied Mathematics 2 or Mathematics 2 is strongly recommended, and is required for admission to honours in Physics or Electronics.

4. A candidate who has passed Industrial Psychology 2 may take Psychology 3, but only with the permission of the Head of the Department. A candidate who has completed Psychology 2 may not proceed to Industrial Psychology 3, except with the permission of the Head of the Department, in which case additional coursework assignments will normally be set in which a specified level of performance must be achieved. In the event that candidates do not attain the specified level of performance by the end of the first term their registration will revert to Psychology 3.

5. Credit in Mathematics 1C is an acceptable qualification for entry into Mathematical Statistics 2, but not into Mathematical Statistics 3 or Applied Statistics 3, for which credit is required in Mathematics 1.

6. By permission of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

7. A student who majors in two of Botany, Environmental Science, Economics, Entomology, Geography or Zoology may not count BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 317, GOG 301 or ZOO 301 as a constituent credit of both major subjects.

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

| (a) Major Subject                    | Credit needed in each of  |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Accounting                           | ACC 1; ACC 201; ACC 202; ACC 3  |
| Applied Mathematics                  | MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MAP 2 or MAT 2; MAP 3  |
| Applied Statistics                   | MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; AST 3   |
| Biochemistry                         | CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3   |
| Botany                               | BOT 1; BOT 201; BOT 202; BIO 301 <sup>7</sup> ; BOT 302; CHE 1  |
| Chemistry                            | CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; PHY 1 or PHY 1E; MAT 1 or MAT 1C or MAT 1E   |
| Computer Science                     | CSC 1; CSC 2; CSC 3; MAT 102 or MAT 1E2   |
| Economics                            | ECO 1; ECO 211, ECO 212, ECO 213, ECO 214; 4 of ECO 311 - 318   |
| Entomology                           | ZOO 1 or BIO 1 <sup>6</sup> ; CHE 1; ENT 201; ENT 202; 2 <sup>7</sup> of BIO 301, ECL 301, ENT 301, ENT 302   |
| Environmental Science                | Two first year semester-credits in either BOT 1, BIO 1, GOG 1, GLG 1, ZOO 1 or ANT 1; ENV 201, ENV 202; ENV 302; 1 <sup>7</sup> of BIO 301, ECL 301, ENA 301, ECO 317 + one other module in Economics 3, GOG 301, ZOO 301 |
| Ethnomusicology & Compos. Techniques | ECT 1; ECT 2; ECT 3   |
| Geography                            | GOG 1; GOG 2; GOG 301 <sup>7</sup> ; GOG 302(P) or GOG 302(H)   |
| Geology                              | GLG 1; GLG 201; GLG 202; GLG 301; GLG 302; 2 <sup>6</sup> of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102   |
| Human Kinetics & Ergonomics          | HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3; APA 2  |
| Ichthyology                          | ZOO 1 or BIO 1; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 301; ICH 302; CSC 101 + STA 110 or MAT 1C or MAT 101 + CSC 101  |
| Industrial Psychology                | PSY 1; IND 2 or PSY 2; IND 3 <sup>4</sup>   |
| Information Systems                  | CSC 101; INF 201; INF 202; INF 301; INF 302   |
| Legal Theory                         | LEG 1; LEG 2; LEG 3   |
| Management                           | MAN 1; MAN 201; MAN 202; MAN 301; MAN 302; ACC 1; MAT 1 or MAT 1E or MAT 1C   |
| Mathematics                          | MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAT 3  |
| Mathematical Statistics              | MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; MST 3   |
| Microbiology                         | ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; MIC 2; MIC 3; CHE 1  |
| Musicology & Compos. Techniques      | MCT 1; MCT 2; MCT 3   |
| Physics & Electronics                | PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1 or MAT 1E <sup>3</sup>   |
| Psychology                           | PSY 1; PSY 2 or IND 2; PSY 3 <sup>4</sup>   |
| Zoology                              | ZOO 1 or BIO 1 <sup>6</sup> ; CHE 1; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; ZOO 301 or ZOO 302; 1 <sup>7</sup> of ZOO 301, ZOO 302, BIO 301, ECL 301   |

| (b) Subject / Course  | Aggregate              | Prerequisite credit needed in     |
|---|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Accounting<br>ACC 101, ACC 102 <sup>1</sup><br>ACC 201, ACC 202 <sup>1</sup><br>ACC 3 | ACC 1<br>ACC 2<br>none | ACC 1<br>ACC 201; ACC 202         |
| Applied Mathematics<br>MAP 201, MAP 202<br>MAP 301, MAP 302                           | MAP 2<br>MAP 3         | MAT 1 or MAT 1E<br>MAT 2 or MAP 2 |
| Applied Statistics<br>MST 301, AST 302 <sup>1,5</sup>                                 | AST 3                  | MST 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E            |

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

|   |                           |   |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| Biochemistry<br>BCH 201, BCH 202 <sup>1</sup><br>BCH 301, BCH 302 <sup>1</sup>                                    | BCH 2<br>BCH 3            | CHE 1<br>BCH 2  |
| Biodiversity<br>BIO 301 <sup>7</sup>  |                           | BOT 2 or ZOO 2  |
| Biology<br>BIO 101, BIO 102   | BIO 1                     |   |
| Botany<br>BOT 101, BOT 102<br>BOT 201, BOT 202<br>BOT 302 <sup>7</sup>  | BOT 1<br>none<br>none     | BOT 101 or ZOO 102; BOT 102; CHE 1 <sup>2</sup><br>BOT 201 or BOT 202; CHE 1  |
| Chemistry<br>CHE 101, CHE 102 <sup>1</sup><br>CHE 201, CHE 202<br>CHE 301, CHE 302                                | CHE 1<br>CHE 2<br>CHE 3   | HG Matric Mathematics<br>CHE 1<br>CHE 2; PHY 1 <sup>2</sup> or PHY 1E <sup>2</sup> or PHY 1B <sup>2</sup> ; MAT 1 <sup>2</sup> or MAT 1E <sup>2</sup> or MAT 1C <sup>2</sup>                                      |
| Computer Science<br>CSC 1B<br>CSC 101, CSC 102 <sup>1</sup><br>CSC 201, CSC 202 <sup>1</sup><br>CSC 301, CSC 302  | CSC 1<br>CSC 2<br>CSC 3   | HG Matric Mathematics (CSC 102 only)<br>CSC 102<br>CSC 2; MAT 102 or MAT 1E <sup>2</sup>  |
| Economics<br>ECO 101, ECO 102 <sup>1</sup><br>ECO 211 - ECO 214<br>ECO 311 - ECO 318 <sup>7</sup>                 | ECO 1<br>none<br>none     | ECO 1<br>ECO 2  |
| Entomology<br>ENT 201, ENT 202<br>ENT 301, ENT 302 <sup>7</sup>   | none<br>none              | Students without credit in ENT at a lower level may be allowed to register at the discretion of the Head of Department  |
| Environmental Science<br>ENV 201, ENV 202 <sup>1</sup><br>ENV 302 <sup>7</sup>                                    | none<br>none              | Two first year semester-credits in BOT 1, BIO 1, ZOO 1 or ANT 1<br>ENV 201; ENV 202   |
| Freshwater Ecology<br>ECL 301 <sup>7</sup>  | none                      | BOT 2 or ZOO 2  |
| Geography<br>GOG 101(P), GOG 102(H)<br>GOG 201(P), GOG 202(H)<br>GOG 301 <sup>7</sup> , GOG 302(H),<br>GOG 302(P) | GOG 1<br>GOG 2<br>none    | GOG 101(P) or GOG 1 <sup>6</sup> ; GOG 102(H) or GOG 1 <sup>6</sup><br>GOG 201(P) or GOG 2 <sup>6</sup> ; GOG 202(H) or GOG 2 <sup>6</sup>  |
| Geology<br>GLG 101, GLG 102<br>GLG 201, GLG 202 <sup>1</sup><br><br>GLG 301, GLG 302 <sup>1</sup>                 | GLG 1<br>none<br><br>none | GLG 1 or GLG 102; 2 <sup>6</sup> of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 101, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102<br>GLG 201 or GLG 202; GLG 101; 2 <sup>6</sup> of CHE 101, CHE 102, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2, MAT 101, MAT 102 |

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

|   |                                   |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| Human Kinetics & Ergon.<br>HKE 101, HKE 102 <sup>1</sup><br>APA 201, APA 202 <sup>1</sup><br>HKE 201, HKE 202 <sup>1</sup><br>HKE 301, HKE 302 <sup>1</sup> | HKE 1<br>APA 2<br>HKE 3<br>HKE 3  | HKE 1<br>HKE 2; APA 201 <sup>2</sup> or APA 202 <sup>2</sup>                                   |
| Ichthyology<br>ICH 201, ICH 202<br>ICH 301, ICH 302   | none<br>none                      | ZOO 1 or BIO 1; CHE 1 <sup>2</sup><br>ICH 201; ICH 202; CSC 101 + STA 110 or MAT 1C or CSC 101 |
| Industrial Psychology<br>IND 2<br>IND 3   |                                   | PSY 1<br>IND 2 or PSY 2 <sup>4</sup>   |
| Information Systems<br>INF 201, INF 202 <sup>1</sup><br>INF 301, INF 302 <sup>1</sup>   | none<br>none                      | CSC 101; Must be a second-year student<br>INF 201; INF 202                                     |
| Journalism & Media<br>Studies<br>JRN 1<br>JRN 2<br>JRN 3  |                                   | JRN 1; Limited to a maximum of 110 students<br>JRN 2   |
| Legal Theory<br>LEG 1<br>LEG 2<br>LEG 3   |                                   | LEG 1<br>LEG 2   |
| Management<br>MAN 101, MAN 102 <sup>1</sup><br>MAN 201, MAN 202 <sup>1</sup><br>MAN 301, MAN 302 <sup>1</sup>   | MAN 1<br>none<br>none             | MAN 1; ACC 1 <sup>2</sup><br>MAN 201; MAN 202; ACC 1; MAT 1 or MAT 1E or MAT 1C                |
| Mathematics<br>MAT 101, MAT 102<br>MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2<br>MAT 201, MAT 202<br>MAT 301, MAT 302   | MAT 1<br>MAT 1E<br>MAT 2<br>MAT 3 | HG Matric Mathematics<br>MAT 1 or MAT 1E<br>MAT 2 or MAP 2                                     |
| Mathematical Statistics<br>MST 201, MST 202 <sup>1</sup><br>MST 301, MST 302 <sup>1,5</sup>   | MST 2<br>MST 3                    | MAT 101 or MAT 1E1<br>MST 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E   |
| Microbiology<br>MIC 201, MIC 202 <sup>1</sup><br>MIC 302, MIC 302 <sup>1</sup>  | MIC 2<br>MIC 3                    | ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; CHE 1 <sup>2</sup><br>MIC 2; CHE 1                                    |
| Music<br>MCT 1, ECT 1<br>MCT 2, ECT 2<br>MCT 3, ECT 3   |                                   | MCT 1 or ECT 1 (respectively)<br>MCT 2 or ECT 2 (respectively)                                 |

# FACULTY OF SCIENCE

|   |                                   |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| Physics & Electronics<br>PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2<br>PHY 101, PHY 102 <sup>1</sup><br>PHY 201, PHY 202<br>PHY 301, PHY 302 <sup>1,3</sup> | PHY 1E<br>PHY 1<br>PHY 2<br>PHY 3 | HG Matric Mathematics<br>PHY 1; MAT 1 <sup>2</sup> or MAT 1E<br>PHY 2; MAT 1 or MAT 1E                                 |
| Psychology<br>PSY 1<br>PSY 2<br>PSY 3   |                                   | PSY 1<br>PSY 2 or IND 2 <sup>4</sup>   |
| Statistics<br>STA 101, STA 102 <sup>1</sup>   | STA 1                             | Matric Mathematics   |
| Zoology<br>ZOO 101, ZOO 102<br>ZOO 201, ZOO 202<br>ZOO 301 <sup>7</sup> , ZOO 302   | ZOO 1<br>none<br>none             | Students without credit in ZOO at a lower level may be allowed to register at the discretion of the Head of Department |

## S.24

S.24.1 Notwithstanding the provisions of Rule G.36, at the discretion of Departments in the Faculty of Science, a student's performance in a subject shall be assessed either

\* entirely at the end of the academic year

\* 50% in June and 50% in November (2-credit courses with write-offs)

\* 50% in June and 50% in November (aggregated 2-credit courses)

\* entirely in June or November, when the course is completed (1-credit courses)

S.24.2 Student assessment may incorporate class and practical records, as well as written examinations. The implication is that departments shall, where applicable, compute a first semester composite mark in June. Where assessment is subject to external examination, June assessments should be regarded as provisional, since external examiners usually perform their duties at the end of the year.

## S.25

S.25.1 Students who have failed first-year first-semester courses but who have reached the necessary subminima may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department after consulting examiners, be admitted to supplementary examinations, to be written in November.

S.25.2 Students will be required to have at least four semester-credits, and to have reached the necessary subminima, before being eligible for admission to supplementary examinations for first-year second-semester courses, to be written in

January/February.

S.25.3 Only in exceptional circumstances will supplementary examinations be allowed in second- or third-year courses for subjects administered in the Faculty of Science.

S.25.4 Results of supplementary examinations for courses offered in the second semester are classified on the basis of passing or failing only.

S.25.5 A candidate who sits a supplementary examination for a first semester course shall have the mark and classification earned in the later examination recorded for that semester-credit course, and any computation of an aggregate course mark shall be performed on the basis of the marks earned for the later examination, and not on the basis of the highest mark ever obtained.

## S.26

The degree certificate of a candidate who passes in class 1 in the final course of a major subject shall be endorsed with distinction in that subject. For the purpose of this rule, the final mark in a major subject shall, where applicable, be taken as the average mark of the semester-credit component courses.

## DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF SCIENCE WITH HONOURS

### S.27

Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for an honours degree unless they have been awarded the ordinary degree, or have been admitted to the status thereof; or have completed all the requirements therefor, except the requirements regarding

attendance. Attention is drawn to the provisions of Rule G.49 of the General Rules.

### S.28

S.28.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to any course for the honours degree unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned. Normally candidates will not be admitted to an honours course unless they have obtained at least a second class pass in the final year of the subject in which they wish to take honours.

S.28.2 In addition to Physics with Electronics 3, credit in either Applied Mathematics 2 or Mathematics 2 is required for admission to honours in Physics or Electronics.

### S.29

A candidate who has satisfied the requirements of Rule S.27 by completing an ordinary degree in a faculty other than Science may, with the approval of Senate, be admitted to the status of BSc, and allowed to study for the degree of BSc(Hons).

### S.30

S.30.1 A candidate shall attend the University for not less than one academic year after satisfying the requirements of Rule S.27, and pursue a course of advanced study in a subject approved by the Senate.

S.30.2 The following subjects have been approved by the Senate for this purpose:

Applied Mathematics, Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Electronics, Entomology, Environmental Water Management, Environmental Science, Ergonomics, Geography, Geology, Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Landscape Process and Management, Leather Science, Marine Biology, Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics, Microbiology, Physics, Spatial Development, Telecommunications, Zoology.

S.30.3 A Group B subject (as defined in Rule S.8) may also be offered for the honours degree; except that a candidate for an honours degree in such a subject may be required to obtain permission to transfer registration to the Faculty in which the subject is normally offered, and to proceed to an honours degree in that Faculty, depending on the combination of papers to be offered.

### S.31

S.31.1 The honours degree normally requires a period of one year's full-time study.

S.31.2 Senate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, permit candidates to take honours courses over two years as

full-time or as part-time students; provided that they attend the honours classes (including practicals) within the normal timetable of the Department, and that the honours course is spread over two years, but, except with the special permission of the Senate, no more than two years.

S.31.3 Students who originally register to take the honours degree over two years may, if progress is satisfactory, be allowed to change registration to complete the degree in the first year as full-time students. Full-time students who originally register to take the degree over one year may be advised by the Head of Department to take the degree over two years, or may opt to change registration to part-time. Any such changes must be effected no later than the end of the second week of the second semester.

S.31.4 Full-time candidates may withdraw from an Honours course during the second semester, but may not alter their registrations otherwise. On the recommendation of the Head of Department, candidates who withdraw may be permitted to register for the course in the following year, but will be required to complete all requirements for examination (including practical and project work) as though they had not previously been registered.

S.31.5 Any project work that forms part of the examinable material of an Honours degree must be completed and submitted before the final examinations are written.

### S.32

A candidate may not take up any full-time employment while engaged in the course. However, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned, with the approval of Senate, part-time employment is permitted.

### S.33

An honours candidate may, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and with the permission of Senate, attend concurrently and write the examination in a maximum of two semester-credit undergraduate courses in the same or another department.

### S.34

S.34.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, or as provided in Rule S.34.2, the subject of an honours degree shall be one which the candidate has completed as a major subject for the ordinary degree.

S.34.2 Candidates for Honours degrees in various subjects not offered as major subjects in the ordinary

degree shall normally have credit in cognate major subjects as provided in the following table:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Biotechnology                            | Biochemistry or Microbiology   |
| Electronics                              | Physics with Electronics   |
| Environmental Water Management           | Geography  |
| Environmental Science                    | Botany or Entomology or Geography or Geology or Zoology or Environmental Science |
| Ergonomics                               | Human Kinetics and Ergonomics  |
| Landscape Process and Management         | Geography  |
| Leather Science                          | Biochemistry or Microbiology or Chemistry  |
| Ichthyology and Fisheries Science        | Ichthyology or Zoology   |
| Marine Biology                           | Botany or Ichthyology or Zoology   |
| Mathematical Physics/Theoretical Physics | Physics and either Pure or Applied Mathematics                                   |
| Spatial Development                      | Geography  |
| Telecommunications                       | Physics with Electronics   |

### S.35

Candidates may, with the approval of the Senate, present themselves for examination in more than one subject; provided that the Heads of the relevant Departments have agreed upon the contents of the course and the structure of the examination. If more than 60% of the honours degree programme is given in one subject, the degree will be awarded in that subject. If between 40% and 60% of the degree programme is given in each of two subjects, the degree will be awarded as a joint degree in the two subjects.

### S.36

Candidates who fail an honours examination may be permitted by the Senate to re-present themselves at most once for that examination, and for this purpose they shall be required to re-attend the course prior to such re-examination.

### S.37

S.37.1 Subject to any exceptions approved by the Senate, a candidate must write all parts of the examination at one time, and shall not be exempted from any part of such examination; provided that students who are required to take the degree over two years may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, and with the permission of Senate, write part of the examination at the end of the first year of study, and part at the end of the second year of study.  
S.37.2 Exceptions have been approved for the following subjects, where parts of the examination

may, at the discretion of the Head of Department, be written at any official examination session of the University.

Computer Science, Information Systems, Mathematical Statistics.

## DEGREES OF MASTER OF SCIENCE, DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE

See General Rules and individual departmental entries.

## DIPLOMAS IN FISHERIES SCIENCE (RESOURCE MANAGEMENT) AND FISHERIES SCIENCE (AQUACULTURE) (POSTGRADUATE)

These diplomas are not offered at present. They have occasionally been offered in the Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, and are intended for graduates who wish to obtain specialist career-oriented training in practical aspects of fisheries management and development, but do not intend to read for the honours or higher degrees.

### S.38

S.38.1 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science (Resource Management) unless they have satisfied the requirements of a BSc degree (with Zoology, or equivalent, as a major), a bachelor's degree in Agriculture or Veterinary Science, or a qualification deemed equivalent by Senate.

S.38.2 Candidates shall not be admitted to the course for the Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science (Aquaculture) unless they have satisfied the requirements of a BSc degree approved by the Head of the department, or a qualification deemed equivalent by Senate.

### S.39

Candidates shall not be admitted to these courses unless they have obtained the permission of the Board of the Faculty, on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

### S.40

Candidates shall attend the University for the entire duration of the course, that is from 1 February to 30 November.

### S.41

Candidates shall not be awarded the Diploma unless they obtain credit for all examinations as stipulated in the prospectus, and have satisfactorily completed and submitted their class work and research investigation



on a subject approved by the Head of the Department.

**S.42**

The Diploma may be awarded with distinction.

**DIPLOMA IN LEATHER SCIENCE**

This course is offered in conjunction with LIRI Technologies; see the Calendar entry in the chapter on Research Institutes.

**THE SCIENCE FOUNDATION PROGRAMME**

Special provision is made in the Faculty of Science to accommodate students who would not normally be admitted to the curricula for the degrees of Bachelor of Science or Bachelor of Science (Information Systems), or who are identified as having potential, but as lacking an adequate educational background in certain key subjects. A number of special credit earning courses are offered, from which a curriculum suited to the needs of each student admitted to the Foundation Programme will be drawn up at Registration by the Dean, in consultation with appropriate Heads of Departments.

**S.43**

Candidates shall not normally be admitted to the Science Foundation Programme unless they are in possession of a matriculation certificate issued by the Matriculation Board or have obtained a certificate of exemption therefrom..

**S.44**

S.44.1 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme is required to complete a first year that will earn at least four semester-credits towards the intended degree.

S.44.2 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme will, however, normally be advised to register for a first-year curriculum that will earn six semester-credits if completed. This curriculum may incorporate courses such as English Language for Academic Purposes, Accounting 1F, Computer Science 1B, Mathematics 1L and Mathematics 1E that have been developed for the special purpose of supporting the Foundation Programme.

S.44.3 Attention is drawn to Rule S.23.

S.44.4 A student admitted to the Science Foundation Programme may be required to obtain credit in certain foundation courses before later being admitted to other full courses.

**S.45**

S.45.1 A candidate admitted to a regular curriculum may be required by the Dean, on the advice of the Head of Department, to transfer into the Foundation Programme during the year.

S.45.2 A candidate admitted to the Foundation Programme may be permitted by the Dean to change registration to a regular curriculum during the first term.

# ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS AND STAFF

Lists of prescribed texts and recommended readings are available from the Heads of Departments.

## ACCOUNTING

### **KPMG/CU Peat Memorial Professor of**

#### **Accounting & Head of Department**

EM Stack, DCompt (UNISA), CA(SA)

#### **Associate Professors**

MB Bunting, BSc (InfProc), BCom (Hons), (Rhodes), CA(SA)

M Lester, BCom. CTA (Rhodes), HDipTax (Witwatersrand), CA(SA)

#### **Senior Lecturers**

KW Maree, BCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)

MC Mokorosi, BCom (Lesotho), MSc (Stirling), PGDip (Financial Studies)( Strathclyde), HDE (UNITRA)

JCS Lancaster, MA(Rhodes), HonsBCompt(UNISA), CA(SA)

#### **Lecturers**

RA Walker, BEcon (Hons) (Rhodes), CFA(SA)

CJ Mullins, BCom (Rhodes), PGDipAcc(Natal)

To be appointed

#### **Academic Development Lecturer**

CL Tarr, BCom, UED (Rhodes). BED (Cape Town)

#### **Instructor**

JL Anderton

### **East London Campus**

#### **Associate Professor**

SK Whitfield, BCom(Hons)(Rhodes), CA(SA)

#### **Senior Lecturers**

MJ Schulze, BCom(Rhodes), CA(SA)

BJ McCole, FCCA, MBA(Edinburgh)

#### **Lecturer**

G Siebert, BCom(Rhodes), PGDipTertEd(UNISA)

The following subjects and courses may be studied for degree and higher diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Accounting are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Humanities (in Social Science).

### **Bachelor's Degree Courses**

**Accounting 1** consists of the two one credit courses **ACC101** and **ACC102**.

**ACC101** (One three hour paper)

The accounting cycle. Accounting for: inventories; fixed assets and depreciation; accounts and bills

receivable and payable.

*Admission to ACC101 may be refused after the third week of the course.*

**ACC102** (One three hour paper)

Accounting controls: principles of internal control; control accounts; bank and creditors reconciliations. Cash flow statements. Partnerships: formation; dissolution and liquidation; distribution of net income. Introduction to company accounting: issue of shares and debentures; reserves and provisions; formation expenses; dividends and taxation; disclosure principles.

**Accounting 1F** (One three hour paper) This course consists of **ACC101** taken over a full academic year.

**Accounting 1G** (One three hour paper) This course has the same syllabus as **ACC102**, but may only be taken by students who have passed **Accounting 1F**.

**NB** A credit in **Accounting 1F** and **1G** is equivalent to a credit in **Accounting 1**.

**Accounting 2** consists of the two one credit courses **ACC201** and **ACC202**.

**ACC201** (One three hour paper)

Correction of errors. Incomplete records. Conceptual framework and revenue recognition. Income statement disclosure, including profit or loss from ordinary activities, changes of estimate, extraordinary items and earnings per share. Balance sheet disclosure, including fixed assets, intangible assets, inventories, investments, contingencies and commitments. Introduction to credit agreements.

**ACC202** (One three hour paper)

Balance sheet disclosure, including long term liabilities, share capital, reserves and redemption of preference shares. Cash flow statements. Manufacturing accounting. Analysis and interpretation of financial statements. Other statutory and non-statutory reports. Accounting for departments and branches.

**Accounting 3** is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Consolidations. Equity accounting. Foreign exchange. Deferred taxation. Leasing. Net profit or



loss for the period, fundamental errors, and changes in accounting policy. Provisions, contingent liabilities and contingent assets. Events occurring after balance sheet date. Construction contracts. Changes in the form and capital structure of the entity. Advanced analysis and interpretation of financial statements. Published financial statements of companies with particular reference to disclosure requirements. General revision of work covered in Accounting 1 and 2.

**Auditing 1** is a two-credit course (one three-hour paper).

Nature, definition and objective of an audit. The auditor: qualities, qualifications, duties and responsibilities. Requirements of relevant legislation: the Companies Act and the Public Accountants' and Auditors' Act. The audit process. Internal controls. Working papers. Compliance and substantive auditing of the major business cycles. Completing the audit. Audit reports. Computer auditing.

**Management Accounting and Finance 1** is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Types of cost. Cost classification.. Relevant costs. Job-order costing. Process costing. JIT, ABC and quality costs. Cost behaviour. CVP analysis. Variable costing. Standard costing. Segmental reporting. Decentralisation. Transfer pricing. Learning curve. Valuations. Capital budgeting. Working capital management. Credit policy and current asset management. Sources of finance. Leasing. Limiting factors, linear programming, shadow prices.

**Taxation 1** is a two-credit course (one four-hour paper).

Principles of income tax. Practical application of the Income Tax Act and the Value Added Tax Act to financial and commercial transactions. Preparation of the accounts of executors and trustees in deceased and insolvent estates.

**Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy and Accounting Honours**

**Accounting 4**

Advanced work on company and group reporting, including recent developments. Statements and guidelines of generally accepted accounting practice.

**Management Accounting and Finance 2**

Advanced work on valuations. Cost of capital. Mergers and acquisitions, The dividend decision. The treasury function.

**Auditing 2**

The subjects included in the first course, more fully

treated. Auditors - professional behaviour. The Companies Act. Corporate Governance. South African Auditing Statements. The audit process. Use of the work of other auditors and experts. Going concerns. Final phase of the audit. Audit reports and special audit reports. Advanced computer auditing. Statistical sampling. Company Law and legal decisions affecting auditors, including liability to third parties. The Public Accountants' and Auditors' Act. The organisation of an accountant's practice. The audit of computer installations. The auditor and the costing system. Sampling, analytical auditing and other modern audit techniques. Investigations. Current developments in the profession and in auditing practice.

**Taxation 2**

The law and procedures in South Africa relating to the taxation of income. The Income Tax Act. Other relevant Acts, court decisions and Inland Revenue practices. The preparation of statements and the calculation of taxes payable. Estate and tax planning.

**Accounting Honours Course**

**Paper 1** Advanced Accounting (Course IV);

**Paper 2** Management Accounting and Finance 2;

**Paper 3** Advanced Auditing (Course II);

**Paper 4** Taxation 2;

**Paper 5** A long essay, to be written during the year on a topic approved by the Head of the Department.

**Paper 6** Accounting Theory.

| Course                              | Admission Prerequisites                           |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| ACC102                              | subminimum in ACC101                              |
| Accounting 1G                       | Accounting 1F                                     |
| ACC201                              | ACC101 and ACC102                                 |
| ACC202                              | subminimum in ACC201                              |
| Accounting 3                        | ACC 201 and ACC 202                               |
| Management Accounting and Finance 1 | ACC201, ACC 202, Theory of Finance and Statistics |
| Auditing 1                          | ACC 201 and ACC 202                               |
| Taxation 1                          | ACC 201 and ACC 202                               |

A candidate who fails any first semester course shall be permitted to proceed to the corresponding second semester course provided the required subminimum in the first semester course has been obtained. A pass in the second semester course in such circumstances shall **NOT** relieve the candidate of the need to pass the first semester course in order to gain the full course credit.

**Summer School**

At its sole discretion, the Department may offer Summer School programmes in certain undergraduate courses. These programmes are aimed at preparing students for special or supplementary

examinations in the given course, and are normally open to students who have failed a particular course, but have achieved the required subminimum for entry into the Summer School programme.

**AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES (SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES)****Senior Lecturer and Subject Head**

JS Cloughton, BA (CapeTown), MA (Cantab), PhD (Rhodes)

**Lecturers**

NR Mazwi, BA(UNISA), BA(Hons)Rhodes)

BB Nosilela, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

**East London Campus: Professor**

PT Mtzuze, BA (Rhodes), MA (UNISA), PhD (Cape Town)

**Xhosa** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases more than one, course is allowed as a credit for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

There are two separate streams: Xhosa (mother-tongue) and Xhosa (non-mother-tongue). In addition a one-year course in Sotho (non-mother-tongue) may be offered.

**Xhosa (mother-tongue)** is offered only in East London (third-year course subject to sufficient staff resources). **Xhosa (non-mother-tongue)** is offered to third-year level in Grahamstown and to second-year level in East London. (Xhosa 2 non-mother-tongue will only be offered in East London if staff resources permit.)

Special arrangements may be made in 1998 and 1999 for mother-tongue students who completed a course in Xhosa (mother-tongue) prior to 1998.

*Sotho is not offered at present.*

**Xhosa (mother-tongue)** is offered only in East London (first and second year courses only at present). Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) is offered to third-year level in Grahamstown and to second-year level in East London. Special arrangements may be made in 1998 and 1999 for mother-tongue students who completed a course in Xhosa (mother-tongue) prior to 1998.

**Xhosa 1(non-mother-tongue)** is open to those students who have no prior knowledge of Xhosa as well as those who have limited knowledge of the language provided that they have not matriculated in Xhosa. Only in exceptional circumstances will students whose first language is an African Language be permitted to register for the course. Students who have passed Xhosa at matriculation level as 2nd and 3rd language may be permitted to register for Xhosa (non-mother-tongue) 2 in their second year of study. Students who wish to do this are advised to consult with the division during their first year of study.

**Xhosa 1(non-mother-tongue):** practical proficiency in speaking and reading/writing Xhosa. A range of linguistic and cultural topics relevant to Xhosa and the African languages of Southern Africa.

**Xhosa 1(mother-tongue):** language topics, translation and literature. Translation from Xhosa into English and vice versa may be included. A range of linguistic and cultural topics relevant to Xhosa and the African languages of Southern Africa.

**Xhosa 2 (non-mother-tongue) and Xhosa 2 (mother-tongue):**

The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literature and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year:

Phonetics and phonology of Xhosa. Some comparison with other languages spoken in Southern Africa will be made. Introduction to other Nguni languages. Introduction to the grammatical system of Xhosa. Introduction to the phonological and grammatical typology of the Southern Bantu Languages. Introduction to the sociolinguistics of the Bantu languages. Introduction to the phonological and grammatical typology of the Southern Bantu languages. Introduction to language planning with special reference to Africa. Introduction to the various types of literature in Southern Bantu, and

study of selected Xhosa literary works. Folktales in Southern Bantu language and specially in Xhosa as a major indigenous literary form.

In addition, Xhosa 2 (non-mother-tongue) students will work on practical proficiency in speaking, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language. This will form part of the final examination. Xhosa 2 (mother-tongue) students will study additional topics drawn from the list above. Translation from Xhosa into English and vice versa may be included in both courses.

### **Xhosa 3**

The list which follows indicates the kinds of linguistic, literature and cultural topics offered but the full range will not necessarily be offered in any particular year:

The phonology of Xhosa and other Bantu languages. The grammatical systems of southern Bantu languages. Sub-typologies represented in the Bantu language family. Bantu typology in relation to language in general, and with reference to other African language typologies. The language families in Africa. Further work in the sociolinguistics of

Xhosa and other Bantu languages. Further work in language planning with special reference to the development of technical terms. The principles of orthography and the development of the Xhosa writing system. The development of Southern Bantu literature and the study of selected Xhosa literary works. Praise poetry and other indigenous folklore forms in Southern Bantu and especially Xhosa as a major indigenous literary form.

In addition, Xhosa 3 (non-mother-tongue) students will work at attaining practical proficiency in speaking, reading and writing the language. Students will be required to demonstrate ability in both the informal and formal registers of the language. This will form part of the final examination. Xhosa 3 (mother-tongue) students will study additional topics drawn from the list above. Translation from Xhosa into English and vice versa may be included in both courses.

A research essay may form part of the work of the course.

## **AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES (SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES)**

### **Senior Lecturer and Subject Head**

WG Meintjes, HDE. PhD(Rhodes)

### **Lecturers**

T Huisamen, BA(CapeTown), BA(Hons) (Witwatersrand)  
AF Vorster, BA(UPE), MA(Rhodes)

Afrikaans en Nederlands can be studied as a major subject in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases two, courses in Afrikaans or Afrikaans en Nederlands are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law and Science.

Students will be advised for which first year course option (Afrikaans 1(P)A and B, Afrikaans 1(P) or Afrikaans 1) to register. At the end of the first term, the head of the Division shall, on the basis of a written mini-examination, make a recommendation to the Dean who shall have a right to require students

to change course.

### **Afrikaans 1(P)A and Afrikaans 1(P)B**

Afrikaans 1(P)(Professional A and B) is a two-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. **Afrikaans 1(P)A** is written at the end of the first year and **Afrikaans 1(P)B** at the end of the second year. Credits in the half-courses **Afrikaans 1(P)A** and **Afrikaans 1(P)B** equal a credit in **Afrikaans 1(P)**. The medium of instruction is Afrikaans.

### **Afrikaans 1(P)A**

#### **Paper 1**

*Taalkommunikasie (Communication)* Oral and written communication skills

*Gebruikskunde (Professional usage)* In this section

the emphasis is on the usage of Afrikaans in a specific professional environment, e.g Afrikaans in Education, Afrikaans in Commerce and Law, Afrikaans in the media. The options available in a specific year depend on student needs and the availability of qualified staff.

## **Afrikaans 1(P)B**

### **Paper 1**

*Tekststudie (Texts)* The study of Afrikaans texts

*Taalstudie (Linguistics)* The study of selected linguistic concepts from a pragmatic perspective

### **Afrikaans 1(P)**

Afrikaans I(Professional) is a one-year course with the emphasis on the development of written and oral proficiency in Afrikaans as used in a professional environment. Normally candidates must have a Matriculation pass in Afrikaans for admission to Afrikaans I(P).

### **Paper 1**

*Taalkommunikasie (Communication)* Oral and written communication skills

*Gebruikskunde (Professional usage)* In this section the emphasis is on the usage of Afrikaans in a specific professional environment, e.g Afrikaans in Education, Afrikaans in Commerce and Law, Afrikaans in the media. The options available in a specific year depend on student needs and the availability of qualified staff.

### **Paper 2**

*Tekststudie (Texts)* The study of Afrikaans texts

*Taalstudie (Linguistics)* The study of selected linguistic concepts from a pragmatic perspective

*Afrikaans 1(P) will not necessarily be offered in any particular calendar year.*

## **AFRIKAANS 1**

In hierdie kursus val die klem op die bestudering van prosa-, poësie- en dramatekste. Bepaalde studietemas uit die Afrikaanse taal- en letterkunde word bestudeer en studente word inleidend aan narratologiese begrippe blootgestel. Afr 101 word in Junie geëksamineer en Afr 102 word in November geëksamineer. Studente wat tussen 35 en 49 persent in die Junie-eksamen behaal, word toegelaat om 'n aanvullende eksamen in Afr 101 in November af te lê.

### **AFR 101 (Junie)**

*Narratologie* Inleiding tot narratologiese begrippe

*Prosa* Tekststudie

*Poësie* Tekststudie

*Studietemas* Temas uit die Afrikaanse taal- en/of letterkunde

### **AFR 102 (November)**

*Prosa* Tekststudie

*Poësie* Tekststudie

*Drama* Tekststudie

*Studietemas* Temas uit die Afrikaanse taal- en/of letterkunde

## **AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 2**

Studente wat Afrikaans 1 geslaag het, word toegelaat om met Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 voort te gaan.

Die kursus bestaan uit vier komponente waarvan twee (Afr 201 en Afr 202) in Junie en twee (Afr 203 en Afr 204) in November geëksamineer word. 'n Student sal Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 slaag, indien 'n gemiddelde punt van vyftig persent behaal word.

### **AFR 201 (Junie)**

*Afrikaanse poësie* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Sestig

*Literatuurteorie* Inleiding tot belangrike literêr-teoretiese strominge van die twintigste eeu

### **AFR 202 (Junie)**

*Studietemas* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse taal- en/of letterkunde

**Nederlands as vreemde taal** (beginners)

Bywoning van hierdie taalverwerwingskursus is verpligtend vir toelating tot die eksamen.

### **AFR 203 (November)**

*Afrikaanse prosa* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Sewentig

*Afrikaanse poësie* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Sewentig

### **AFR 204 (November)**

*Afrikaanse prosa* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Sestig

## **AFRIKAANS EN NEDERLANDS 3**

Studente wat Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 geslaag het, word toegelaat om met Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 voort te gaan. Afr 301 en Afr 302 word in Junie geëksamineer. Afr 303 en Afr 304 word in November geëksamineer. 'n Student sal Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 slaag, indien 'n gemiddelde punt van vyftig persent behaal word.

### **AFR 301 (Junie)**

*Afrikaanse prosa* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Tagtig

*Afrikaanse poësie* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Tagtig

*Studietemas* Temas uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse taal en/of letterkunde

**AFR 302 (Junie)**

*Drama* Afrikaanse en Nederlandse dramatekste

*Nederlandse letterkunde*

**Nederlands as vreemde taal**

Bywoning van hierdie taalverwerwingskursus is verpligtend vir toelating tot die eksamen.

**AFR 303 (November)**

*Afrikaanse prosa* Tekste wat voor 1960 verskyn het

*Afrikaanse poësie* Tekste wat voor 1960 verskyn het

*Taalkunde*

**AFR 304 (November)**

*Afrikaanse prosa* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Negentig

*Afrikaanse poësie* Tekste van skrywers uit die periode van Negentig

**Honneurs**

'n Student met 'n aanvaarbare eksamenpunt in Afrikaans en Nederlands 3 kan met die toestemming van die Dekaan inskryf vir 'n Honneurskursus in óf Afrikaans óf Afrikaans en Nederlands. Die kandidaat kies, in oorleg met die betrokke dosente, vyf studie-onderwerpe uit 'n lys wat jaarliks van die Afdeling aangevra kan word. Die eksamen bestaan uit vyf vraestelle, waarvan een vervang mag word deur 'n indringende werkstuk (sowat 10 000) woorde wat teen 30 September ingelewer moet word.

**Modern Fiction**

For a description of this course, see the entry on Interdepartmental Studies.

**Interdisciplinary Honours degree**

The Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies also contributes to the following options in Interdisciplinary Honours degree courses:  
Postcoloniality and Postcolonial Discourse

(Development Studies); Feminist Literary Theory (Gender Studies); South African Literature (Southern African Cultural Studies); Afrikaans Literature in English translation (Southern African Cultural Studies); Postcolonialism (Southern African Cultural Studies).

The degree in Southern African Cultural Studies is administered by the Division.

**MA - Kursus: Eksamen**

In oorleg met die Afdeling kies goedgekeurde kandidate DRIE ondersoekterreine uit die Afrikaanse en/of Nederlandse literatuur, Taalkunde of Literatuurwetenskap vir intensiewe navorsing en bestudering. Gereelde seminare word aangebied, maar 'n hoë mate van selfstandige navorsing word van die kandidaat verwag. In elk van die drie studieterreine word 'n vraestel van 3 uur geskryf.

**Ook** word daar van die kandidaat verwag om 'n kort verhandeling (sowat 30 000 woorde oor 'n goedgekeurde onderwerp) voor te lê. Die verhandeling moet binne 6 maande na die skryf van die vraestelle voltooi en ingelewer word. 60% van die totale eksamenpunt word aan die drie vraestelle saam toegesê, die res aan die verhandeling.

**MA-Kursus: Verhandeling**

Ter verkryging van die MA-graad moet die kandidaat 'n verhandeling voorlê waarvan die onderwerp vooraf deur die Fakulteitsraad goedgekeur is, en wat die resultate van oorspronklike navorsing bevat. Die student sal ook bereid moet wees om n.a.v. die verhandeling 'n mondelinge eksamen in Afrikaans of in Afrikaans en Nederlands af te lê, indien dit nodig geag word.

**Doktorsgraad** : inligting verkrygbaar van die vakhoof.

## ANTHROPOLOGY

### Professor & Head of Department

CJ de Wet, MA(Stell), MSt (Oxon), PhD(Rhodes)

### Professor

MG Whisson, PhD(Cantab)

### Senior Lecturer

RCG Palmer, BA(Hons)(Durham), PhD(Sussex)

### Junior Lecturers

MJR Laville, MSocSc (CapeTown)

P Bernard, BSocSc (Natal), BSocSc (Hons)(Rhodes)

Anthropology is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. One, or two courses in Anthropology are allowed as credits for degree curricula in the Faculty of Law.

### Anthropology 1

This course provides an introduction to the wide scope and contemporary relevance of anthropology. Ethnographic examples are drawn from Southern Africa, as well as from the rest of the world.

#### *Introduction.*

Defining anthropology; human origins; basic themes in biological anthropology; race and ethnicity; sex and gender.

#### *Institutions of Society.*

Socialisation, kinship and marriage; economics and politics; religion and ideology, are studied in relation to each other with reference to wide-ranging studies of (mainly) pre-industrial peoples.

#### *Applications of Anthropology.*

How the comparative study of society and culture can be utilised to understand and address contemporary rural and urban issues and problems.

### Anthropology 2

The concerns of anthropology are explained in greater analytical and methodological depth, with a focus on specialist ethnographic and thematic topics.

#### *Fieldwork.*

Philosophy, theory and techniques of fieldwork in anthropology, with practical exercises. Also, a fieldwork exercise to be chosen individually by the student in consultation with the staff.

#### *Environmental Anthropology.*

An exploration of the relationship between humans and the physical environment, and of the ways in which this relationship is mediated by culture, technology and global economic and political trends.

#### *Comparative and Regional Ethnographic Studies.*

These vary from year to year, and include a focus on regions such as Amazonia, Madagascar and Mauritius, and New Guinea.

#### *Options.*

A feature of Anthropology 2 which sets it apart from the other years is the practice whereby the class splits up into small groups for the intensive study of, for example, archaeology, African Music; computers in anthropology, refugees in Africa, textual analysis, and other subjects which lend themselves to intensive study on this basis.

#### *Anthropology and Environmental Science.*

The combination of the courses in Fieldwork and in Environmental Anthropology (taught in different terms) may also be taken as a full semester course option (ENA 301) for Environmental Science 301. Candidates for the ENA 301 option will be required to do additional seminars, research exercises and written work in order to bring the semester course up to the required academic standard for a third year course. Candidates for the ENA 301 option must have obtained a full first year credit in an approved social science subject.

Candidates who have obtained a pass in Anthropology 2, and/or are majoring in Anthropology and in Environmental Science, are not eligible to do ENA301 as their optional semester in Environmental Science 3, for reasons of overlap.

### Anthropology 3

A seminar-focussed course which offers additional ethnographic perspectives, pursues the analysis of institutions in greater depth and places more emphasis on changing and contemporary societies as well as on the application of anthropology and its career opportunities.

#### *Social theory and ethnographic analysis.*

Analysis of key readings in the development of anthropological theory and ethnographic analysis.

*Medical anthropology*, including indigenous healing systems.

#### *The anthropology of complex societies.*

Tourism, industrial anthropology, the ethnography of contemporary Europe.

#### *Applied anthropology.*

The application of anthropological insights and knowledge to a range of socio-economic problems.

#### *Fieldwork.*

An exercise to demonstrate a reasonable grasp of

method and the ability to undertake independent enquiry.

#### **Anthropology Honours Course**

The Honours course is completed at the end of the fourth year of study. The examination consists of four papers and a research essay.

Subject to demand and the availability of staff, the topics for the four papers may be selected from the following:

Resettlement and land reform. Tourism. Social theory. The anthropology of the Eastern Cape. Religion in South Africa. Aspects of social change and modernization in selected regions or societies. Rural development. Urban anthropology. Ethnicity and cultural minorities. The anthropology of gender. Medical Anthropology. Environmental Anthropology.

A research essay of about 10 000 words, incorporating original fieldwork, is written during the year on a topic chosen by the candidate and approved by the Head of the Department, *or* a library thesis of similar length is completed where personal circumstances render fieldwork impossible.

#### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degree**

Subject to demand and the availability of staff, the above papers may be offered towards

interdisciplinary honours degrees, or as option papers towards honours degrees in cognate disciplines.

#### **Joint Honours Degree in Anthropology and Environmental Science.**

Candidates for this Joint Honours degree will be required to do

a) the core semester course in Environmental Science Honours (equivalent to two papers);

b) two papers in Anthropology, selected from the list of topics offered for Anthropology Honours, in consultation with the Heads of Department of Anthropology and of Environmental Science;

c) a research essay (equivalent to one paper), so that the final proportion in each discipline is between 40% and 60%.

To be eligible for this Joint Honours degree, candidates will need to have obtained a satisfactory pass mark in both ENV 202 (or its equivalent) and in Anthropology 3.

#### **MA and PhD Degrees**

A thesis (for which fieldwork will normally be required) on any approved topic within the field of Social or Cultural Anthropology.

## **BIOCHEMISTRY AND MICROBIOLOGY**

#### **Professor of Biotechnology &**

##### **Head of Department**

PD Rose, BSc (Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Professor of Biochemistry and Dean of Research**

JR Duncan, PhD(Natal)

#### **Professor of Microbiology**

R Kirby, MA(Cantab), PhD(East Anglia)

#### **Associate Professor of Biochemistry**

CG Whiteley, PhD(Natal), MRSC, CChem

#### **Associate Professor & Head of Biochemistry**

GL Blatch, BSc(Hons)(Natal), PhD(Cape Town)

#### **Associate Professor & Head of Microbiology**

DA Hendry, MSc(Stell), PhD(Cape Town)

#### **Senior Lecturer in Biochemistry**

SG Burton, BSc (Hons), GradCE (Zimbabwe), PhD (Rhodes)

#### **Senior Lecturer in Microbiology**

RA Dorrington, BSc(Stell), PhD(Cape Town)

#### **Junior Lecturer in Biotechnology**

W Leukes, PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Honorary Fellows**

R van der Merwe, BSc(Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

OO Hart, MSc(Potchefstroom), DSc(Pretoria)

The Department offers courses in Biochemistry, Microbiology and Biotechnology. Leather Science is offered in association with LIRI Technologies.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/biochemistry> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### **Biochemistry**

Biochemistry (BCH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Biochemistry, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; BCH 2; BCH 3: See Rule S.23.

### **Second-year level courses in Biochemistry**

There are two second-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 201 is held in the first semester and BCH 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BCH 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BCH 201, or BCH 202.

Adequate performance in BCH 201 is required before a student may register for BCH 202.

### **BCH 201**

(One theory paper and a practical examination in June).

Introduction to Biochemistry, Biochemical building blocks, amino acids and proteins, carbohydrates, enzymology, lipids, membranes.

### **BCH 202**

(One theory paper and a practical examination in November).

Molecular biology, metabolism, vitamins and coenzymes, plant biochemistry, bioenergetics and thermodynamics.

### **Third-year level courses in Biochemistry**

There are two third-year courses in Biochemistry. BCH 301 is held in the first semester and BCH 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BCH 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports,

essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Biochemistry (BCH 2) is required before a student may register for BCH 301 or BCH 302.

Adequate performance in BCH 301 is required before a student may register for BCH 302.

### **BCH 301**

(Two theory papers and a practical examination in June).

Biochemical techniques, biological chemistry, enzyme mechanisms, biosynthesis of biomolecules, enzymology.

### **BCH 302**

(Two theory papers and a practical examination in November).

Metabolic disorders, clinical biochemistry, nutrition, applied biochemistry.

### **Biochemistry Honours**

The course consists of lectures on selected advanced topics such as drug metabolism, advanced enzymology, applied enzymology, food chemistry and brewing, antibiotics, biomedical biochemistry, receptors, hormones; a seminar including a literature review on a general biochemical topic, essays and a research project.

### **Microbiology**

Microbiology (MIC) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Microbiology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 1 or BOT 1 or BIO 1; MIC 2; MIC 3. See Rule S.23.

### **Second-year level courses in Microbiology**

There are two second-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 201 is normally held in the first semester and MIC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MIC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the



final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) and in either Botany (BOT 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) or Biology (BIO 1) is required before a student may register for MIC 201 or MIC 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with MIC 201 and MIC 202.

The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks.

#### **MIC 201**

(One paper and a practical examination).

Introductory Microbiology (classification, growth, assay and control of microorganisms). Organization and replication of microbes (microbial structure; cellular organization and modes of replication of yeast, bacteria and viruses). Microbial interactions (microorganisms of soil and water; their interrelationships, activity and impact; nutrient cycling). Immunology (nature of the immune response; structure of antigens and immunoglobulins; cellular immunology; serology).

#### **MIC 202**

(One paper and a practical examination).

Introductory molecular biology (the structure of nucleic acids and proteins; the flow of genetic information). Metabolism (energy generation; biosynthetic pathways; enzyme regulation). Basic bacterial genetics (bacterial conjugation, transformation and transduction; plasmids; bacteriophages). Prokaryote gene regulation (plasmid replication and host range; transposable elements; regulation of gene expression). Food and medical microbiology (the role of foodstuffs in the transmission of pathogenic microbes).

#### **Third-year level courses in Microbiology**

There are two third-year courses in Microbiology. MIC 301 is normally held in the first semester and MIC 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MIC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. No supplementary

examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Microbiology (MIC 2) is required before a student may register for MIC 301 or MIC 302.

Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester.

The courses are comprised of the following modules, not necessarily in the given position, each module lasting about three weeks:

#### **MIC 301**

(Two papers and a practical examination).

Eucaryote cell biology (cell ultrastructure; protein sorting and trafficking; meiosis and mitosis; regulation of the cell cycle). Virology (families of plant and animal viruses; molecular biology of representative DNA and RNA viruses; stages and strategies of viral replication; vaccines). Eucaryote gene regulation (chromosome structure; RNA editing; transcriptional and translational regulation of gene expression; gene evolution).

#### **MIC 302**

(Two papers, a comprehension and a practical examination).

Process Biotechnology (medium formulation; microbial growth kinetics; batch and continuous culture; downstream processing; beer brewing). Gene manipulation (gene identification and isolation; cloning strategies; expression of recombinant genes). Industrial microbiology (fermentation; primary and secondary metabolism; antibiotic production; amino acid production). Molecular Biotechnology (implications and applications of recombinant DNA research). A practical project during the third term counts towards the final mark.

#### **Microbiology Honours**

The course consists of essays, tutorials and seminars on advanced aspects of Microbiology including virology, serology, molecular biology, microbial biochemistry and microbial genetics. Each candidate is required to submit two copies (one to be returned) of a report on practical work done on a specific project during the course, and these together with all seminars, essays and practical reports will be

considered part of the final examination.

### **Biotechnology**

Biotechnology is offered at the postgraduate level.

#### **Biotechnology Honours**

Candidates must normally have either Microbiology or Biochemistry as major BSc subjects, but candidates with other majors will be considered. The course consists of lectures, seminars and essays covering a series of topics in Biotechnology such as fermentation technology, genetic manipulation, applied immunology, enzyme engineering, food technology, process technology, and selection and control of industrial microorganisms.

Practical work will consist of an 18 week course concentrating on small projects offering exposure to methods and techniques essential to the subject. This will be followed by an 18 week project of original investigation. All seminars, essays and practical reports will be considered part of the final examination.

#### **MSc in Environmental Biotechnology**

*(May only be offered from 2001)*

Environmental Biotechnology involves the use of biological systems, mainly microorganisms and their derivatives and processes, in both environmental protection and restoration. It is a knowledge-intensive, research-driven field which addresses a broad spectrum of Environmental Sector needs in the major areas of water, air, soil and waste disposal. The MSc course emphasises a Bioprocess approach within the context of Environmental Management.

The course is open to candidates holding the BSc(Hons) degree, or its equivalent. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a BSc degree and have at least 5 years relevant experience.

The course covers theoretical and practical aspects of Environmental Biotechnology. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by staff of the Department, and supported by input from experts drawn from industry and other universities.

Requirements for award of the degree include completion of any six of the following modules

offered and presentation of a research thesis, based on original work on a topic selected in consultation with the Department. The research project may be undertaken off campus under approved supervision.

Environmental Biogeochemistry (Soil, Water, Air)  
 Bioremediation and Waste Management  
 Environmental Process Biotechnology  
 Environmental Toxicology and Analytical Methods  
 Integrated Environmental Management  
 Industrial Ecology and Management Systems  
 Auditing  
 Environmental Law

Candidates may complete all requirements for the degree in one year of full-time study, or enrol on a part-time basis over a longer period not exceeding three years. Assessment of candidates is based on written and oral presentations covering all aspects of the course.

#### **Leather Science**

Leather Science is offered at the post-graduate level in association with LIRI Technologies.

#### **Leather Science Honours**

Candidates must have either Chemistry, Biochemistry or Microbiology as major BSc subjects. The course consists of lectures, seminars and essays covering topics of leather science; leather technology; protein chemistry; biotechnology; environmental science; statistics; business management and economics.

Practical work will consist of modules in selected aspects of leather manufacture and short projects will be undertaken in the industrial sector. A research project covering an original investigation will be submitted at the end of the year. All seminars, essays and practical reports will be considered a part of the final examination.

#### **MSc and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## BOTANY

### Associate Professor & Head of Department

RA Lubke, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MIBiol, MSc (Science Education)(Keele), PhD(Ontario)

### Professor

CEJ Botha, PhD(Natal)

### Senior Lecturer

NP Barker, MSc(Witwatersrand), PhD(CapeTown)

### Lecturers

PB Phillipson, MSc(Reading), FLS

BS Ripley, MSc(Natal)

JF Dames, PhD(Witwatersrand)

### Research Associates

EEA Gledhill, MSc(UNISA), PhD(Lond)

GD Court, BSc, UED(SA), MSc(Rhodes), FLS

Botany (BOT) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

Botany is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV), full details of which are given in a separate entry.

Biology (BIO) is a two-semester first-year subject, offered jointly by the departments of Botany and Zoology and Entomology. This forms a compulsory part of a BPharm degree, and may also be taken for credit for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Education.

To major in Botany, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; BOT 101 (or, with approval, BIO 101 or ZOO 102); BOT 102; BOT 201; BOT 202; BIO 301; BOT 302. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Botany semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://botany.ru.ac.za> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### First-year level courses in Botany

There are two first-year courses in Botany. BOT 101 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each

course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BOT 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Both theory and practical examinations are held. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Practical reports, essays and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Each course is comprised of modules of two to four weeks, with 5 lectures and 1 practical per week. Additional tutorial sessions will be given in some modules, and there is a compulsory field trip.

With the approval of the Head of Department of Botany, students who have passed BIO 101 (Plant Biology) or ZOO 102 (Cell and Development Biology) may be allowed entry to Botany 2, provided they have successfully completed BOT 102 (Plants and the Environment) in the same year.

### BOT 101: Evolution of Plant Life

Evolution of life and the eukaryote cell. Function of sub-cellular organelles. Organisation of cells to form tissues, organs and the functional plant. General functioning of plants.

### BOT 102: Plants and the Environment

Plant complexity and diversity. Structural complexity. Physiological adaptations. Ecosystem ecology. Field Trip.

### First-year level courses in Biology

There are two first-year courses in Biology. BIO 101 is normally held in the first semester and BIO 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course BIO 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students wishing to proceed to a BPharm degree must obtain credit in both components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves the minimum standards

specified by the Departments of Botany (for BIO 101) and Zoology and Entomology (for BIO 102).

### **BIO 101: Plant Biology**

Introduction to ultra structure and genetics of cells. Structure and function of the cell. Diversity: range of form and reproduction in selected groups of algae, fungi, cryptograms and selected seed plants. Short introductory course in chemotaxonomy and medicinal plants.

### **BIO 102 / ZOO 101: Animal Biology**

BIO 102 is the same course as ZOO 101; please consult the entry for ZOO 101 in the departmental entry for Zoology and Entomology.

### **Second-year level courses in Botany**

There are two independent second-year courses in Botany. BOT 201 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Botany must obtain credit in both BOT 201 and BOT 202, and no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Botany (BOT 101 and BOT 102) is required before a student may register for BOT 201 or BOT 202; except that credit in ZOO 102 (Cell and Development Biology) or BIO 101 (Plant Biology) may be substituted for BOT 101 at the discretion of the Head of Department. However, for candidates not majoring in Botany, BOT 201 may be taken by second or third year students without pre-requisites. Credit in BOT 2 will only be granted when full credit in BOT 1 has been obtained.

These courses each comprise several modules and 12 practicals. Students registered for BOT 201 will also be required to assemble a plant collection, and will participate in a field trip.

### **BOT 201: Conservation and Biodiversity**

Conservation. Botanical diversity assessment. Plants and people. Plant fungal interactions. Environmental rehabilitation.

### **BOT 202: Functional Botany**

Developmental plant anatomy. Carbon and nitrogen metabolism in plants. Plant taxonomy and

classification.

### **Third-year level courses in Botany**

There are two independent third-year courses in Botany. BIO 301 is normally held in the first semester and BOT 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Botany must obtain credit in both BIO 301 and BOT 302, and no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. BIO 301 is a recommended credit for students who wish to major in Environmental Science. Students who wish to major in two of the following: Botany, Entomology, Environmental Science and Zoology, should note that credit may not be obtained in either BIO 301 or ECL 301 towards more than one major subject.

Credit in Botany (BOT 201 or BOT 202) and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for BOT 3. Credit in BOT 3 will only be granted when full credit in BOT 2 has been obtained.

These courses each comprise several modules and 12 practicals. Students are also required to undertake a mini project.

### **BIO 301: Biodiversity**

This course is offered jointly by the staff of Zoology and Entomology and Botany, and may be taken as a component of a major in Botany, Environmental Science, Entomology or Zoology. It examines patterns of biological diversity and the processes underlying them with a view to their application in resource management. Modules cover population genetics and macroevolution, applied systematics, terrestrial biogeography and conservation biology, using both plant and animal examples.

### **BOT 302: Plant Environment Interactions**

Plant ecophysiology. Ecology of plant functional types. Plant reproductive strategies.

### **Botany Honours**

The honours degree course allows for specialisation in a chosen direction within Botany. It involves seminars, tutorials and research projects, and is intended to provide the student with the opportunity for in-depth study in particular aspects of the subject, which may be seen as a relevant training for

subsequent employment, or as a step between an undergraduate degree and a research degree.

Joint Honours courses may be followed where topics from the Botany Honours course may be taken in combination with courses in some other Departments (for example, Entomology, Environmental Science, Ichthyology or Zoology). The Botany Department also offers specialist courses that may be taken in conjunction with Environmental Science Honours.

Full details of the curriculum may be found at the Web Page <http://botany.ru.ac.za>

### MSc and PhD degrees

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department or associated Institutes. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## CHEMISTRY

### Professor of Organic Chemistry & Head of Department

PT Kaye, BSc(Natal), BSc(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(Natal), DPhil(Oxon). FRSC, CChem, FRSSAf

### Professor of Physical Chemistry

ME Brown, BSc(Hons) (Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf

### Associate Professor, Physical-Inorganic Chemistry

T Nyokong, BSc(Lesotho), MSc(McMaster), PhD(Western Ontario)

### Associate Professor, Organic Chemistry

MT Davies-Coleman, PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturer, Physical Chemistry

RC Cosser, PhD(Lond), DIC

### Senior Lecturer, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry

C Sacht, PhD(Cape Town)

### Lecturer, Inorganic & Analytical Chemistry

GM Watkins, PhD(Cape Town)

### Lecturer, Academic Development

JD Sewry, BSc(Rhodes), HDE(UNISA)

### Honorary Research Associates

Professor Emeritus DEA Rivett, MSc(Rhodes), PhD (Cantab)

Associate Professor Emeritus DJ Eve, PhD (Rhodes), FRSC, CChem

AK Galwey, DSc(London)

Chemistry (CHE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Chemistry, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; CHE 2; CHE 3; PHY 1 or PHY 1E; MAT 1 or MAT 1E or

MAT 1C. See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Chemistry semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy. In particular, credits in CHE 101 and CHE 102 separately are required for admission to BPharm 2.

Each undergraduate year is offered as a pair of semester-credit courses. The overall mark for each semester-course comprises 80% from the marks for the theory paper/s and 20% from the marks for the practical section. Credit in any semester-course is subject to a subminimum in the theory paper/s.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.chem.ru.ac.za/> for further details, particularly the content of courses.

### First-year level courses in Chemistry

4 lectures, 1 tutorial and 3 hours of practical weekly.

*Note: It will be assumed that students in Chemistry 101 have a knowledge of chemistry at the standard of Physical Science at Matriculation level or its equivalent.*

There are two first-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 101 is held in the first semester and CHE 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 1, provided that a candidate

obtains the required subminimum in the theory section of each course separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

### **Continuation Requirements**

Candidates obtaining less than 20% in the theory component of CHE 101 in June are not permitted to continue with any Chemistry course in that year.

A mark of at least 40% in the theory component of CHE 101 is required for entry into CHE 102. Candidates who achieve this standard, but fail to obtain at least 50% overall, may join the CHE 102 course in July, but must write the CHE 101 paper, as well as the CHE 102 paper, in November. For CHE 101, the November mark will count (see Rule S.25.5).

Candidates who obtain from 20% to 39% in the theory component of CHE 101 in June cannot continue into CHE 102. They must transfer to the remedial course, Chemistry 1R, to revise the topics from CHE 101 for re-examination in November. In the following year, candidates with a credit for CHE 101 (but not for CHE 102) who wish to register for CHE 102 must spend the first semester in Chemistry 1R, previewing the material to be covered in CHE 102. Those candidates who have previously taken CHE 102 may be permitted to write an examination in June to obtain credit for CHE 102, while the rest will join the CHE 102 course in the second semester.

### **CHE 101**

Introduction to quantum ideas, atomic structure, bonding, thermodynamics, chemical analysis and organic chemistry.

### **CHE 102**

Introduction to inorganic chemistry, states of matter, kinetics, electrochemistry, radiochemistry, and organic functional-group chemistry.

### **Second-year level courses in Chemistry**

5 lectures and 5 hours of practical weekly.

There are two independent second-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 201 is held in the first semester and CHE 202 in the second semester. Credit may be

obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in the theory component of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for CHE 201 or CHE 202.

### **CHE 201**

Chemistry of the main block (s and p) elements and transition elements. Analytical chemistry: statistical methods; gravimetric and volumetric analysis; instrumental analysis. Introduction to spectroscopic methods in organic structure elucidation. Entrepreneurial project.

### **CHE 202**

Principles of thermodynamics and kinetics; liquid surface chemistry; electrochemistry; polymer chemistry; organic stereo-chemistry; alicyclic hydrocarbons; advanced aspects of substitution, and elimination reactions; alkenes; alkynes; benzenoid aromatic compounds.

### **Third-year level courses in Chemistry**

5 lectures and 5 hours of practical weekly.

There are two independent third-year courses in Chemistry. CHE 301 is held in the first semester and CHE 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CHE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in the theory component of each course separately. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 2), Physics (PHY 1 or PHY 1E) and Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1C or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for CHE 301 or CHE 302.

### **CHE 301**

Advanced aspects of the chemistry of organic carbonyl compounds; heterocyclic chemistry; carbohydrates; retrosynthetic analysis; spectroscopic analysis of organic compounds; kinetics; solid

surface chemistry and heterogeneous catalysis; thermodynamics.

### **CHE 302**

Quantum mechanics, atomic structure and spectroscopy; transition metals and coordination chemistry; organometallic chemistry; bioinorganic chemistry. Project on industrial chemistry.

### **Chemistry Honours**

Students who achieve a satisfactory standard in third-year Chemistry may be accepted for the Honours course. The course consists of lectures on a

choice of advanced topics, a review essay and a research project (conducted over most of the year as a member of one of the Department's research groups).

### **MSc and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## **CLASSICAL STUDIES (SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES)**

### **Senior Lecturer and Subject Head**

WD Snowball, BSc(MechEng)(Cape Town), BA (Hons) (Rhodes), MA(Lond)

### **Lecturer**

JL Jackson, BA(Hons), HED(Natal), MA(Rhodes)

The Division of Classics offers courses in four interrelated subjects: Classical Civilization, Latin, Classical Greek and Hellenistic Greek (Biblical Greek).

**Latin** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Only candidates who have matriculated in Latin are admitted to Latin 1A. Students who wish to do Latin and have not taken Latin for Matriculation should register for Latin 1B.

(See also Regulation H.4).

**Greek** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. No previous knowledge of Greek is required to enter either Greek 1 or Hellenistic Greek. Hellenistic Greek is an alternative course for students intending to go on to Greek 2B

### **Latin 1B**

No previous knowledge of Latin is required for this course. Candidates who achieve a satisfactory standard may proceed to Latin 2 on the recommendation of the head of the Division.

**NB** With the exception of Latin 1B, language courses will only be offered if staffing resources permit.

### **Latin 1A**

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from

Latin into English, with tutorial assistance. The study of a period of Roman history.

### **Latin 2**

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English and (optional) English into Latin, with tutorial assistance. The study of a period of Roman history.

### **Latin 3**

The reading of selected Latin texts. Translation from Latin into English and (optional) English into Latin, with tutorial assistance. The study of a period of Roman history. The study of a genre or period of Latin literature.

### **Greek 1**

An introduction to Attic Greek, including the reading of selected texts. No previous knowledge of the language is required.

### **Hellenistic Greek**

An introduction to Biblical Greek, including the reading of selected texts. No previous knowledge of the language is required.

### **Greek 2A**

The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and (optional) English into Greek, with tutorial assistance. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

### **Greek 2B**

The reading of selected Biblical and other Greek texts. Hellenistic literature and/or history and/or philosophy.

### **Greek 3**

The reading of selected Greek texts. Translation from Greek into English and (optional) English into Greek,

with tutorial assistance. A genre of Greek literature and/or a period of Greek history.

**NB** Either Greek 2A or 2B qualifies for admittance to Greek 3.

#### **Greek or Latin or Classics Honours Courses**

Five of the following papers are written, subject to the approval of the head of the Division.

**Paper 1** A genre of Greek, Latin or Classical literature.

**Paper 2** A study of one Greek or Latin author or, in the case of Classics Honours, of two authors, one Latin, one Greek.

**Paper 3** Greek or Latin language or, in the case of Classics Honours, a comparative study of Greek and Latin.

**Paper 4** A period or topic of Greek or Roman History or, in the case of Classics Honours, a period or topic of ancient history, including both Greek and Roman elements.

**Paper 5** Translation.

**Paper 6** Another subject in the field of Greek studies, Latin studies or Classical antiquity. A research essay on a topic approved by the head of the Division may be submitted for one of the papers.

**Classical Civilization** is a two-year major subject

which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. This course is designed to provide a sound general background of knowledge of Greek and Roman civilization.

See Regulations H.4 and H.5, H.13 and H.15.

#### **Classical Civilization 1**

This course is an introduction to the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean World.

#### **Classical Civilization 2**

This course involves further study of the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean world.

#### **Classical Civilization Honours**

Five papers, or four papers and a research essay, are written. The Honours course involves detailed study of selected topics in the fields of the literature, history, art, sculpture, architecture, life and thought of the ancient Mediterranean world. Students with no background in an ancient language will be required to take an intensive course in the language most appropriate to the course.

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

#### **Professor & Head of Department**

PG Clayton, PhD(Rhodes), FICS, MCSSA

#### **Professors**

PD Terry, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cantab), FICS, MACM

EP Wentworth, PhD(UPE), FICS, MCSSA

#### **Associate Professors**

SD Bangay, PhD(Rhodes)

RJ Foss, BSc(Natal), MSc(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Senior Lecturer**

GC Wells, MSc(Rhodes), MICS

#### **Lecturers**

AJB Ebdon, TEng(PNL), FTC(CGLI), BSc(Hons)(TCU, Lond)

GG Foster, PhD(Rhodes)

GL Smith, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), MSc(Rhodes)

J Okutwe, BSc (Nairobi), MSc (Pretoria)

Computer Science (CSC) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the

degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BCom, BJourn and BEcon.

To major in Computer Science, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CSC101; CSC 102; CSC 2; CSC 3; MAT 102 or MAT 1E2. See Rule S.23.

Candidates who aim to major in Computer Science are advised to register for the ancillary course in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2) in their first year or second of study; permission will not normally be granted to repeat MAT 102 or MAT 1E2 concurrently with CSC 301 and CSC 302.

Two, or in some cases four, Computer Science semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.



Besides the major courses, the Department offers a semester-credit foundation course, presented over a period of a year.

The attention of students who hope to pursue careers in the fields of Computing and Information Systems in general is drawn to the degree of BSc (Information Systems), in which Computer Science and Information Systems are the usual major subjects, supported by other appropriate courses from the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

The courses offered in Computer Science concentrate on aspects of computer related subjects such as programming, algorithm and system design, formal languages, software engineering, operating systems and real-time computing, graphics and multimedia, artificial intelligence, networks, and theoretical computer science. Management and organisational aspects of computing are handled more specifically in courses offered by the Department of Information Systems, and aspects such as computer and digital electronics and hardware are complemented by courses offered in the Department of Physics and Electronics. In all courses students are required to perform practical work on the computer, the marks of which count towards the final assessment.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.cs.ru.ac.za> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### **First-year level courses in Computer Science**

There are three independent first-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 101 is offered in both semesters and CSC 102 in the second semester only. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component.

CSC 1B0 is a single semester-credit course, but offered over a whole year, under the auspices of the Science and Commerce Foundation Programmes. Entry is normally restricted only to first-year students accepted into those programmes; the course may be required as a prerequisite to CSC 102 for students who lack the necessary background to register directly for CSC 101. Such students are allowed to

obtain credit in all three of CSC 1B0, CSC 101, and CSC 102.

Supplementary examinations may be recommended in each of these courses, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Because of physical constraints, the Department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 150 students who pass CSC 101 are guaranteed admission to CSC 102; another 30 places may be allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation and additional background experience. Normally no more than 50 students will be admitted to CSC 1B0, with places allocated on the basis of background experience.

### **CSC 101: Computer Literacy**

Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues, and the logic of problem solving. The examination of CSC 101 comprises a practical and a theoretical paper. Regular tests and practical assignments contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the final assessment.

### **CSC 102: Introductory programming**

Normally, candidates are required to obtain credit in CSC 101 before they may register for CSC 102. At the discretion of the Head of Department, candidates who are able to demonstrate a formal competency in computing (such as a C or better symbol for Computing as a subject in matric, or appropriate work experience in a computer related field) may be exempted from CSC 101 as a pre-requisite for registration for CSC 102. Candidates so exempted must replace CSC 101 with another semester-credit in their curricula.

This course provides a sound introduction to computer programming in a high-level language. Event based programming, programming design principles, data structures, and developing applications for Windows-based user interfaces are covered using a visual programming paradigm.

### **CSC 1B0: Foundations of Computer Science**

Topics covered include: introduction to some of the concepts of hardware; software; operating systems; computer logic; programming and problem solving; editing and word processing; graphical user interfaces; spreadsheets; data bases; and networks.

### **Second-year level courses in Computer Science**

There are two second-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 201 is held in the first semester and CSC 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 102) is required before a student may register for second year courses. Adequate performance in CSC 201 is required before a student may register for CSC 202.

Because of physical constraints, the Department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 60 students who pass CSC 102 are guaranteed admission to CSC 201; another 20 places may be allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation and additional background.

The second year of Computer Science is devoted to low-level and foundational computing and systems design concepts.

### **CSC 201**

Machine organisation and low-level programming; advanced data structures and data abstraction; object oriented principles; advanced programming concepts. The practical work covers low and high-level imperative programming and design principles.

### **CSC 202**

Object oriented programming; designing for Windows systems; database theory and query languages; theoretical foundations of computing; modelling. The practical work covers the use of software engineering techniques, object oriented application design, and database design and query.

### **Third-year level courses in Computer Science**

There are two third-year courses in Computer Science. CSC 301 is normally held in the first semester and CSC 302 in the second semester, but the department reserves the right to offer them in either semester, according to timetable constraints. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course CSC 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Computer Science (CSC 2) and in Discrete Mathematics (MAT 102 or MAT 1E2) is required before a student may register for CSC 301 or CSC 302.

The third-year of Computer Science is devoted to systems programming and systems analysis.

### **CSC 301**

Data communications and computer networks; theory and implementation of computer languages; formal aspects of Computer Science. Practical work covers these aspects of systems programming, and includes an exercise in maintaining a large system.

### **CSC 302**

Object oriented analysis and design; functional programming; the theory and practice of operating systems. Practical work covers these aspects of systems programming and systems analysis.

### **Computer Science Honours**

The course consists of a selection of six topics and a large project, or eight topics and a minor project. To this selection is added a compulsory module in project management and corporate communications, and a portfolio of practical assignments.

The course work comprises the advanced treatment of an approved selection from the following list of topics (not all topics are offered in every calendar year): Distributed multimedia; Java programming for multimedia; computer graphics and virtual reality; networks and data communications; distributed and

parallel processing; computer music networks; computer based education; artificial intelligence; advanced computer architecture; microcomputer hardware and interfacing; operating system design; systems analysis and design methodologies; functional programming; real-time programming; data abstraction; modelling; formal aspects of computer science; compiler theory and construction.

At the discretion of the Head of Department, the course may include topics from Electronics, Information Systems, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Mathematical Statistics, or any other disciplines approved by the Head of Department.

### **MSc and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Current areas of specialisation are distributed multimedia; graphics and virtual reality; computer music networks; data communications; distributed processing.

### **MSc degree in Applied Computer Science \***

\* This degree is not offered at present.

This is a one-year course open to candidates holding the BSc (Honours) degree, or its equivalent. Applications may be considered from candidates holding the BSc degree who have a minimum of three years relevant experience.

The degree is taken by a combination of seminars, essays, practical work and projects. A dissertation on

a topic selected in consultation with the course leader must be submitted before the appointed date in January of the year following the course.

The course is designed to cover areas of practical application in the computer industry. Visits to installations using particular applications and in-house courses by visiting experts in the application areas form an integral part of the course.

Approximately 15 weeks are devoted to seminars, course work and on-site investigations. The remainder of the year is devoted to the dissertation.

### **Postgraduate Diploma in Computer Science (DipC&IS(PG)) \***

\* This Diploma is not currently offered

The Department offers a one-year Postgraduate Diploma in Computer Science, which is open to candidates transferring from other tertiary institutions who wish to undertake postgraduate study at Rhodes University. Such candidates should have an initial degree in Computer Science, Information Systems, or in a subject with a similar course content, but for which the degree structure is substantially different from the requirement for normal entry into the Honours programme at Rhodes University (for example, students from Technikons holding Bachelor of Technology degrees). The course comprises selected topics from the senior undergraduate and Honours programme, and is tailored towards individual candidates' previous experience and interests. Further details are available from the Head of Department on request.

## DRAMA

### Professor & Head of Department

GE Gordon, BA(Hons)(Natal), MA (CNAAGreat Britain)

### Associate Professor

AF Buckland, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturer

JR Osborne, BA(Hons) (Natal), LRAM (Lond), MA (Rhodes)

### Lecturers

FE Reardon, BA(Free State), BA(Hons)(Cape Town),

MA(UNISA)

ML Carclin, BJourn, BA(Hons), MA, HDE(Rhodes), MA (SOAS, London)

Drama is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Drama courses are designed to give students as wide an experience as possible of all elements of the theatre. Skills and knowledge of the theatre are tested in practical classes and in public performance. It is compulsory for students to take part in the dramatic activities of the Department as required. As the Department is relatively small there is ample opportunity for performance and backstage experience.

Professional theatre practitioners are periodically invited to contribute to this programme. The Department hosts the acclaimed *The First Physical Theatre Company* the *Ilitha Arts Education Project* and the *FNB Vita Dance Umdudo*. It is also involved in a variety of community interaction projects and participates extensively in the National Festival of the Arts, regional Schools Festivals and the national Schools Festival.

### Drama 1

#### Theatre Studies, Theory:

A study of significant developments and current directions in the theatre using playtexts, theatre history, theories of performance, and visual documentation.

**Theatre Studies, Practical:** Communication Skills, Group Drama, and Movement Studies.

### Drama 2

#### Theatre Studies, Theory:

A chronological study of significant developments in theatre and performance, including historical studies, non-literary traditions, playtexts, current theatre

trends, design and dance traditions.

#### Theatre Studies, Practical:

Communication Skills, Physical Theatre, The Acting Experience, Educational Drama and Theatre, and Theatre Design.

### Drama 3

#### Theatre Studies, Theory:

The thematic study of significant developments in twentieth century theatre including historical studies, developments in the related arts, playtexts, contemporary theories of theatre, theatre design, and dance theatre.

#### Theatre Studies, Practical:

##### Section A (Compulsory):

Communication Skills and Physical Theatre.

##### Section B (Specialist options):

Two of the following: Acting, Dance Repertory, Educational Drama and Theatre, Theatre Design, Introduction to Directing in the Theatre, Mime, Stage Management, Theatre Crafts, and Theatre Design.

Any other practical approved by the Head of Department.

#### Drama Honours Course

Candidates are required to select five papers in consultation with the Head of Department. Paper 1 in Group A is compulsory. A student must choose a combination of papers which meets the theoretical weighting required by the Faculty.

##### Group A

**Paper 1 Theatre Studies (compulsory).**

**Paper 2 Dramatic Literature.**

**Paper 3 Theatre in South Africa.**

**Paper 4 Theatre History.**

**Examination: one written paper of three hours.**

##### Group B

**Paper 5 Dance Culture and Education.**

**Paper 6 Voice and Speech Studies.**

**Paper 7 Educational Drama and Theatre.**

**Paper 8 Directing.**

**Paper 9 Choreography.**

**Paper 10 Creative Writing for the Theatre.**

**Paper 11 Physical Theatre.**

**Paper 12 Theatre Design.**

**Paper 13 Mime.**

**Examination: One written paper of three hours, one practical examination.**

##### Group C

**Paper 14 Acting.**

**Examination: an extended essay on a prescribed topic and a practical project or projects.**

**Paper 15 Any other paper approved by the Head of Department.**

**NB** No combination which allows the practical work to exceed 40% will be permitted. Not all options are offered in any one academic year.

#### **Master's Degree**

The Master's degree may be taken either by a combination of coursework and short thesis, or by thesis only, in consultation with the Head of Department.

#### **Group A**

Contemporary Performance Studies, Dance History, Dance Studies, Educational Drama and Theatre, Theatre in Africa, 20<sup>th</sup> Century Theatre Studies: Literature and History.

Any other paper approved by the Head of Department.

#### **Group B**

Choreography for the Theatre, Creative Writing for the Theatre, Design for the Theatre, Directing for the Theatre, Educational Drama and Theatre.

Candidates for the MA by coursework and short thesis will write a three-hour paper on the two selected options in Group A. In Group B, candidates will be required to present a fully-realised practical project.

**NB** Not all options are offered in any one year.

#### **Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies \***

Candidates registered for the master's degree by coursework and thesis and who have successfully completed the coursework components from Group A and Group B, may exit from the master's degree and obtain the Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies.

\* Subject to Ministerial approval.

## **ECONOMIC & MANAGEMENT SCIENCES (INVESTEC SCHOOL OF)**

**Director, Investec School of Economic & Management Sciences**

GE Staude, PhD(Rhodes), MBA(Cranfield), UED(Rhodes)

## **ECONOMICS AND ECONOMIC HISTORY**

#### **Professor & Head of Department**

H Nel, BCom, HEd(UOFS), DCom(UPE)

#### **Professor**

GG Antrobus, MSc(Agric)(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Associate Professor**

ACM Webb, PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Senior Lecturer**

To be appointed

#### **Lecturers**

DJ Mather, MSc(Rhodes)

DCA Fryer, MSc(Natal)

NS Cattaneo, MSc (Rhodes)

To be appointed

#### **Junior Lecturer**

J Snowball, BCom(Hons) (Rhodes)

P Kimemia, BCom (Hons) (Rhodes)

#### **East London Campus**

#### **Senior Lecturer**

A Tsegaye, BA(AddisAbaba), MA, PhD(Kent)

#### **Lecturers**

RA Stuart, BCom(Hons) (Rhodes), MSc (Economics)

(Glasgow), AIBS

To be appointed

#### **Academic Development Programme**

L Shange, BCom (Hons) (UDW)

#### **ECONOMICS**

Economics is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Humanities and Science. One, or in some cases two, courses in Economics are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education and Law. Post graduate studies in Economics are available through honours, masters and doctoral degrees.

**Economics 1** consists of TWO one-credit courses (1 per semester):

## ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - ECONOMICS & ECONOMIC HISTORY

| CODE    | COURSE         | CREDIT | SEMESTER OFFERED |
|---------|----------------|--------|------------------|
| ECO 101 | Microeconomics | 1.00   | 1                |
| ECO 102 | Macroeconomics | 1.00   | 2                |

**Economics 2** consists of FOUR half-credit course modules (2 per semester):

| CODE    | MODULE                                       | CREDIT | SEMESTER OFFERED |
|---------|--|--------|------------------|
| ECO 211 | Macroeconomic Theory                         | 0.50   | 1                |
| ECO 212 | Macroeconomic Applications and Policy Issues | 0.50   | 1                |
| ECO 213 | Microeconomic Theory                         | 0.50   | 2                |
| ECO 214 | Microeconomic Applications                   | 0.50   | 2                |

**Economics 3** consists of FOUR half-credit course modules (normally two per semester) from the following list:

| CODE    | MODULE                                     | CREDIT          | SEMESTER OFFERED |
|---------|--|-----------------|------------------|
| ECO 311 | Micro & Macroeconomic Theory (compulsory)  | 0.50            | 1                |
| ECO 312 | International Trade Theory & Policy        | 0.50            | 2                |
| ECO 313 | Public Finance                             | 0.50            | 1                |
| ECO 314 | Economic History                           | 0.50            | 2                |
| ECO 315 | Econometrics                               | 0.50            | 1                |
| ECO 316 | Money, Banking & International Finance     | 0.50            | 2                |
| ECO 317 | Environmental Economics                    | 0.50            | 2                |
| ECO 318 | Mathematical Economics                     | 0.50            | 1                |
| ECO 319 | Any other paper approved by the Department | <u>0.50</u>     |                  |
|         |  | 4 x 0.50 = 2.00 |                  |

**Economics 3B** consists of TWO half-credit course modules (normally one per semester) from the list under Economics 3. Students registered for both Economics 3 and Economics 3B would take 6 course modules (three per semester) in total.

Due to timetabling constraints, students would not normally be able to take both ECO 314 and ECO 317.

Econometrics is strongly recommended for students planning to do honours. The department reserves the right to offer second and third year course modules in either Semester 1 or Semester 2 and to withdraw any of the third-year modules.

### Admission Prerequisites

| Course                        | Admission prerequisite                   |
|-------------------------------|--|
| ECO 211,212,213,214           | Economics 1 or ECO101 & ECO 102          |
| ECO 311,312,313,315, 316, 318 | Economics 2 or ECO 211 & 212 & 213 & 214 |
| ECO 314,317                   | Economics 1 or ECO 101 & 102             |

In addition to the above admission prerequisites, students are normally only allowed to register for

third-year course modules after successful completion of a total of 14 semester credits.

**Economics Honours** consists of a research project plus EIGHT course modules from the following:

### Compulsory Modules

| CODE    | MODULE                 | CREDIT |
|---------|------------------------|--------|
| ECO 401 | Research project       | 0.20   |
| ECO 402 | Mathematical Economics | 0.10   |
| ECO 403 | Macroeconomics         | 0.10   |
| ECO 404 | Econometrics           | 0.10   |
| ECO 405 | Monetary Economics     | 0.10   |

### ELECTIVE MODULES

FOUR modules are selected from the following list:

| CODE    | MODULE                                     | CREDIT                     |
|---------|--|----------------------------|
| ECO 406 | Growth and Technology                      | 0.10                       |
| ECO 407 | Financial Economics                        | 0.10                       |
| ECO 408 | Labour Economics                           | 0.10                       |
| ECO 409 | Development Economics                      | 0.10                       |
| ECO 410 | Environmental & Resource Economics         | 0.10                       |
| ECO 411 | Capita Selecta from Economic History       | 0.10                       |
| ECO 412 | International Finance                      | 0.10                       |
| ECO 413 | Contemporary International Trade Policy    | 0.10                       |
| ECO 414 | Derivative Financial Instruments           | 0.10                       |
| ECO 415 | Public Finance                             | 0.10                       |
| ECO 416 | Industrial Organisation                    | 0.10                       |
| ECO 417 | Any other paper approved by the Department | <u>0.10</u>                |
|         |  | 1 x 0.20 + 8 x 0.10 = 1.00 |

**NB** Not all the above courses will be offered in any one year.

TWO compulsory and TWO elective modules will normally be taken per semester. Examinations are written in June and November. The research project is completed over the whole year and should be handed in by 1 October in order to be examined in November.

A student is permitted to take a paper from another department and to the maximum weight of 0.2.

### Interdisciplinary Honours Degree in Development Studies.

The degree consists of FOUR papers and a long research essay from participating departments.

**MASTERS DEGREE IN ECONOMICS**

**MASTERS DEGREE BY DISSERTATION ONLY**

This option is available to students wishing to pursue a clearly defined field of research and where such students have the ability to work independently. The degree consists of:

| <i>CODE</i> | <i>MODULE</i>  | <i>CREDIT</i> |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| ECO 501     | A dissertation | 1             |

**MASTERS DEGREE IN FINANCIAL MARKETS BY COURSEWORK AND DISSERTATION (with effect from 2001)**

This degree is aimed specifically at a specialised career in the financial sector/banking. A minimum registration of five students is normally required for the degree to be offered.

The course modules are structured with the above career in mind and are all compulsory. The degree consists of:

| <i>CODE</i> | <i>MODULE</i>                              | <i>CREDIT</i>              |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|
| ECO 502     | Dissertation                               | 0,40                       |
| ECO 503     | Banking and International Finance          | 0,10                       |
| ECO 504     | Monetary Policy                            | 0,10                       |
| ECO 505     | Financial Economic Theory                  | 0,10                       |
| ECO 506     | Derivative Instruments                     | 0,10                       |
| ECO 507     | Public Finance                             | 0,10                       |
| ECO 508     | Any other paper approved by the Department | 0,10                       |
|             |  | 1 x 0,50 + 5 x 0,10 = 1,00 |

**DOCTORAL DEGREE**

A PhD degree may be taken by research thesis. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record, an acceptable research proposal and the availability of expertise in the department to supervise the project.

**EDUCATION** (See also under *Primary Education*)

**Associate Professor & Head of Department**

GJ Euvrard, MA, HDE(Rhodes), BEd, DLitt et Phil (UNISA), Couns.Psychol.

**Professor**

PR Irwin, BA(Hons), UED, MEd(Natal),DEd(UNISA)

**Associate Professors**

CA Hodgkinson, BA, HDE (PG) (SP)(Rhodes), BEd(Witwatersrand), MEd(CAI), PhD(Pretoria)

H van der Mescht, BA (Hons)(UPE), UED (UNISA), MA, PhD(Rhodes)

**Associate Professor & Murray & Roberts Chair of Environmental Education**

E Janse van Rensburg, MMedSc(UOVS), MEd (Environmental Education), PhD (Rhodes)

**Senior Lecturer**

J Kuiper, PhD(Free University, Amsterdam)

**Lecturers**

G Bolt, BSc, UED(Rhodes), BSc(Hons)(CapeTown), MSc (Natal), DSE(RE) (UNISA)

S-A Robertson, BA, HDE(PG)Prim. DipPersMan. MEd (Rhodes)

M Schäfer, BSc.(Witwatersrand), HdipEd, BEd (Rhodes)

UA van Harmelen, TTD (Witwatersrand), BA(UNISA), BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

PD Wilmot, BA, HDE, MEd(Rhodes)

CKO Smith, BA(Hons), HDE(Stell), BTh. BEd(UNISA), PhD(Oregon)

**Senior Research Officer (English Second Language)**

SR Murray, BA(Hons)(Lancaster), PGCE (Leicester), MA(Reading), DipAppLing (Fort Hare)

**Research & Administrative Officer (M&R Chair EE)**

NP Jenkin, BA(Rhodes), BA(Hons)(CapeTown)

**Senior Lecturer (Goldfields Environmental Education Service Centre)**

H Lotz, BPrimEd(JP)(UPE), BEd, DEd(Stell)

**East London Campus**

**Senior Lecturer**

C Zinn, BA(Hons), HDE (Cape Town), TESOL (Iowa), DEd (Harvard)

The central aim in the professional preparation of students in the Faculty of Education is to develop critical, reflective practitioners who have the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context.

**CERTIFICATE IN ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION**

An introductory exploration of the theories of education, communication, conservation and

development which inform environmental education practice. Four themes are covered in workshops, tutorials and four assignments. The themes are:

- \* the environment and environment crisis;
- \* environmental education as a response to the environment crisis.
- \* trends and patterns in environmental education, linked to theories of learning, teaching and evaluation.
- \* project and resource development.

Assignments involve individual and group work, written essays, presentations and producing an environmental education resource or project. Students are encouraged to link assignments to existing professional interests.

### **FURTHER DIPLOMAS IN EDUCATION**

Further Diplomas in Education (FDE's) are offered to provide for the following identified needs:

- \* re-education of already qualified teachers/educators to teach in disciplines in which they were not originally qualified;
- \* to equip selected teachers for posts in management and administration of education and other specialised fields of practice;
- \* to equip teachers to provide for the specialised needs of pupils;
- \* to equip teachers with a knowledge of contemporary developments in education and appropriate teaching strategies.

### **FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Grades 1-6**

This course is intended for teachers in schools, college lecturers, and department of education personnel. The aim of the course is to develop the teaching and learning skills of teachers in order to enhance their contribution to mathematics education at the primary level (foundation and intermediate phases). The course focuses on subject content, teaching methodology and management so that candidates are well prepared to implement curriculum reform in their schools. As a specialist course in primary mathematics this course strives to produce leaders in mathematics education, and at the same time offers career paths for teachers who are willing classroom practitioners. Five subjects are studied in this course:

- \* Teaching Mathematics
- \* Mathematics Education

- \* Research in Mathematics Education
  - \* Curriculum Studies in Mathematics Education 1
  - \* Curriculum Studies in Mathematics Education 2
- The course is designed to equip key teachers with the essential skills and abilities for delivering workshops to fellow teachers in home regions.

### **FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION) Grades 7-12**

This course is designed for teachers who are presently teaching mathematics although not qualified to teach it. Five subjects are studied in this course:

- \* Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 1
- \* Curriculum Studies: Mathematics Education 2
- \* Mathematics
- \* Technology Education in Mathematics Education
- \* Research in the classroom practice of Mathematics Teaching

This course has a balance between *methodology* and *content*. The approach is holistic in nature and reinforces the notion that mathematics is a dynamic, problem-solving activity that is fundamental to critical thinking, creativity and growth.

### **FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (SCIENCE EDUCATION)**

This course is designed for teachers who are presently teaching science although not qualified to teach it. The diploma will consist of the following courses:

- \* Science Education Methods 1
- \* Science Education Methods 2
- \* Teaching and Learning of Physical Science
- \* Teaching and Learning of Biology
- \* Basic Mathematics

This course is taught in a fully integrated manner with a strong emphasis on the close interrelationship between theory and practical application. The course will focus on science education as it is promoted by Curriculum 2005.

### **FURTHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (TECHNOLOGY EDUCATION)**

The diploma will consist of the following courses:

- \* Technology Education 1
- \* Technology Education 2
- \* Science
- \* Mathematics
- \* Education Practice and Theory

The course is taught in a fully integrated manner with



a strong emphasis on the close interrelationship between theory and practical application. Computer use and applications are an integral part of the course. A key feature of the course is the development of skills and competencies of the learners through practical, activity-based tasks and projects.

### **HIGHER DIPLOMA IN EDUCATION (POSTGRADUATE)**

*(for Secondary School Teachers)*

Our aim in the professional preparation of our students is to develop critical, reflective practitioners with the capacity and the will to act as agents of appropriate change in the southern African context.

The course consists of three major components:

#### **1. EDUCATIONAL STUDIES**

- \* aspects of the interaction and interrelationships among pupils, teachers and the school;
- \* lesson preparation, teaching strategies, objectives, motivation, questioning techniques;
- \* assessment, cognition and problem-solving, children's learning, classroom interaction, education as a philosophical concept, language across the curriculum, extra-mural activities;
- \* historical and contemporary aspects of South African education;
- \* computer literacy;
- \* environmental education.

The course will include work from the philosophy, psychology and sociology of education.

#### **2. TEACHING METHOD COURSES**

A broad range of teaching courses are offered, depending on demand. These include Accounting, Afrikaans, Biblical Studies, Biology, Commerce (including Economics), Computer Studies, English First Language, English Second Language, French, General Science, Geography, German, Guidance and Counselling, History, Latin, Mathematics, Music, Physical Education, Physical Science, Speech and Drama, and Xhosa.

Each course aims to prepare prospective teachers to be able to teach a subject competently in a variety of situations. Students develop a critical understanding of the curriculum and its philosophical underpinnings, and learn how to implement it in a practical and reflective manner. In particular, students are encouraged to become innovative and inspirational educational leaders and models.

### **TEACHING PRACTICE**

Students spend the equivalent of a school term as fully integrated members of a school's staff. As such they become fully involved in the academic, cultural, sporting and administrative activities of the particular institution, and so experience a complete immersion into what it means to be a practising professional.

### **LANGUAGE ENDORSEMENTS**

Teacher-education diplomas must give some indication of the ability of the holder to use any of the official languages of South Africa as a medium of instruction. Opportunities are given during the HDE year for students to obtain such endorsements in English, Afrikaans and Xhosa.

### **BACHELOR OF EDUCATION FOUNDATION PROGRAMME**

The foundation programme comprises three "strand" courses: Philosophy in Education, Psychology in Education and Sociology of Education. Although each constitutes a course in its own right they are presented in an integrated format.

#### **Philosophy in Education**

The central focus of the course is on theory informing practice in education. This course therefore does not focus on any one philosophy of education, rather it takes a critical stance in reviewing those philosophies of education that have shaped and continue to shape the thinking and practice of education in a national and global context.

Within this focus the following are integral dynamics:

- \* curriculum planning, development and implementation;
- \* the role and value of philosophy in education;
- \* a critical evaluation and analysis of current educational issues;
- \* the teacher as researcher.

#### **Psychology in Education**

This course focuses on theories of learning, cognition and the role played by teachers and significant others and the implication these have for classroom practice. Of particular concern are the theories of learning that have influenced past and current curricula in national and global contexts. This course is closely linked to the epistemological dimension of the philosophy in education course.

#### **Sociology of Education**

This course focuses on the analysis of the central concern of sociologists of education, namely, the

problem of differential educational provision and attainment. In this context the focus will fall upon a number of issues in terms of their implications for educational provision and attainment, *inter alia*, social class, ethnicity, gender, language curriculum and teacher socialisation, the link between education and the workplace, and the link between education and development.

### **ELECTIVE PROGRAMME**

These options may not all be offered in any given year. Further options may be offered.

#### **Curriculum Theory**

The course aims:

- \* to provide a perspective on the curriculum by surveying its underlying philosophical, psychological, sociological, historical and practical assumptions;
- \* to provide a means of analysing the essential impact of the curriculum;
- \* to develop principles of procedure for curricular action;
- \* and to provide a foundation for further study at MEd level of a particular aspect of the curriculum in a school subject.

The course will focus on the values, beliefs and some aspects of culture underlying the school curriculum; as well as issues in curriculum design, including a consideration of contrasting models of curriculum design, curriculum evaluation and the rhetoric and reality of curriculum innovation.

#### **Educational Computing**

This course aims to promote the computer as an educational medium throughout the school/college/technikon curriculum and to ensure its effective use for educational purposes. It is assumed that students electing to study this course will have a basic computing background and access to a computer. The course will comprise six main components:

- \* a theory of educational computing;
- \* basic computing knowledge;
- \* the use of the computer as a tool across the curriculum;
- \* the use of the computer as a tutor across the curriculum; the use of the computer as a communication mechanism and research tool;
- \* introducing a computing system into the school environment.

#### **Educational Leadership and Management**

The course is designed to introduce students to basic management principles and models, and their applicability to primary and secondary education in southern Africa. Aimed at the practising educator who occupies (or is professionally ready to occupy) a promotion post at a school, the course will provide a framework within which educationally proven leadership and management may be executed. Emphasis on leadership process learning will ensure an equitable weighting of theory and practice. Successful completion of this component will provide a foundation for Educational Leadership and Management research at Master's level.

#### **Environmental Education**

This course aims to provide an introduction to the praxis of environmental education as the concept is understood internationally and in southern Africa at the turn of the century. The course will focus on:

- \* historical perspectives;
- \* concept analysis;
- \* the application of educational theory to the interaction of ecological, social, economic and political dimensions of the environment;
- \* environmental education in teacher education;
- \* current research developments.

#### **History of Education and Comparative Education**

This course is an introduction to comparative education and its relationship to educational history, sociology and philosophy and includes a study of aims, sociological background, administration and educational changes in two countries selected from the United Kingdom, France, West Germany, Russia, the United States of America and in southern Africa. These two subjects may be offered either as separate courses or as a combined course depending upon availability of staff.

#### **Mathematics Education**

This course is designed to enable teachers and educational managers and planners to reflect upon their experience in the teaching of mathematics, and to engage in current national and international debates in the field of mathematics curriculum design; theories of teaching and learning in the field of mathematics; technology and mathematics education; and sociopolitical and cultural aspects of mathematics education. The course incorporates an introduction to, and some initial practice in, mathematics education research.

The course will serve as a platform upon which more

advanced work, at the Master's level, can be built. Candidates wishing to register for this course will be expected to have taught mathematics at any level of the formal educational system for at least two years.

### **Multicultural Education**

This course is intended for teachers and teacher educators at all levels of education. It seeks to explore and attempts to counterbalance the historical circumstances that, despite southern Africa's incredibly diverse cultural and ethnic composition, education has foremost been an essentially *monoracial*, and often *monocultural* experience, in which western Eurocentric conceptions of teaching, learning curriculum design, and teaching resources predominate.

The course aims to assist educators to respond positively to cultural diversity by providing an avenue through which to inform and enhance their insights into, understanding of, and capacity to implement an multicultural approach in whatever professional arena it is that they operate.

### **Primary Education**

The aim of the course is to deepen professional understanding of the primary phase of education through scrutiny of emerging issues from a rigorous theoretical perspective. Major areas of focus will include the aims of primary education, approaches to teaching at the primary level, and analysis of the primary curriculum and its development.

### **Science Education**

This course aims to provide the participant with the necessary theoretical and practical frameworks relating to science education, to become an independent and critical implementor and developer of effective science education. Aspects such as practical work, continuous evaluation, constructivist science education, computer enhanced science learning and outcomes based learning will be dealt with. An introduction to evaluating and performing research in the field of science education will also form part of the course. As such, the course will lay a foundation upon which work towards a Master's degree can be built.

### **Research Methods and Interpretation**

This course has two major aims: an introduction to what research in education is theoretically about; and an introduction to the practical skills and ideas which are needed to be an effective practitioner, user and interpreter of educational research. Theoretical and practical aspects are closely integrated, focusing on

the nature of research, research traditions and methods, data collection and analysis, critical evaluation, and presentation of research findings.

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH)**

The degree consists of coursework and examination, and a thesis, or coursework, examination and research projects. It is also expected that a paper will be prepared for publication. All candidates for the degree are required to attend a course in research methodology aimed at preparing them to conduct a research programme and analyse and report the results. Exemptions may be considered if candidates have previously completed a similar course.

The degree runs over a two year cycle. However, some courses allow candidates to complete all requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. The normal pattern, however, is for candidates to study part-time, completing the coursework in the first year of the two year cycle and the thesis or research projects in the second year. Specialist coursework directions in which the Master of Education by coursework and thesis can be taken are detailed below.

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (BIOLOGY EDUCATION)**

This course is designed to provide those interested in biology education - college lecturers, subject advisors and practising teachers - with the opportunity to investigate current trends and developments in a variety of areas. The course will be based within the principles of critical thinking, sustainability and empowerment and will focus on areas such as curriculum development and implementation, the implementation of environment education and professional development of teachers.

### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY for EDUCATION)**

The course is designed to provide practitioners in the fields of education, training and development with a theoretical background to and practical application of the use of information technology for educational purposes. The course will be of particular relevance to practising teachers, subject advisors, college lecturers, technikon lecturers, university lecturers, human resources practitioners and adult basic education practitioners. The course explores the use

of information technology for enhancing and will cover aspects such as:

- \* determining which computer and telecommunication technologies can be used to support learning;
- \* current and influential learning theories underpinning the use of technology for enhanced learning;
- \* analysing, designing, developing, implementing and evaluating technology enhanced programs;
- \* researching how information technology can support learning.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (EDUCATIONAL LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT)**

This degree is offered by full thesis or by coursework and research, either full or part time. It will be of interest and benefit to all educators, especially those who occupy or who aspire to promotion posts. An interactive approach is adopted for the coursework degree, that requires in-depth and critical reading of current organisation change, leadership and management theory. This, together with students' prior experience and learning, forms the basis of a course designed to enhance students' leadership and management praxis.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENGLISH SECOND LANGUAGE)**

This course relates the practice of second language teaching to theory and research in its fields of second language acquisition and bilingualism. It has strong curriculum and research methodology components.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION)**

The course is designed to lead practising educators in a range of fields towards an informed opinion and critical awareness of environmental education and its application. It includes relevant theory from education and the environmental sciences; national and international perspectives on environmental education; local and global environmental concerns; an evaluative dimension and a strong research component.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (GEOGRAPHY EDUCATION)**

This course is designed to provide those interested in geography education - college lecturers, subject

advisors and practising teachers - with the opportunity to investigate current trends and developments in a variety of areas. The course will be based within the principles of critical thinking, sustainability and empowerment and will focus on areas such as curriculum development and implementation, the implementation of environment education and professional development of teachers.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (GUIDANCE AND COUNSELLING)**

The course aims at a thorough understanding of the major approaches to Guidance and counselling, as well as competent practical ability in these fields.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (MATHEMATICS EDUCATION)**

The course is designed to provide practising teachers and educational planners and administrators with the opportunity to investigate areas of current interest and development in mathematics education. The course includes a study of aspects of the philosophy of mathematics, developments in the understanding of children's learning in mathematics, curriculum development and other topics of interest.

#### **MASTER OF EDUCATION (SCIENCE EDUCATION)**

Professionals in the field of science education, such as teachers, will be given the opportunity to critically rethink and analyse their work environment by following a course in which theory and practice are strongly linked. The participants will be exposed to a variety of current theoretical frameworks - in particular those of relevance to science education - in the areas of philosophy of education, teaching strategies, learning theories, curriculum issues (including assessment) and research. The course aims to provide a basis from which research enterprise in science education can be developed. The research, ideally, will focus on issues in the participants' daily professional work, aiming at developing a richer understanding of it and identifying possible ways of stimulating developments and implementing changes. Candidates can focus on the following areas: physics, chemistry, biology, technology education or science education in a more general sense.

## OTHER OPTIONS

Other coursework/thesis options for the master's degree which the Department of Education has offered and can offer from time to time, depending on demand and the availability of staff, are in the following subject areas: Afrikaans; English, First Language; History.

## MASTER OF EDUCATION (RESEARCH ONLY)

## DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF LITERATURE

See General Rules.

## ENGLISH

### Professor & Head of Department

J S Gouws, MA(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)

### Professor

M van W Smith, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA, MLitt(Oxon),  
PhD(Rhodes)

### HA Molteno Professor of English

PS Walters, PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturers

RF Hall, MA(Rhodes), MPhil(Oxon) PhD(Natal)

WS Jacobson, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Birmingham)

DC Bunyan, BA(CapeTown), MLitt(Durham),

MPhil(Oxon), PhD (Rhodes)

DGN Cornwell, PhD(Rhodes)

MM Beard, MA, HDipLib(Rhodes), PhD(Natal)

### Lecturers

D Wylie, PhD(Rhodes)

To be appointed

### Honorary Fellow

FG Butler, MA(UNISA), MA(Oxon), DLitt(Natal),

DLitt(Witwatersrand), DLitt et Phil(UNISA)

### East London Campus

### Lecturer

To be appointed

English is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. One, or in some cases two, courses in English are allowed as credits for degree/diploma/certificate curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Education, Law or Science. English in Africa is a second year, non-initial course.

*See the Faculty of Humanities Regulations for subjects allowed as prerequisites to English in Africa.*

### English 1

The course offers two routes, English 1 and English 1A. Students following the English 1 route take the

following papers:

**Paper 1** Introduction to the study of prose fiction.

**Paper 2** Introduction to the study of dramatic literature.

**Paper 3** The reading and study of poetry: a general introduction to the nature and methods of poetic discourse, followed by a study of selected poetry.

*Students following the English 1A route do the following papers: Paper 1 and Paper 2 (above).*

**Paper 4** Reading and composition: an introduction to reading, analytical and writing skills, based on the study of a wide range of contemporary writing in English.

### English 2

Students proceeding from English 1, or English 1A with the permission of the Head of the Department, choose four of the following papers (2 per semester):

**Paper 1** Renaissance Literature

**Paper 2** Romantic and Victorian Poetry

**Paper 3** Modernism

**Paper 4** Postcolonial Literature

**Paper 5** The Language of Literature

The following course is offered only at the East London Campus.

### English Language and Literature 1

The course consists of two half-credits. Each half-credit comprises two papers.

**Paper 1** Introduction to non-literary narrative

**Paper 2** Introduction to literary narrative

**Paper 3** Introduction to drama and the language of drama

**Paper 4** Introduction to poetry and poetic language

Students passing the East London courses and wishing to continue with their studies in English in Grahamstown may proceed to English 2 only with the permission of the Head of the Department of English.

### **Combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2**

Candidates who have passed English 1 and Linguistics 1 may take a combined second-year course (ENG 2 and Ling 202) leading to the combined third-year course. Subject to the permission of the Head of Department, ENG 2 will consist of any two of the five papers offered at second-year level. Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English 3 or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects in the second and third years.

### **Applied English Studies Programme 2**

In order to follow the Applied English Studies Programme students who have passed both English 1 and English Language and Linguistics 1 may take ENG 2 (Paper 5 *Language of Literature* and one other paper) and LING 202 (Papers 3 and 4). Students who have passed English 1A will require the permission of the English Department to proceed with this programme.

Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English and/or English Language and Linguistics as separate subjects in the second or third years.

Students registered for Applied English Studies 2 or the combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2 will write one paper from each department in each semester.

### **English 3**

Candidates may proceed to English 3 from English 2, or, with the permission of the Head of Department, from English in Africa or Modern Fiction.

Students doing Modern Fiction are not normally admitted to English 3 without a final mark of at least 70%.

Candidates who have passed the second year of the Applied English Studies Programme (ENG 202 and LING 202) may, with the permission of the Head of Department, proceed to English 3.

Candidates are required to write four papers (2 per semester) and may, in addition, be required to write an extended essay either as part of one of the four papers, or in addition to the four papers. In exceptional circumstances a student may be permitted to write a research essay in place of one of the four papers. The papers are to be selected from

the following list.

*The full range of papers will not be offered in any particular year. The choice of papers is subject to availability and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Some papers, or selections from groups of papers, may be compulsory.*

- Paper 1** Literature and Teaching
- Paper 2** Literary Theory
- Paper 3** Shakespeare
- Paper 4** Renaissance Literature
- Paper 5** Eighteenth Century Literature
- Paper 6** The English Novel
- Paper 7** Southern African Literature
- Paper 8** American Literature
- Paper 9** New Literatures in English
- Paper 10** Contemporary Literature
- Paper 11** Any other topic
- Paper 12** Any other topic

### **Applied English Studies Programme 3**

In order to follow the Applied English Studies Programme, students who have completed LING 202 and ENG 2 may take LING 302 (Papers 3 and 4) and ENG 3 (Paper 1 and another paper taken from Papers 2 to 12 offered in English 3, subject to the approval of the Head of Department. They will also be required to write an extended essay on either language or literature.

### **Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3**

Candidates who have passed English 2 and Linguistics 2, or combined English 2 and English Language and Linguistics 2, may take a combined major in English and Linguistics. They may take two papers from the Linguistics Programme (LING 303), two papers selected from Papers 1 to 12 in the Literature Programme (ENG 3), and will be required to write an extended essay on either language or literature. Students would, in addition, register for another major.

Candidates who follow the Applied English Studies Programme or Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 may not, in addition, take English 3 or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects.

*Students registered for Applied English Studies 3 or the Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 programme will write one paper from*



*each department in each semester.*

### **English in Africa**

This course is available to students in their second or third year of study (see Section H.2, Faculty of Humanities Regulations). English in Africa offers, through the study of selected texts, a general survey of the literature in English of sub-Saharan Africa. Although most of the set texts are post-colonial novels and stories, the course includes an introduction to traditional and modern oral literature. Students who successfully complete the course may, at the Head of Department's discretion, proceed to English 3.

**Paper 1:** Oral and West African literature.

**Paper 2:** East and southern African literature.

### **English Honours**

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty Honours courses may be offered in (a) English *or* (b) English in combination with Honours courses offered by other departments (see Regulation H.21).

Students may choose, subject to the approval of the Head of Department, five papers from the following:

**Paper 1** Literary Theory.

**Paper 2** Old English Literature.

**Paper 3** Medieval Literature.

**Paper 4** Elizabethan Literature.

**Paper 5** 17th Century Literature.

**Paper 6** 18th Century Literature.

**Paper 7** Romantic Literature.

**Paper 8** Victorian Literature.

**Paper 9** Modern Literature.

**Paper 10** American Literature.

**Paper 11** Contemporary Literature.

**Paper 12** African Literature in English.

**Paper 13** South African Literature in English.

**Paper 14** Gender Studies.

**Paper 15** Postcoloniality and post-colonial discourse.

**Paper 16** Special authors, periods or topics to be announced from time to time.

Candidates may include in their selection one paper chosen from another Honours course in the Humanities Faculty, subject to the approval of the respective Heads of Department.

The full range of papers will not necessarily be offered in any particular year. Intending Honours students should consult the Head of the Department about available options.

Subject to the approval of the Head of the Department, a candidate may choose to submit a research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above examination papers.

The attention of prospective candidates is also drawn to the separate entry on Interdisciplinary Honours degrees for further papers that may be offered by or in conjunction with the Department of English.

### **Master's Degree**

This degree is taken either by examination or by a thesis, or by a combination of the two, as recommended by the Head of the Department. (*see General Regulations G.18 to G.25*)

Candidates *may* be required to take a course in Bibliography and Research Methods during their first term of study.

### **Modern Fiction**

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE &amp; LINGUISTICS

**Professor & Head of Department**

VA de Klerk, MA(Rhodes), HED (UNISA), PhD(Cape Town)

**Professor**

GP Barkhuizen, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Essex), HDE(Rhodes), DEd(Columbia)

**Lecturers**

HJ Alferts, BA(Natal), BA(Hons)(Bophuthatswana), MEd(Rhodes)

A van der Spuy, BA(Hons)(Witwatersrand), MA(UNISA)

SA Hunt, BJourn, BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

**Junior Lecturers**

PM Niven, BA (Hatal), BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

To be appointed

**Honorary Research Associate**

J Branford, BA(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

The object of courses in English Language and Linguistics is to develop the student's understanding of language systems and behaviour in the context of human communication and society. The focus, particularly in Course 1, is upon English in the South African context, though there are units involving other languages in Courses 2 and 3. Linguistics is an important component in the study of people and their culture, and of potential interest to students planning Arts, Social Science or Law degrees, as well as of practical value to those specifically intending to qualify as language teachers. English Language and Linguistics is a three-year major subject. Entrance to the course is open to all students in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce.

**English Language and Linguistics 1**

This course consists of the two half-credit courses **ENGLING101** and **ENGLING102**. **ENGLING101** (one three-hour paper) focuses on an introduction to the systems of sound (phonetics) and meaning (semantics) of language, explores the social aspects of language through a component on language variation, and includes a component on the acquisition of language and issues in language education.

**ENGLING102** (one three-hour paper) includes a description of the structure (syntax) of language and a component on conversation analysis. The course includes a brief descriptive introduction to Japanese

(or another appropriate foreign language), and analyses of a wide range of texts.

**English Language and Linguistics 1A & B**

The full first-year course English Language and Linguistics 1 is divided into two half-credit foundation courses: Linguistics 1A (to be taken in the first year) and a further half-credit course, Linguistics 1B (to be taken in the second year of study). Students who pass both components may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 2. The course requires set readings and attendance at one lecture and two small-group seminars each week. Essays and tests, a three hour exam in June and a three hour exam in November will form the basis for assessment.

*Only offered if at least 10 students are registered for the course.*

**English Language for Academic Purposes**

This is a one-year initial course. It aims to enable students to function effectively within an English-medium academic environment by developing their language and thinking skills and broadening the knowledge requisite for academic success. Course size is limited as the emphasis is on practical individual development, and most meetings take the form of tutorials. The course will be examined in two 3-hour papers. The course may not be taken with more than two other courses. (See also Regulation H.13(2)).

*Admission to English Language for Academic Purposes is limited to first-year students entering university for the first time.*

**English Language and Linguistics 2**

Students who have passed **ENGLING 101** and **ENGLING 102**, either individually, or on aggregate, may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 2. The course consists of the two half-credit courses **ENGLING201** and **ENGLING202**. The course is divided between a focus on linguistic systems (syntax, semantics, phonetics and phonology) and sociolinguistic and psycholinguistic issues involved in communication and teaching. It includes sections on language change and on sign language (the language of the deaf).

**ENGLING201** first semester (two two-hour papers)

**Paper 1:** Language change; Psycholinguistics.

**Paper 2:** Syntax; Sociolinguistics

**ENGLING202** second semester (two two-hour papers)



**Paper 3:** Phonetics and phonology; Sign Language.

**Paper 4:** Semantics; Language teaching

### Applied English Studies

In order to follow the programme in Applied English Studies, students who have completed English Language and Linguistics 1 register for APPENG 201 (Papers 2 and 4 of Linguistics 2) and APPENG 202 (papers 2 and 4 of English 2). In their third year, students may take Papers 2 and 4 of Linguistics 3 (= APPENG301) and ENG302 (= APPENG302) (*see entry under English*). They are also required to write an extended essay on a research topic in either language or literature.

*Students registered for Applied English Studies or the Combined English 3 and English Language and Linguistics 3 programme will write one paper from each department in each semester.*

### English Language and Linguistics 3

Students who have passed ENGLING201 and ENGLING202 may proceed to English Language and Linguistics 3. The course consists of the two half-credit courses **ENGLING301** and **ENGLING302**. The course is divided between a description of linguistic systems and issues in applied linguistics. The systems component includes topics on syntax, semantics and phonetics/phonology, and a language-description course in Russian. Applied topics include discourse analysis, sociolinguistic issues, linguistic pathologies and issues in language teaching.

**ENGLING301** first semester (two three-hour papers)

Paper 1: Syntax; Critical semantics

Paper 2: Sociolinguistics; Psycholinguistics

**ENGLING302** second semester (two three-hour papers)

Paper 3: Phonology; Comparative Linguistics

Paper 4: Discourse Analysis; Language teaching

Students are also required to write an extended essay on a research topic.

### Combined Linguistics 3 and English 3

Candidates who have passed Linguistics 2 and English 2 may choose to do a combined major in English and Linguistics (COMENG 301 & 302). They may take any two papers from the Linguistics programme and two papers selected from papers 1 to 7 in the English 3 programme, and write an extended essay from either linguistics or literature. Students

would, in addition, register for a second major.

Candidates who follow this programme may not, in addition, take English 3 and/or English Language and Linguistics 3 as separate subjects.

### Professional Communication

The Professional Communication course is a one-semester course offered in the first semester. Students attend three classes every week. The course aims to improve the oral, written and small-group communication skills of students, and focuses on communication within the commercial and professional world. Some theoretical background will be given, but the bulk of the course is experiential and practical, and students are expected to participate in all activities. The course is intended for Commerce students who are in at least their third academic year. If space is available, students from other Faculties who are in their third year may also be admitted.

### Postgraduate programmes in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

There are a number of options for postgraduate studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies, including Honours, Master's and PhD degrees. Some of these options can be taken on either a full-time or part-time basis, and at Master's level the options include degrees by thesis only or by coursework and thesis. The following coursework modules are offered at Honours and Master's degree levels.

#### Coursework modules

#### Group 1 (offered every year subject to availability of staff)

Module 1: syntax

Module 2: phonology

Module 3: semantics

Module 4: translation theory and practice

Module 5: language ecology in South Africa

#### Group 2 (offered every year)

Module 6: general linguistics

Module 7: sociolinguistics

Module 8: curriculum theory and practice

Module 9: special topic (eg text linguistics, world Englishes, language and the Media)

#### Group 3 (offered in even years, eg 2000)

Module 10: language acquisition and learning

Module 11: language and mind

Module 12: intercultural communication

**Group 4 (offered in odd years, eg 2001)**

Module 13: issues in language education

Module 14: literacy

Module 15: language and gender

Modules passed at the honours degree level may not be repeated at Master's degree level.

In terms of assessment, all modules carry equal weight, and are assessed by assignments and examinations. Examinations will be written at the end of the semester in which modules were taught.

**Research modules**

Module 16: research essay

Module 17: advanced research essay

Module 18: research methodology

**Postgraduate Diploma in English Language Teaching**

The entry requirement for the course is any Bachelor's degree subject to the approval of the Head of Department (BA, BCom, BFA, BJourn, BMus, BSocSc or BSc), with the exception of students who have majored in Linguistics. Students who have credits in Linguistics will be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department. The postgraduate diploma in English Language Teaching is a one-year full-time course, or (in special circumstances) it may be taken part-time over two years. The course aims to provide graduates with the theoretical knowledge and the skills, methods and techniques necessary to be effective English teachers in English Second Language and multilingual classrooms in South Africa. The curriculum combines components from the undergraduate programme in English Language and Linguistics with modules from the programme for Postgraduate Studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies.

**From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 1:**

*BOTH of the following modules*

Language Variation ; Language in Childhood and Education

**From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 2:**

*ONE of the following modules*

Language Change ; Syntax (the functional approach)

**From the programme for English Language and Linguistics 3:**

*ONE of the following modules*

Psycholinguistics ; Sociolinguistics ; Language Description

**From the programme for Postgraduate Studies in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies:**

*Module 6: General Linguistics ; Module 8: Curriculum Theory and Practice*

In addition, all students must spend 2 weeks observing and/or teaching in schools or NGOs during the year.

**B. Honours**

The aim of the honours programme is to provide students with the option of specialising in either the theoretical or the applied aspects of the central disciplines of linguistics, or taking a course which balances both aspects. The modules offer the opportunity for a specialised academic and professional training for those graduates planning a career in language, such as second-language teaching, course-writing, policy-making, literacy, translating, etc.

**B1. Honours in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies**

Entry to the Honours programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires a first degree in Linguistics or cognate discipline. Students in the Honours programme must complete research Module 16 and any four coursework modules (ie from Modules 1 - 15). Non-linguistics majors will be required to take Module 6 and certain other modules may not be available to them.

**Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language**

This diploma offers an alternative exit point for candidates registered for the Coursework Master of Arts (English Second Language). Those candidates who successfully complete the coursework component of the Master of Arts degree but who do not complete the dissertation may apply for the award of the diploma.

**Honours in English Language Teaching**

The course aims to give teachers with professional qualifications, or graduates planning a professional career in language teaching, a specialised academic and professional training in English Language

Teaching as an applied discipline. Entry to the course requires a first degree in Linguistics or cognate discipline or a Higher Diploma in Education or its equivalent.

Coursework includes: Module 6\*; Module 8; Either Module 10 or Module 13 (depending on the year); Research Module 16; One additional module.

\*Students who have already studied linguistics formally would choose a different module or an approved paper from another Honours course.

### C. Master's Degrees

#### C.1 Master of Arts in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies

Entry into the Master's programme in Linguistics and Applied Language Studies requires either:

- a. an Honours degree in English Language Teaching or Linguistics
- b. an Honours degree in a cognate discipline subject to the approval of the Head of Department
- c. a Bachelor of Education degree (BED graduates will normally be required to take Module 6 if a coursework option is chosen, and certain other modules may not be available to them).

Three structures are possible in the Master's degree:

##### i. Master of Arts by thesis

This is a research degree, which is governed by the general regulations for Master's degrees in the University. Full-time candidates can complete the requirements for the degree within one year, and part-time candidates can complete the requirements in two years.

##### ii. Master of Arts by coursework and thesis

The degree can be completed on a full-time basis over one year, or part-time over two years, and consists of both coursework and a thesis. Coursework includes four modules chosen from the list of coursework modules (ie Modules 1 - 15), and research module 18. Students who have not studied linguistics formally will be required to take Module 6.

The thesis involves independent research supervised by a member of the department.

Part-time candidates complete the coursework in the first year of study and the thesis in the second year. Full-time candidates can complete both coursework and the thesis in one year.

#### C.2 Master of Arts in English Second Language by coursework and thesis

The degree consists of coursework and examination, and a thesis, and runs over a two-year cycle with coursework being offered only in alternate years (the even-numbered years, e.g. 1998, 2000). There is no intake in odd-numbered years. Full-time candidates can complete all the requirements for the award of the degree within one year of full-time study. However, the normal pattern is for candidates to study part-time, completing the coursework in the first year of the cycle and the thesis in the second year. All candidates are required to attend a course in research methodology (Module 18) aimed at preparing them to conduct a research project and analyse and report the results. Other modules in this course are concerned with theory and research into second-language learning and their application to second-language teaching. The degree is offered in collaboration with members of the Faculty of Education.

Those candidates who successfully complete the coursework component of the Master of Arts degree but do not complete the dissertation may apply for the award of the **Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language**.

#### Alternative entry requirements for Master of Arts by coursework and thesis

It is possible to register for the **Master of Arts by coursework and thesis** immediately after a first degree in Linguistics or a cognate discipline. Candidates without a linguistics major will be required to take Module 6, and certain other modules may not be available to them.

The degree can be completed in a minimum of two year's study. It can also be completed on a part-time basis over a longer period. Coursework comprises eight modules chosen from the list of coursework modules (ie Modules 1 - 15), and research Modules 16 and 18. The thesis involves independent research supervised by a member of the Department.

### D. Doctoral Degrees

Students are encouraged to proceed from the Master's degree to the Doctoral degree, which can be done by thesis only in the Department.

## ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE PROGRAMME

### Associate Professor & Head of Programme

C Fabricius, BSc(Hons)(Pretoria), MSc(Witwatersrand), PhD(Cape Town)

*Environmental Science* (ENV) is a three-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BEcon, BJourn and BA, subject to the conditions specified below.

The programme takes a multi-disciplinary approach to sustainable environmental management, and aims to attract students from a variety of academic disciplines. Candidates who wish to major in Environmental Science should, however, structure their degrees around a specific sub-discipline of Environmental Science, for example biological resources, earth resources, water resources, environmental policy, environmental economics, or people and the environment. Their choice of additional subjects at the second and third level should thus reflect a specific focus.

To major in Environmental Science a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: One of ANT 1, BIO 1, BOT 1, GOG 1, GLG 1 or ZOO 1; ENV 201; ENV 202, ENV 302; one of BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one additional course module, selected in consultation with the Heads of Economics and Environmental Science), ENA 301, GOG 301 or ZOO 301. Note that a student who majors in Environmental Science and one of Anthropology, Botany, Economics, Entomology, Geography or Zoology may not count BIO 301, ECL 301, ECO 301, ENA 301, GOG 301 or ZOO 301 as a constituent credit of both major subjects; furthermore, depending on the choice of third-year course to complement ENV 302, students may also have to satisfy other prerequisites. See Rule S.23.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/academic/environmentalscience/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### Recommended curricula

The following are examples only. Not all the options and possible subject combinations are covered, and

curricula are subject to timetable constraints. Students with particular interests are encouraged to discuss other possible course combinations with the Head of Environmental Science.

Where both semesters of a year course are recommended, the subject is indicated by its year number only, e.g. ENV 2 instead of ENV 201 and 202.

Curricula could, for example, be structured around one of the following sub-disciplines:

#### 1. *Biological resources*

Year 1: CHE 1; ZOO 1; BOT 1; either a) GOG 1, b) GLG 1 c) STA 110 and CSC 101, or d) STA 110 and MAT 101 (MAT 1C).

Year 2: ENV 2; two of BOT 2, ENT 2, ICH 2, MIC 2 or ZOO 2.

Year 3: ENV 302; one additional approved 3rd year semester course; and one of BOT 3, ENT 3, ICH 3, MIC or ZOO 3 depending on the choice of second year subjects.

#### 2. *Earth resources*

Year 1: BOT 1; CHE 1; GOG 1; GLG 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; GLG 2; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 302; GOG 301; GLG 3.

#### 3. *Water resources*

Year 1: CHE 1; GLG 1; GOG 1; BOT 1 or ZOO 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; one of GLG 2 or GOG 2; and one of BOT 2, ZOO 2 or ENT 2.

Year 3: ENV 302; one of ZOO 301, BIO 301, ECL 301 or GOG 301; and one of GLG 3 or GOG 3.

#### 4. *People and the environment*

Year 1: ANT 1; ZOO 1; BOT 1; GOG 1.

Year 2: ENV 2; ANT 2; ECO 1; GOG 2.

Year 3: ENV 302; ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one other course module); one of ANT 3 or GOG 3.

#### 5. *Environmental Economics*

See the BEcon calendar entry under the Faculty of Commerce.

### Second-year level courses in Environmental Science

There are two second-year level courses in Environmental Science. ENV 201 is normally taught in the first semester and ENV 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in

Environmental Science must obtain credit in both ENV 201 and ENV 202; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in either Anthropology (ANT 1), Biology (BIO 1), Botany (BOT 1), Geography (GOG 1), Geology (GLG 1) or Zoology (ZOO 1) is required before a student may register for ENV 201 or ENV 202. Adequate performance in ENV 201 is required before such a student may register for ENV 202.

### **ENV 201 (Foundations of Environmental Science)**

The course consists of two components: Four integrated modules (approximately 60% of the course); and four elective modules, of which two should be selected (approximately 40% of the course). Integrated modules: integrated environmental systems; sustainable natural resource use; financial and non-financial benefits from the environment; sustainable land management. Specialist elective modules: either two modules with a natural science focus (e.g. chemical cycles in nature; plant-animal interactions) or two modules with a social science focus (e.g. culture and the environment; environment and development). Practicals: interaction between social, economic and natural components of the environment; environmental systems. Students will be required to visit field sites during a limited number of weekends as part of their practicals.

### **ENV 202 (Community-based Natural Resource Management)**

This course focuses on resource management at the scale of a household, village, town, farm or protected area and on sustainable rural livelihoods. The theory of community-based natural resource management and methodologies for local-level environmental assessment are taught. Practicals: Introduction to Sustainability Assessment and Environmental Impact Assessment. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends.

### **Third-year level courses in Environmental Science**

There is one third-year course in Environmental Science. ENV 302 is normally held in the second semester. Students who wish to major in

Environmental Science must obtain credit in both ENV 302 and another approved third year semester-credit course chosen from BIO 301, ECO 301 (ECO 317 plus one additional course module, selected in consultation with the Heads of Economics and Environmental Science), ENA 301 (Environmental Anthropology), ECL 301, GOG 301 or ZOO 301. However, no aggregation of credit is possible, and no supplementary examinations will be offered. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Environmental Science (ENV 201 and ENV 202) is required before a student may register for ENV 302. Concurrent registration is not allowed for second-year and third-year courses in Environmental Science. In addition, candidates must have satisfied the prerequisites for ENV 201 and ENV 202, and for the other approved third-year course making up the major itself.

### **ENV 302**

The course concentrates on environmental issues at the Global, Sub-regional and National levels. Content: global biological and earth resources; environmental issues affecting Sub-Saharan Africa and other developing regions; population growth, poverty and the environment; international conventions; environmental policies that work. Practicals: Introduction to Integrated Environmental Management; environmental evaluation on a regional scale; landscape ecology. Field visits may take place over a limited number of weekends as part of the practical course.

### **Environmental Science Honours**

The Honours course in Environmental Science is designed as an interdisciplinary programme. It consists of two core Environmental Science courses and two existing Honours courses taught as components of degree curricula in select Departments. Tuition is through lectures, tutorials, seminars and practical work. Students are encouraged to work in multi-disciplinary teams to and address practical, 'real-life' issues in their projects and seminars. A limited number of students are selected annually on the basis of academic excellence, previous experience and qualifications in environment-related fields, group diversity and staff

availability. Candidates must be in possession of an appropriate Bachelors degree, majoring in at least one of Anthropology, Botany, Environmental Science, Geography, Geology, Ichthyology, Microbiology or Zoology. Preference will be given to applicants with undergraduate Environmental Science qualifications and/or with applicable practical experience.

Students may be required to attend blocks of lectures and practicals before the official commencement of the first term (typically the last week of January or first week of February) and during vacations. Candidates should consult the Head of Environmental Science in this regard before registering for the course.

#### **Environmental Science courses:**

Two core Environmental Science courses need to be taken. These consist of seminars, tutorials and lectures in: Sustainable Use of Natural Resources; and Environmental Impact Assessment procedures.

#### **Courses in other Departments:**

Two other specialist courses from a recommended and approved list need to be taken. These include: Aquatic Ecology (Zoology/IWR); Water Resources Management (Geography/IWR); Geomorphology of the River Environment (Geography); Land Degradation and Rehabilitation (Geography); Applied Hydrology (Geography/IWR); Geographic Information Systems (Geography); The Geography of Economic Development (Geography); The Rural Environment (Geography); Geohydrology (Geology); Soils and Land Use (Botany); Disturbance Ecology (Zoology/Botany); Marine Biology (Zoology); Tourism (Anthropology); Environmental and Medicinal Anthropology (Anthropology); Resettlement and Land Reform (Anthropology); Industrial Ecology (Microbiology). In addition to the above, a course in either scientific writing or research methodology should be taken. Additional suitable courses may be available at the time of registration, and prospective candidates should consult with the Head of Environmental Science and the Heads of Departments concerned as to the availability and choice of courses.

Students will also undertake a research project, related to their selected courses.

#### **Master's and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc, MA and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

An Environmental Science Master's degree is mainly by dissertation but has two additional components: a seminar series which is run and presented by the students, and a course in research methodologies. It has four distinguishing characteristics:

- the research and dissertation deals with integrative ecological, social and economic systems;
- it incorporates the concept of sustainability: sustainable use and management of the environment and sustainable living;
- it addresses issues affecting people's quality of life and their livelihoods;
- it is inter-disciplinary, i.e. it is not confined to a single academic discipline, and is often linked to a broader programme with several related projects.

#### **The following candidates are eligible to register:**

- applicants in possession of an Honours degree in Environmental Science;
- applicants with a good Honours degree in any other discipline which has covered either biological, physical, human or economic aspects of the environment;
- environmental practitioners with an appropriate Bachelors degree in an environmental discipline, plus a minimum of two years relevant practical experience, at the discretion of the Head of Environmental Science and Senate;
- environmental practitioners without a Bachelors degree, but with 5-10 years in-depth experience and proven achievements and skills in an environmental field, may be admitted as *Ad Eundem Gradum* students at the discretion of the Head of Environmental Science and Senate.

Students also have the option of attending appropriate undergraduate and Honours modules during their period of registration. Part-time students should aim to spend two to four months on campus at the early stage of registration and another two to four months during the final writing-up stage.

## DEPARTMENT OF FINE ART

### Professor & Head of Department

M Haywood, BA(Hons)(CNA), MFA(Northumbria)

### Associate Professors

D Thorburn, MFineArt(Rhodes), Tamarind Professional Printer(New Mexico)

PCJ Oberholzer, Diploma in Graphic Art(Stell), German NatDip in Photography, German Photographic Master's Exam

### Senior Lecturers

EW Verwey, MFineArt, UED(Rhodes)

GP Coutouvidis, BFineArt(Rhodes)

### Lecturers

AM Collins, MFineArt(Rhodes)

M Hipper, BA, BFA(Hons)(Witatersrand), Meisterschuler, Hochschule der Kunste(Berlin)

MJ Smith-Williams, BA(Louisiana), MFA(Notre Dame)

The Department of Fine Art, which is part of the Faculty of Humanities, provides comprehensive tuition in the practical, historical and theoretical aspects of visual art. In addition to being an invaluable education for professional practice, it is also a useful grounding for students planning a career in arts administration, community arts or curation.

For the Rules that apply to Fine Art degrees and diploma, refer to the Faculty of Humanities Rules on page 65 of this Calendar.

## CURRICULUM

### FIRST YEAR

Studio Practice 1

Drawing and introduction to specialist media

Theory of Art 1

### SECOND YEAR

Studio Practice 2

From the second year onwards each student is based in a specialist media area (Painting, Photography, Printmaking, Sculpture) but by arrangement with the appropriate staff, may work across the media areas.

Theory of Art 2

### THIRD YEAR

Studio Practice 3

Theory of Art 3

In years one to three practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by portfolio review.

### FOURTH YEAR

Studio Practice 4

In Year Four practical examination is by an advisory mid-year review and end of year assessment by exhibition and portfolio review.

Theory of Art 4

Detailed information on the Theory of Art syllabus for individual years is available from the Department.

**NOTE:** *Candidates may major in Theory of Art in the BA without doing the practical course.*

## FINE ART OPTIONS FOR BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREES

Students undertaking a BA degree in the Faculty of Humanities may also obtain Fine Art credits by the following routes:

**BA Studio Practice and Theory of Art** may be taken at first and second year level as credits.

To obtain a **Fine Art major** a student must also take either **BA Studio Practice 4** or **Theory of Art 3**. BA Studio Practice 4 comprises 50% Art Theory/History and 50% practical. Theory of Art may be taken as a major subject without the practical component. Credit for BA Studio Practice 1 and 2 will only be given if the corresponding Theory or Art course has been obtained. BA Studio Practice 4 may only be taken if the first- and second-year practical and theory courses have been completed.

The following one-year, single credit subjects may also be studied towards degrees or diplomas in other Departments within the Faculty of Humanities:

### General History of Art

A synopsis of world art, giving a broad outline of the major artistic movements.

### Visual Communications \*

The enhancement of visual literacy through the critical analysis of popular culture (including design,

\* *Not necessarily offered in any one year.*

## DIPLOMA IN FINE ART

The syllabuses for the various subjects taken for the Diploma are the same as for the degree of BFineArt, but students do not require the additional credits listed in the Faculty of Humanities Rules.

### **DEGREE OF MASTER OF FINE ART**

This degree may be taken by either coursework and thesis or by coursework and research essay.

A candidate for the Master of Fine Art Degree must spend at least one year in attendance at the University.

The examination comprises an exhibition of studio work and the presentation of a thesis or research essay.

#### **Practical Section**

An exhibition or installation of work produced since admission to the Master's degree. This should be supplemented by a presentation of sketch books and/or other appropriate evidence of research and development.

#### **Studio Provision**

Under normal circumstances the maximum time for completion of an MFineArt degree is two years full time study; wherever possible individual studios will be provided for this period, but this facility cannot be guaranteed.

#### **Degree by coursework and research essay**

Students who obtain 70%, or more in their final practical examination may enrol for the degree by coursework, whereby 70% of the mark is for practical work and 30% for a research essay. The research essay should not exceed 10 000 words on a topic related to the candidate's practical work; the title of the essay must be approved by the Head of Department.

#### **Degree by coursework and thesis**

A thesis must be submitted for examination, the subject of which has been approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. The thesis should give evidence of independent enquiry and familiarity with the

literature of the candidate's subject.

The final mark for the degree by coursework and thesis comprises 50% for practical work and 50% for the thesis.

The completed thesis or research essay must be handed in at the Faculty Office by the last Friday in October of the final year in order that the Final Practical Exhibition may occur before the end of that year.

**NOTE** *A detailed set of departmental regulations concerning the thesis and the practical work is given to each candidate.*

### **MASTER OF ARTS (Thesis)**

A thesis must be submitted for examination on any approved topic within the fields of History of Art or Art Theory.

**NOTE** *A detailed set of departmental regulations concerning the thesis is given to each candidate.*

### **DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

Reference should be made to the General Regulations for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

In addition to, or in modification of these regulations, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of PhD shall be required to submit a thesis for the approval of the Senate.
2. A thesis may be offered on a subject previously approved by the Senate. This must be a work of historical or theoretical research in Fine Art.
3. No candidate may be admitted who is not already in possession of a Master's Degree in Fine Art or History of Art or any other qualification deemed by the Senate to be equivalent for the purpose of entrance to this degree.



## FRENCH AND ITALIAN STUDIES (SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES)

**Associate Professor and Subject Head**

FE Jaques, MA(Cape Town), PhD(Witwatersrand),  
Licence-ès-lettres (Dijon)

**Lecturer**

J Marsh, BA(Hons), CertEd(Leeds), MA (Cape Town)

**Junior Lecturer**

CJ Cordell, MA (RAU)

French is a three-year major subject which can be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Italian is a one-year non-continuing course not offered at present.

**FRENCH****French Preliminary**

This course is designed to enable students who have not taken French as a matriculation subject to acquire the essential elements of the language and civilisation.

Students who obtain a satisfactory pass in

French 1P may go directly to French 1. In exceptional cases, students may proceed directly to French 2 with the permission of the head of the Division.

**French 101 Practical and Commercial French**

*Prerequisites:* A pass in French in the matriculation examination, an equivalent examination, or a satisfactory pass at French 1P level or GCE "O" level.

*Course outline:* This is a half course offered in the second semester. The module consists of an overview of grammar and an introduction to various practical aspects in French, such as the language of commerce and communications. Emphasis is placed on both written and speaking skills.

**French 1**

*Prerequisites:* A pass in French in the matriculation examination, or an equivalent examination, or a satisfactory pass at French 1P level.

*Course outline:* This course reinforces written language skills through an overview of grammar, a practical language component and translation into both French and English (*thème* and *version*). French literature and culture from the 16th to the 20th century are studied by means of prescribed texts. There is an introduction to literary criticism and essay writing in French. Spoken skills are developed through weekly conversation classes and the oral presentation of textual analysis.

**French 2**

This course further develops written language skills by means of translation and other practical language activities, where the emphasis is on the fields of tourism, commerce and economics. French literature and civilisation from the 17th to the 20th centuries are studied and skills in literary criticism and essay writing further developed. Weekly conversation classes and oral presentation of textual analysis continue.

**French 3**

This course offers advanced translation and further develops practical language skills in the fields of tourism, commerce and economics. French literature and civilisation from the 17th to the 20th century are studied by means of prescribed texts. To develop oral skills, weekly conversation classes are offered and students continue to be trained in the oral presentation of textual analysis.

**Licence ès Lettres (Honours Course)**

L'examen se compose de quatre épreuves écrites et d'une épreuve orale d'une heure.

**Epreuve 1** Thème et version (Le candidat doit obtenir un minimum de 50% dans cette épreuve).

**Epreuves 2 à 4**

Le candidat choisira trois sujets d'étude parmi les auteurs ou les genres datant du moyen âge au vingtième siècle. Le candidat a également la possibilité de choisir une épreuve de français commercial. Ce choix se fera suivant ses intérêts et les spécialités des membres de la Division.

Une dissertation de recherche, dont la longueur ne dépassera pas 10 000 mots, peut se substituer à l'une des épreuves, dans la série 2 à 4.

**Epreuve Orale** Analyse textuelle d'un texte littéraire, classique ou moderne. Exposé critique.

**Maîtrise ès Lettres (MA Course)**

Les candidats pourvus de la Licence ès Lettres (BA Honours) sont admis à se présenter en Linguistique et en Littérature Françaises (MA) sur la recommandation du Directeur de l'Institut d'Etudes Françaises, avec agrément de la Faculté des Lettres et Sciences Sociales, soit

(a) en subissant quatre épreuves écrites et une épreuve orale d'une heure: soit

(b) en soutenant une thèse dont le sujet aura été choisi par le candidat et agréé par la Faculté des

Lettres et Sciences Sociales.

### ITALIAN

**\*Italian 1B** This course is designed to enable students who have not taken Italian as a matriculation subject to acquire the essential elements of the language, literature and civilization. The course includes translation from Italian into English and English into Italian, reading, conversation and a general outline of literature and civilisation.

*\*Not offered at present.*

### MODERN FICTION

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

### GERMAN STUDIES

#### Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

GALW Krueger, PhD(Rhodes), Diptransl (UnISA)

#### Professor

DW Welz, Dr Phil (Hamburg), DLitt(Pretoria)

#### Lecturer

U Weber, Staatsexamen(Bonn)

German Foreign Language is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. In the literature sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English though texts have to be read and studied in German. One, or in some cases two courses in German Foreign Language are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law.

Students who have proceeded to German Foreign Language 3 will be given the option to sit an additional examination set by the Goethe Institute in Germany which, if passed, leads to the internationally recognized *Zertifikat Deutsch als Fremdsprache*.

#### German 1 Foreign Language

This is an introductory language and cultural studies ("Landeskunde") course for students who have not

attained a matriculation or equivalent pass in German. Students who pass this course may proceed directly to German 2 Foreign Language.

#### Paper 1 Language

**Paper 2** Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

#### German 2 Foreign Language

**Paper 1** Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

#### Paper 2 Literature

#### Paper 3 Language

#### German 3 Foreign Language and German 3

**Paper 1** Text analysis, translation

**Paper 2** Cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

#### Paper 3 Literature

#### Paper 4 Language

### Honours Course (German Foreign Language and German)

A choice, in consultation with members of staff, of five of the following papers:

**Paper 1** German as a Foreign Language

**Paper 2** Translation practice and methodology

**Paper 3** Diachronic and/or synchronic aspects of German

**Paper 4** German Literature 1750 - 1848

**Paper 5** German Literature 1848 - 1945

**Paper 6** German Literature since 1945

**Papers 7 and 8** Other approved topics

In consultation with members of staff, a candidate may choose to submit a typewritten research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above examination papers.

### Master's Degree or Doctor's Degree

Details are available from members of staff.

### Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

## GEOGRAPHY

### **Associate Professor & Head of Department**

RC Fox, PhD(Strathclyde)

### **Professor**

CA Lewis, BA(Wales), PhD(Ireland)

### **Associate Professor**

KM Rowntree, MSc(Bristol), PhD(Strathclyde)

### **Senior Lecturer**

EL Nel, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes), MA(Witwatersrand), PhD(Rhodes)

### **Junior Lecturer**

GK McGregor, MSc(Rhodes)

### **Research Officers**

ESJ Dollar, MSc(Rhodes)

NMG Motteux, BSocSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

Geography (GOG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn and BSocSc.

Geography is a recommended co-major with Environmental Science (ENV), details of which are given in a separate entry.

To major in Geography, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GOG 101(P); GOG 102(H); GOG 201(P); GOG 202(H); GOG 301; and either GOG 302(H) or GOG 302(P). See Rule S.23.

Two, or in some cases four, Geography semester-credit courses are allowed as credits for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Education.

Geography 1H (Commerce) is a semester-credit course that is allowed for credit in the Faculty of Commerce.

Students are expected to participate in Departmental excursions. Costs are kept as low as possible. Fieldwork, to be carried out during one of the vacations, is compulsory in the third year, and in Honours. Students are encouraged to attend the South African Student Geographical Conference, which is held at a different university each year.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/geography> for further details,

particularly on the contents of courses.

### **First-year level courses in Geography**

There are two independent first-year courses in Geography. GOG 101(P) is normally held in the first semester and GOG 102(H) in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. However, students wishing to major in Geography must normally obtain credit in both components separately. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

These courses provide a sound foundation for the student majoring in Geography as well as a general course for the student studying Geography for one year. Practical and field work is an integral part of both courses. Students who have not studied Geography at school level are welcome to read Geography.

### **GOG 101(P)**

Introduction to Earth Systems. This course introduces the processes that have shaped the earth and its environment over both geological and recent time scales. The three main systems examined are: atmospheric systems; earth history and earth surface processes; ecosystems.

### **GOG 102(H)**

Introduction to Global Development. This course examines the key political, economic, demographic and cultural forces which have shaped the global development process.

### **GOG 1H**

This course (Commerce) is the same as GOG 102(H), save that it has no practical component.

### **Second-year level courses in Geography**

There are two independent second-year courses in Geography. GOG 201(P) is normally held in the first semester and GOG 202(H) in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately

and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GOG 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical work is an integral part of both courses and is related to the relevant lecture courses and to the development of research techniques.

Normally, credit in GOG 101(P) or GOG 102(H) is required before a student may register for GOG 201(P) or GOG 202(H) respectively. At the discretion of the Head of Department, students who have only an aggregate credit in GOG 1 may be allowed to register for these courses.

#### **GOG 201(P)**

Natural Systems: Processes, Resources and Management. This course examines the main processes operating in the physical environment, and the resulting resource base, with particular reference to South Africa.

#### **GOG 202(H)**

Urban and Rural Structures. This course examines the evolution of distinctive urban and rural forms in the core and peripheral regions of the world.

#### **Third-year level courses in Geography**

There are three independent third year courses in Geography. GOG 301 is normally offered in the first semester and GOG 302(P) and GOG 302(H) which are normally offered in the second semester. Students must choose either GOG 302(P) or GOG 302(H) in the second semester. Credit may be obtained separately for the courses offered, but both GOG 301 and either GOG 302(P) or GOG 302(H) must be passed in order to obtain credits for the two-credit course GOG 3.

Normally, credit in both GOG 201(P) and GOG 202(H) is required before a student may register for both components of the third year major course. At the discretion of the Head of Department a student with only an aggregate credit GOG 2 may be allowed to register for GOG 301; students who have credit in GOG 201(P) may be allowed to register for GOG 302(P) and students who have a credit in GOG

201(H) may be allowed to register for GOG 302(H).

#### **GOG 301**

People and the Environment. The aim of the course is to examine, from a number of perspectives, how we can understand, analyse and manage the relationship between people and the environment.

#### **GOG 302(H)**

Regional and Economic Development: Policies and Planning. This course assesses policy and planning approaches to urban, economic and regional development.

#### **GOG 302(P)**

Environment and Process. This course enables students to follow more advanced physical geography such as in Quaternary and fluvial environments.

#### **Geography Honours**

Geography Honours may be read for a BSc(Hons), BA(Hons) or a BSocSc(Hons) degree. Humanities students are reminded of the alternative route to Honours. See Rules H.22(3) and H.22(4).

Students may choose one of four options:

Honours in Geography;

Environmental Water Management (in the Department of Geography);

Landscape Process and Management (in the Department of Geography);

Spatial Development (in the Department of Geography).

In all cases students are required to read four courses, submit a research project and present two seminars during the year.

Geography Honours students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those normally offered by the staff of the Department: Geographical Information Systems, Geomorphology of the River Environment, Quaternary Studies, Land Degradation and Rehabilitation, The Rural Environment, The Geography of Economic Development. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Environmental Water Management students are required to take the Water Resource Management

course. They must also select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: Applied Hydrology, Geomorphology of the River Environment, Geohydrology, Water Quality, Aquatic Ecology, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be water related and approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Landscape Process and Management students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: Geomorphology of the River Environment, Quaternary Studies, Land Degradation and Rehabilitation, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be landscape related and approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Spatial Development students are required to take the Philosophy and Methodology course and select three other courses from those recommended by the Head of Department which normally include: The Rural Environment, The Geography of Economic Development, Geographical Information Systems. The research project must be development related and approved by the Head of Department. The courses offered may be subject to timetable and staffing constraints.

Parts of the Geography degree may be taken in conjunction with courses in other departments. For example, a student could write one paper in Botany or Economics. Where approximately 50% of a student's courses are examined in another department, a joint degree is awarded (for example, Honours in Geography/Geology). Any combined

degree must be agreed to by both Heads of Department concerned, and in the Faculty of Humanities through the Humanities Higher Degree Committee.

### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees**

#### **BA(Hons) in Development Studies**

Each student is required to read four courses, write a dissertation, and present two seminars during the year. At least two of the courses must be chosen from those offered by the Department for the Interdisciplinary Degree in Development Studies: The Geography of Economic Development; Geographical Information Systems; The Rural Environment. The remaining courses must be chosen from those offered by the participating departments after consultation with the Head of the Department of Economics and the Dean of the Faculty.

#### **BA(Hons) in Industrial Society**

Each student is required to read four courses, write a dissertation, and present two seminars during the year. Two of the courses must be those offered by the Department for the Interdisciplinary Degree in Industrial Society: Geography of Economic Development, Geographic Information Systems. The remaining courses must be chosen from those offered by the other participating departments after consultation with the Head of the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology and the Dean of the Faculty.

### **Master's and Doctoral degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, MSocSc and PhD, under the direction of the staff of the Department. The degree of MSc in Hydrology or Geohydrology in the Department of Geography may also be awarded. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

## GEOLOGY

### **Professor & Head of Department**

JS Marsh, PhD(Cape Town)

### **Professor of Geology**

RE Jacob, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Cape Town)

### **Professor of Exploration Geology**

JM Moore, PhD(Cape Town)

### **Senior Lecturer**

E Ferré, PhD(Toulouse)

### **Lecturers**

To be appointed.

### **Research Associates**

HV Eales, PhD(Rhodes), Emeritus Professor

A Rice, DSc(Columbia)

EMW Skinner, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

### **Chamber of Mines Research Fellow**

R Sheets, PhD(Virginia Polytechnic Institute, USA)

### **Rhodes University Post-Doctoral Fellow**

L Ameglio, MSc(Nancy), PhD(Toulouse)

Geology (GLG) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BEcon (Mineral Economics).

Geology is a recommended co-major with other Science majors such as Chemistry, Physics, one of the Mathematical Sciences, Life Sciences, Geography, and Environmental Science.

To major in Geology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: GLG 1 (comprising GLG 101 and GLG 102); GLG 201; GLG 202; GLG 301; GLG 302. Credit is also required in at least two appropriate first-year semester-courses, to be approved by the head of department from amongst those offered in Chemistry (CHE 101, CHE 102), Physics (PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2) and Mathematics (MAT 101, MAT 102, MAT 1E1, MAT 1E2) in their first year of study. Students are strongly advised to include additional courses in these subjects in their curriculum.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Geology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

Field-work is a necessary part of Geology courses and a field course fee is payable annually, or per semester

in GLG 101 and GLG 102.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/geology> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### **First-year level courses in Geology**

There are two independent first-year courses in Geology. GLG 101 is held in the first semester and GLG 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course GLG 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

GLG 101 is a suitable semester-credit for non-science majors, and is not required before a student may register for GLG 102. However, credit in GLG 1 or GLG 102 is required before a student can proceed to any second-year course in Geology.

These courses serve as an introduction to geological aspects of Earth Science and assume no prior background in Geology. Lectures cover the main fields of geology, applied geology and environmental geology, and are supported by relevant practical work. Attendance at scheduled field courses, over one weekend in each semester, is compulsory.

### **Second-year level courses in Geology**

There are two independent second-year courses in Geology. GLG 201 is normally held in the first semester and GLG 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately.

Students who wish to major in Geology must obtain credit in both GLG 201 and GLG 202; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports, collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Geology (GLG 102 or in the aggregate course GLG 1) is required before a student may

register for GLG 201. Attendance in GLG 201 is required before a student may register for GLG 202. Credit is also required in two semester-credits chosen (with the approval of the Head of Department) from courses offered in Chemistry (CHE 101, CHE 102), Physics (PHY 101, PHY 102, PHY 1E1, PHY 1E2) or Mathematics (MAT 101, MAT 1E1, MAT 102, MAT 1E2). Permission may be granted to repeat these courses concurrently with GLG 201 and GLG 202.

### **GLG 201**

This course consists of lectures and associated practical work in the fields of mineralogy, geochemistry and palaeontology.

### **GLG 202**

This course consists of lectures and associated practical work in structural geology and sedimentology. The course includes a compulsory one-week field course in mapping and structural Geology techniques which is normally held in the September vacation.

### **Third-year level courses in Geology**

There are two independent third-year courses in Geology. GLG 301 is normally held in the first semester and GLG 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Geology must obtain credit in both GLG 301 and GLG 302; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars, class tests, and field course reports, collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

A student may not register for GLG 301 before (a) first obtaining credit in at least one second-year Geology course and having adequately performed in the other; (b) first obtaining credit in the compulsory ancillary courses in chemistry or physics or mathematics; and (c) attending GLG 101. Attendance in GLG 301 is required before a student may register for GLG 302.

### **GLG 301**

This course covers the fields of igneous and metamorphic petrology, and comprises lectures, practical work and a long essay. The course includes

a compulsory one-week field course on mapping and stratigraphic techniques, which is normally held in the April vacation.

### **GLG 302**

This course focuses on geodynamics, geophysics and applied aspects of geology such as economic geology and remote sensing, and comprises lectures, practical work and a long essay.

### **Geology Honours**

The course comprises lectures, tutorials, seminars and related practical work. Each student is required to take four courses from a selection offered. Depending on staff availability, courses from the following may be offered: analytical techniques, mineralogy and crystallography; igneous petrology, metamorphic petrology; sedimentology; palaeontology; volcanology; structural geology and geotectonics; economic geology; geohydrology; remote sensing and geographic information systems (GIS). Participation in scheduled field schools is compulsory. The results of a research project, completed during the year, should be submitted in the form of a short thesis. In this connection, prospective candidates should write to the Head of Department for guidance at the time of applying for admission.

### **MSc and PhD Degrees**

The Department pursues an active programme of research into a wide range of problems in Earth Science, leading to the award of the MSc or PhD degree. The degree of MSc or PhD in Hydrology or Geohydrology in the Department of Geology may also be awarded. Students with Honours degrees are encouraged to participate in these research programmes and prepare theses on their research work.

In addition the department offers two professionally-oriented postgraduate courses leading to the award of Master's degrees in Exploration Geology or Economic Geology.

Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. Prospective candidates may write for further details on any of these courses. A detailed booklet on postgraduate courses is available on request.

### **MSc in Exploration Geology**

This advanced course is open to candidates holding the BSc(Hons) degree, or its equivalent. Two to three years' relevant professional experience is an additional recommendation. In exceptional cases only, applications may be considered from candidates who hold a BSc degree and have at least five years' relevant experience.

The course is designed to cover the most important theoretical and practical aspects of the exploration for, and evaluation of, mineral and ground-water resources. Instruction is through the medium of lectures, seminars, directed reading, assignments and practical work led by the staff of the Department, and supported by substantial input from experts drawn from industry and other universities.

Field-work visits to areas of economic mineralisation, and report writing, form integral parts of the course. The evaluation of candidates is based on their written and verbal presentations throughout the course.

Requirements for the award of the degree include the completion of any four modules from those defined below, and the presentation of a report on a topic selected in consultation with the Director of the course. Candidates may complete all requirements for the degree within one year of full-time study, or enrol on a part-time basis over a longer period, not exceeding three years. Each module requires at least 6 weeks of full-time attendance, following which such written reports as are prescribed are to be submitted within a specified period. Individual modules offered in any specific year will be subject to lecturer availability and sufficient demand.

Modules are constituted as follows:

**Module MT:** Classification of ore deposits; ore

petrology; magmatic ore deposits

**Module HS:** Hydrothermal ore deposits; volcanogenic and sedimentary exhalative deposits; sedimentary ore deposits.

**Module EXT:** Exploration techniques, including geochemistry, geophysics and remote sensing.

**Module EVT:** Exploration techniques, including mineral economics, ore reserve estimation, geostatistics and risk analysis.

**Module HYD:** Water chemistry, physical properties of aquifers, groundwater exploration and aquifer testing.

**Module EMM:** Water, soil and atmospheric pollution, minerals-processing pollution, environmental mine management.

Each of the modules includes a field course of approximately two weeks. Areas where these courses are normally conducted include Zimbabwe, Namibia, Mpumalanga, Bushveld Complex, Witwatersrand and Transvaal Basins, and Namaqualand.

### **MSc in Economic Geology**

This course is designed for graduates holding the qualification of BSc(Hons) or equivalent, and lays greater emphasis upon a research thesis than the degree in Exploration Geology. Previous professional experience is not a pre-requisite for admission. The requirements for the degree are the completion of two of the modules listed under the entry above for Exploration Geology, specified parts of other modules (at the discretion of the Director) and the submission of a thesis based on original field or laboratory work on economic geology. Candidates may enrol upon either a full-time basis (in which case a minimum of 12 months should be set aside for completion of the degree) or part-time basis.



## GERMAN STUDIES (SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES)

### Senior Lecturer and Subject Head

GALW Krueger, PhD(Rhodes), Diptransl (UnISA)

### Professor

DW Welz, Dr Phil (Hamburg), DLitt(Pretoria)

### Lecturer

U Weber, Staatsexamen(Bonn)

German Foreign Language is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. In the literature sections the medium of instruction and examining is primarily English though texts have to be read and studied in German. One, or in some cases two courses in German Foreign Language are allowed as credits for degree and diploma curricula in the Faculties of Commerce, Science and Law.

Students who have proceeded to German Foreign Language 3 will be given the option to sit an additional examination set by the Goethe Institute in Germany which, if passed, leads to the internationally recognized *Zertifikat Deutsch als Fremdsprache*.

### German 1 Foreign Language

This is an introductory language and cultural studies ("Landeskunde") course for students who have not attained a matriculation or equivalent pass in German. Students who pass this course may proceed directly to German 2 Foreign Language.

#### Paper 1 Language

**Paper 2** Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

### German 2 Foreign Language

**Paper 1** Text analysis, cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

#### Paper 2 Literature

#### Paper 3 Language

### German 3 Foreign Language and German 3

**Paper 1** Text analysis, translation

**Paper 2** Cultural studies ("Landeskunde")

#### Paper 3 Literature

#### Paper 4 Language

### Honours Course (German Foreign Language and German)

A choice, in consultation with members of staff, of five of the following papers:

**Paper 1** German as a Foreign Language

**Paper 2** Translation practice and methodology

**Paper 3** Diachronic and/or synchronic aspects of German

**Paper 4** German Literature 1750 - 1848

**Paper 5** German Literature 1848 - 1945

**Paper 6** German Literature since 1945

**Papers 7 and 8** Other approved topics

In consultation with members of staff, a candidate may choose to submit a typewritten research essay of not more than 10 000 words in place of one of the above examination papers.

### Master's Degree or Doctor's Degree

Details are available from members of staff.

### Modern Fiction

For a description of this course, see the section on Interdepartmental Studies.

## HISTORY

### Professor & Head of Department

PR Maylam, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), PhD(Queens)

### Associate Professor

JRD Cobbing, BA(Hons)(Lond), PhD(Lancaster)

### Senior Lecturers

JC Wells, BA(Colorado College), MA (Yale), PhD (Columbia)

GF Baines, BA, HED(CapeTown), BA(Hons) (UNISA), MA(Rhodes), PhD(CapeTown)

### East London Campus

#### Senior Lecturer

RCH Shell, BA(Hons)(CapeTown), MA(Rochester), PhD(Yale)

#### Lecturer

KPT Tankard, BA(Hons)(UNISA), STD (Cape Town), BEd, PhD(Rhodes)

**History** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The department offers a set of semester courses (some of which earn six credit points). A student majoring in History is normally expected to obtain twelve credit points in History courses for each year or level of study, but in some instances that requirement can be waived (see below for specific rules). The East London Campus offers only first-level courses. Second- and third-level courses are offered in Grahamstown only.

**Course codes:** The first digit indicates the year or level of study. The fourth digit indicates the number of credit points attached to the course.

### General rules:

(i) Except in the case of first-level courses students must pass each semester course to obtain a credit for that course. For the first level courses the marks are aggregated over the year, so that students who fail either History 101 or 102 but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.

(ii) All final examinations are written at the end of the semester in which the course is offered (i.e. June or November).

(iii) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for second-level courses in History, without having taken either of the first-level courses, or they may register for third-level courses without having taken any first or second-level courses.

(iv) In some instances, with the permission of the two heads of departments concerned, a student majoring in History may be allowed to take a course in another department as part of the History major. This course must be in a history-related field.

### First-level Courses

**History 101-6:** Introduction to African History and Historiography

**History 102-6:** The World crisis and its Historical Origins

(a) Students who fail either History 101 or History 102, but achieve an overall aggregate of 50% or more in both courses, will be deemed to have passed both courses.

(b) Students who fail the History 101 June write-off paper will rewrite the paper in November.

(c) Students may register for History 102 at the beginning of the second semester, without having taken History 101. At the discretion of the head of department such a student may be exempted from History 101 or be required to take History 101 the following year at the same time as History 201.

(d) Students who pass History 101 but fail History 102 and do not achieve an overall aggregate pass may, at the discretion of the head of department, proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 102 concurrently with History 202 in the second semester. Similarly, students who fail History 101 but pass History 102 without achieving an overall aggregate pass may be permitted to proceed to History 201, but would be required to repeat History 101 concurrently with History 201.

### Second-level Courses

**History 202-6:** Themes in Southern African History

**History 201-6:** Twentieth Century World History

(a) Students intending to major in History should normally have passed History 101 and 102 (individually or on aggregate) in order to enter History 201. At the discretion of the head of department such students may proceed to History 201 having passed History 102 but without having taken History 101, but they may be required to take History 101 concurrently with History 201.

(b) Students must achieve a pass mark in each semester course in order to obtain credit (i.e. marks are not aggregated as they are in first year).

(c) Students who fail History 201 with a mark of 40-49% can proceed to History 202, but such students who are majoring in History will be required to repeat History 201 concurrently with their third-level courses. Similarly majoring students who pass History 201 but fail History 202 will be required to repeat History 202 concurrently with third-level courses.

(d) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for History 201 and/or History 202 without having previously taken either first-level courses in History.

### Third-level Courses

**History 301-3** Race, nationalism and ethnicity in twentieth century South Africa

**History 302-3** Demythologising the "mfecane"

**History 303-3** Power and resistance in the Eastern Cape

**History 304-3** Women in southern African history

**History 305-3** Defenders and critics of African colonialism

**History 306-3** Africa in crisis

**History 307-3** Selected themes in British history

**History 308-3** Themes in modern Islamic history

**History 309-3** Social history and styles of rock music

**History 310-3** Oral history

**History 311-3** A specialised course which may be offered in any field depending on student demand and/or the interests of staff members or visiting lecturers.

(a) Students intending to major in History should normally have passed both History 201 and 202 in order to register for third-level courses. Majoring students who have failed either History 201 or History 202 (but not both) may, at the discretion of the head of department, register for third-level courses and repeat the failed second level course concurrently.

(b) Students majoring in History must obtain a pass in each of four third-level courses (marks are not aggregated).

(c) Students who fail one, but no more than one, out of their four third-level courses will be entitled to write a supplementary examination in February.

(d) Students not majoring in History may, with the permission of the head of department, register for one or more third-level courses without any History prerequisites.

### Honours Courses

Students may read for Honours in either History or as part of a combined Honours degree in History and one other subject (see Regulation H.15) or under the regulations of the African Studies Programme (see Interdepartmental Studies). The course is normally entered in the fourth year of study, unless the student opts, with the permission of the Head of Department, to begin the course in the third year in terms of the alternative route (see Regulation H.22(3)).

Students will normally write three papers and a research essay. It may be possible in exceptional cases for students, at the discretion of the head of department, to write a fourth paper instead of the research essay. The three (or four) papers will be written on topics chosen from a range of courses offered by the department. These courses may vary from year to year according to the particular interests of staff and students. The research essay should be a maximum of 15 000 words in length (excluding end matter).

### Interdisciplinary Honours Degree

The History Department offers the following courses as components of various interdisciplinary honours programmes:

Themes in African Women's History (Gender Studies), South African Urban History (Industrial Society), South African Urban Culture (South African Cultural Studies), Oral Studies Methodology (Gender Studies, Development Studies).

### Master's Degree

The requirements for the Master's degree may be met either by writing a thesis or by examination. Students who wish to write a thesis should note that subjects must be approved in advance by the Board of the Faculty of Humanities. Students will work under the supervision of a member of the staff of the Department of History. The choice of subject is not restricted to those based on archival research. Students who wish to take the Master's degree by examination will offer the following:

(a) Two topics for advanced individual study to be selected from fields not previously studied for the Honours degree. These will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of the Department.

(b) A research essay in a cognate field. Candidates must complete and present the research essay within six months of the completion of the written papers.

## HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS (HKE)

### **Professor & Head of Department**

PA Scott, BA(Hons)(Rhodes ), PhD(Stell)

### **Professor**

J Charteris, BA(Rhodes), MSc(Illinois)

### **Senior Lecturer**

BL Mackenzie, MBChB, MMed(Orth)(Pretoria)

### **Lecturers**

C Bojarski, PhD(Rhodes)

SN MacKinnon, BPE(New Brunswick),

MSc(Dalhousie)

### **Junior Lecturers**

C Christie, BA (HMS) (UPE), BSc (MedHons), (Cape Town)

J James, BA (Hons) (Rhodes)

Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom, BJourn and BA. Such a major is designed to provide students with an interdisciplinary academic approach to the analysis of human movement.

Applied Physiology and Anatomy (APA) is a two-semester subject offered at second-year level, and may be taken by second-year students as a subject on its own in the make-up of a degree.

To major in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: HKE 1; HKE 2; HKE 3; APA 2. See Rule S.23.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics 1 is allowed for other degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

The academic base in all three years involves perspectives from four broad areas of study: the biophysical, physiological, psycho-social and conceptual domains. The professional aspects of the programme prepare students for careers in diverse fields including Ergonomics, Sports Science, General Health and Rehabilitation.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/hke/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

### **First-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics**

There are two first-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 101 is held in the first semester and HKE 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

Adequate performance in HKE 101 is required before a student may register for HKE 102.

Participation in a wide variety of laboratory experiences is incorporated into all sections of both semesters.

### **HKE 101**

This course serves to introduce the fundamental concepts upon which the interdisciplinary analysis of human movement is based.

### **HKE 102**

Biomechanical, physiological and psychological perspectives are covered in separate modules, and then integrated to establish an interdisciplinary understanding of "humans-in-motion".

### **Second-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics**

There are two second-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 201 is held in the first semester and HKE 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE 1) is required before a student may register for HKE 201

or HKE 202. Adequate performance in HKE 201 is required before a student may register for HKE 202. Applied Physiology and Anatomy is a required corequisite course for students registered for these courses.

Laboratory practicals complement the theoretical basis of all of these courses, where the use of modern technology in evaluating responses to varying environmental demands will be applied.

#### **HKE 201**

Biomechanics, ergonomics and the statistical analysis of human responses.

#### **HKE 202**

Psychophysiology, human biology and sports traumatology.

#### **Second-year level courses in Applied Physiology and Anatomy**

There are two second-year courses in Applied Physiology and Anatomy. APA 201 is held in the first semester and APA 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course APA 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in HKE 1 is not required before a student may register for APA 201 or APA 202; the courses are open to other second-year students who wish to include courses in Anatomy and Physiology into their degrees. Adequate performance in APA 201 is required before a student may register for APA 202.

#### **APA 201**

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals that focus on the following: The interrelationship between form and function; analysis of human movement in anatomical terms: muscular skeletal kinematics and kinetics; basic physiology of organs and systems.

#### **APA 202**

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals that focus on strength expression; biophysics and physiology of muscle function in humans.

#### **Third-year level courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics**

There are two third-year courses in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics. HKE 301 is held in the first semester and HKE 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course HKE 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics (HKE 2) and in Applied Physiology and Anatomy (at least one of APA 201 and APA 202, and adequate performance in the other) is required before a student may register for HKE 301. Adequate performance in HKE 301 is required before a student may register for HKE 302.

Laboratory technology and practical involvement in experimental procedures relative to human performance assessment form an essential aspect of both courses.

#### **HKE 301**

The course includes psychokinetics, work physiology and the statistical analysis of human responses under varying environmental demands.

#### **HKE 302**

The course focuses on clinical kinesiology, work physiology and ergonomics.

#### **Human Kinetics and Ergonomics Honours**

A compulsory paper on paradigms and research methods in Human Kinetics and Ergonomics is one of four papers written in the course. Other papers offered will depend on the availability of staff, but normally include three from the following: environmental adaptations; ergonomics; occupational stress and performance; ethology of human action; gait analysis and clinical kinesiology. In addition a research project on a topic approved by the Head of the Department is completed during the year. This research project must be handed in at the end of September.

#### **Ergonomics Honours**

A full-time honours course in Ergonomics will be offered from 2000. Theoretical principles and

practical applications in the following areas included in the course: macro ergonomics; human variability; work-space design; environmental influences; personal protective clothing; physical and mental workloads; sociotechnical systems; ergonomic analysis; practical implementation within industry.

### **Master's and Doctoral degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc, MA, and PhD, which involve preparation of a thesis under the supervision of the senior staff of the Department.

Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

## **ICHTHYOLOGY AND FISHERIES SCIENCE**

### **Professor of Fisheries Science & Head of Department**

T Hecht, BSc(UOFS), PhD(UPE)

### **Senior Lecturers**

PJ Britz, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

WHH Sauer, PhD(UPE)

### **Lecturers**

AJ Booth, PhD(Rhodes)

H Kaiser, Dr.agr.(Bonn)

### **Aquaculture Development Officer**

MTT Davies, BSc(Manchester), MSc(Southampton)

The Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science through its activities promotes sustainable utilisation of fish resources and the culture of fish and other aquatic organisms in Africa.

At the undergraduate level the Department offers a four-semester major in Ichthyology, which may be taken as a major subject for the BSc and BJourn degrees.

At at postgraduate level the following degrees are offered: BSc Honours in Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Master of Science and Doctor of Philosophy in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science by research and the preparation of a thesis. From 2002 the Department hopes to offer a Master's degree in Aquaculture by coursework. From time to time the Department offers a one-year Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science. This will not be offered in 2000.

Detailed information on course work and curricula may be obtained from the Head of Department.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/ichthyology/> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Ichthyology (ICH) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Ichthyology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: ZOO 1 or BIO 1; ICH 201; ICH 202; ICH 301; ICH 302; CHE 1; MAT 1C, or MAT 101 and CSC 101, or STA 110 and CSC 101. See Rule S.23.

Undergraduate students in Ichthyology are encouraged to study Management (MAN 101 and MAN 102) and Philosophy of Science (if offered) as credits towards the BSc degree.

### **Second-year level courses in Ichthyology**

There are two independent second-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 201 is held in the first semester and ICH 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Ichthyology must obtain credit in both ICH 201 and ICH 202; and no aggregation of credit is possible. Such students must also obtain credit in ICH 201 before being admitted into ICH 202. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Chemistry (CHE 1) and in Zoology (ZOO 1) or Biology (BIO 1) is required before a student may register for ICH 201 or ICH 202.

### **ICH 201**

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals in fish diversity and habitats, locomotion and buoyancy, sensory systems and communication, food and feeding, introduction to data analysis, experimental

design and scientific writing. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

### **ICH 202**

The course is comprised of lectures and practicals in fisheries, oceanography, physiology, reproduction, early ontogeny and life histories, and applied ichthyology. A field course in ichthyological methods is held in the second semester and all students are required to attend. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course.

### **Third-year level courses in Ichthyology**

There are two independent third-year courses in Ichthyology. ICH 301 is held in the first semester and ICH 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Ichthyology must obtain credit in both ICH 301 and ICH 302; and no aggregation of credit is possible. Such students must also obtain credit in ICH 301 before being admitted into ICH 302. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

Credit in Ichthyology (both ICH 201 and ICH 202) is required before a student may register for ICH 301 or ICH 302. In addition, students wishing to major in Ichthyology are required to have credit in MAT 1C, or MAT 101 and CSC 101, or STA 110 and CSC 101.

### **ICH 301**

The course consists of six modules offered by way of lectures, tutorials and practicals. These cover genetics, evolution, biogeography, fish ecology and life history styles, and behaviour and intermediate data analysis (linked to a mini-project). The writing of essays and presentation of seminars form an integral part of the course.

### **ICH 302**

The course consists of six modules offered by way of lectures, tutorials and practicals. These cover oceanography, limnology, quantitative ecology, conservation and eco-tourism, fisheries economics and applied ichthyology 2. The writing of essays forms an integral part of the course. The ICH 302 examination may include an oral examination at the

discretion of the examiners.

### **Ichthyology and Fisheries Science Honours**

The aim of the Honours degree is to produce free-thinking and critical young scientists capable of performing independent research.

The Honours course is comprised of advanced studies in data analysis, evolution and systematics, speciation, biodiversity, fish biology and ecology, conservation, stock assessment and quantitative fisheries resource management, fisheries oceanography, aquaculture and fisheries economics and an advanced course in scientific writing. There are two field excursions, the first to gain insight and practical experience in field sampling techniques and the second to obtain insight into operational aquaculture ventures. Students are required to undertake a major research project and to submit a report on this topic for the final examination, in a form suitable for publication in a peer-reviewed journal. The course is run on the basis of lectures, tutorials, seminars and extended essays. The examination consists of three theory papers, a practical examination, an oral examination and the project report. Practical and theoretical work done during the year counts towards the final mark.

### **MSc and PhD degrees in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science**

Candidates who wish to register for the MSc degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a four-year BSc degree or BSc Honours degree in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture, Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of the Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

Candidates for the PhD degree in Ichthyology or Fisheries Science must have a Master's degree or equivalent in Ichthyology, Fisheries Science, Aquaculture or Zoology or equivalent (as approved by the Head of Department and the Board of the Faculty of Science).

The degree of MSc or PhD in Ichthyology is awarded for the satisfactory preparation of a thesis based on original research on African fishes (freshwater, estuarine or marine), especially in the classical fields of systematics, morphology, distribution, ecology, behaviour or biology. The PhD degree must make a

substantial contribution towards the advancement of knowledge in the chosen field.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required,

if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes in the Department, and PhD students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as tutors and mentors.

## INFORMATION SYSTEMS

### **Professor & Head of Department**

DA Sewry, PhD(Rhodes), FICSIT, MCSSA

### **Associate Professor**

To be appointed

### **Senior Lecturer**

JB McNeill, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MS(SE)(Monmouth), MCSSA

To be appointed

### **Lecturers**

WA Steppe, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

N Vat, BCom(Hons)(Rhodes)

### **Senior Instructors**

L Palmer, BCom(Rhodes), MCSSA

### **East London Campus**

### **Associate Professor**

RA Roets, BSc(Cape Town), BA(Hons)(UNISA), MSc(London), MEd(Rhodes), MCSSA

### **Lecturer**

JD Roberts, BCom(Rhodes), BCom(Hons)(Cape Town)

### **Instructors**

M Maritz, BCom(Rhodes), MCSSA

D Vlok, BA(Stellenbosch), BA(Hons)(UPE)

Information Systems (INF) is a two-year major subject which is primarily studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. The subject is also studied for the specialist BSc (InfSys) degree in the Faculty of Science.

The courses offered in the Department concentrate on aspects of the development, application and management of Information Systems in organisations and the technology used in these processes. Other topics in the courses include corporate communications, project management and the audit and control of Information Systems. There is an emphasis on computer based information systems, and practical courses include the use of spreadsheets, financial modelling, database, decision support systems, project management tools, computer assisted software engineering, high-level systems construction tools and computer programming. In

addition, various guest lecturers present seminars during the year on a variety of topics relevant to a full grasp of the area of Information Systems.

The management and strategy aspects are well complemented by courses in the Department of Management, while the technical and computer specific aspects are handled in more depth by courses in the Department of Computer Science.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.is.ru.ac.za/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

### **Second-year level courses in Information Systems**

Information Systems 2 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 201 and INF 202.

No supplementary examinations will be offered in either course.

### **INF 201**

Introduction to Information Systems; Corporate Communications; Information Systems Theory; Business Support Systems; Decision Theory; Introduction to Systems Development; Information Systems Analysis; Information Systems Management (Project Management Overview)

The examination for the INF 201 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessments.

### **INF 202**

Data Manipulation; Information Systems Implementation; Information Systems Management (IS Divisions); Procedural Language Concepts; Information Systems Audit and Control.



The examination for the INF 202 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of two hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Outside of examinations there are various other assessments (short presentations, essays, tests, practical assignments, etc.) which will contribute towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessments.

### **Third-year level courses in Information Systems**

Information Systems 3 consists of the two one-credit courses INF 301 and INF 302.

No supplementary examinations will be offered in either course.

#### **INF 301**

Corporate Communications for Information Systems Professionals; Project Management; Object Oriented Concepts; Object Oriented Languages; Advanced Information Systems Theory.

The examination for the INF 301 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Every student is expected to research and submit a written assignment on a specific topic. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

#### **INF 302**

Planning and Business Analysis; Advanced Data Manipulation; Information Systems Management; Information Systems Design; Distributed Computing; Software Quality.

The examination for the INF 302 course consists of not more than two practical examinations of three hours, and one theory examination of three hours. Every student is expected to complete a specific group systems development project. This, in conjunction with other assessments (short presentations, tests, practical assignments, etc.) during the semester, contributes towards a semester class mark which is incorporated into the course assessment.

### **Admission Prerequisites**

INF 201 : credit in CSC 101 (Computer Literacy)  
Candidates deemed to be in their first year of study are not permitted to register for INF 201

INF 202 : subminimum in INF 201

INF 301 : credit in both INF 201 and INF 202

INF 302 : subminimum in INF 301

### **Information Systems Honours**

The Honours course consists of a coursework component and a project component.

#### **Coursework component**

Students must take all the core modules, at least two elective modules, and all supporting modules. In the case of electives, a student may take any equivalently weighted Honours level module or paper from another department, provided that it is approved by the Head of Department, in consultation with the Head of the other department.

Modules offered by the Department include:

Core modules: Information Systems Management; and Information Systems Development.

Elective modules (subject to staff specialisation):  
Distributed Information Systems;

Human-Computer Interaction; Patterns (half-module); and Data Warehousing and Data Mining (half-module).

Supporting modules: Corporate Communications; and Research Methodology.

In addition to the modules listed above, students are required to attend any other activities as may be deemed appropriate by the Head of Department.

#### **Project component**

All students are required to undertake a Research Project in a given area and produce a written report. Additionally, students are required to undertake a major Systems Development Project in which an information system is developed for a client.

### **Master's and Doctoral degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MCom, MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are given in the General Rules.

## INTERDEPARTMENTAL STUDIES

### MODERN FICTION

This is a one year non-initial course, presented by members of various language departments, for students who have already obtained two credits. See also Regulation H.12.(1). As the course is designed primarily to give students of literature a greater appreciation of modern fiction, it is strongly recommended that students taking this course should also enrol for at least one course in a European language other than English or Afrikaans & Nederlands.

Major works of prose fiction written between 1850 and the present are studied in English translation. The course also introduces students to the intellectual and cultural currents within which these works were produced, and to relevant aspects of the structure of fiction. Lists of prescribed texts and recommended reading for the course are available from members of the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies in the School of Languages. MOD 201 is written off in June.

#### MOD 201 (June)

Narrative theory

Text Study

#### MOD 202 (November)

The rise of contemporary fictional forms

Text study

*The order of the two papers (MOD 201 and MOD 202) for Modern Fiction may vary from year to year.*

### AFRICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

In the belief that knowledge of events in Africa is of vital importance to this country, the University offers postgraduate courses in African Studies at Honours, Master's and PhD levels for students wishing to make comparative studies of social, political and economic development in Africa. The approach is essentially interdisciplinary.

#### The Honours Degree

1. Honours curricula proposals must be submitted to the Dean of Humanities for approval through the Co-ordinator for African Studies (Grahamstown Campus), or the Co-ordinator for African Studies (East London Campus), as appropriate. The Co-ordinator for Grahamstown will be elected by the Faculty of Humanities, and will be appointed by the

Director of the East London Campus for East London.

The Honours Degree is a one-year course, the aim of which is to enable students to pursue interrelated or complementary topics from various disciplines in African Studies. The examination normally consists of four papers and a research essay on a topic approved by the Head of the Department within which the essay is to be supervised.

The candidate may be permitted to write a fifth examination paper in place of the research essay. Faculty of Humanities regulations governing research essays (see the note to Regulation H.27) will apply to a research essay in the African Studies Honours degree.

2. Students must write at least two papers (counting the research essay as a paper) in one of the following academic disciplines: African Languages, Anthropology, Economic History, Economics, English, History, Industrial Sociology, Journalism and Media Studies, Psychology, Political Studies, Social Work or Sociology. Both papers must be specifically related to Africa.

Students will not normally be admitted to the Programme unless they satisfy the criteria for admission to the honours programme in which the above two papers are written.

The remaining three papers (or two papers and a research essay) may be chosen from honours courses offered by the participating disciplines noted above, or from any other discipline, provided that:

(a) two papers must be specifically related to Africa, and

(b) the third paper must be sufficiently related to the other four papers to contribute to the overall aim of the Honours Degree in African studies.

(c) The Head of the Department in which the paper is being offered is satisfied that the student has a training adequate to the demands of the paper being offered.

3. The degree will be an honours degree in the principal subject with the words "(African Studies)" added.

#### African Studies components in other curricula

African Studies components are included in the normal curricula in a number of departments, including the Division of African Languages in the School of Languages, Anthropology, Economics and

Economic History, Geography, History, Political Studies and Social Work (East London only). See the relevant department entries for undergraduate and/or postgraduate courses including African Studies components.

The Master's degree is offered by coursework and thesis and by thesis only, and PhD in African Studies is offered by thesis only. However, the African Studies Co-ordinators, with the approval of the Dean, may require Master's or Doctoral candidates to pass relevant courses offered by the University at Honours or Master's level. Master's and PhD candidates in African Studies will be registered in a disciplinary Department.

#### **Honours degree in Human Population Studies \***

\*Subject to Ministerial approval.

Intake into this course is limited and the entire programme will be internship-driven. There are four required papers which includes the dissertation. The fifth paper is an elective. The student enrolled in the Human Population Studies programme will have a broad choice of cross-listed optional courses from which to choose their elective.

An Honours degree in Human Population Studies can only be taken over two years and has a minimum of five papers, including the thesis. The thesis topic must focus on some demographic aspect which has the prior approval of the coordinator of Population Studies (the Director of the Population Research Unit). The student intending to complete the degree will have to take the following papers or satisfy the coordinator that the student has an equivalent course credit with which to substitute a required course.

Required courses for Honours degree

#### **Human Population Studies-Paper 1:**

"An Introduction to Research Methodology": first semester.

The course is based on intensive weekly 2 hour seminars and parallel practical lab sessions. A special feature of the course is one-to-one practical sessions with the PRU unit director, or qualified unit staffers. Encouragement is given to team research. At least one required class project in the course will be entirely team-driven. Students who are ahead help those who might be struggling with an aspect of the course. The underlying principle is that nobody is

left behind. The student will at the end of the course have a practical mastery of such applications as DOS Windows 3.1 and 95, Spreadsheets (Lotus and Quattro Pro), Statistics (SPSSPC, Statgraphics) and Graphics programmes (Harvard Graphics for Windows, Presentations). Such mastery of software will be "outcomes based" and be phased through "real" research projects conducted in the PRU computer lab. The most important aspects of the course will be to expose the student to working examples of research techniques which will empower them to initiate their own research.

#### **Human Population Studies-Paper 2:**

"The Methods and Materials of Demography": second semester.

This course is based on an abridged text which was originally prepared in a two volume version for training in the US Bureau of the Census. Seminar and lab topics will include: sources for demographic analysis, the definition of the census, its function, structure and history. Population size and distribution. The importance of Geographical Information Systems (GIS). Sex and age composition, ethnic classification. Fertility: nuptiality rate, marital characteristics and the family; the measurement of fertility; the importance of the age at first conception; Mortality: the problem of gathering statistics for mortality; the use of the life table. Migration and urbanization. Population projections and forecasting. Some methods of estimation for statistically undeveloped areas.

#### **Population Studies-Paper 3:**

"Population and Resources," second semester.

"Population and Resources" consists of a seminar course considering the impact of demographic change within Africa from the earliest times to the present. It is based on a course developed at Princeton. The course will focus on Sub-Saharan Africa with a special focus on Southern Africa (especially for research projects). The course is designed for those who need to know what issues are relevant in today's world but who do not intend to specialise in demography.

#### **Human Population Studies-paper 4**

"A dissertation on a demographic topic"

The dissertation must reflect methodological innovation with demographic subject matter. The dissertation should also in its findings have some contemporary relevance and possibly form the basis for policy-making in the general field of Population

Studies. The topic has to be validated but not necessarily supervised by the Director of the PRU.

**Elective courses:**

**Human Population Studies-paper 5 (elective)**

The Interdisciplinary programme

Any additional approved course chosen from the Interdisciplinary programme.

Appropriate cross-listed programmes:

African Studies

Development Economics

Development Studies

Information Relations

Information Technology

Psychology

Social Work

Since the interdisciplinary programme changes from year to year, there may be other courses which would fit in with the Population Studies programme with the approval of the Director of the Population Studies Unit.

**Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees**

The University offers a number of interdisciplinary honours degrees which are designed to enable students who have majored in a variety of disciplines to concentrate their studies in relatively new areas of research in which the traditional divide between disciplines is no longer appropriate and in which a multi-disciplinary approach offers a richer understanding of some important topics of intellectual interests. The current programmes are:

Development Studies; Gender Studies; Industrial Relations; Southern African Cultural Studies.

The participating departments and divisions are African Languages (AL); Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies (A&N); Anthropology (A); English (Eng); Economics and Economic History (Econ); Geography (G); History (H); Information Systems (IS); Journalism and Media Studies (J); Law (LW); Linguistics and English Language (L); Management (M); Political Studies (PO); Psychology (P); Social Work (SW); and Sociology and Industrial Sociology (S).

The following papers may be offered by participating departments and divisions in each of the above areas, although it should be noted that not every paper may be on offer every year. (The brackets indicate in which department or division the paper is offered.)

**Development Studies** (administered by the Department of Economics and Economic History)  
Child in Context (P); Development Economics (Econ); Development Studies (S); Economic Geography (G);

Global Commons (PO); Human-Computer Interaction (IS); International Economics (Econ); Literacy: Theory and Development (L); Media and Development (J); Method (H); Methodology (H); Population, Resources and Development (G); Post coloniality and Post-Colonial discourse (Eng and A&N); Psychology and Community (P); Social Policy and Community Development (SW); Resettlement and Land Issues (A); Tourism (A); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course

**Gender Studies** (administered by the Department of Anthropology)

Cultural Studies (J); Feminist Literary Theory (Eng and A&N); Gender Issues (A); Language and Gender (L); Literature and Gender (Eng & A&N); Methodology (H); Social and Political Theory or Freedom and Domination (PO); Social Theory (A); Women and the Law (LW); Women in History (H); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

**Industrial Relations** (administered by the Department of Sociology and Industrial Sociology)  
Critical Human Resource Management (S); Cross-Cultural Communication (L); Economic Geography (G); Geographic Information Systems (G); Industrial Anthropology (A); Industrial Relations (S); International Relations of Regions (PO); Methodology (H); Organisational Behaviour (M); South African Urban History (H); Trade Unions (S); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

**Southern African Cultural Studies** (administered by the Division of Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies)

African Literature (Eng); African Music (A and ILAM); Afrikaans Literature in English Translation (A&N); Contemporary South African Ethnography (A); Cultural Studies (J) or (E); Language in Society and Education (L); Literacy (L); Methodology (H); Post-Colonialism (A&N and Eng); Religion in South Africa (A); Social Theory (S); South African Liter-

ature (A&N and Eng); Urban African Culture (H); Xhosa Literary Studies (AL); A specialised area of study offered by a participating department, relevant to the overall course.

1. Students will be subject to the Regulations for Honours Degrees in the Faculty of Humanities (H.21 to H.28) except that the "alternate route to Honours", provided in H.22(3) shall not be permitted.

2. Students will be required to write five papers, one of which will be a long essay.

3. Although the programmes are administered by different departments, students would register in a department in which they majored and would be required to take two papers (which may include a long essay) in that department.

4. The Dean of the Faculty in consultation with the head of the Department which administers the degree is responsible for approving the structure of papers for the degree and all other matters relating to the regulation of the degree.

5. No student will be admitted to a particular paper without the consent of the head of the Department in which the paper is being offered.

6. Assessment of individual papers will follow the rules of the department in which they are offered.

7. The degree will be the BA (Hons) degree or the BSocSc(Hons) degree in Development Studies (or in Gender Studies, or Industrial Society, or in Southern African Cultural Studies) in the Department of (the

Department in which the student is registered).

### Master's and Doctoral Degrees

The requirements for the Master's degree may be met either by full thesis or a combination of coursework and thesis. Students wishing to register for the full thesis should note that their proposal must be approved by the relevant Higher Degrees Committee. Students will work under the supervision of a member of staff of a participating department. Students who wish to register for the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will be required to complete the following:

(a) Three papers which will be selected by the candidate in consultation with the Head of a participating Department who must be assured that the papers extend the student beyond work completed at the honours level. The topics to be covered must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

(b) A dissertation which should not normally exceed 30 000 words, but should not, under any circumstances, exceed 50 000 words. The research proposal must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

Students are encouraged to proceed to Doctoral research degrees, governed by the general regulations for Doctoral degrees at the University.

## JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES

### Professor & Head of Department

GJEG Berger, BJourn, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), BA(Hons) (UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

### Pearson Chair of Economic Journalism

To be appointed

### Senior Lecturers

CM Knox, BA(Natal), MA(Rhodes)

CMW Doherty, BA(Hons)(CapeTown), MA(Natal)

AC Garman, BA(Witwatersrand), MA(Natal)

LN Strelitz, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA (Lond)

### Chair of Media Transformation

LN Steenveld, BA(Hons)(Cambridge Coll of Arts&Tech), HDipJourn(Rhodes), PG Cert in Education(Brighton), MA(Rhodes), MA(University of North Carolina-ChapelHill)

T Kupe, MA (UZ), DPhil (Oslo)

N Kariithi, BA(Hons) (Nairobi), MA (Wales), MA (Houston)

### Lecturers

JE du Toit, BA(Hons), MA, Teaching Dip(Cape Town)

T Gqubule, MSc (Colombia)

LN Maepa, BA (UBLS)(Hons), BA (UNISA), MEd (Pittsburgh), PhD (Iowa)

### Junior Lecturer

AM Cooper, BJourn(Rhodes)

The Department of Journalism and Media Studies provides an all-round academic and practical training in print and broadcast media. This background enables graduates to enter a wide range of occupations in media and communication.

The three-year programme has been designed to provide an adequate theoretical and practical foundation for a career in the mass media. Students wishing to specialise in advanced media skills are advised to do the four-year Bachelor of Journalism degree. Both the three and four-year programmes are constructed on a modular system.

The department exercises the right to limit entry to courses. Only the top 80 first year students are guaranteed admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2, and another thirty places are allocated on the basis of individual performance, written motivation and additional background experience. Students offered a place in Journalism and Media Studies 2 need to take up the offer by registering within the first week of the academic year, and within

the year immediately following completion of Journalism and Media Studies 1. The offer lapses thereafter. A candidate accepted into Journalism and Media Studies 2 but fails the year will not be allowed to re-register for a second try.

Entry to the media specialisations of television, writing and editing, radio, photojournalism and design in Journalism and Media Studies 3 is limited. Admission is based on individual performance in the specialisation at Journalism and Media Studies 2 level as well as on written motivations and additional background experience.

Journalism and Media Studies may be taken as a major in the Faculties of Humanities and Science. Journalism and Media Studies 1 may also be taken as a single course in the Faculty of Commerce. Under set conditions, Management may be taken as a major with Journalism.

The department offers five different routes to a qualification:

1. Bachelor of Journalism, over four years, with a specialisation in television, writing and editing, radio, photojournalism or design;
2. Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree, over three years, with a major in Journalism and Media Studies;
3. Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate), over one year, for **graduates only**;
4. Higher Diploma in Media Management (Postgraduate), over one year, for **graduates only**.
5. Master of Arts by thesis, and Master of Arts by coursework and thesis (coursework covers approved projects or papers).

Admission to Journalism and Media Studies 2 and 4 will depend on the final mark attained in Journalism and Media Studies 1 and 3 respectively, written motivation and on overall performance. A pass in Journalism and Media Studies 1 will not automatically admit a student to Journalism and Media Studies 2. A pass in Journalism and Media Studies 3 will not automatically admit a student to Journalism and Media Studies 4 but will enable the student to complete the three-year Bachelor of Arts degree.

Entry into Journalism 3 or 4 will not automatically admit a student to the specialised media skill option of his or her choice.

| Journalism and Media Studies 1     |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Introduction to mass media         | 2 |
| Mass media texts                   | 2 |
| South African media                | 2 |
| Audiences                          | 2 |
| Computer skills and news awareness | 1 |
| Writing skills                     | 1 |

| Journalism and Media Studies 2                |     |
|---|-----|
| Reporting skills and principles               | 1.5 |
| Sociology of news and Newsroom issues         | 1.5 |
| Corporate journalism                          | 1.5 |
| Media and society and exposure to media texts | 1.5 |
| Broadcast and print skills                    | 3   |
| News awareness                                | 1   |

| Journalism and Media Studies 3  |   |
|---|---|
| Media law   | 1 |
| Media ethics  | 1 |
| Cultural studies  | 1 |
| Media economics   | 1 |
| Computer-Assisted Reporting (1)   | 1 |
| News awareness  | 1 |
| Specialised media skills options (radio, television, writing, design, or photojournalism) | 2 |
| History, policy and theory of specialised media skill                                     | 2 |

### Journalism and Media Studies 4

This course consists of five papers, including one advanced specialised media skill and another constituted by an associated practical project. The remaining three papers may be selected from specialised issue options, although one of these papers may be a specialised media skill taught at third-year level (excluding television). Up to two papers can be taken in other departments at the Honours level and with the permission of the heads of departments concerned.

Acceptance into fourth year will be decided on the basis of student performance during the third year. Students not permitted entry are allowed to switch from a BJourn registration to a BA registration. Students registered for the BA degree and who are accepted into fourth year, may change their registration to BJourn.

**NB. For all courses: not all options listed will necessarily be offered in any one year, and entry to all options may be limited.**

| Journalism and Media Studies 4  |   |
|---|---|
| Students must take: one double credit from the advanced specialisation options, plus three other credits, adding up to 10 points in total.                                      |   |
| Advanced practical specialisation (radio, television, writing, design, photojournalism, or cyberpublishing) PLUS project  | 4 |
| Media research  | 2 |
| African media debates   | 2 |
| Arts and culture journalism   | 2 |
| Economic journalism   | 2 |
| Computer-Assisted Reporting (2)   | 2 |
| Cyberpublishing   | 2 |
| Media studies   | 2 |
| Media leadership  | 2 |
| Internship  | 2 |
| Aspects of media history  | 2 |
| A paper depending on specialisation of staff  | 2 |
| Extended essay or research project  | 2 |
| Journalism and Media Studies third year specialised media skills option (radio, writing, design, or photojournalism) including history, policy and theory of the specialisation | 2 |

**Journalism and Media Studies Honours Course**  
The course consists of five papers including the

option of doing a research project or long essay on a topic selected by the candidate and approved by the



## ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - JOURNALISM & MEDIA STUDIES

Head of the Department. The research project or long essay must be handed in by 31 October of the year in which the course is taken. Only one media skill specialisation may be taken.

Two papers may be taken in other departments at the Honours level and with the permission of the heads of departments concerned.

| <b>Journalism and Media Studies Honours</b>                       |   |
|---|---|
| Students must take five papers, adding up to a total of 10 points |   |
| Media research  | 2 |
| African media debates   | 2 |
| Arts and culture journalism                                       | 2 |
| Economic journalism   | 2 |
| Computer-Assisted Reporting (2)                                   | 2 |
| Cyberpublishing   | 2 |
| Media studies   | 2 |
| Media leadership  | 2 |
| Aspects of media history  | 2 |
| A paper depending on specialisation of staff                      | 2 |
| Extended essay or research project                                | 2 |

### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees**

Students taking interdisciplinary honours degrees may also take a selected paper in Journalism.

*See Calendar entry under Interdepartmental Studies*

### **Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)**

The diploma consists of five papers. The syllabuses for Papers 1 - 4 are based on the relevant modules in the BJourn degree. For these papers, HDipJourn students attend lectures with BJourn students. In all cases, however, courses count for different numbers of credit points, and different assignments and different examinations may be set. The department reserves the right to limit the enrolment and entry to the practical courses for the HDipJourn to 12 students for any one academic year.

The five papers are:

**Paper 1: Introduction to Media** (no optional modules)

**Paper 2: Core skills** (no optional modules)

**Paper 3: Core theory** (no optional modules)

**Paper 4: Media skills** (one of several options)

**Paper 5: Writing for the media** (no optional modules)

Application for options in Papers 4 must be accompanied by evidence of competence as none of these are introductory courses, and such evidence must be acceptable to the Head of the Department.

A student who obtains the HDipJourn may be accepted as a candidate for a higher degree in Journalism and Media Studies, provided that the Dean, after consulting the Head of the Department of Journalism and Media Studies, is satisfied that the student has passed examinations which could be deemed to be prerequisite for the relevant degree (*see Regulation H.29 for the Honours degree*).



| <b>Higher Diploma in Journalism and Media Studies (postgraduate)</b>  |     |
|---|-----|
| Students must take all five papers.   |     |
| Paper 1: INTRODUCTION TO MEDIA: all modules must be taken<br>Introduction to mass media, Media texts, South African media. Audience understanding   | 1   |
| Paper 2: CORE SKILLS: all modules must be taken.<br>Reporting skills, Sociology of news, Corporate journalism, Media and society  | 1.5 |
| Paper 3: CORE THEORY: all modules must be taken.<br>Media law, Media ethics, Cultural studies, Media economics, Computer-aided research and reporting   | 2.5 |
| Paper 4: MEDIA SKILLS: one of the following options:<br>Note: entry to all options is limited and may depend on evidence of competence; not all options listed will necessarily be offered in any one year.<br>Television<br>Radio<br>Photojournalism<br>Design<br>Arts and culture journalism<br>Economic journalism<br>Another option as approved by the Head of Department | 2.5 |
| Paper 5: WRITING FOR THE MEDIA  | 2.5 |

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management**

This course provides graduate students with specialised skills in the management of media. There are five papers, one of which is an extended essay usually coupled with a practical placement.

**Paper 1: Media Theory.** This course provides an introduction to media and is based upon the first year Journalism and Media Studies programme. It also includes the Media and Society module at second-year level.

**Paper 2: Extended essay.** This is a research long essay, typically done in conjunction with a media management placement.

**Paper 3: Management.** This course is based on the first year Management programme. It covers: Foundations of Effective and Efficient Organisation Performance; Marketing Management: an introduction; Financial Management: the role of the financial manager and an introduction to money and capital markets and risk; Human Resources Management: an introduction to the management of people in organisation; Production Management: an introduction.

#### **Paper 4: Media Economics, Press law and Policy.**

This course is based on three third year courses and deals with the ownership and control, new media technologies, macro- and micro-economics of print and electronic media, multi-national ownership patterns, cross-ownership, mergers, diversification, synergy. Contemporary policy issues, broadcasting regulation, audience research and evaluation are also covered. Press law and ethics are included.

**Paper 5: Media Management.** This course covers: distribution and circulation; finance and budgeting; marketing and promotion; an introduction to company law; niche marketing; joint operating agreements; productivity.

#### **Master's Degrees**

The requirements for the Master of Arts degree may be met *either* by writing a thesis *or* by examination and thesis.

#### **Master's Degree by thesis**

A thesis on any approved topic in the field of media studies.

**Master's Degree by coursework**

The Master's degree by coursework follows two strands: one predominantly Media Studies in its emphasis, the other focuses on particular projects in Journalism and Media Studies.

**Introduction**

Candidates may proceed to the degree of Master of Arts in Journalism and Media Studies by coursework and thesis or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the Master's degree by coursework and thesis will normally take three papers, or two papers and a project, as well as their short-thesis. Candidates taking three papers will have their short-thesis count for 50% of the year mark, Media Theory 20%, Media Research 15% and their third paper 15%.

Candidates taking two papers and a project will be assessed 20% for Media Theory; 15% for Media Research; 20% on the project (which includes 5% for its research component), and 45% for the short-thesis.

**Admission.**

A candidate may be admitted to the Master's degree by coursework in Journalism and Media Studies if the candidate:

- (a) has been admitted to an honours degree in Journalism and Media Studies, or in a discipline deemed by the Head of Department to be an adequate foundation for a Master's degree in Journalism and Media Studies,
- (b) or has been admitted to an honours degree in a different discipline, but has in addition at least five years of professional experience in journalism and/or media studies,
- (c) provided that a student will not be able to repeat any topic completed before in the Department of Journalism and Media Studies,
- (d) provided that a candidate may be required to complete one or more specific papers from the Honours degree,
- (e) provided that a candidate may be required to take the degree over two years,
- (f) provided that candidates satisfy the general regulations governing Masters' degrees in the Faculty of Arts.

Application must be made to the Department in writing by the end of the first week in October by the latest. Applications should be accompanied by a full

curriculum vitae and a detailed 500 word motivation. In some circumstances a candidate may be called for an interview as part of the selection process.

The rules of the Faculty of Humanities coursework Master's degree apply, except insofar as the weighting between coursework and thesis is discussed above. The short-thesis should not normally exceed 30 000 words, but should not exceed 50 000 words. Projects are of a research and development character, and selected subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Each project will be assessed on the quality of the product (70% of the mark) and on an accompanying document (30%). The document should cover the background, rationale, research, progress, problems and reception of the product, as well as self-criticism and recommendations.

In addition each candidate following the Media Studies emphasis should complete three of Papers 1 to 11 by the end of the year. Paper 1 (Media Research) and Paper 2 (Media Theory) are compulsory. Papers 3 to 10 are shared with the fourth year and honours courses, but in all cases different assignments and additional tuition will be given, and different examinations will be written to reflect the higher standard of work.

A candidate following the Journalism projects emphasis will include one paper based on Papers 12 to 19, as agreed by the Head of Department. Papers 12 to 15 are shared with the fourth year and honours courses, and in all cases different assignments and additional tuition will be given, and different examinations will be written to reflect the higher standard of work.

**Paper 1** Media Research

**Paper 2** Media Theory

**Paper 3** Film Theory 2: narrative film

**Paper 4** Arts and Culture Journalism

**Paper 5** Media and Society 4: Cultural Studies

**Paper 6** International Communications

**Paper 7** Media and Development 2

**Paper 8** New Journalism and the Non-fiction Novel

**Paper 9** Aspects of Media History

**Paper 10** A paper depending on specialisation of staff

**Paper 11** Another paper as approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee.

**Paper 12** Writing and editing

**Paper 13** Radio

**Paper 14** Photojournalism

**Paper 15 Design**

**Papers 16-19** Projects of a research and development character, subject to approval by the Head of Department and which will not be assessed by written examination, but by the project output and a critical report on the process behind it.

Application for all options must be accompanied by

evidence of competence, and entry to each must be approved by the Head of Department.

Timetable clashes may prevent certain combinations. A candidate may be required to successfully take certain papers, such as Paper 1: Media Research, as a precondition for admission to the programme.

## LANGUAGES (SCHOOL OF)

**Professor of French & Head of School**

PL-M Fein, BA(Hons)(Hull), PhD (London), Chevalier des Palmes Académiques, KCM

(SEE THE INDIVIDUAL SUBJECTS THAT COMPRISE THE SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES, UNDER THE HEADINGS *AFRICAN LANGUAGE STUDIES, AFRIKAANS & NETHERLANDIC STUDIES, CLASSICAL STUDIES, FRENCH & ITALIAN STUDIES, AND GERMAN STUDIES.*

## LAW (FACULTY)

**Professor & Dean**

JR Midgley, BCom, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(CapeTown)

**Deputy Dean**

MJ Oelschig, BL, LLB(Rhodesia)

**Professors**

RB Mqoke, BJuris, LLB(Fort Hare), LLM(Rhodes), LLD(Fort Hare)

PJ Schwikkard, BA(Wits), LLB(Summa Cum Laude), LLM (Cum Laude)(Natal)

**Associate Professor**

CM Plasket, BA, LLB, LLM(Natal)

**Senior Lecturers**

GW Barker, BA(Witwatersrand), LLB (Natal), LLM (Unibo)

BJ Clark, BA, LLB(Rhodes), LLM(Cantab)

GE Davies, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

JD Haydock, BL, LLB (Rhodesia)

L Meintjes, BJuris, LLB(UPE), LLM(Rhodes)

**Professor Emeritus and Senior Research Fellow**

AJ Kerr, SC, BA(UNISA), LLB (Witwatersrand), PhD (Natal)

**Professor Emeritus and Part-Time Lecturer**

ID Schäfer, BA, LLB(Rhodes), PhD(Natal)

**Legal Aid Clinic, Director** J Campbell, BA, LLB(Cape Town), Attorney at Law

**Principal** I Sogoni, BA(UNISA), Attorney at Law

**East London Campus**

**Senior Lecturer** DA Maree, BA, LLB(Rhodes)

**Lecturer** JN Cocks, BA(Rhodes), BProc(UNISA)

The Faculty of Law offers all the courses taken for the LLB degrees, and in addition offers courses for degree curricula in other faculties.

The Faculty currently offers two LLB degrees, a postgraduate LLB and a four-year undergraduate one. Students may also follow a five-year curriculum, obtaining two undergraduate degrees (eg a BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSci or BSc and an LLB) in that period, provided that they have obtained sufficient law credits in their first degree. Students who have an undergraduate degree without any law credits will be required to register for a three-year LLB programme.

The postgraduate LLB is being phased out, and students who commence legal studies for the first time, with or without another degree, will be required to register for the new curriculum. Students who registered for Legal Theory 1 in 1997, and passed, have a choice, either to follow the old curriculum, or the new one. Students who registered for an undergraduate degree with a Legal Theory major before 1997 will have to complete the old curriculum. Only in exceptional circumstances will students who enter university for the first time register in the

Faculty of Law. In most instances students in their first year of university study will be required to register in any one of the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce, according to their subject choices. After their first year of study, students must choose between following a five-year (BA or BSocSc LLB) curriculum, or a four-year LLB curriculum.

**Legal Theory** is a three-year major subject in BA, BCom, BSc, BBusSci and BSocSc curricula. Legal Theory is allowed as a credit for degrees in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Credits in Legal Theory courses exempt a candidate from the equivalent papers in the LLB curricula. See either regulations L.2 and L.7 or regulations L.13 and L.17.

**Commercial Law** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degrees in the Faculty of Commerce.

**Legal Theory 1 (two semester credits)**

Paper 1: Introduction to Law. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Foundations of Law. See the course structure set out below.

**Legal Theory 2 (New curriculum, four semester credits)**

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Constitutional Law A. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Constitutional Law B. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Customary Law. See the course structure for Customary Law A which is set out below.

**Legal Theory 3 (Old curriculum, six semester credits)**

Paper 1: Jurisprudence A. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Family Law.

(a) Law of Persons. See the course structure set out below.

(b) Law of Husband and Wife. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property and Security. See the course structure set out below.

**Legal Theory 3 (New curriculum, six semester credits)**

Paper 1: Law of Contract A. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Persons. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 3: Law of Property and Security A. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 4: Law of Contract B. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 5: Law of Husband and Wife. See the course structure set out below.

Paper 6: Law of Property and Security B. See the course structure set out below.

Students may substitute any of the above credits with any LLB course, subject to timetable constraints, and with the permission of the Dean of Law and the Dean of the Faculty in which they are registered.

**Commercial Law 1** consists of two one-credit courses, COL101 and COL102.

**COL101 (One three-hour paper, June examination)** Introduction to the nature of law; interpretation of statutes; general principles of the law of contract; the law of agency.

**COL102 (One three-hour paper, November examination)** Business structures; financial institutions; labour law. A subminimum of thirty percent in COL101 is required for entry into COL102. Credit in both COL101 and COL102 is required for entry into Commercial Law 2.

**Commercial Law 2** consists of two one-credit courses, COL201 and COL202.

**COL201 (Two one-and-a-half hour papers, June examination)**

Paper 1: Sale; lease; Carriage of Goods.

Paper 2: Administration of Estates; Insolvency and winding-up of companies.

**COL202 (Two one-and-a-half hour papers, November examination)**

Paper 1: Selected topics in company law; forms of payment.

Paper 2: Property transactions; the law of security; insurance; marketing; introduction to arbitration.

**Commercial Law 3** consists of two one-credit courses, COL301 and COL302.

**COL301 (Three two-hour papers, June examination)** Any three of the following semester credits: Capita Selecta Corporate Law; Patent and Design; Negotiation and Mediation (subject to being able to accommodate numbers); Labour law; any other LLB course offered during the first semester, subject to the approval of the Deans of Law and Commerce and feasibility on the University

timetable.

**COL302 (Three two-hour papers, November examination)** Any three of the following semester credits: Law of Taxation and Estate Planning; Environmental Law; International Trade Law; Selected topics from Labour Law; any other LLB course offered during the second semester, subject to the approval of the Deans of Law and Commerce and feasibility on the University timetable.

**Administration of Estates (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examination)**

A survey of the law relating to administration of estates, with particular emphasis on the practical aspects of drafting of liquidation and distribution accounts.

**Administrative Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See curriculum for Administrative Law A.

Paper 2: See curriculum for Administrative Law B.

**Administrative Law A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), June examinations)**

The sources of administrative law and of administrative power; the features of South African administrative law; constitutional issues and the relationship between fundamental rights and administrative decision-making; the basis for judicial review of administrative action and judicial authority in the constitutional state; the boundaries of administrative action; methods of controlling the exercise of public power.

**Administrative Law B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), November examinations)**

Justiciability in the constitutional state and locus standi to challenge administrative action; judicial review of administrative action and the right of access to court; the grounds of review and the fundamental rights to lawful, procedurally fair and reasonable administrative action; the right to reasons for administrative action; the right of access to information; the liability of the state for invalid administrative action; procedural issues; and remedies.

**Arbitration (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (70%), practical component (30%), November examinations)**

The law relating to arbitration and the development of practical skills.

**Business Structures (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See curriculum for Business Structures A.

Paper 2: See curriculum for Business Structures B.

**Business Structures A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), classwork (40%), June examinations)**

The nature and formation of sole proprietorships; partnerships; business trusts; close corporations and companies.

**Business Structures B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), classwork (40%), November examinations)**

The principles of corporate law.

**Capita Selecta Corporate Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (60%), classwork (40%), June examinations)**

Selected legal topics relevant to the operation of businesses in the corporate environment.

**Capita Selecta Customary Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Selected topics from customary law.

**Capita Selecta Family Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Selected topics in Family Law, with an emphasis on the practical aspects of drafting of antenuptial contracts; applications and pleadings in Family Law matters.

**Capita Selecta Jurisprudence (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

See the curriculum for Jurisprudence B, which is set out below.

**Capita Selecta Labour Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), practical component (30%), November examinations)**

An in-depth focus on selected topics in contemporary Labour Law, with special emphasis on the changes effected by the Labour Relations Act.

**Capita Selecta Property Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Selected topics from Property law.

**Civil Procedure A (Old and new curriculum: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

**Civil Procedure B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

**Clinical Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one one-hour paper (40%), practical component (60%), November examinations)**

Practical training and supervision in the Legal Aid Clinic with a focus on file and case management, consultations, drafting of letters, court documents and bills of costs, the application of substantive and procedural law to practice, negotiation and mediation, and legal research.

**Constitutional Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See curriculum for Constitutional Law A.  
Paper 2: See curriculum for Constitutional Law B.

**Constitutional Law A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), June examinations)**

Sources and general principles of constitutional law, historical survey of constitutional development in South Africa and a detailed analysis of the structures of government created by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa Act 108 of 1996.

**Constitutional Law B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), November examinations)**

The protection of human rights in a constitutional state. This will include a detailed analysis of the Bill

of Rights, the state institutions supporting constitutional democracy (such as the Public Protector and the Human Rights Commission) and other relevant institutions (such as the Independent Complaints Directorate).

**Constitutional Litigation (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), practical component 25%), November examinations)**

The protection and limitation of human rights, principally in terms of Chapter 2 of the Constitution.

**Copyright and Trademarks (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, (70%), practical component (30%), November examinations)**

An introduction to the law of copyright and trademarks.

**Criminal Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See curriculum for Criminal Law A.  
Paper 2: See curriculum for Criminal Law B.

**Criminal Law A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Introduction and historical background; definition; principle of legality; criminal law and morality; capacity; actus reus and mens rea (fault); and causation.

**Criminal Law B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), November examinations)**

The common law defences; degrees of participation in crime; inchoate crimes (attempt, incitement and conspiracy).

**Criminal Procedure A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Structure of the courts; jurisdiction; search procedure; arrest; summonses; written notice; bail; indictments and charge sheets; essentials of the valid charge; defects etc. incurred evidence; amendments of charges; pleas of guilty and not guilty; conduct of criminal trials; verdict and sentence; automatic review and right of appeal.

**Criminal Procedure B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Public prosecutions; stopping of a prosecution; justifiable homicide; admissions of guilt; legal representation; exceptions, exemptions, provisos; splitting of charges; pleas; separation of trials; principles of sentencing; review and appeal in superior courts.

**Criminology (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

History; classical theory; sociology of crime and deviance; explanations of criminal behaviour; the use of statistics; the criminal justice system; systems of criminal procedure; law enforcement and policing; theories of punishment; the penal system.

**Customary law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See the course structure for Customary Law A.

Paper 2: See the course structure for Capita Selecta Customary Law.

**Customary law (New curriculum, one semester credits)**

See the course structure for Customary Law A.

**Customary Law A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

The nature and ascertainment of customary law; customary law and the courts; the conflict of laws; principles of the law of persons, property, succession and obligations.

**Environmental Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), practical component (30%), November examinations)**

Capita Selecta from relevant theoretical writings and substantive law relating to the environment.

**Ethics and Professional Responsibility (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

The ethics which govern the practice of law and issues relating to professional negligence.

**Family Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: Law of Persons. See the curriculum set out below.

Paper 2: Law of Husband and Wife. See the curriculum set out below.

**Forensic Medicine (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Medico-legal issues and practical aspects of statutory clinical and post mortem investigations.

**Forms of Payment (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

The concept of negotiability and its utility; negotiable instruments governed by the Bills of Exchange Act 34 of 1964 and others not governed by the Act; the creation of rights and liabilities of parties; discharge of the parties; defences available to the parties to an instrument.

**Foundations of Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), November examinations)**

An introduction to the nature and purpose of law and of rights and duties; an outline of the legal systems of the world; and the bases of the modern South African legal system.

**International Trade Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper)**

**Introduction to Conveyancing (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

An introduction to the practice and procedure of the Deeds Registries Office.

**Introduction to Law (New curriculum, one semester credit: one three-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), June examinations)**

The structure and officers of the courts; an outline of criminal and civil procedure; divisions of law and an outline of selected branches of public and private law.

**Introduction to the Study of Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: Introduction to Law. See the curriculum set out above.

Paper 2: Foundations of Law. See the curriculum set out above.

**Jurisprudence (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), classwork (30%), November examinations)**

An outline of the major schools of jurisprudence; introduction to theories of legal reasoning.

**Jurisprudence A (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: Legal Interpretation. See the curriculum set out below.

Paper 2: Jurisprudence. See the curriculum set out above.

**Jurisprudence B (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Capita selecta from jurisprudential issues and topics of current interest.

**Labour law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

The purpose and function of labour law; the contract of employment; industrial legislation; unfair dismissal; the institutions of collective bargaining and participative decision-making; statutory and non-statutory dispute resolution.

**Law of Contract (old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Contract A, which is set out below..

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Contract B, which is set out below.

**Law of Contract A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), class record (25%), June examinations)**

The historical development of contract; theories of contract; essentials of a contract, including capacity, consensus, legality, possibility of performance and formalities.

**Law of Contract B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

The operation of a contract; cession; interpretation of contracts; termination; breach; contractual remedies.

**Law of Delict (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Delict A, which is set out below..

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Delict B, which is set out below.

**Law of Delict A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

The nature of a delict; the effect of constitutional provisions; vicarious liability; strict liability; title to sue; general principles relating to wrongfulness; specific instances of liability under the *actio injuriarum*, including defences relating to that action; fault in the form of intention; and damages.

**Law of Delict B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Concurrence of actions; wrongfulness in relation to specific instances of Aquilian liability and the action for pain and suffering, including defences; fault in the form of negligence; causation; damages; and apportionment of damages.

**Law of Evidence A (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Admissions; confessions; opinion evidence; hearsay (basic rule); competence and compellability of witnesses; privilege against self-incrimination; marital privilege; legal professional privilege; corroboration; the burden and quantum of proof; failure to rebut a *prima facie* case; similar fact evidence.

**Law of Evidence B (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), November examinations)**

The "30 day of May" rule; previous consistent statements; hearsay; legal professional privilege, including privilege of assessment of evidence including inferential reasoning; false evidence; current issues in the law of evidence.



**Law of Husband and Wife (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Historical background; engagement; definition of marriage; formalities; matrimonial property; antenuptial contracts; consequences of marriage; divorce; matrimonial proceedings; void and voidable marriages.

**Law of Insolvency (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Voluntary surrender; compulsory sequestration; trustees; meeting of creditors and proof of claims; vesting; effects of sequestration; the solvent spouse; impeachable transactions; composition; rehabilitation.

**Law of Insolvency and Winding up of Companies (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Voluntary surrender; compulsory sequestration; trustees; meeting of creditors and proof of claims; vesting; effects of sequestration; the solvent spouse; impeachable transactions; composition; rehabilitation; judicial management, winding-up of companies.

**Law of Lease and Agency (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

The principles of the law relating to the contract of lease; agency power and authority; the rights and duties of principals and agents; the relationships between principals and agents and third parties.

**Law of Negotiable Instruments (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (80%), classwork (20%), November examinations)**

The concept of negotiability and its utility; negotiable instruments governed by the Bills of Exchange Act 34 of 1964 and others not governed by the Act; the creation of rights and liabilities of parties; discharge of the parties; defences available to the parties to an instrument.

**Law of Patent and Design (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

An introduction to the law of patent and design.

**Law of Persons (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (85%), classwork (15%), June examinations)**

Birth; adoption; status and capacity; domicile; death.

**Law of Property and Security (Old curriculum, two semester credits)**

Paper 1: See the curriculum for Law of Property and Security A which is set out below.

Paper 2: See the curriculum for Law of Property and Security B which is set out below.

**Law of Property and Security A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

General concepts; classification of things; rights; ownership.

**Law of Property and Security B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Possession; servitudes; real security; suretyship; constitutional property law.

**Law of Sale and Insurance (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Purchase and Sale: the essentials of the contract; legal effects of the contract - risk and benefit, obligations of the buyer and seller, remedies and ownership; statutory provisions concerning sales.

Insurance: General principles - background, essential elements, duty of disclosure, insurable interest and the effect of fraud; and specific types of insurance - marine, fire and motor vehicle insurance, with special reference to the Road Accidents Fund Act.

**Law of Succession (Old curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Introduction to common terms; the legal position of heirs and legatees; collation; intestate succession; execution of wills, capacity; validity; vesting; legacies; substitution.

**Law of Succession and Administration of Estates (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Introduction to common terms; the legal position of heirs and legatees; collation; intestate succession; execution of wills, capacity; validity; vesting;

## ACADEMIC DEPARTMENTS - FACULTY OF LAW

---

legacies; substitution; the law relating to the administration of estates.

**Law of Tax and Estate Planning (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

The provisions of the Income Tax Act 58 of 1962; tax strategy; aspects of estate planning.

**Legal Accounting (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

The general principles of accounting with special emphasis on Trust Accounts.

**Legal Information Systems (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper)**

**Legal Interpretation (New curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (75%), classwork (25%), June examinations)**

Juridical interpretation: precedent and adjudication.

**Legal Practice A (New curriculum, one semester credit: one one-hour paper, (40%), practical component (60%), November examinations)**

Consultation and interviewing skills; criminal litigation; bail applications; drafting of pleadings; and trial advocacy skills.

**Legal Practice B (New curriculum, one semester credit: one one-hour paper (40%), practical component (60%), June examinations)**

Civil litigation: drafting of letters and pleadings; presentation of a case in court; motion proceedings; debt collection.

**Legal Skills (New curriculum, one semester credit: student portfolios (50%), written opinion (20%), heads of argument (20%), oral presentation (10%), assessments in first semester)**

Research skills, including basic course on the use of

electronic media; legal reasoning and the structure of argument; memory training; problem-solving skills; and critical thinking skills.

**Negotiation and Mediation (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one one-hour paper (40%), practical examination (30%), student portfolio (30%), June examinations)**

Negotiation and Mediation theory and the development of practical skills.

**Public International Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, June examinations)**

Sources; international and municipal law; international personality; territory; jurisdiction; law of the sea; state responsibility; human rights; treaties; use of force; international institutions.

**Research Paper (One semester credit)**

A detailed essay on an approved topic, to be submitted by the end of the third term.

**Roman Law (Old curriculum, two semester credits: one three-hour paper, November examinations)**

The history and sources of Roman Law; the Roman law of actions, persons, succession, property and obligations.

**Specific Crimes (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper, November examinations)**

Selected common-law and statutory crimes.

**Women and the Law (Old and new curriculum, one semester credit: one two-hour paper (70%), practical component (30%), November examinations)**

Legal issues affecting women and women's rights.

## MANAGEMENT

### Senior Lecturere and Head of Department

PW Court, BSc(Agric)(Stell), HDE (Rhodes). MBA (Witwatersrand). PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Lecturer

TL Amos, BSocSc(Hons)(Economics). MSocSc (Rhodes)

### Lecturers

N Rau, BCom(Hons)(Natal), MCom (RAU)

J Welman, MCom (PUfor CHO)

NJ Pearse, MSocSc (Cape Town)

One to be appointed

### East London Campus

### Professor

To be appointed

**Lecturers** MN Wicks, BCom (Hons), HDE (Rhodes), MBA(Stell)

L Hanner, BCom (Rhodes), BCompt(Hons) (UNISA), CA(SA)

Management is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. It is also possible to take Management as a major subject in the BSc, BSocSc and BJourn degrees. In addition, one, or in some cases, two, courses in Management are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Education, Law and Science. The BBusSc degree in the Department of Management is designed to equip students to pursue a career in Marketing.

Normally a candidate will only be admitted to Management 2 if either credit has been obtained in Accounting 1, or the candidate is registered for Accounting 1 concurrently. A candidate will only be admitted to Management 3 if credit has been obtained in Accounting 1 and either one of Mathematics 1A, 1B, 1C or 1P, or Theory of Finance and Statistics.

Students will normally be refused admission to any course offered by the Department after the second week of the start of the course.

**Management 1 consists of the two one credit courses MAN101 and MAN102.**

**MAN101** (one three-hour paper)

### Principles of Management

An overview of management, the business environment and managing strategically, decision-making, organising, leading, controlling and

evaluating, change and innovation.

**MAN102** (One three-hour paper)

### (a) Principles of Marketing A:

The marketing concept; an introduction to the marketing mix with the emphasis on product, price, promotion and distribution.

### (b) Financial Management A:

The role of the financial manager in the firm; opportunity cost of money; risk and return; introduction to the South African money and capital markets.

**Management 2 consists of the two one credit courses MAN201 and MAN202.**

**MAN201** (One three hour paper)

### (a) Production and Operations Management

The systems approach; manufacturing planning; manufacturing strategy; inventory control, project management; total productive maintenance; World Class initiatives, including total quality management, business process re-engineering and world class manufacturing.

### (b) Human Resource Management A:

The human resource management function with emphasis on human resource planning, staffing, development, compensation and human resource maintenance.

**MAN202** (One three hour paper)

### (a) Principles of Marketing B:

Introduction to marketing research, business markets and business buyer behaviour, market targeting and market positioning, aspects of marketing mix which build on topics introduced in Principles of Marketing A.

### (b) Financial Management B:

Financial statements; performance analysis using ratios; working capital management; time value of money; net present value and other investment criteria.

**MANAGEMENT 3 consists of the two one-credit courses MAN 301 and MAN 302**

**MAN 301**

### (a) Marketing research (One three-hour paper)

### Grahamstown Campus only

The marketing research process; primary research - measurement and scaling; questionnaire design,

sampling; secondary research; or

**Marketing research and Consumer behaviour** (one three-hour paper) **East London Campus only**  
**(h) Human Resource Management B:** (One three-hour paper)

Organisational behaviour with the emphasis on understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in the organisation; labour relations, with the emphasis on South African labour relations, systems and management.

**MAN 302**

**(a) Services Marketing** (One three-hour paper) **Grahamstown Campus only**

Service frameworks; service quality; service recovery; relationship marketing; service positioning; the service-profit chain; or

**Strategic Marketing** (One three-hour paper) **East London Campus only**

Strategic intent, SWOT analysis, strategic marketing objectives, marketing strategies including generic strategies and the product/market matrix.

**(b) Financial Management C:** (One three-hour paper)

Cost of capital; the dividend decision; and an introduction to investment analysis.

**The Department reserves the right to teach MAN 201, MAN 202, MAN 301 and MAN 302 in any order.**

**MANAGEMENT 4/HONOURS**

**MAN 401:** Strategic marketing.

**MAN 402:** Consumer behaviour.

**MAN 403:** International marketing.

**MAN 404:** Marketing communications.

As circumstances dictate, any other topic approved by the Faculty Board may be substituted for any of the foregoing papers.

**MAN 405:** A research essay of 10 000 - 12 000 words written during the year on a topic selected by the candidate and approved by the Department.

**POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN ENTERPRISE MANAGEMENT**

**Target Group:** Graduate students, other than those who have majored in Management (or the equivalent), seeking a qualification to equip them to start their own businesses and/or to enhance their entry into employment in business.

**Course Structure:** The Alpha Project. Action

learning is a central feature of the course structure. Working in groups, students will be required to start and run a micro-enterprise. Students will be expected to "learn by doing" and to develop a conceptual understanding of business principles and issues, as well as practical skills, through a process of simultaneous interaction. Thus, students will learn **about** entrepreneurship, **through** entrepreneurship and **for** entrepreneurship. The Alpha Project will be evaluated via a series of written reports.

**ACC 101** (One three-hour paper)

The accounting cycle. Accounting for inventories; fixed assets and depreciation; accounts and bills receivable and payable. Accounting controls; principles of internal control; control accounts; bank and creditors reconciliations.

**CSC 101: Computer Literacy**

Topics include an introduction to the fundamental concepts and applications of hardware, computing environments, editing and word processing, spreadsheets, databases, other software packages, networks, the Internet, social issues and the logic of problem solving.

**Paper 1: Strategic Management and Entrepreneurship** (One three-hour paper)

The strategic management process; strategic intent; SWOT analysis; strategic objects; strategic alternatives including generic strategies, the product/market matrix; entrepreneurship; the role of small business in the economy.

**Paper 2: Marketing Management** (One three-hour paper)

The marketing concept; the marketing mix including product, price, promotion and distribution strategies in the small business; customer service; relationship marketing.

**Paper 3 Financial Management** (One three-hour paper)

Analysis of financial statements including ratio analysis; financing the capital requirements of the small business; break-even analysis; budgets; working capital management; taxation and insurance.

**Paper 4 Human Resource Management** (One three-hour paper)

Understanding the behaviour and leadership of people in organisations; the management of the human resource function and labour relations in the small business.

**Paper 5 Production Management** (half course) (One 1½ hour paper)

The systems approach; manufacturing planning; manufacturing strategy; inventory control, project management; total productive maintenance; World Class initiatives including total quality management, business process re-engineering and world class manufacturing.

**Paper 6 Entrepreneurial Law (half course) (One 1½ hour paper)**

Forms of business ownership, taxation, law of contract.

**The Department reserves the right to teach papers**

**1 - 6 in any order.**

#### **Admission Prerequisites**

MAN201 Management 3                      MAN101 and MAN102  
MAN201 and MAN202

A candidate who fails any .01 course shall be permitted to proceed to the corresponding .02 course. A pass in the .02 course in such circumstances shall NOT relieve the candidate of the need to pass the .01 course in order to gain the full course credit except in the case of MAN101 and MAN 102.

## **MATHEMATICS (PURE AND APPLIED)**

### **Professor & Head of Department**

WJ Kotzé, BSc(Hons)(Stell), PhD(McGill)

### **Associate Professors**

NJH Heideman, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Washington)

V Murali, MSc(Madras), MSc(Wales), PhD(Rhodes)

MH Burton, BSc(Hons)(Natal), MSc(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

### **Senior Lecturer**

G Lubczonok, Master of Mathematics(Jagiellonian), PhD(Silesian)

### **Lecturers**

GJ Shepherd, MSc(Witwatersrand)

CC Remsing, MSc(Timisoara), PhD(Rhodes)

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://www.ru.ac.za/mathematics/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

### **First-year level courses in Mathematics**

MAT 101 and MAT 102 are each given in both first and second semesters; there are also two semester-credit courses MAT 1E1 and MAT 1E2 (equivalent to MAT 101 and MAT 102 respectively) each offered over a whole year.

*Students who have not achieved a mark equivalent to at least a Higher Grade D pass at matriculation level will be required to register for MAT 1E1 and MAT 1E2, rather than MAT 101 and MAT 102.*

Mathematics (MAT) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BA, BJourn, BCom, BBusSci, BEcon and BSocSci, and for the diploma HDE(SEC).

Applied Mathematics (MAP) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc and BJourn.

To major in Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT1 or MAT 1E; MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAT 3. See Rule S.23.

To major in Applied Mathematics, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1 or MAT 1E, MAT 2 or MAP 2; MAP 3. See Rule S.23.

Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MAT 1 or MAT 1E respectively, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component, and, in the case of MAT 1, obtains the required aggregate in a single year. Supplementary examinations may be recommended for any of these courses, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

MAT 101 and MAT 102 (or, equivalently MAT 1E1 and MAT 1E2) together amount to what was previously known as Mathematics 1A or 1B.

Theory of Finance is a course for Commerce students given jointly by the Department of Mathematics and the Department of Statistics. For details, the entry in

the departmental entry for Statistics should be consulted.

Aggregated credit in any one of MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and in either of STA 110 or STA 130 is deemed equivalent to a two-credit course Mathematics 1C, which is an allowed prerequisite for various other courses in the Faculties of Science and Commerce (see Rules S.23 and C.8 to C.10).

Mathematics 1L (MAT 1L) is a semester-credit course for students who do not qualify for entry into any of the first courses mentioned above. This is particularly suitable for students in the Social Sciences and Biological Sciences who need to become numerate or achieve a level of mathematical literacy. A successful pass in this course will give admission to MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and MAT 102 or MAT 1E2.

**MAT 1L : Mathematics Literacy**

Arithmetic: Fractions and percentages - usages in basic science and commerce; use of calculators and spreadsheets. Algebra: Polynomial, exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions and their graphs; modelling with functions; fitting curves to data; setting up and solving equations.

**MAT 101 / MAT 1E1 : Fundamental Calculus**

Limits, differentiation, curve sketching, maximum - minimum problems, integration, applications, first-order differential equations, partial differentiation.

**MAT 102 / MAT 1E2 : Discrete Mathematics**

Relations between sets, matrix algebra, linear algebra and linear programming, vectors in 2 and 3 dimensions, analytic geometry, induction and algorithms, graph theory, Boolean algebra.

**Second- and Third-year level courses in Mathematics and Applied Mathematics**

Both Mathematics and Applied Mathematics are offered at the second and third year level. Each consists of four topics as listed below. Two of these successfully completed in one year earn one credit in

either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics at the second year level or third year level respectively. The first credit so earned will be called MAT 201 (respectively MAT 301) in the case of Mathematics, and MAP 201 (respectively MAP 301) in the case of Applied Mathematics. Subsequent credits will be MAT 202 (respectively MAT 302) and MAP 202 (respectively MAP 302). The selection of topics is subject to the approval of the Head of Department. Credit may be obtained in each semester-credit separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MAT 2 (respectively MAT 3) or MAP 2 (respectively MAP 3), provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component.

Credit in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MAT 201, MAT 202, MAP 201 or MAP 202. Likewise credit for MAT 2 or MAP 2 is required before admission to the third year courses.

Some of the topics below may be prerequisites for others. Not all of the eight topics might be offered in a single year.

Natural combinations are indicated in the table below. If a student chooses the two second year topics in Column x, where  $x = 1, 2, 3$  or  $4$ , a natural follow-up in the 3rd year would be the topics in Column x as well. However, different combinations across the columns are feasible as well - consult the staff.

Columns 1 and 2 contain standard/classical mathematics which all future mathematicians should know. The topics in column 3 are particularly useful for computer scientists, and the ones in column 4 for physicists and future engineers.

Other topics may be given instead from time-to-time at third year level, depending on the student intake, e.g. Quantum Mechanics, Topology, Geometry with applications, Differential Geometry.



| Year | Column 1                         | Column 2  | Column 3                     | Column 4                              |
|------|----------------------------------|---|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 2    | Transformational Geometry (M2.1) | Advanced Calculus (M2.2)                          | Discrete Mathematics (AM2.1) | Mathematical Modelling (AM2.2)        |
| 2    | Linear Algebra (M2.3)            | Applied Analysis (M2.4)                           | Numerical Analysis (AM2.3)   | Math Foundations of Mechanics (AM2.4) |
| 3    | Algebra (M3.1)                   | Complex Analysis and Transformation Theory (M3.2) | Numerical Analysis (AM3.1)   | Control and Optimisation (AM3.2)      |
| 3    | Real Analysis (M3.3)             | Integration (M3.4)                                | Logic of Computation (AM3.3) | Applied Analysis (AM3.4)              |

**M2.1 (about 32 lectures)****Transformation Geometry**

**Objectives:** This course is a natural sequel to MAT 102, and a good preparation for other courses such as M2.3 (Linear Algebra), M3.1 (Algebra), as well as AM3.2 (Control and Optimization). It conveys the message that Geometry is a powerful means of turning visual images into formal tools for the understanding of other Mathematical phenomena.

**Syllabus:** Transformations on the plane and 3-space (isometries, similarities, affine transformations).

Various applications (Frieze groups, wallpaper groups, tessellations, spherical geometry and mapmaking, Poincaré model of hyperbolic geometry, etc.) Other applications to Physics, Computer Graphics and Cartography.

**M2.2 (about 32 lectures) Advanced Calculus**

**Objectives:** This is a continuation of MAT 101 without which further studies in Mathematics and Physics are hardly feasible.

**Syllabus:** Complex numbers. Sequences and series, Taylor series. Advanced integration techniques, improper integrals. Functions of several variables including: tangent planes, extrema, Taylor's Theorem, multiple integrals. Further differential equations and application.

**M2.3 (about 32 lectures) Linear Algebra**

**Objectives:** Another fundamental aspect of contemporary mathematical modelling in Physics, Economics, etc.

**Syllabus:** Finite dimensional vector spaces, linear independence, linear maps and their matrix representations, change of base, null space, rank.

Eigenvalues and vectors, diagonalization; applications.

**M2.4 (about 32 lectures) Applied Analysis**

**Objectives:** These concepts are essential to physicists.

**Syllabus:** The div, grad and curl operations of vector calculus and theorems of Gauss, Green and Stokes; techniques for solving some ordinary differential equations; introduction to some special functions of interest in the natural sciences; Fourier series; applications of the above techniques in solving certain boundary value and initial value problems.

**AM2.1 (about 32 lectures) Discrete Mathematics**

**Objectives:** This course is a natural sequel to MAT 102. Further counting techniques are investigated and applied. In particular, a number of applications to probability theory are discovered. Elementary logic and set calculus from MAT 102 is extended and applied to computer science.

**Syllabus:** Review of elementary counting, multisets and multinomial theorem, the principle of inclusion and exclusion, Boolean algebra and switching circuits. Modelling computation: formal languages, finite state machines. Graphs and matching problems, optimal assignments.

**AM2.2 (about 32 lectures) Mathematical Modelling**

**Objectives:** The student will learn how real-world processes and situations can be given a mathematical representation, called a "model". The mathematical solution of the model can then be interpreted and, in this way, the mathematical model simulates reality. Examples will be drawn from:

physics, biochemistry, chemistry, biology, economics and computer science.

**Syllabus:** Includes a selection from: differential equations, systems of differential equations, difference equations, dynamical systems, introduction to chaos theory, systems of difference equations, probabilistic modelling, curve fitting and regression, dimensional analysis.

### AM2.3 (about 32 lectures) Numerical Analysis

**Objectives:** Many mathematical problems cannot be solved exactly and require numerical techniques. These techniques usually consist of an algorithm which performs a numerical calculation iteratively until certain tolerances are met. These algorithms can be expressed as a program which is executed by a computer. The collection of such techniques is called "numerical analysis".

**Syllabus:** Computing and use of Matlab, solving nonlinear equations, solving sets of equations, interpolation and curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, numerical solution of ODE's, approximation of functions.

### AM2.4 (about 32 lectures) Mathematical Foundation of Mechanics

**Objectives:** To provide a sound mathematical foundation for an important part of Physics and much of Engineering.

**Syllabus:** Momentum, Angular Momentum, Kinetic Energy, Potential Energy, Centre of Mass Systems, Moment of Inertia. Derivation of Lagrange's equations from NII, generalised coordinates, holonomic constraint, nonholonomic constraint examples. Derivation of Lagrange's equations using Calculus of Variations and Hamilton's Principle. Euler-Lagrange condition in general and examples (extremisation of areas etc.). Using a nonholonomic treatment to derive forces of constraint. Cyclic coordinates and constants of motion. Generalised momentum. Hamiltonian formalism. Introduction to Phase Plane methods, isoclinical methods, family portraits.

### M3.1 (about 39 lectures) Algebra

**Objectives:** Algebraic structures pervade all of modern mathematics. No mathematician can afford not to know group theory. Coding theory is an application of modern algebra. Group structures occur in the theoretical study of most natural

sciences.

**Syllabus:** Induction. Properties of integers and polynomials, division algorithms, primes, unique factorization, congruences. Group theory, Lagrange's theorem, quotient groups.

### M3.2 (about 39 lectures) Complex Analysis and Transform Theory

**Objectives:** These are classical aspects of mathematical analysis and fundamental to Physics.

**Syllabus:** Complex Analysis: analytic functions, Cauchy-Riemann conditions, branch cuts, Taylor and Laurent series, contour integration. Cauchy residue theorem, evaluation of some real value integrals using the Cauchy residue theorem.

Fourier Analysis: Derivation of Fourier's identity, Fourier transform pairs, elementary properties of Fourier transforms, convolution theorems, use of contour integrals in evaluating Fourier transforms and inverses.

Laplace Transform: Definition, elementary properties of the Laplace transform. Inverse Laplace transform and Bromwich's contour integral formula.

### M3.3 (about 39 lectures) Real Analysis

**Objectives:** Continuity and convergence of processes are important considerations in our daily experiences. These can be described in exact mathematical terms. This course leads to basic topological concepts.

**Syllabus:** Topology of the real line, continuity and uniform continuity, Heine-Borel, Bolzano-Weierstrass, uniform convergence, introduction to metric spaces.

### M3.4 (about 39 lectures) Integration Theory

**Objectives:** These are aspects of classical analysis which are of fundamental importance to Mathematical Statistics at Honours level and above.

**Syllabus:** The Riemann Integral: Sets of measure zero, definition and existence of the R.I., properties, Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, limit theorems. The Lebesgue Integral: Shortcomings of the R.I., integrals of upper functions, Lebesgue integral functions, basic properties, convergence theorems.

Applications (e.g. Fourier transform on  $\mathbb{R}$ , approximation of  $L^1$  functions by  $C^\infty$  functions, improper integrals). Measurable functions and measurable sets.  $L^p$  spaces: Hölder and Minkowski inequalities.

Norms on  $L^p$  ( $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ ).  $L^2(\mathbb{R})$  as Hilbert space.



Convergence and summability of Fourier Series.

### **AM3.1 (about 39 lectures) Numerical Analysis**

**Objectives:** To study and apply advanced techniques in numerical analysis.

**Syllabus:** Systems of non-linear equations, two-dimensional cubic splines, numerical algebra, numerical computation of eigenvalues, numerical solution of ordinary and partial differential equations, finite differences, the finite element method, discrete Fourier transform algorithms.

### **AM3.2 (about 39 lectures) Control and Optimization**

**Objectives:** This course is intended to be an elementary introduction to two related, but distinct, areas of mathematical investigation. The approach is modern and geometric, and application-oriented. These techniques are much used in modern engineering design as well as problems in economics.

**Syllabus:** Linear Control Systems: Solution of an uncontrolled system: spectral form, exponential form. Solution of a controlled system. Time varying systems. Relationship between state space and classical form. Controllability. Observability. Linear feedback. Optimization: Optimization of functions of a single and several variable(s). Constrained optimization. Linear programming, geometric interpretation. The simplex method. Optimal Control: Calculus of variations. Pontryagin's principle.

### **AM3.3 (about 39 lectures) Logic of Computation**

**Objectives:** Mathematical logic is the basis of computer science and machine languages. A good foundation as well as an introduction to fuzzy concepts are provided in this course.

**Syllabus:** Introduction to logic: conjunction, disjunction, complementation, implication and entailment of propositional calculus.

Two-valued logic: Boolean lattices, algebras, unique complementation, De Morgan laws, relations.

Many-valued logic: Power set operation of fuzzy sets: Zadeh's extension principle, various t-norms on the unit-interval and their associated complements; lattice-valued fuzzy sets, fuzzy relations.

Introduction to Quantum logic : quantum bits, gates, state spaces and computational basis.

### **AM3.4 (about 39 lectures) Applied Analysis**

**Objectives:** The solution of differential equations is

important in many areas of application, most particularly engineering fields.

**Syllabus:** A selection of techniques used in the solution of certain ordinary differential equations, systems of ODE, partial differential equations and systems of PDE. These techniques include the method of characteristics, Fourier transforms and Laplace transforms. Introduction to dynamical systems.

### **Mathematics and Applied Mathematics Honours**

Each of the two courses consists of ten topics of about 26 lectures each, plus tutorial assignments or practical work. A Mathematics Honours course usually requires the candidate to have majored in Mathematics, whilst Applied Mathematics Honours usually requires the candidate to have majored in Applied Mathematics. The topics are selected from the following general areas covering a wide spectrum of contemporary Mathematics and Applied Mathematics:

Topology; Algebra and applications (e.g. Coding Theory and Cryptography); Mathematical Logic and Set Theory; Fuzzy Sets with applications to Topology, Algebra and Control Theory; Measure Theory and Functional Analysis; Lattice Theory; Combinatorics; Category Theory; Differential Equations; Differential Geometry; Aspects of mathematical education (such as olympiads, elementary mathematics from an advanced viewpoint); Group representations; Quantum Field Theory; Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos Theory; Mathematics of networking; Wavelet Analysis; Numerical Analysis; Neural Networks; Information and Control; Fuzzy linear programming; Mathematical modelling.

Two or three topics from those offered at the third-year level in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics may also be taken in the case of a student who has not done such topics before. Two or three topics may also be replaced by an appropriate project.

With the approval of the Heads of Department concerned, the course may also contain topics from Education, and from those offered by other departments in the Science Faculty such as Physics, Computer Science, and Statistics.

On the other hand, the topics above may also be considered by such Departments as possible components of their postgraduate courses.

### **Master's and Doctoral degrees in Mathematics or Applied Mathematics**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to these degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for these degrees are

given in the General Rules.

A Master's degree in either Mathematics or Applied Mathematics is taken by a combination of course work and a thesis. Normally four examination papers and/or essays are required apart from the thesis.

The whole course of study must be approved by the Head of Department.

## **MUSIC AND MUSICOLOGY** (*SEE ALSO FACULTY OF HUMANITIES RULES*)

### **Professor & Head of Department**

CE Lucia, MA(Oxon), PhD(Rhodes), PGCEd(Dunelm), LRAM. ATCL

### **Senior Lecturer**

TEK Radloff, BA, HDE, MMus, RULM(Rhodes), UTLM(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

### **Lecturers**

D Heunis, BA(Mus), HED(Stell), Teacher's Licentiate (Flute)(UNISA), MMus(Rhodes)

CJ Cockburn, MMus(CapeTown), HDE, FRCO, FTCL, LRSM

### **The Bachelor of Music Degree**

The four-year BMus degree is intended for students who wish to pursue music as a profession. In order to be recognised as a teaching qualification it must be combined with one of the Licentiate Diplomas. Except as provided in Rules 14 and 15 of the General Regulations, candidates shall not be admitted to the degree unless they have attended approved courses subsequent to their first registration as a matriculated student for at least four years. Students who wish to take more than the minimum number of BMus courses in any one year may do so, subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

### **Music as a subject in other Degree courses**

Musicology or Ethnomusicology can be taken as a three-year major subject for the BA and BSc degrees. Practical Studies can be taken for two years in the BA or BSc degree, Musical Education can be taken for two years in the BA degree, and History and Appreciation of Music can be taken as a one-year course in those Faculties for which it is approved.

### **Practical training**

The Department offers purely practical training in the playing of an instrument to students from all

faculties. Tuition is given for the external Licentiate examinations conducted by the University of South Africa, the Associated Board of the Royal Schools of Music, London, and Trinity College, London.

### **Introductory courses**

Prospective students may, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, be required to complete Introductory courses before enrolling for first-year music courses, or concurrently with them.

### **Basic music literacy**

A programme of study designed to enable students to read staff notation to the required level for first year.

### **Basic computer literacy**

Basic word processing skills required to write essays.

### **Basic practical skills**

A programme of study designed to enable students to reach the required level for a first-year major instrument.

### **English Language for Academic Purposes**

Students whose English is insufficient to cope with lectures, readings and essays at first-year level will be required to take the course English Language for Academic Purposes (in the Department of Linguistics and English Language).

## **CURRICULUM FOR BMUS DEGREE**

### **FIRST YEAR**

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1  
Practical Studies 1  
Any Bachelor of Arts course

### **SECOND YEAR**

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Practical Studies 2  
Any Bachelor of Arts course

### THIRD YEAR

*Students must choose two of the following*

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Practical Studies 3

### FOURTH YEAR

Students must do five papers or their equivalent in credit points (5).

*Compulsory:* One of the following:

Paper 1: Extended essay (2) *or*  
Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2) *or*  
Paper 3: Public performance (2)

*Options:* Any combination of the following which amounts to at least 3 credit points. If Paper 1 has not been chosen, the options must include Musicology 4 or Ethnomusicology 4. All options are not necessarily offered every year.

Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)  
Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)  
Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)  
Paper 7: Music technology (½)  
Paper 8: Instrumental technology (½)  
Paper 9: Music and the media (½)  
Paper 10: Conducting (½)  
Paper 11: Acoustics (½)  
Paper 12: Short composition portfolio (½)  
Paper 13: Short public performance (½)

**NB** *As part of their DP requirements all students have to take part in at least one approved ensemble (e.g. Rhodes University Chamber Choir, Rhodes University Jazz Band or East Cape Philharmonic Orchestra) during their course of study.*

**NB** *Students enrolled for the BMus degree in parallel with a diploma must choose the same options for the degree and the diploma in their third year.*

### BA AND BSc DEGREES WITH MUSIC AS A MAJOR

Normally not more than FOUR music subjects may normally be taken in the BA or BSc degrees (see the relevant Faculty regulations). Students who do not have the requisite knowledge or skills to enter first-year music courses may be required to do some or all of the Introductory courses of BMus.

### FIRST YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

### Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1 Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1

### Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc

### SECOND YEAR

Students may choose one *or* two of the following, each of which counts as a full credit.

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2  
Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc

### THIRD YEAR

Students may choose *one* of the following:  
Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3  
Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

### MUSICAL EDUCATION

Musical Education is a two-year subject which may be studied for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. Credit is not given until a corresponding credit or credits have been obtained in a music subject. See also Regulations H.9(4) and H.12(4).

### MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

### DEGREE OF MASTER OF MUSIC

*See also the General Regulations for Masters degrees.*

A Master's Degree may be awarded by submission of a thesis, by submission of a portfolio of compositions\*, or by performance in two public recitals\*. See also the General Regulations for the Degree of Master.

\*Any culture or style may be included.

### Thesis

The research proposal and title of the thesis must be approved by the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee within four months of registration for the degree.

### Composition

The nature and scope of the compositions must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before submission. Candidates must also submit an explanatory commentary on important structural, textural and stylistic aspects of the work submitted, including its contextualisation within contemporary South Africa. A candidate who submits a set of

compositions shall be required to submit only one copy of the compositions, which may be in manuscript.

#### **Performance**

The nature and scope of the performances must receive the prior approval of Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Department, before they are held. Candidates must also submit detailed programme notes on the pieces performed.

#### **DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

*See also the General Rules for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.*

In addition to, or in modification of, these regulations, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the PhD degree is required to submit for the approval of the Senate a thesis or a set of compositions. A candidate who submits a set of compositions in place of a thesis shall be required to submit only one copy of the compositions, which may be in manuscript.
2. A special treatise may be offered as a thesis on a subject previously approved by the Senate.
3. A set of compositions must consist of three original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.
4. Where compositions are submitted, the candidate must also submit an explanatory statement referring to any important aspects of the scores, including in particular a description of the form or forms employed and of any contrapuntal, harmonic and orchestrational devices used.

#### **DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF MUSIC (Senior Doctorate)**

The General Rules for the Degree of Doctor, other than Doctor of Philosophy, in all Faculties apply to the degree of Doctor of Music. The set of musical compositions referred to in may be printed or in manuscript.

In addition, the following apply:

1. A candidate for the degree of DMus is required to submit for the approval of Senate published work or a set of compositions.
2. The published work must be of historical or theoretical or analytical research in music, and must open new aspects of the subject discussed.
3. A set of compositions must consist of three

original compositions, the character and form of which must receive the prior approval of the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department.

#### **SYLLABUSES**

##### **FIRST YEAR**

##### **Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1**

Selected topics in Western Baroque and Classical music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

##### **Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1**

Introduction to African music and World music; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

##### **Practical Studies 1 for BMus\***

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

\*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

##### **Practical Studies 1 for BA/BSc\***

This will include study of a major instrument, a minor instrument OR ensemble, and a paper on Music Literature of the major instrument.

Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

\*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

#### **SECOND YEAR**

##### **Musicology & Compositional Techniques 2**

Selected topics in Western Romantic music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

##### **Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 2**

African music and world music, including selected topics in Southern Africa; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

##### **Practical Studies 2 for BMus\***

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

\*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

### **Practical Studies 2 for BA/BSc\***

This will include study of a major instrument, a minor instrument OR ensemble, and a paper on Music Literature of the major instrument.

Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

\*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

### **THIRD YEAR**

#### **Musicology & Compositional Techniques 3**

Selected topics in Western 20th-century music, popular music and jazz; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics; research methods.

#### **Ethnomusicology & Compositional Techniques 3**

Specific topics in African music and world music; composition, analysis and aural related to these topics.

### **Practical Studies 3 for BMus\***

This will include study of a major and minor instrument as well as ensemble skills. Syllabuses for the various instruments offered are available from the Department of Music.

\*The "instrument" can be voice, and can belong to any style, period or culture. Choice is subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

### **FOURTH YEAR**

#### **Paper 1: Extended essay (2)**

The candidate is required to submit an appropriately researched extended essay on a subject approved by the Head of Department. Three copies of the extended essay must be presented, suitably bound.

#### **Paper 2: Composition portfolio (2)**

Individual projects leading to the submission of a portfolio of compositions and a public performance of them.

#### **Paper 3: Public performance (2)**

A formal public recital of not less than 70 minutes.

#### **Paper 4: Analysis 4 (1)**

Advanced analytical projects in Western art music and/or jazz and/or African music. Detailed study of selected theorists.

#### **Paper 5: Musicology 4 (1)**

Musicological theories and their application, which may be linked to the topic chosen in Paper 1.

#### **Paper 6: Ethnomusicology 4 (1)**

Ethnomusicological theories and their application through field work, which may be linked to the topic chosen in Paper 1.

#### **Paper 7: Music technology (½)**

Basic recording and editing techniques, introduction to MIDI and SMPTE.

#### **Paper 8: Instrumental technology (½)**

How to make and repair musical instruments.

#### **Paper 9: Music and the media (½)**

Music criticism, and introduction to the music industry.

#### **Paper 10: Conducting (½)**

Technique and repertoire for choral and instrumental conducting and rehearsing.

#### **Paper 11: Acoustics (½)**

Introduction to sound and how it functions in the environment.

#### **Paper 12: Short composition portfolio (½)**

Individual project(s) in composition leading to the submission of a short portfolio of completed work.

#### **Paper 13: Short public performance (½)**

A public recital of not less than 30 minutes.

### **HISTORY AND APPRECIATION OF MUSIC**

This course is a general introduction to World Music. Notation, structure, style, genres and performance practices of various musical traditions. Elementary studies in Western European music, the development of Afro-American jazz and popular music and its influence on southern Africa; studies in traditional African music; studies in social history of Rock music.

### **MUSICAL EDUCATION**

#### **Musical Education 1**

Practical Study of Music 1, Minor Instrument Method and Practice of School Music 1 Recorder 1

Vocal Techniques 1

Teaching Method and Repertoire 1

#### **Musical Education 2**

Practical Study of Music 2, Minor Instrument Method and Practice of School Music 2

Recorder 2

Vocal Techniques 2

### **MUSIC HONOURS (BA or BSc)**

See the curriculum and syllabuses for BMus Fourth Year, which is identical to Music Honours.

### **RHODES UNIVERSITY LICENTIATE DIPLOMAS IN MUSIC**

#### **CURRICULA AND SYLLABUSES**

The Licentiate Diploma in Music is a three-year

diploma designed to meet the needs of students who wish to become specialist teachers (teachers of school music, teachers of individual instruments or voice) or performers. Students must take all the *music* papers prescribed for the BMus degree but the level required to pass them is 5% lower, i.e. 45%. For courses relating to specific Licentiates the pass mark remains 50%, or in some cases 60%.

### FIRST YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 1

Practical Studies 1 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 1 (with the exception of a Bachelor of Arts course).

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

#### RULS (School Music) I

Method and Practice of School Music 1

Interpretation and application of the current Primary School class music syllabuses.

Recorder 1#

Vocal Techniques 1#

Ensemble Directorship 1#

#Syllabuses are available from the Department of Music.

#### RUL... (Teachers) 1

Ensemble Directorship 1#

#### RULM (Performers) 1

No specific courses. The level required to pass Practical Studies 1 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

### SECOND YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 2

Practical Studies 2 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 2 (with the exception of a Bachelor of Arts course).

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

#### RULS (School Music) 2

Method and Practice of School Music 2

Interpretation and application of the current Secondary School class music syllabuses.

Recorder 2#

Vocal Techniques 2#

Ensemble Directorship 2#

#Syllabuses are available from the Department of Music.

#### Philosophy of Music Education

Music education in the philosophical systems of

different periods and cultures; the aesthetics of music education.

#### RUL... (Teachers) 2

Ensemble Directorship 2

Philosophy of Music Education

Teaching Method and Repertoire 1

Didactics and theoretical concepts of the major instrument.

#### RULM (Performers) 2

The level required to pass Practical Studies 2 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

Music Literature 1

Survey of the repertoire of the major instrument.

### THIRD YEAR

Courses common to all Licentiates:

Musicology and Compositional Techniques 3

Ethnomusicology and Compositional Techniques 3

Practical Studies 3 for BMus

Syllabuses as prescribed for BMus 3.

Courses relating to specific Licentiates:

#### RULS (School Music) 3

Method and Practice of School Music 3

Interpretation and application of the current subject music syllabuses.

Teaching Method and Repertoire 2

Didactics and theoretical concepts of the major and minor instrument

Psychology of Music Education

Psychology of musical reception, perception and evaluation; the physiology of hearing; methods of research in psychology of music education.

#### RUL... (Teachers) 3

Teaching Method and Repertoire 2

Psychology of Music Education

#### RULM (Performers) 3

The level required to pass Practical Studies 3 is 10% higher than for BMus, i.e. 60%.

Music Literature 2

Survey of the repertoire of the major and minor instrument.

#### CERTIFICATE IN CHANGE RINGING

One-year Certificate in the basic theory and practice of change ringing.

#### CERTIFICATE IN AFRICAN MUSIC

One-year Certificate in the basic theory and practice of African music. (Subject to Ministerial approval.)

**NB** No student of the Department of Music shall perform or compete in public, or teach during term time without the permission of the Head of the Department.

## PHARMACY

### Head of Pharmacy and Dean of the Faculty

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), B.Sc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes),  
MRPharmS, FPS(SA)

### Deputy Dean

To be appointed.

### Professor of Pharmacology

B Potgieter, MSc(Farm), DSc(PUforCHO), DTD,  
MRPharmS, MPS(SA)

### Professor of Pharmacy Practice

To be appointed

### Associate Professor-in-charge of Pharmaceutical Chemistry

BD Glass, BPharm(Rhodes), BSc(Hons)(UPE), PhD  
(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

### Associate Professors

JM Haigh, BSc(Hons) (Rhodes), PhD (CapeTown),  
MRPharmS, MPS(SA)

BJ Wilson, BSc(Sask), MSc(Sask), PhD(Purdue),  
MPS(SA)

WT Futter, MCom(Rhodes), ACIS

S Daya, BSc(UDW), MSc (Rhodes), PhD(MEDUNSA)

### Senior Lecturers

SSD Robertson, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

R Dowse, BPharm (Rhodes), PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

RR Walker, BPharm (Rhodes) PhD(Rhodes), MPS(SA)

To be appointed

### Lecturers

A Kench, MB, CHB(CapeTown)

MS Ehlers, BPharm(Rhodes), LLB(Cape Town), MPS(SA)

To be appointed

To be appointed

Syllabuses of first year and other BPharm courses not given below appear in the sections on the Departments of Botany, Chemistry, Computer Science, Mathematics, Physics and Electronics, Statistics, and Zoology and Entomology.

## SYLLABUSES FOR THE BACHELOR OF PHARMACY DEGREE

### Anatomy and Physiology - PC 210

Tissues. Functional anatomy. The homeo-static systems. Internal communication. Energy procurement and utilisation. Circulation. Excretion. Defence systems against infection. Repair mechanisms. Reproductive system. The Nervous System.

### Pharmaceutical Biochemistry - PC 211

Macromolecules as the basis for structural integrity,

active transport, regulation and information of the cell, targets for drug action. Primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary structures of proteins and their relations to function. Protein binding to other molecules. Basis of catalytic power of catalytic proteins. Structural polysaccharides and structural lipids in relation to membrane functions. Structure and function of nucleic acids. Intermediary metabolism. Regulatory systems for metabolism and their mechanisms.

### Pharmaceutical Chemistry 2 - PC 220

A course of aliphatic, heterocyclic and aromatic functional group chemistry illustrating the general chemical properties of simple medicinal agents and pharmaceutical aids. The course rests on an elementary treatment of reaction mechanisms and lays the foundation for more detailed studies of pharmaceutical chemicals and their molecular interactions with biological systems. The course also includes the use of instrumental and volumetric analytical methods for quantitative assessment of pharmaceutical compounds and formulations and an introduction to radiopharmacy.

### Pharmacy Administration and Practice 2 - PC 240

This course provides students with a disciplinary foundation to their roles as pharmacists and managers. Introductory courses explore the nature of business and the functions and principles of management; accounting and management accounting; human behaviour and sociology with particular reference to medical sociology.

### Pharmaceutics 2 - PC 230

This course includes a comprehensive coverage of the basic physicochemical principles involved in the design and preparation of dosage forms. In addition the following areas are also covered: pharmacopoeial usage, sterilization and disinfection, biological products, surgical dressings, polymers and an introduction to pharmacokinetics.

### Pharmaceutical Chemistry 3 - PC 321

A course illustrating the stability, metabolism, structure activity relationships, modes of action of major groups of medicinal agents and physiologically active compounds. Radiopharmaceuticals. The course also includes the theory and application of selected instrumental methods of analysis.

### Pharmaceutics 3 - PC 331

A consideration of conventional liquid and semi-solid

drug delivery systems, rectal delivery systems, sterile products including their preparation, product stability and a detailed study of pharmacokinetics. In addition, the classification, structure, genetics and virulence of microorganisms and their susceptibility to antimicrobial agents is covered in pharmaceutical microbiology.

#### **Pharmacy Administration and Practice 3 - PC 341**

This course is concerned with social and administrative aspects of the practice of pharmacy. The course in Social Pharmacy considers the theory, principles and processes of communication and their relevance to the provision of pharmaceutical care and in improving patient compliance. In examining the sociology of health care, a comparison is made between the development, nature and laws governing the health care system in South Africa with selected countries. Particular attention is given to the sociological, psychological and legal factors governing family planning in South Africa. Administrative Pharmacy provides insight into the concept of pharmaceutical services. The principles of marketing, financial and personnel management are examined with emphasis on their application to pharmaceutical organisations. A basic course is offered in economics and an economic overview of the health care system. The principles of pharmacoeconomic evaluation are examined.

#### **Pharmacology 3 - PC 350**

An understanding of the mode of action of bioactive agents such as drugs, pesticides, hormones, pheromones and poisons on living organisms, their metabolic fate and an allusion to their therapeutic uses.

#### **Pharmaceutical Chemistry 4 - PC 422**

The course concentrates on the development of drugs from natural sources and modern methods of designing new medicinal agents. Included is a discussion of the chemistry and biochemistry of vitamins and coenzymes.

#### **Pharmaceutics 4 - PC 432**

A consideration of conventional solid oral drug delivery systems, principles underlying the *in vitro* release of drugs, controlled release, novel and targeted dosage forms, their design and the mechanisms of drug release. The study of biopharmaceutics and radiopharmaceuticals and a brief overview of biotechnology as applied to pharmacy.

#### **Pharmacology 4 - PC 451**

A study of disease states and toxicology with

emphasis on their rational treatment with pharmaceuticals. Adverse drug responses and iatrogenic diseases.

#### **Pharmaceutical Administration and Practice 4 - PC 442**

There are two parts to this course. The first part, Pharmacy Practice, deals with the provision of a comprehensive pharmaceutical service to patients, patrons, other members of the health team and the community. Key functions are considered with particular attention to the provision of community health care, self medication and counter prescribing, therapeutic drug monitoring and patient counselling. Insight is provided into special socio-medical problems and management information systems. Students are provided with practical training in dispensing, prescribing, counselling, therapeutic drug monitoring using simulated training methods. Students are also involved in hospital case studies, literature reviews, hospital and clinic visits and the use of computers.

The second part of the course is Pharmacy Law. It examines the common law and statutory rights and duties of the pharmacist in South Africa with special regard to the legislation governing the pharmaceutical profession per se and other legislation governing the control of medicines, hazardous substances and other products commonly distributed by pharmaceutical outlets. This includes drug registration and development and post marketing surveillance. Students are provided with an in-depth examination of professional and ethics.

### **ELECTIVES**

#### **Pharmaceutical Research Techniques - PC 428**

The course involves the study of the theory and application of some of the more important techniques used in research in the pharmaceutical sciences. Techniques to be discussed are: thermal analysis, mass spectrometry, x-ray crystallography, chromatographic techniques including capillary zone electrophoresis, high performance liquid chromatography and gas chromatography, radiochemical techniques including scintillation and gamma counting, and advanced nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

#### **Bioavailability and Bioequivalence - PC 436**

The course involves the assessment of *in vivo* drug release from various dosage forms, and includes a consideration of biopharmaceutical factors which influence the biological availability of active ingredients from their specific formulations.



Statistical procedures used in the assessment of bioavailability and bioequivalence will be discussed as well as study design for testing of products, pharmacokinetic principles underlying the assessment procedures, the use and application of pharmacodynamic models, *in vitro* methods to determine bioavailability and the various regulatory aspects which need to be considered. A 'hands-on' session using relevant software and personal computers for the evaluation of Bioavailability and Bioequivalence is also included.

### **Dermatopharmacy - PC 437**

The objective of this elective is to give the student a greater understanding of the complexities of skin barrier function, major classes of dermatological conditions and their treatment, advanced criteria for topical drug delivery systems and *in vivo* and *in vitro* methods for assessing their performance.

### **Pharmaceutical Care - PC 445**

The objective of this course is to provide a comprehensive understanding of this concept. It involves a close examination of the process, elements, structure, outcomes and barriers to implementing pharmaceutical care as the philosophy for the practice of pharmacy. Special attention will be given to the historical development, the influence on professionalisation, the academic foundations, and the impact on the role of the pharmacist in dealing with individual patients, the community and other health professionals. An examination will be made of the pharmaceutical care process in primary, secondary and tertiary health care settings. Consideration will be given to the legal implications of pharmaceutical care, the role of communication, and the measurement and evaluation of patient outcomes. Students will participate extensively by presenting journal reviews on aspects of the course.

### **Toxicology - PC 455**

The course will include a general overview of toxicology in regulatory processes, consideration of laws governing toxic substances, metabolism in toxicity and testing methods. In addition to these

more general considerations, specific substances will be studied with respect to their source, their mechanism of action and the consequences of these actions.

### **Nutrition - PC 460**

The course involves a study of nutrition and health in relation to the diversity of human conditions and life styles. In addition to a discussion of the special requirements of nutrition in infancy, motherhood and sporting activities, food requirements and precautions in various disease states are considered.

### **Special Elective - PC 470**

### **Special Project - PC 490**

An individual report on an approved topic in any pharmaceutical field, based on a literature survey, or a practical project.

## **MASTER'S DEGREES**

Students who have completed the BPharm degree at a sufficiently high academic standard or students who have completed a bachelor's degree in another Faculty and have attained in their degree a standard suitable for continuation to a Master's degree in that Faculty, and who have an interest in the application of elements of other subjects to pharmaceutical disciplines, may be admitted as candidates for the degree of Master of Science in Pharmaceutical Sciences or Master of Pharmacy.

The Master of Science degree is taken by thesis. The Master of Pharmacy degree is taken either by examination, or by thesis, or a combination of the two. Registration for the Master of Science or Master of Pharmacy degree will depend upon the field of study of the candidate.

Registration with the South African Pharmacy Council may be a pre-requisite for registration for the Master of Pharmacy programme.

## **DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND DOCTOR OF SCIENCE IN PHARMACEUTICAL SCIENCES**

See General Regulations.

## PHILOSOPHY

### Head of Department

MD Vermaak, BA(Hons) (Stell), DrsPhil(Leyden)

### Professor

IA Macdonald, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Kansas)

### Lecturers

FX Williamson, BA(RAU), MA (Cape Town)

WE Jones, BA(Berkeley), PhD (Oxon)

**Philosophy** is a two-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities. The entrance requirement for Philosophy 2 is a credit in Anthropology 1 or Introduction to Philosophy or Journalism and Media Studies 1 or Legal Theory 1 or Logic or Politics 1 or Psychology 1 or Sociology 1. One, or in some cases two, courses in Philosophy are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Law and Science.

### Logic

This is a one-semester course (offered in the first semester) offering students an introduction to formal logic including propositional and predicate logic. It may be taken by students in the Faculties of Humanities, Science and Commerce.

**Introduction to Philosophy** is a one-year self-contained course which may be included in degree/diploma curricula in most under-graduate programmes in the University. It is a useful, but not compulsory, prerequisite course for Philosophy 2.

The course is designed to introduce students to some of the main philosophical ideas and issues which have dominated the history of Western civilisation and to contemporary philosophical debates. The course normally includes theories of knowledge; theories of human nature; theories of mind and society; moral and political philosophy (both applied and theoretical). The course includes some discussion of moral and political issues of direct relevance to contemporary South Africa and a component on critical reasoning skills.

### Philosophy 2

This course is designed to provide a basic foundation for further study in philosophy. No previous knowledge of philosophy is assumed. Both historical

and contemporary issues and approaches will be covered. Topics will be chosen from the following areas of philosophy: metaphysics; epistemology; moral philosophy; philosophy of science and philosophy of mind.

### Philosophy 3

This course provides advanced and detailed studies of topics from a range of different fields of philosophy. Usually topics from four fields are covered in a year. At least one topic is a detailed study of a major philosophical school or period or the texts of a major philosopher.

Fields from which topics are chosen include: history of philosophy; metaphysics; symbolic logic; philosophy of logic; philosophy of language; philosophy of mathematics; philosophy of science; philosophy of the social sciences; epistemology; phenomenology; philosophy of mind; ethics; social philosophy; political philosophy; philosophy of law; philosophy of religion.

### Philosophy Honours Course

Honours students normally write four three-hour papers chosen from a wide range of topics to suit their individual interests and needs. With the permission of the Head of the Department, an Honours candidate may substitute a research essay written during the year for one of the papers. The length of the research essay and the date on which it is to be submitted are laid down in the Faculty of Humanities rules.

Topics are chosen from the fields listed in Philosophy 3 above. The only guideline laid down is that at least two papers should include a critical analysis of the works of major philosophers or schools or periods of philosophy, and that the remaining topics should not normally be from fields studied for Philosophy 3.

### Master's Degree

Candidates may take the Master's degree in Philosophy either by examination or by thesis, as recommended by the Head of the Department. Candidates for the degree by examination are normally required to write a number of examinations on topics within their main field of interest, and to submit a short dissertation.

## PHYSICS AND ELECTRONICS

### Associate Professor & Head of Department

AWV Poole, PhD(Rhodes)

### Associate Professor

LMG Poole, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Sheffield)

### Senior Lecturers

RPJS Grant, MSc(Rhodes)

PDK Nathanson, PhD(Natal)

### Lecturers

R Haggard, Bsc (Rhodes), BSc(Hons) (UNISA), PhD (Rhodes)

To be appointed

### Senior Research Officer

JL Jonas, PhD(Rhodes)

### Research Associates

FAM Frescura, Bsc (Hons) (Witwatersrand). PhD (London)

AR Rice, DSc(Columbia)

Physics with Electronics (PHY) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

To major in Physics with Electronics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: PHY 1; PHY 2; PHY 3; MAT 1 or MAT 1E. Credit in either MAP 2 or MAT 2 is required for admission to Honours in Physics or Electronics, and is strongly recommended for candidates taking PHY 3. See Rule S.23.

Up to two, or in some cases four, Physics with Electronics semester-credits may be allowed for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Pharmacy.

Besides the major course, the department offers various other courses in Physics and Electronics.

Physics 1E is a terminal, non-calculus course intended for candidates majoring in the biological sciences. It consists of a semester-course in Elementary Physics (PHY 1E1) and one in Electronics Literacy (PHY 1E2). Either PHY 1 or PHY 1E is a compulsory prerequisite for students who wish to major in Chemistry, and credit in Physics 1E1 is a compulsory prerequisite for the BPharm 2 curriculum.

However, any student accepted into the university may register for PHY 1E2, which affords students in a wide range of disciplines an opportunity to gain an understanding of modern electronic devices such as computers.

See the Departmental Web Page

<http://phlinux.ru.ac.za/physics/physics.html> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

### First-year level courses in Physics with Electronics

There are two first-year courses in Physics with Electronics for candidates planning to major in physical, computational, mathematical or earth science subjects. PHY 101 is held in the first semester and PHY 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Candidates wishing to register for PHY 101 must have obtained at least an E symbol in Mathematics on the Higher Grade in the matriculation examination, or the equivalent thereof. Adequate performance in PHY 101 is required before a student may register for PHY 102. Alternatively, candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain credit in PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2.

### PHY 101

Theory Course: Mechanics.

Experimental course: Measurement and data analysis.

### PHY 102

Theory Course: Oscillations; waves; fields; AC theory; modern physics.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics.

The department offers two other first-level courses in Physics and Electronics. PHY 1E1 is held in the first semester and PHY 1E2 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 1E, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Candidates who attain a sufficiently high standard in PHY 1E1 may be allowed to register for PHY 102, obtain credit in PHY 1 and then proceed to PHY 2. Furthermore, entry into PHY 1E2 does not require that a student has attended or passed PHY 1E1. The course is open to all university students. Credit may be obtained in all three of the courses PHY 101, PHY 102 and PHY 1E2.

### **PHY 1E1: Elementary Physics for the Life Sciences**

Theory course: Mechanics; fluids; thermal physics; vibrations and waves; electricity and magnetism; the nucleus. Applications to the life sciences are emphasised.

Experimental course: Measurement and data analysis. Optics.

### **PHY 1E2: Electronics Literacy**

Theory course: Basic electricity and electronics necessary to connect up and commission modern, popular commercial instrumentation, in particular microprocessor based devices.

Experimental course: Electrical circuits; elementary analogue and digital electronics; computer expansion cards and peripherals.

### **Second-year level courses in Physics with Electronics**

There are two independent second-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 201 is held in the first semester and PHY 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required

subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credit in Physics with Electronics (PHY 1), and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for PHY 201 or PHY 202. Permission may be granted to repeat MAT 1 or MAT 1E concurrently with PHY 201 and PHY 202, provided that candidates have scored at least 30% previously. In such cases credit in the Physics with Electronics courses will only be awarded once credit has been obtained in the required Mathematics.

Candidates wishing to study Physics with Electronics 2 are recommended to include in their curricula at least one semester of Mathematics 2 containing the topics Advanced Calculus and Applied Analysis.

### **PHY 201**

Theory course: AC theory; Computational Physics; vibrations; waves; application of waves to transmission lines and optics.

Experimental course: AC circuits; analogue and digital electronics.

### **PHY 202**

Theory course: Special theory of relativity; mechanics; electrostatics; properties of matter.

Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

### **Third-year level courses in Physics with Electronics**

There are two third-year courses in Physics with Electronics. PHY 301 is held in the first semester and PHY 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course PHY 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course. Class tests, assignments and reports collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark for each course.

Credit in Physics with Electronics (PHY 2), and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for PHY 301 or PHY 302.

Adequate performance in PHY 301 is required before a candidate may register for PHY 302. Credit in either Applied Mathematics (MAP 2) or Mathematics MAT 2) is required for admission to Honours in Physics or Electronics and is strongly recommended for students taking PHY 301 and PHY 302.

### **PHY 301**

Theory course: Electromagnetism; signals and systems; quantum mechanics 1.

Experimental course: Analogue electronics; advanced digital electronics.

### **PHY 302**

Theory course: Quantum mechanics 2; spectra; nuclear physics; thermodynamics.

Experimental course: Physics laboratory techniques.

### **Honours courses**

Candidates may choose to read for Honours degrees in Physics, Electronics, Telecommunications, Joint Physics and Electronics or in approved combinations with subjects offered by other departments.

A BSc with a major in Physics with Electronics, and credit in either MAT 2 or MAP 2 is the normal entrance requirement for these courses.

Practical work, essays, tests and a project done during the year form part of the final mark, and a full course typically includes an approved selection of nine topics from those listed below.

### **Physics Honours**

Aeronomy; astrophysics 1 and 2; computer interfacing; fluid mechanics; numerical methods; optics; solid state; spectra. Appropriate topics from the list of the Electronics Honours course.

### **Electronics Honours**

Computer interfacing; control; electronic design; numerical methods; optics; telecommunications; signal processing; waveguides and antennas. Appropriate topics from the list of the Physics Honours course.

### **Telecommunications Honours**

Aeronomy; computer interfacing; control theory; electronic design; optics; radio propagation; signal processing; telecommunications; waveguides and antennas.

### **Joint Physics and Electronics Honours, and other combinations**

For Joint Honours programmes, an approved selection of topics may be taken from the lists given for the Physics and Electronics Honours courses, so that the final proportion in each is between 40% and 60%. Similarly, Physics or Electronics may be combined with another approved Honours course (e.g. in Computer Science, Geology, Chemistry, Mathematics) to form a joint Honours course. A candidate may substitute approved topics from other Honours courses in the Faculty of Science for topics in any of the Honours courses in this Department.

### **MSc and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

The Master's degree may be taken in Physics, or Electronics, and will be examined by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects. Current areas of specialisation include radio astronomy; meteor physics; upper atmosphere physics; and the application of fluid dynamics to modelling geophysical processes. The current areas of specialisation in Electronics are transducers and digital signal processing.

A PhD degree may be taken by thesis. Candidates may also be required to take an oral examination. Acceptance of the candidate will depend on previous academic record and availability of suitable projects, and is at the discretion of the Head of Department. Current areas of specialisation are as for the MSc degree.

## POLITICAL STUDIES (Includes International Studies Unit)

### Associate Professor & Head of Department

P-H Bischoff, BA(Witwatersrand), MA(Lancaster), PhD (Manchester)

### Professor

RJ Southall, BA(Leeds), MA(Econ)(Manchester), PhD (Birmingham)

### Senior Lecturers

R Ajulu, MA(Lesotho), DPhil(Sussex)

AP Fluxman, MA(Witwatersrand), MA, PhD(Cornell)

K Adar, MSc(Indiana State), MA, PhD(South Carolina)

L Vincent, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), DPhil(Oxon)

### Lecturers

IH Sarakinsky, MA(Witwatersrand)

**Politics** is a three-year subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

### FIRST-LEVEL COURSES

POL 101-2 Introduction to Politics and International Relations

POL 102-2 South Africa and Comparative Politics

#### Rules:

1. Each semester course earns two credit points.
2. First semester courses will be conditionally written off in June. Students who fail first semester courses in June with a mark of 40-49% may write a supplementary paper in November.
3. Second semester courses will be written off in November. Students who fail second semester courses with a mark of 40-49% may write a supplementary examination in February.
4. Students who plan to major in Politics but have failed either POL 101 or POL 102 will not be permitted to enter POL 201, 202, 203 and 204.
5. Students who wish to major in Politics but who elected to do only one of either POL 101 or POL 102 must obtain the additional two credit points (POL 101 or POL 102) concurrently with POL 201, 202 and/or 203 and/or 204.

### SECOND-LEVEL COURSES

POL 201-1 Political and Social Theory

POL 202-1 Political Sociology

POL 203-1 Politics of Industrialised States

POL 204-1 International Relations

#### Rules:

1. Each half-course (one term) earns one credit point.

2. Students majoring in Politics must obtain one credit point from POL 201, 202, 203 and 204.

3. First semester courses will normally be written off in ninety-minute examination papers in June.

4. Second semester courses will normally be written off in ninety-minute examination papers in November.

5. Students who are not majoring in Politics may take POL 201, POL 202, POL 203 or POL 204 without having taken either POL 101 or POL 102. If subsequently they wish to major in Politics, they may only do so with the permission of the Dean.

### THIRD-LEVEL COURSES

POL 301-2 Contemporary Political Thought

POL 302-2 South African Politics and Government

POL 303-2 Government and Politics in Africa

POL 304-2 Selected issues

POL 305-2 Political Philosophy

POL 305 will not necessarily be offered in any one year. The content of POL 304 will vary from year to year but can include the following: Political Movements of the Twentieth Century; International Organisation; Political Sociology; Public Policy in South Africa; International Political Economy.

#### Rules:

1. POL 301, POL 302 and POL 303 are semester courses and earn two credits each. All other 300 level courses are either semester or term courses where a semester course earns two credits and a term course earns one credit.
2. Students majoring in Politics must possess three credits from POL 201, POL 202, POL 203 and POL 204 in order to register for 300 level courses. Students who have failed one Politics component at 200 level may proceed into 300 level courses provided they take that component concurrently.
3. POL 301, POL 302 and POL 303 are compulsory for students majoring in Politics.
4. First-semester courses will be written off in June. Students who fail with 45% - 49% may take a supplementary examination in November.
5. Second-semester courses will be written off in November. Students who fail with 45% - 49% may take a supplementary examination in February.

6. Students will not be entitled to more than one supplementary examination per semester.

7. Students may not normally register for courses earning more than 4 credit points per semester.

8. In addition to POL 301, POL 302 and POL 303, students majoring in Politics must pass an additional course amounting to two credits. These may be selected from POL 304, POL 305 and from:

History 202-1 Twentieth Century World History

History 301-1 Race, Class, Nationalism and Ethnicity in Twentieth Century South Africa

History 303-1 Power and resistance in the Eastern Cape

History 304-1 Women in southern African History

History 305-1 Defenders and Critics of African Colonialism

History 306-1 Africa in Crisis

History 308-1 Themes in Modern Islamic History

Sociology - Racism

Sociology - Gender Studies

Sociology - Sociology of Development

Industrial Sociology - Sociology of Trade Unionism

Economics - Environmental Economics

Anthropology - European Anthropology

Anthropology - Applied Anthropology

Law - Customary Law

Law - Labour Law

Law - Environmental Law

These courses will be written off at the end of the semester in which they are taken.

## GENERAL RULES

1. Classwork counts for 30% of a student's grade in all courses taken in Politics; examinations count for 70%. Students who take options from other departments as part of a major in Politics are subject to the marking regimes followed in those departments.

2. A major in Political Studies normally requires a student to obtain 16 credits in Politics. This requirement is waived when a course counting towards the Political Studies major is taken in another department (see above).

## POSTGRADUATE PROGRAMME

The Department offers several postgraduate programmes:

(a) **A Postgraduate Diploma in International**

**Studies** consisting of five papers. Entrance requirements: an undergraduate degree in any field with a good pass.

(b) **An Honours Degree in Political Studies (Democratisation)** consisting of five papers and a research essay. Entrance requirements: a Bachelors Degree in Political Studies or Sociology or Philosophy or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(c) **An Honours Degree in International Studies**, consisting of five papers. Entrance requirements: a Bachelors degree majoring in Political Studies and/or International Relations and/or Economics and/or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(d) **Master's Degree in Political Studies (Democratisation)**, by coursework (consisting of four papers) and a 15 000 - 25 000 word thesis. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or Philosophy or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(e) **Master's Degree in International Studies**, (The South in World Politics) by coursework (consisting of four papers) and a (15 000 - 25 000 word) thesis. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies and/or International Relations and/or Economics and/or History and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(f) **Higher Diploma in Political Studies**: Candidates registered for the Master's degree in Political Studies by coursework and thesis and who have successfully passed the coursework, may exit from the master's degree and obtain a Higher Diploma in Political Studies.

(g) **Higher Diploma in International Studies**: Candidates registered for the Master's degree in International Studies by coursework and thesis and who have successfully passed the coursework, may exit from the Master's degree and obtain a Higher Diploma in International Studies.

(h) **Master's Degree in Political Studies**, by thesis only. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or History or Philosophy and at least a good second class pass or its equivalent.

(i) **Master's Degree in International Studies**, by thesis only. Entrance requirements: normally an Honours degree in Political Studies or Sociology or History or Economics and at least a second class pass

or its equivalent.

(j) **Doctor of Philosophy (PhD)** consisting of a dissertation. Entrance requirements: normally, a Master's degree in International Relations or Political Studies.

Students doing a Master's degree by thesis may be upgraded to the PhD with the permission of the University.

Classwork counts for 30% and examinations 70% of the final assessment in the Diploma and Honours programmes. At Master's level, Classwork counts for 30%, and examinations 70% of final assessment of coursework; overall, coursework will count for 60% and the thesis for 40% of the final mark. Grading of classwork in courses read by both Honours and Master's students will be appropriate to the level (Honours or Master's) of the student. A written proposal for the thesis should be submitted for the consideration of the Humanities Higher Degrees Committee by 30 June of the year in which the degree is begun. The proposal must conform to the requirements set out in the Rhodes University Higher Degrees Guide.

#### **Postgraduate Diploma in International Studies**

POL 601 Introduction to International Relations  
POL 602 International Relations of Southern Africa  
POL 603 Introduction to International Political Economy  
POL 604 International Law  
POL 605 Contemporary Issues  
POL 606 Research Essay

1. Students will be required to pass POL 601, 602, 603 and 604.

2. As well as passing POL 601, 602, 603 and 604, students will be required to pass POL 605 (if offered), or POL 606 or any course in the Division of French, or in the Division of German, subject to the approval of both the Head of the Department of Political Studies and the subject Heads in the School of Languages.

3. Students obtaining 70% in aggregate in Politics coursework in the Diploma may proceed direct to the Master's level.

#### **Honours in Political Studies (Democratisation) and International Studies**

POL 401 International Relations Theory  
POL 402 International Political Economy

POL 403 International Law  
POL 404 Peace and Conflict  
POL 405 International Relations of the Asia-Pacific  
POL 406 International Relations of Africa  
POL 407 Non-State Actors in World Politics  
POL 408 Global Commons  
POL 409 International Economics  
POL 410 The Political Economy of Africa  
POL 411 Selected Issues in International Relations  
POL 412 Social and Political Theory  
POL 413 Democratisation  
POL 414 Political Philosophy  
POL 415 Democratic Theory  
POL 416 Democracy and the South  
POL 417 Gender and Democratization  
POL 418 Freedom and Domination  
POL 419 Structured Research Essay  
Not all courses listed above will be offered in any one year.

#### **Rules:**

1. For International Studies Honours, students must pass POL 401 and four other approved Honours courses.
2. For Political Studies Honours (Democratisation), students must pass POL 413 and four other approved Honours courses.

#### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees**

The following papers are also offered as components of the Interdisciplinary Honours Degree programme:  
POL 412 Social and Political Theory (Gender Studies)  
POL 418 Freedom and Domination (Gender Studies)  
POL 408 Global Commons (Development Studies)  
POL 413 Democratisation

#### **Master's Degree in International Studies**

##### **(The South in World Politics)**

POL 501 Theories of World Politics  
POL 502 Foreign Policy Analysis  
POL 505 Contemporary Political Analysis and Methods

1. For the Master's degree in International Studies, students must normally pass POL 501, POL 502 and POL 505, and one other approved course offered at postgraduate level. The optional course must normally be selected from courses offered within the Department. Students may not repeat courses which they have passed at Honours level.

2. Students will in addition be required to submit a



15 000- 25 000 word thesis.

3. Students who have not completed POL 401 or its equivalent at another university will normally be required to do so.

### **Master's Degree in Political Studies (Democratisation)**

POL 503 Democratic Theory

POL 505 Contemporary Political Analysis and Methods

1. For the Master's degree in Political Studies (Democratisation), students must normally pass POL 503 and POL 505 and two other approved courses offered at postgraduate level.

At least one of the optional courses must be selected

from courses offered within the Department. Students may not repeat courses which they have passed at Honours level

2. Students who have not passed POL 413 at Honours level will be required to do so.

3. Students will in addition be required to submit a 15 000-25 000 word thesis.

### **Rules:**

1. No supplementary examinations will be offered at Master's level.

2. Students failing any core course at Master's level will not be allowed to continue in the Master's programme.

## **PRIMARY EDUCATION** (*See also under EDUCATION*)

### **Associate Professor & Head of Department**

DW McKellar, BA, UED, BEd(Natal), MEd, PhD (Rhodes)

### **Senior Lecturers**

AL Mayo, NTSD, HDE(Natal), MEd (Hull)

D Zinn, BA(Hons) (Cape Town), DEd (Harvard)

### **Lecturers**

NS Coughlan, BA, NHED, MEd (Rhodes), DSE (Remedial)(CapeTown);

BN Hayward, CertEd, BEd(Rhodesia), MEd (Zimbabwe)

JRM Paul, BA(Rhodes), CertEd(Rhodesia), BEd(Cape Town), MEd(Rhodes)

MA Brookes, TTD(JCE), HDE(Rhodes)

LJ Smith, BA(CapeTown), BA(Hons), HDE (PG) Prim(Rhodes), MA (AppLing and TESOL)(Leicester)

X Mtose, BA(Fort Hare), HDE(PG)(Prim) (CapeTown);

MH Irvine, BA, UED, BEd(Rhodes), HDE(PG)(Pre-Prim) (UNISA)

### **Diploma in Education (Junior Primary or Senior Primary)**

This is a two-year part-time course suitable for teachers who have a recognised two year primary school teaching qualification. The course challenges teachers to reexamine teaching styles and strategies in the primary school. A period of Teaching Practice is compulsory, during which time the students implement many of the ideas they have explored during the course.

### **Higher Diploma in Education (Primary) (Undergraduate)**

(*Not offered in 2000*)

This is a one-year full-time course suitable for teachers who have a recognised three year primary school teaching qualification.

The course includes a consideration of educational theory as applied in primary education and students are encouraged to link theory with practice. Such links are examined during Teaching Practice.

### **Higher Diploma in Education (Pre-Primary Education)**

This course will be introduced in 1999 as a one year full-time course. An admission requirement will be that teachers have a recognised three year primary teaching qualification. The course will include such subjects as education studies (pre-primary), professional studies, pre-primary studies in language development, pre-mathematics and writing, developmental play, art, music and environment studies. Teaching Practice will include visits to schools and time spent teaching in pre-primary schools and classrooms.

### **Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Junior or Senior Primary)**

This is a one year post-graduate course for teachers who have an approved degree and who wish to teach

in the primary school. The course includes a study of Education Theory, Professional Studies, and Teaching Practice in selected primary schools. The course is offered only if the number of students justifies it.

**Further Diploma in Education (Technology Education (Primary))**

As this course is offered in Grahamstown, refer to the entry under **EDUCATION**.

**Further Diploma in Education (Primary School Mathematics)**

As this course is offered in Grahamstown, refer to the entry under **EDUCATION**.

**Bachelor of Primary Education**

This is a four year full-time degree for students who wish to become primary school teachers.

It is offered at the East London Campus. The curriculum includes the following:

*Education 1, 2, 3* courses focus on the child, the school and primary education issues respectively.

Drawing on the disciplines of educational psychology, educational philosophy and educational sociology, links between theory and practice are established.

*Further academic courses.* Students complete four academic courses at first year degree level and one at second year degree level.

*Professional Studies* occupies an important part in the degree course. Students study the theory and practice of teaching the various subjects that make up the primary school curriculum. Courses include such subjects as the teaching of English, Afrikaans, Xhosa, mathematics, children's literature, environmental studies, writing, history, geography, science, biblical studies, and computer literacy.

*Practical Subjects* are taught and students complete such courses as school art and design technology.

*Teaching Practice.* Students gain experience as student-teachers in various primary schools to develop the insights and skills required of a primary school teacher.

## PSYCHOLOGY

### Professor & Head of Department

CR Stones, MSc, PhD(Rhodes), MSAIP, IABMCP, CPsychol, AFBPsS

### Professor

DJA Edwards, BA(Oxon).PhD(Rhodes), CPsychol

### Associate Professor & Director of Psychology Clinic

AB Jordan, BA(Rhodes), STD, MSc(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

### Part-time Associate Professor in Psychiatry

DD Swingler, MB, ChB (Cape Town), FCPsych (UNISA)

### Senior Lecturers

K Kelly, MA(Natal), PhD(Rhodes)

M Welman, MA(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

H van Vlaenderen, Licentiate in the Pedagogical and Psychological Sciences (Ghent), PhD (Rhodes)

ZG Knight, BA(Hons), MEd, PhD(Rhodes)

### Lecturers

CA Hammond, MA(Rhodes)

BD Douglas, BA(Hons)(UNISA), MA(NewYork), MA(UNISA)

M van der Riet, MA(Rhodes)

L Wilbraham, MA(ResPsych)(CapeTown)

J Knoetze, BA, HDE (Stell), BA(Hons)(UPE), MEd (Psych) (Stell)

### Junior Lecturers

D Neves, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

A Copteros, BA (Witwatersrand), BA (Hons) (UWC)

### East London Campus

### Professor

AJ Gilbert, BSocSc(Hons)(Natal), DPhil(UNISA)

### Lecturers

SK Sparrius, BA (SocWork) (Witwatersrand), BSocSc (Hons) (UNISA), MSocSc, MA(I-O Psych) (Cape Town)

J Rankin, NTSD, BSocSc(Hons), MEd (Psych)(Natal)

### Junior Lecturers

E Harris, BA, BSocSc(CapeTown)

C van Ommen, BSc(Witwatersrand), MA(ClinPsych) (RAU)

A three-year major in Psychology or a two-year major in Industrial Psychology may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science. Psychology 1 and 2 are compulsory credits for the BSocSc (SocWork) degree. One or two courses in Psychology or Industrial Psychology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculty of Law. Psychology 1 is a common first-year

credit for students majoring in Psychology or Industrial Psychology. In the second year students elect to continue either to Psychology 2 or Industrial Psychology 2. A major in Psychology is recommended for students planning to become teachers or entering helping professions with an emphasis on counselling or clinical work. It is also recommended for students with no clear career goals since it is of value for those going to work in business or industry after graduating. A major in Industrial Psychology is a good preparation for work in business and industry and, in addition, will qualify students to proceed to postgraduate professional training in Industrial Psychology. The Head of Department reserves the right to limit entry of students into Industrial Psychology 2. Students who wish to continue from Psychology 2 to Industrial Psychology 3 or from Industrial Psychology 2 to Psychology 3 require permission from the Head of Department. This will not be automatic and in cases where permission is given assignments will be set to enable students to cover the work they have missed.

### Psychology 1

This course consists of a general introduction to the study of psychology, supplemented by tutorials. Topics covered include: Brain and Behaviour, Sensation and Perception, Personality and Social, Cognitive and Developmental Psychology.

### Psychology 2

There are two modules, *Individual Psychology* and *The Individual in Society* in which the following courses are usually taught: Personality, a study of various approaches to personality formation and personal growth; Psychopathology, the study of abnormal behaviour; Developmental Psychology, a deconstructionist approach to issues of growth and change in South Africa; Frontiers of Psychology, the study of parapsychological and transpersonal phenomena; Social Psychology, the study of social influences on behaviour and thought; Psychology and Gender, an exploration of gender issues; Culture and Psychology, the relevance of cultural identity to other branches of psychology; and Cognition in Society, a contextualised approach to the acquisition of knowledge.

### Industrial Psychology 2

There are two modules, *the Individual in the*

*Workplace* and *The Individual in Society*, in which the following courses are usually taught: Personality, a study of various approaches to personality and personal growth; Psychopathology, the study of abnormal behaviour; Health in the Workplace, a study of health issues affecting productivity and the individual in the workplace; Vocational Psychology, the principles of career choice and development; Social Psychology, the study of social influences on Psychology, the relevance of cultural identity to other branches of psychology; and Consumer Psychology, the psychology of advertising and consumer behaviour.

### **Psychology 3**

There are two modules, *Psychology and Change* and *Psychological Research and Assessment* in which the following courses are normally taught: Psychology and Social Change; Health Psychology; Cognitive Behavioural Psychology; Therapeutic Ways of Being, analytical Psychology and its application to South African Context; Quantitative Research Design; Qualitative Research Design; Psychological Assessment; and Foundational Issues, that takes Psychology to be both an academic discipline and social practice which seeks to explore some of the philosophical assumptions of contemporary Psychology.

### **Industrial Psychology 3**

There are two modules, *Psychology in the Workplace* and *Psychological Research and Assessment* in which the following courses are usually taught: Psychology and Social Change; Industrial Relations, which is the study of the relationship between employers and employees in the workplace, taking into account the laws and practices that ensure effective working relations; Organisational Psychology, which aims to explore critically the conceptual foundations as well as the practical relevance of contemporary Organisational Psychology; Personnel Psychology, which is the study of human resource practices and their implications for individual growth, development and well-being; Quantitative Research Design; Qualitative Research Design; Psychological Assessment in Industry, being the study of the process and techniques of psychological assessment within the workplace with a particular emphasis on the recruitment and selection process; and Foundational Issues in Industrial Psychology, a course that aims to empower students to become

more informed and critical as well as to sensitise them to some of the contemporary challenges and debates surrounding this discipline.

### **Psychology Honours**

This course provides in-depth study for students interested in careers in Clinical, Counselling or Research Psychology or for those wanting to further their studies in Psychology in a general way. Entrance into the Psychology Honours programme will normally be restricted to students who have a good credit in Psychology 3.

Students write five papers, do a research project and complete a programme of practical work. The five papers are taken from topics which usually include Research Methodology, Cognitive Psychology, Psychopathology, Depth Psychology, Transpersonal Psychology, Developmental Psychology, Community Psychology, Intergroup Relations and Phenomenology. With the permission of the Head of the Department, a long essay may replace one written paper. Courses are offered according to staff availability.

### **Industrial Psychology Honours**

This course has the same structure as the Psychology Honours course and it also has some of its content in common. However, three of the five papers are taken on topics in Industrial Psychology covering Occupational, Personnel and Organisational Psychology. The research project must be written on a topic in Industrial Psychology as approved by the Head of Department. The practical programme is on topics within Industrial Psychology. With the permission of the Head of Department, a long essay may replace one written paper. Entrance into Industrial Psychology Honours will be restricted to students who have a credit in Industrial Psychology 3 or any other course deemed by Senate to be equivalent to Industrial Psychology 3.

### **Master's Degrees**

The Master's degree may be taken either by thesis or by a combination of examination and thesis. The curriculum for a Master's degree by examination must include between three and six examination papers (up to half of which may be replaced by research essays). In addition, the curriculum will include practical work and a thesis. The curriculum should provide for a coherent and structured programme of study of a specific area within psychology and must be approved by the Head of Department. Candidates are expected to submit a

well-worked-out thesis proposal during the second term.

A Master's degree by examination must be taken on a full-time basis.

The examination papers, research essays and practicals must normally be completed in the first year.

#### **Master's Degree in Transpersonal Psychology** (*not necessarily offered in any particular year*)

The Master's programme in Transpersonal Psychology provides in-depth training in the transpersonal perspective. Entry into this course is usually conditional on the student having completed a paper on transpersonal psychology at the Honours level. Courses consist of papers (two of which may be taken as research essays with the permission of the Head of Department), an applied practical programme, an experiential practical programme, and a thesis.

Two courses are available:

**Master's in Counselling Psychology:** Provides a basic training in Counselling Psychology which meets the requirements of the Professional Board for Psychology for admission to an internship in Counselling Psychology, leading to registration as a Counselling Psychologist. Two of the papers are on Counselling Psychology and two on topics within transpersonal psychology.

**Master's in Transpersonal Psychology:** This course does not qualify students for admission to an internship leading to registration with the Professional Board for Psychology.

#### **Master's Degree in Counselling Psychology (East London)**

The Master's degree in Counselling Psychology offered at the East London Campus is awarded after one year's full-time study and one year's full-time internship recognised by the Professional Board for Psychology. The degree has a strong emphasis on servicing mental health needs in community settings. The course consists of papers, a practical programme, and a thesis.

#### **Master's Degree in Research Psychology**

This course provides professional training in psychological research methods applied to contemporary South African circumstances. Students do three coursework papers on topics approved by the Head of Department. The papers currently offered are:

(i) Metatheoretical Perspectives on Social Science Research

(ii) Research Methods

(iii) Research in the South African Context.

Students must also complete a practical programme. During the second half of the year, students work on a mini-thesis. Successful completion of this course allows the student to proceed to an internship in Research Psychology after which the student may register with the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA) as a Psychologist in the Research category. The Department offers the facilities for completing the internship.

#### **Master's Degree in Clinical or Counselling Psychology**

The Master's degree in Clinical Psychology is awarded after not less than two years' full-time study, one year consisting of a full-time internship in an institution recognised by the South African Medical and Dental Council for this purpose. In the first year of study candidates are required to study Advanced Psychodiagnostics, Psychopathology, Psychotherapy and Child Psychology. The programme includes 15 hours' practical work a week. A clinically relevant research project or a case study, approved by the Head of the Department must also be completed.

The requirements for a Master's degree in Counselling Psychology are similar, except that certain courses of special relevance to counselling are also included.

#### **PhD Degrees**

A PhD may be taken by thesis (see the General Regulations).

The PhD in Psychotherapy is a coursework programme in two parts. The field of study is analytically orientated psychotherapy, and the programme draws extensively on phenomenological, psychoanalytic and Jungian contributions in exploring perennial issues in psychotherapy and depth psychology.

In the first part, students write four papers and a case study. In the second they write a thesis. Normally the first part must be successfully completed before students proceed to the second part. The degree may be offered on a full-time or on a part-time basis.

When taken full-time, the first part is completed and examined in the first year and the thesis written in the second year. When taken part-time, the first part is completed and examined over two years.

## RELIGION AND THEOLOGY

### **Professor of Contemporary Spirituality & Head of Department**

F Edwards, BSc(Lond), BD(Edin), DPhil(Oxon)

### **Professor of Systematic Theology**

B P Gaybba, STL, SThDoc(Urban)

### **Professor of New Testament Studies**

PGR de Villiers, BA(Hons), BTh, Lic.Th, DTh(Stell),  
DrsTh (Calvin Stichting)

### **Senior Lecturer in Hebrew & Old Testament Studies**

APR Wakely, BA(Hons), (TCD), PhD(Edin)

### **Senior Lecturer in Pastoral Theology**

TF Cunningham, BA(Rhodes), MTheol(ChicagoTheol  
Sem), ThD (UNISA)

### **Lecturer in History of Christianity**

KF Williams, BTh (Rhodes), BTh(Hons)(UNISA),  
MTh(Natal)

### **Lecturer in Pastoral Theology** To be appointed

### **Lecturer in Contextual Theology**

DK Simon, BTh, BTh(Hons)(UWC)

### **A. Introductory**

#### **1. OVERVIEW OF COURSES OFFERED BY THE DEPARTMENT**

The following *undergraduate* courses are offered  
by the Department.

**Biblical Studies** may be studied for degree and  
diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities  
and Education.

**History of Christianity** may be studied for degree  
and diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

**Hebrew** may be studied for degree and diploma  
curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and  
Education. Hebrew I is a prerequisite for the BD  
Part I, if the exegesis paper is taken in Old  
Testament and for BD Part II, if a special study is  
made of the Old Testament.

**Pastoral Theology** may be studied for the BTh  
degree as well as for the Diploma in Theology. In  
addition, Pastoral Theology 2 is allowed as a credit  
for degree curricula in the Bachelor of Arts degree.

**Introduction to the Study of Religion**, offered at  
present only as a first-year level course, may be  
studied for degree and diploma curricula in the  
Faculty of Humanities, and for degree curricula in  
the Faculties of Science and Commerce.

**Systematic Theology** may be studied for degree

and diploma curricula in the Faculty of Humanities.

*Postgraduate tuition* is offered in the following  
subjects: History of Christianity, New Testament,  
Old Testament, Pastoral Theology, Systematic  
Theology. See the relevant entries below.

### **B. Terminology, abbreviations and codes**

#### **2. TERMINOLOGY**

2.1 By '**semesterisation**' is meant the splitting up  
of academic offerings into units, of varying length,  
each of which will be examined and credited  
separately at the end of the semester in which they  
are taught. These units are referred to as 'modules'.

2.2 By '**course**' is meant a full academic year's  
work designated by a particular name, known as a  
'**subject**', e.g., 'Biblical Studies 1', 'Systematic  
Theology 2', etc.

2.3 By '**level**' is meant the level of the academic  
year to which the course or module belongs: viz.,  
1st, 2nd, 3rd or 4th year.

2.4 By '**prerequisite**' is meant the modules or  
courses that need to have been passed before  
registering for a particular module or course.

2.5 By '**corequisite**' is meant the modules required  
as components for a particular course. Taken  
together the corequisites must total the pass-mark  
for the course, viz: 50% for a degree course, 45%  
for a diploma one. A module for which less than  
the passmark is obtained could still form a  
component of the course, provided its mark is not  
below the sub-minimum (see below).

2.6 By '**full major**' is meant a full year's work in a  
particular subject on third year level (equivalent to  
12 points).

2.7 By '**sub major**' is meant exactly or just over  
half a year's work in a particular subject on third  
year level (equivalent to 6 points or 8 points  
according to the subject).

#### **3. ABBREVIATIONS**

|     |                                       |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| BS  | Biblical Studies                      |
| HC  | History of Christianity               |
| HEB | Hebrew                                |
| ISR | Introduction to the Study of Religion |
| NT  | New Testament                         |
| OT  | Old Testament                         |
| PT  | Pastoral Theology                     |

ST Systematic Theology

**4. CODES**

The following 4-digit code for courses and modules have been followed:

The **first** digit indicates the level of the course (1st, 2nd or 3rd year, etc.);

The **second** digit indicates options or alternatives within the module;

The **third** digit indicates the module for which a distinct credit can be obtained;

The **fourth** digit, after a dash, indicates the number of credit points that that particular module is worth.

An example of the application of these principles is as follows:

BS201-6 = Biblical Studies, 2nd year level, no

options available within the module, the first

module offered in the course, worth 6 credit points;

BS212-6 = Biblical Studies, 2nd year level, the first of the available options within the module, the second module offered in the course, worth 6 credit points.

**5. CREDIT POINTS**

Each module is given a number of 'credit points'.

The basis of the division is that 12 points are required to be credited with a full year's work and 6 points for a semester's work.

For the time being, the points will be used internally simply to calculate a semester's worth of work.

**C. The subjects, courses and modules**

**6. BIBLICAL STUDIES**

**6.1**

**BS100-12** (Biblical Studies 1A) \*

Prerequisites: none. Corequisites: For BS100-12: BS101-6 and BS102-6.

**6.1.1**

**BS101-6** Old Testament \*

(a) General introduction.

(b) The relationship between history, religion, theology and faith in the Old Testament.

(c) Ancient Israel's knowledge of God - basic ideas and themes in Hebraic theism.

**6.1.2**

**BS102-6** New Testament \*

(a) Historical background.

(b) A general introduction to New Testament

studies.

(c) Themes in New Testament studies.

**6.2**

**BS110-12** (Biblical Studies 1B) \*

**6.3**

**BS200-12** (Biblical Studies 2) \*

**NOTE:** To obtain a credit in BS200-12, BS100-12 is required.

Corequisites: To obtain a credit in BS200-12, BS 201-6 together with either BS 212-6 or BS 222-6.

**6.3.1**

**BS201-6** (Old Testament) \*

Prerequisites: BS101-6

Old Testament literature, history and theology from the rise of the monarchy to the fall of the kingdom of Judah.

**6.3.2**

**BS202-6** (New Testament)

Prerequisites: BS102-6

Cycling: BS212-6 and BS222-6 are cycled and taught together with BS312-4 and BS322-4, for which reason credits cannot be held simultaneously for: BS212-6 & BS312-4; BS222-6 & BS322-4.

**EITHER:**

**BS212-6 (Unavailable to students with a credit in BS312-4) \***

A study of the 4 Gospels with reference to introduction, history and theology (taught in odd years);

**OR**

**BS222-6 (Unavailable to students with a credit in BS322-4) \***

Acts, Pauline Corpus, Epistles, Epistles and Apocalypse: history and theology (taught in even years).

*\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.*

**6.4**

**BS300-12 & BS300-8** (Biblical Studies3)

A full major in Biblical Studies (BS300-12)

requires 12 points, a sub major (BS300-8) requires 8 points.

**NOTE:** To obtain a credit in either BS300-12 or BS300-8, a credit is required in BS200-12

Corequisites: For BS300-12: all of the following: BS301-4, BS302-4, BS303-4; for BS300-8, any two of the aforementioned modules.

**6.4.1**

**BS301-4** (Old Testament)

Prerequisites: BS201-6

The history of Israel and the literature and theology of the Old Testament from the fall of Jerusalem (586 BC) to the time of Herod the Great.

#### 6.4.2

**BS302-4** (New Testament)

Prerequisites: BS202-6

Cycling: BS212-6 and BS222-6 are cycled and taught together with BS312-4 and BS322-4, for which reason credits cannot be held simultaneously for: BS212-6 & BS312-4; BS222-6 & BS322-4.

EITHER:

**BS312-4** (Unavailable to students with a credit in BS212-6)

A study of the 4 Gospels with reference to introduction, history and theology (taught in odd years)

OR

**BS322-4** (Unavailable to students with a credit in BS222-6)

Acts, Pauline Corpus, Epistles, Epistles and Apocalypse: history and theology (taught in even years)

#### 6.4.3

**BS303-4** (Exegesis)

Prerequisites: for BS313-4: BS201-6 & Hebrew 1; for BS333-4: BS202-6 & Greek 1; for BS323-4: BS201-6; for BS343-4: BS202-6.

OPTIONS:

**BS313-4** Old Testament Exegesis - Hebrew OR

**BS323-4** Old Testament Exegesis - English

OR **BS333-4** New Testament Exegesis - Greek OR

**BS343-4** New Testament Exegesis - English

### 6.5 HONOURS COURSES IN BIBLICAL STUDIES

Honours courses are not semesterised.

Candidates are normally admitted to these courses only if they have obtained a credit in Hebrew 1 (for Old Testament) or Greek 1 (for New Testament).

See Rule RT.7(2).

#### 6.5.1 Old Testament Studies \*

**Paper 1** Translation (unprepared) from the Old Testament and related Semitic texts.

**Paper 2** Exegesis of prescribed texts in Hebrew.

**Paper 3** *Either*

(a) an evaluation of the application of the critical methodologies to the study of the Old Testament *or*

(b) principles of interpretation of the Old Testament.

**Paper 4** Examination or essay on a theological theme of the Old Testament. **Paper 5** Examination

or essay on an approved topic.

*\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.*

#### 6.5.2 New Testament Studies

**Paper 1** Examination or essay on a New Testament theological theme or corpus.

**Paper 2** *Either*

(a) Principles of interpretation of the New Testament (focusing on socio-historical and political interpretations) *or*

(b) the canon of the New Testament *or*

(c) the social history of the new Testament in the Hellenistic era *or*

(d) ethics of the New Testament *or*

(e) textual criticism.

**Paper 3** The apocalypses and pseudepigrapha.

**Paper 4** Exegesis of prescribed New Testament and apocalyptic texts as well as texts of the Apostolic Fathers (including unseen translations).

**Paper 5** Examination or essay on an approved topic.

### 7. HISTORY OF CHRISTIANITY

#### 7.1 HC100-12 \*

(i) Prerequisites: None.

(ii) Corequisites: Any TWO of HC101, 102, 103, 104, subject to 8.1 (iii) below.

(iii) Cycling: HC101 and 103 will be taught in ODD year (1999, 2001, etc) and HC102 and 104 will be taught in EVEN years (1998, 2000, etc).

(iv) All courses are Semester courses and carry a credit value of 6 points.

#### 7.1.1 HC101-6 (not available to students holding a credit in HC201-6) \*

An overview of the development of the early Christianity in the first 1000 years against the background of socio-political and cultural contexts. (Taught in odd years)

#### 7.1.2 HC102-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC202-6) \*

A survey of the events in Europe, England and Scotland from the late 15<sup>th</sup> century and on into the 16<sup>th</sup> century, which became known as the 'Reformation'. The role of significant people and movements will be examined against the background of socio-economic, political and theological changes during this period. (Taught in even years)

#### 7.1.3 HC103-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC203-6) \*



Christianity in southern Africa from 1652 to 1910. Against a brief background of events in Britain and Europe, this course critically examines the process, events and people that were involved in the planting of Christianity in South Africa.

Missionary methods, relations between missionaries, colonial authorities, indigenous people and independent republics will be examined along with a brief overview of the various denominational histories. The rise of the early African Independent Churches will also be examined. **(Taught in odd years)**

**7.1.4 HC104-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC204-6) \***

Christianity in South Africa from 1900 to 1990. The main focus of this course will be on Christianity in South Africa (the church and the Union and Republic of South Africa, the church in an Apartheid society, the church and the rise of Black political movements and the growth of African Independent Churches). **(Taught in even years)**

*\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.*

**7.2 HC200-12 \***

(i) Prerequisites: HOC100-12 is a prerequisite for a credit in HC200-12.

(ii) Corequisites: Any two of HC201, 202, 203, 204, subject to 8.2 below.

(iii) Cycling: HC201 to 204 are cycled and taught in conjunction with HC101 to 104. Credits therefore cannot simultaneously be given for HC101 & HC201, HC102 & HC 202, etc.

**7.2.1 HC201-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC101-6) \***

An overview of the development of the early Christianity in the first 1000 years against the background of socio-political and cultural contexts. **(Taught in odd years)**

**7.2.2 HC202-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC102-6) \***

A survey of the events in Europe, England and Scotland from the late 15<sup>th</sup> century and on into the 16<sup>th</sup> century, which became known as the 'Reformation'. The role of significant people and movements will be examined against the background of socio-economic, political and theological changes during this period. **(Taught in even years)**

**7.2.3 HC203-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC103-6) \***

Christianity in southern Africa from 1952 to 1910. Against a brief background of events in Britain and Europe, this course critically examines the process, events and people that were involved in the planting of Christianity in South Africa.

Missionary methods, relations between missionaries, colonial authorities, indigenous people and independent republics will be examined along with a brief overview of the various denominational histories. The rise of the early African Independent Churches will be examined.

**(Taught in odd years)**

**7.2.4 HC204-6 (Not available to students holding a credit in HC104-6)**

Christianity in South Africa from 1900 to 1990. The main focus of this course will be on Christianity in South Africa (the church and the Union and Republic of South Africa, the church in Apartheid society, the church and the rise of Black political movements and the growth of African Independent Churches). **(Taught in even years)**

*\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.*

**7.3 HC300-12 & HC300-6**

(i) A full major in History of Christianity (HC300-12) requires 12 points, a submajor (HC300-6) 6 points.

(ii) Prerequisites: To obtain a credit in either HC300-12 or HC300-6, a credit in HC200-12 is required.

(iii) Corequisites: For HC300-12: Both HC301 and 302. For HC300-6 there are no corequisites. No courses are cycled.

**7.3.1 HC301-6**

Puritanism and Evangelicalism in Europe and America. The rise of the Puritans, the English Revolution, the challenges of rationalism and the response of Evangelicalism in the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup> centuries; the first stages of the colonisation of the Americas; the origins of the Dissenting denominations (Scottish Presbyterians, Congregationalists and Wesleyan Methodists).

**7.3.2 HC302-6**

Themes in 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> century Christianity. The following themes are examined in this course: New developments in science and theology; colonial expansion and the missionary enterprise (especially from England and with a focus on Africa); the

church and Revolution (French and Russian Revolutions); the church and war (First and Second World Wars); the Ecumenical Movement; the Roman Catholic Church from Vatican I to Vatican II.

## 8. HEBREW

The Hebrew courses are not semesterised but are structured according to the traditional system of courses and papers. For the purposes of credit points, each full course is worth 12 points. The normal system obtains whereby Hebrew 1 is a prerequisite for Hebrew 2 and Hebrew 2 a prerequisite for Hebrew 3.

### 8.1

#### HEB100-12 (Hebrew 1) \*

**Paper 1** Hebrew grammar. Translation. Introduction to Semitic languages. The Old Testament and its text.

**Paper 2** Prescribed texts.

### 8.2

#### HEB200-12 (Hebrew 2) \*

**Paper 1** Advanced grammar and syntax. Hebrew composition.

**Paper 2** Philological and exegetical study of prescribed texts.

**Paper 3** Philological and exegetical study of prescribed texts.

### 8.3

#### HEB300-12 (Hebrew 3) \*

**Paper 1** Philological and exegetical study of prescribed texts.

**Paper 2** Philological and exegetical study of prescribed texts.

**Paper 3** Aramaic (or Syriac or Mishnaic Hebrew). Grammar and study of prescribed texts.

**Paper 4** Advanced classical Hebrew composition.

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

## 9. INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF RELIGION

### 9.1

#### ISR100-12 (Introduction to the Study of Religion) \*

Prerequisites: none

Corequisites: ISR101-6 & ISR102-6

**NOTE:** this course is compulsory for students registered for the Bachelor of Theology degree and the Diploma in Theology

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

### 9.2

**ISR101-6** The Religious Experience. The nature of religion; introduction to a selection of religious traditions (e.g. the primal religions, religions of Africa, Eastern religions, Judaism, Christianity, Islam); religion and spiritual growth.

### 9.3

**ISR102-6** Selected Issues. The issues dealt with here would vary from year to year and may include the following: religion and society, especially social institutions and the role of religions in social change, personal identity and meaning, issues surrounding the use of religious language, practical aspects of growth in spirituality; anthropological issues; critical theories of religion.

## 10. PASTORAL THEOLOGY

### 10.1

#### PT100-12 (Pastoral Theology 1) \*

Prerequisites: none.

### 10.2

#### PT200-12 (Pastoral Theology 2) \*

Prerequisites: PT100-12 or any other first-year level course approved by Senate.

Corequisites: PT201-3, PT202-3, PT203-3, PT204-3

### 10.2.1

#### PT201-3 Human Development. \*

This course introduces human development theories in relation to theological and practical understandings of Christian ministry.

### 10.2.2

#### PT202-3 Pastoral Care and Counselling. \*

General introduction to pastoral care with a particular focus on illness and bereavement. A practical component includes a basic course in pastoral counselling.

### 10.2.3

#### PT203-3 Christian Religious Education. \*

A theological study of the educational task of Christian ministry. The practical component introduces a method for designing educational events.

### 10.2.4

#### PT204-3 Communication. \*

An introduction to a theological understanding of communication in relation to practical dimensions of preaching and cross-cultural communication.

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

### 10.3

#### PT300-12 & PT300-6 (Pastoral Theology 3)

A full major in Pastoral Theology (PT300-12) requires 12 points, a submajor (PT300-6) requires 6 points.

**NOTE:** To obtain a credit in either PT300-12 or PT300-6, a credit in PT200-12 is required.

Prerequisites: For individual modules - a credit in any second-year module in Pastoral Theology, except for PT302-2, for which PT202-3 or an equivalent foundation is required.

Corequisites: for PT300-12, all of the following modules; for PT300-6, any combinations amounting to six points.

### 10.3.1

**PT301-3** The Mission of the Church. A study of the Christian Church's mission in the world.

### 10.3.2

**PT302-3** Pastoral Care: A two-part course, the first of which develops the meaning of pastoral care in the context of mental health, and the second of which focuses on marriage with particular reference to the theology of marriage, marriage preparation, enrichment and divorce.

### 10.3.3

**PT303-3** Building the Congregation. An investigation into theological models of the church and the formation of a congregation with a view to enabling it to develop creative ministries.

### 10.3.4

**PT304-3** Worship and Preaching. A study of worship in the traditions of the Church and contemporary developments in the South African context. The practical component of the course involves preaching seminars.

## 10.4 HONOURS IN PASTORAL THEOLOGY

Honours courses are not semesterised.

(a) **Paper 1** Methodology. (This paper is compulsory)

(b) Three papers to be selected from the following:

**Paper 2** Worship and Preaching.

**Paper 3** Pastoral Care and Counselling. **Paper 4** The Church's Mission and Ministry.

**Paper 5** Christian Education. **Paper 6** Christian Ethics. **Paper 7** Spirituality.

**Paper 8** Interdisciplinary study in co-operation with another theological discipline or another

department of the University. **Paper 9** Another paper in one of the above areas.

(c) **Practical work** related to one or more of the papers.

**NB** (i) Not all options will necessarily be offered in any year, (ii) One of the papers selected from papers 2 to 9 may be replaced by a long essay on an approved topic or a practical project within the areas of the paper it replaces.

## ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN PASTORAL THEOLOGY \*

This is a professional course providing a foundation for pastoral ministry.

Requirements: an acceptable Diploma in Theology.

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

## 10.5 POSTGRADUATE DIPLOMA IN PASTORAL THEOLOGY \*

This is a professional course providing a foundation for pastoral ministry. Requirements for registration are an undergraduate degree in Theology or the equivalent thereof. The course includes three main components:

(1) *Pastoral Experience:*

(a) The student normally works under a parish minister/priest or other supervisor, who co-operates with a director approved by the Board of the Faculty.

(b) The student participates in regular group meetings facilitated by the director (guided by the lecturer of Pastoral Theology at the University).

(2) *Written Assignments:*

(a) Two essays relating pastoral practice to one or more theological disciplines.

(b) Five Case Studies, involving reflection on pastoral practice in the fields of preaching and worship, teaching, pastoral care and counselling, and leadership.

(c) Three structured Reports by the student on his/her pastoral ministry, the second and third of which build on the first.

(3) *Attendance at the University:*

Attendance is required for a period of 10 days, during which seminars and workshops are offered. The course will be examined by:

(a) An assessment of the essays, reports and case studies will be included in the final year mark; and  
(b) an oral examination to be held during

attendance at the University.

**NB:** As this course is based on practical experience, participation in it is dependent on the student being placed in a suitable pastoral situation.

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

## 11. SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY

Systematic Theology is being offered for the present only on third year level.

For prerequisites see ST200-12 below.

### 11.1

#### ST100-12 (Systematic Theology 1)

Not offered until further notice

### 11.2

#### ST200-12 (Systematic Theology 2) \*

Prerequisites: For ST200-12 or any of its component modules, normally any one of the following: Anthropology 1, Biblical Studies 1, Economics 1, Introduction to Philosophy 1 (A&B), Introduction to the Study of Religion, Physics 1S, Politics 1, Psychology 1, Sociology 1, each of which counts as 12 points. Students wishing to register for Systematic Theology 2 using as a prerequisite a first year credit in another subject require the prior consent of the Head of Department.

Corequisites (for ST200-12): ST201-6 and two of the following: ST202-3, ST203-3, ST204-3, ST205-3.

Cycling: ST202-3 to ST205-3 are cycled and taught in conjunction with ST302-3 to ST305-3 (with a heavier work load on the third year level). Hence credits cannot simultaneously be held for ST202-3 & ST302-3, ST203-3 & ST303-3, etc.

#### 11.2.1

**ST201-6** Prerequisite: As above for ST200-12. \* General Survey of Christian Beliefs, with the stress on their inter-relationship; brief introduction to the nature of systematic theology, its methods and sources. Taught every year, usually first semester.

#### 11.2.2

#### ST202-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 302-3) \*

Prerequisite: ST201-6.

Person and work of Christ (taught odd years; usually second semester)

#### ST203-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 303-3) \*

Prerequisite: as above for ST200-12.

Spirituality and Ethics 1 (taught odd years; usually second semester)

#### ST204-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 304-3);

Prerequisite: ST201-6.

Special Issues (taught even years; second semester)

#### ST205-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 305-3 or PT305-3) \*

Prerequisite: as above for ST200-12.

Spirituality and Ethics 2 (taught even years; usually second semester)

\* Not offered until further notice. For details consult the Head of the Department.

### 11.3

#### ST300-12 & ST300-6 (Systematic Theology 3)

A full major in Systematic Theology (ST300-12) requires 12 points, a sub major (ST300-6) 6 points.

**NOTE:** To obtain a credit in ST300-12 or ST300-6, a credit in ST200-12 is required.

Prerequisites: For any of the modules ST301-6 to ST305-3, ST201-6 is required.

Corequisites: For ST300-12: ST301-6 and two of the following - ST302-3, ST303-3, ST304-3, ST305-3. For ST300-6: either ST301-6 or any two of the following - ST302-3, ST303-3, ST304-3, ST305-3.

Cycling: ST202-3 to ST205-3 are cycled and taught in conjunction with ST302-3 to ST305-3 (with a heavier work load on the third year level). Hence credits cannot simultaneously be held for ST202-3 & ST302-3, ST203-3 & ST303-3, etc.

#### 11.3.1

**ST301-6** Person and work of the Holy Spirit (justification, sanctification, etc); Church, Ministry and Sacraments; Christianity and world religions (taught every year; usually first semester)

#### 11.3.2

#### ST302-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 202-6)

Person and work of Christ (taught odd years; usually second semester)

#### ST303-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 203-3)

Spirituality and Ethics 1 (taught odd years; usually second semester)

#### ST304-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST 232-3)

Special Issues (taught even years; usually second

semester)

#### ST305-3 (Unavailable to students with a credit in ST205-3)

Spirituality and Ethics 2 (taught even years; usually second semester)

## 11.4 HONOURS IN SYSTEMATIC THEOLOGY

Honours courses are not semesterised.

Candidates must select five of the following papers. Honours students normally write four three-hour papers chosen from a wide range of topics to suit their individual interests and needs in addition to a research essay of not more than 10 000 words. The topics for the Honours papers will be chosen from at least two of the following areas:

- Study in-depth of a Christian doctrine or ethical issue, including issues relating to the history and development of Christian beliefs.
- Study of contemporary issues in Christian theology and/or the study of religion.
- Study of one or more major theologians.
- Study of one or more issues in the area of Spirituality.

With the consent of the lecturer and the Dean of the Faculty, a research essay of not more than 10 000 words written during the year may be offered as one of the five papers. In addition, a selection of papers (of which no more than four can be chosen) may be available on various aspects of the theology of spirituality, including spiritual direction. Enquire from the Head of the Department as to the availability of the option and for more details.

## 12. CURRICULA FOR THE BACHELOR OF DIVINITY DEGREE

### 12.1 Bachelor of Divinity, Part One

#### Old Testament

BS101-6; BS201-6; BS301-4; BS313-4; Special Study

#### New Testament

BS102-6; BS202-6; BS302-4; BS333-4; Special Study

#### Introduction to the Study of Religion

ISR101-6; ISR102-6

#### Systematic Theology

ST201-6; any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses) - ST202-3, ST203-

3, ST204-3, ST205-3; ST301-6; any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses) - ST302-3, ST303-3, ST304-3, ST305-3. Special Study.

#### History of Christianity

HC101-6 or HC201-6; HC102-6 or HC202-6; HC103-6 or HC203-6; HC104-6 or HC204-6; HC301-6 or HC302-6

#### Special Study.

#### Pastoral Theology

Any combination of the following that totals 6 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses): PT201-3, PT202-3, PT203-3, PT204-3; any combination of the following that totals 6 or 7 points (two such combinations will be the equivalent of two half-courses): PT301-2, PT302-2, PT303-2, PT304-3, PT305-3. Special Study.

### 12.2 Bachelor of Divinity, Part Two

#### Old Testament

**Paper 1** Translation from the Old Testament and related Semitic texts.

**Paper 2** Exegesis of prescribed texts in Hebrew.

**Papers 3 and 4** Two of the following subjects:

- (a) The religious ideas and institutions of Israel.
- (b) The Apocrypha of the Old Testament.
- (c) The Aramaic portions of the Old Testament.
- (d) History of the text, canon and ancient versions of the Old Testament.
- (e) Any other subject approved for this purpose by the Board of the Faculty.

#### New Testament

**Paper 1** Exegesis of prescribed New Testament and apocalyptic texts as well as texts of the Apostolic Fathers.

**Paper 2** The pseudepigrapha and apocalypses.

**Papers 3 and 4** In two of the following subjects:

- (a) Principles of interpretation of the New Testament (focusing on socio-historical and political interpretations);
- (b) The canon of the New Testament;
- (c) Textual criticism;
- (d) The social history of the New Testament in the Hellenistic era;
- (e) Ethics of the New Testament;
- (f) Any other subject approved for this purpose by the Board of the Faculty.

#### History of Christianity

As for History of Christianity Honours, Papers 1 to 4 (see above).

#### *Pastoral Theology*

As for Pastoral Theology Honours above: Paper 1; two papers selected from Papers 2 to 8 (*without the option of a long essay or practical project*); Practical work.

#### *Systematic Theology*

Any four of the papers offered in Systematic Theology Honours above.

**Thesis** (see Regulations RT.12 AND RT.13) A candidate is advised to submit the title and plan of the proposed thesis in time for the last meeting of the Board of the Faculty in his/her penultimate year of study, and must submit it not later than the first meeting of the Board in his/her final year of study.

### **13. MASTER OF THEOLOGY AND DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY**

#### **13.1**

The Master of Theology degree may be taken by thesis or by coursework and thesis. Details are obtainable from the Department. Candidates for either of these degrees must satisfy the Board of the Faculty that they have a competent reading knowledge of the languages required for research, e.g. in the Biblical fields, Greek and Hebrew; in early History of Christianity, Greek and Latin; in medieval History of Christianity and Historical Theology, Latin; and in all subjects, a competent reading knowledge of any modern language required for their research.

#### **13.2 MTh or MA in Spirituality**

This degree is a speciality offered within the general framework of Master's degrees by coursework and thesis. The detailed regulations for such degrees can be found in RT.22. The coursework for this degree, however, is made up of four papers, chosen from the following broad areas: Biblical Spirituality; the History of Spirituality; Contemporary Spirituality; Spiritual direction. Examples of more detailed papers offered from time to time are: Old Testament Spirituality; Ignatian Spirituality, Wesleyan Spirituality, Reformed Spirituality, Celtic Spirituality, African Spirituality.

The prerequisite for registration for the degree is an

appropriate tertiary level qualification. Candidates for the degree pursue a course of study based on prescribed and/or recommended material and must submit a number of assignments for evaluation and which form 30% of the final mark for the coursework (see RT.22). Attendance at Rhodes University is not required, except for two seminars during the year (one per semester) which are normally compulsory for every candidate.

For more information, especially on the specific papers being offered in any particular year, write to or contact the head of the Department.

#### **14.1 Diploma in Theology (Non-graduate)**

The syllabuses for courses for the Diploma in Theology are the same as for the BTh courses of the same name, except that the standard accepted is slightly lower in all cases. See Regulation RT.19.

#### **14.2 MTh or MA in Spirituality**

This degree is a speciality offered within the general framework of Master's degrees by coursework and thesis. The detailed regulations for such degrees can be found in RT.22. The coursework for this degree, however, is made up of four papers chosen from the following broad areas: biblical spirituality; the history of spirituality; contemporary spirituality; spiritual direction. Examples of more detailed papers offered from time to time are: Old Testament Spirituality, Ignatian Spirituality, Wesleyan Spirituality, Reformed Spirituality, Celtic Spirituality, African Spirituality.

The prerequisite for registration for the degree is an appropriate tertiary-level qualification. Candidates for the degree pursue a course of study based on prescribed and/or recommended material and must submit a number of assignments for evaluation and which form 30% of the final mark for the coursework (see RT.22). Attendance at Rhodes University is not required, except for two seminars during the year (one per semester) which are normally compulsory for every candidate. For more information, especially on the specific papers being offered in any particular year, write to or contact the Head of the Department.

## SOCIAL WORK

### East London Campus : Head of Department

FJ Coughlan, BSocSc(SocWork)(Hons), BSocSc(Hons) (Rhodes), MSc(London), DPhil (UNISA)

#### Lecturers

PG Clarke-McLeod, BProc (UNISA), MsocSc (Social Work)(CapeTown)

MA Maritz, BA(Hons)(Stell), MA(UPE)

DS Modisane, BA(FortHare), MA(Pretoria)

Social Work is a compulsory four-year major subject for the Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) degree, and Social Work can be taken as a subject in most other degree courses including the BSocSc, BA, BCom and BPrimEd.

The field and academic programme is based on the developmental approach to people and society which is prevalent in modern social theory. Registration with the South African Council for Social Work (or its equivalent in 1999/2000) is compulsory for all students from their second year onwards, irrespective of the intention to complete the four-year degree. The Department facilitates this registration in the student's second year as it is required prior to commencing work with clients.

The Social Work degree is only offered on the East London Campus. In East London students are also able to do an Honours degree, or a Master's degree by coursework and thesis or by full thesis.

The field work reports, all assignments and examinations of students in their third, fourth and postgraduate years of study are submitted to external examiners, and students are required to submit a copy of all this written work on or before the last teaching day of the fourth term.

#### Social Work 1

This course introduces students to the policy and practise of Social Work in a developmental context. Courses cover an introduction to the policy, philosophy and practise of social services, alcoholism and substance abuse, child and family welfare, health and illness, disability and human sexuality. Students are also introduced to the intervention methods of case, group and community work. Concurrent field work provides self development and interpersonal skills training.

#### Social Work 2

This course focuses on intervention with groups on all levels from education, through treatment to

community development. Further training in individual intervention is provided. Other areas are social policy and law, poverty and unemployment, mental health. Concurrent field work provides exposure to working with groups, individuals and communities.

#### Social Work 3

This course has an emphasis on the development of communities and of people within communities. Administration and supervision, advanced child and family welfare, gender, anti-bias/anti-racist practise, and social work ethics are all covered. An important course is the one on "practise issues" which teaches students about changes in welfare practise and legislation. Concurrent field work provides opportunities to work with individuals and communities.

#### Social Work 4

The focus of the fourth year is on self-directed study and the development of knowledge in practise-related areas. Core courses usually include social work law, violence and social work, working with children, research methodology and death and dying. Concurrent field instruction provides experience in all three intervention methods and in administration and exposure to the work environment. A research project of limited extent is completed on a topic selected by the candidate and approved by the Head of Department.

#### Honours

The Department accepts students with a three-year degree in Social Work for a full or part time Honours degree programme. Students with a four-year degree who wish to further their studies but are not sufficiently prepared for Master's level work may also apply. Core courses for the Honours are usually those in the fourth year programme (including the dissertation) along with an additional paper undertaken as independent supervised study and assessed by means of an extended essay of between 10 000 and 12 000 words. Candidates write four examination papers and submit a dissertation.

#### Master's Degrees

The Department offers a number of coursework-and-thesis programmes including degrees in Legal Social Work, Community Development and Social Service Management. Some are open to non-social workers.



## SOCIOLOGY AND INDUSTRIAL SOCIOLOGY

**Associate Professor & Head of Department**

FT Hendricks, BA(UWC), MSocSc, PhD(Uppsala)

**Professor**

JK Coetzee, MA, BD, DPhil(Pretoria)

**Senior Lecturer4**

SC Ziehl, MEcon(Stell), PhD(Rhodes)

**Lecturers**

JJ Roodt, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Witwatersrand)

GG Klerck, MA, LLB(Natal)

C Allan, BA(Rhodes), MPhil(Ulster), MA(Warwick)

MD Drewett, MSocSc(Rhodes)

**East London Campus****Associate Professor**

GT Wood, MA(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

**Lecturer**

NA Jack, BSocSc(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), Postg.

Dip. Soc. Research(Sterling)

**Junior Lecturer**

PJ Jaffray, BA(Hons)(Rhodes)

**Sociology** is a three-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Social Science, Arts and Commerce.

**Industrial Sociology** is a two-year major subject which may be studied for degree curricula in the Faculties of Social Science, Arts and Commerce.

Sociology 1 is a compulsory requisite course for Industrial Sociology 2. Industrial Sociology and Sociology may not be taken together. A non-continuing pass in Sociology 1 will not meet the entrance requirements for Industrial Sociology 2.

**Sociology 1**

This course introduces students to the concepts (i.e. language) used by sociologists as well as the perspectives they employ when analysing society. Social inequality, institutions (such as the state, the family, education and the economy) as well as social change will be discussed. The second half of the course deals with topical issues such as violence, work and leisure, population, urbanisation, environment, sub-cultures, the media in society and mass behaviour. Due attention will be given to South African examples throughout this course.

**Sociology 2**

This course consists of two papers, each comprising

a core course and a specialised area of study.

**Paper 1(Section A)** Theory and society. This course begins by introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. The central concerns and ideas of the major classical theorists (e.g. Emile Durkheim, Max Weber, Karl Marx) are discussed. The focus is on the theories developed to explain the major social changes brought about by the industrial and political revolutions of the 18th and 19th centuries as well as events of the early 20th century.

**Paper 1 (Section B)** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as: Race and class. Deviance. The sociology of politics. Family sociology. The sociology of language. Mass communication. Migrant studies. Education. Health.

**Paper 2 (Section A)** The sociology of developing societies. This course deals with the theoretical debates on development (modernisation theories, imperialism, dependency, the humanist view, etc.). It also focuses on applied aspects like the state, community development, local government, education, and development strategies.

**Paper 2 (Section B)** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as those mentioned under Paper 1b.

This course further includes practicals in social research.

Paper 1 (Sections A and B) is a write-off in June, and Paper 2 (Sections A and B) is written in November.

**Sociology 3**

**Paper 1** Methodology. This course is concerned with the issue of knowledge and the claims of different theories to provide knowledge of social reality. It focuses on the debate around the possibility of a science of society. Key methodological approaches are covered.

**Paper 2** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as: The sociology of education. Gender studies. The sociology of religion. State and society. The sociology of work. The sociology of law. Environment and society. Critical issues.

**Paper 3** Contemporary social theory. This course includes Post-World War 2 theories and covers modern debates on the theorising process as well as the status of the different systems of thought in the discipline.

**Paper 4** A specialised area of study, chosen from

areas such as those mentioned under Paper 2.

A research essay of 5000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 September, forms part of this course.

Papers 1 and 2 will be written off in June and Papers 3 and 4 in November.

### Industrial Sociology 2

**Paper 1 (Section A)** Theories of industrial society. This course begins by briefly introducing students to the theorising process in sociology. This leads to the main objective of the course: the examination of the central concerns and ideas of the key theorists of industrial society, past and present. These include "classical" writers ranging from Adam Smith and Karl Marx to Emile Durkheim, Max Weber and Thorstein Veblen. The more important of the contemporary perspectives on industrial society are then examined.

**Paper 1 (Section B)** The sociology of trade unionism. In this course, classical and contemporary theories of trade unions are reviewed. This is followed by an assessment of current debates surrounding the role of the trade union movement in society.

**Paper 2 (Section A)** Organisation studies. A variety of views of organisations are critically assessed. This is followed by a section looking at topical issues such as affirmative action, the culture of society and the environment.

**Paper 2 (Section B)** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as the following: Gender and work. Migrant labour.. Comparative labour history. Industrial health.

This course further includes practicals in social research.

Paper 1(Section A and B) is a write-off in June, and Paper 2(Section A and B) is written in November.

### Industrial Sociology 3

**Paper 1** The nature of work. This course explores in detail the question of work in industrial society, and considers the related areas of technological development and managerial strategies. It examines both classical and contemporary theoretical views on work. Central to the course is a scrutiny of the main debates concentrating on labour process theory. More contemporary forms of industrial restructuring and the future of work are also covered.

**Paper 2** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as:

Industrialisation and development. Critical management studies. State, law and labour. Contemporary capitalism and globalisation. Advanced theories of contemporary industrial society. Labour market theory. The political sociology of the industrial state. Social research in industrial societies. Urban sociology. Advanced labour history. Labour in the developing world. Work organisation in Eastern Europe. Critical issues.

**Paper 3** Industrial relations. This course will provide an introduction to the processes and institutions of industrial relations. The role in collective bargaining of trade unions, employers' organisations and the state will be explored in some detail. Aspects of labour law, such as discipline, retrenchment and dismissal, will be covered. The final part of the course will deal with the nature of industrial conflict and the various models and mechanisms for dispute resolution.

**Paper 4** A specialised area of study, chosen from areas such as those mentioned under Paper 2.

Papers 1 and 2 will be written off in June, and Papers 3 and 4 will be written in November.

Research essay. A research essay of 5000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 September forms part of the course.

### Sociology Honours Course

The examination consists of four written papers and a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 October.

Two compulsory papers are written:

(a) Advanced sociological theory.

(b) The methodology of sociology.

Two further papers are chosen from the following specialised areas:

(c) Development studies.

(d) Gender studies.

(e) Policy studies.

(f) The sociology of religion.

(g) The sociology of law.

(h) The sociology of politics.

(i) Family sociology.

(j) The sociology of race and ethnic relations.

(k) The sociology of deviance.

(l) Communication theory and mass communication.

(m) The sociology of education.

(n) Social stratification.

(o) A topical issue.

**NB** *Not all papers listed above will be offered in any one year.*

Candidates may be required to perform practical work to the satisfaction of the Head of Department.

### **Industrial Sociology Honours Course**

The examination consists of four written papers and a research essay of a maximum of 10 000 words on an approved topic, to be submitted by 1 October.

Two compulsory papers are written:

(a) Industrial relations.

(b) Trade unions.

Two further papers are chosen from among the following topics:

(c) Advanced methodology.

(d) Comparative industrial societies: case studies (e.g. the United States of America, Russia, China).

(e) Gender studies.

(f) Development studies.

(g) Class, power and ideologies in capitalist societies.

(h) A specialised area of study.

**NB** *Not all papers listed above will be offered in any one year.*

Candidates may be required to perform practical work to the satisfaction of the Head of Department.

### **Interdisciplinary Honours Degrees**

See Interdepartmental Studies.

This Department participates in the Interdisciplinary Honours degree in Industrial Society and Development Studies.

### **Master's Degrees**

See the General Rules.

A Master's Degree may be taken in either Sociology or Industrial Sociology. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Arts, Social Science or Commerce, depending on the faculty in which the Honours degree was completed. The degree may be taken by thesis or by coursework and short thesis. (Refer the Humanities Faculty entry *Masters' degrees by coursework*.)

### **Doctoral Degrees**

See the General Regulations.

A Doctoral Degree (PhD) in either Sociology or Industrial Sociology is taken by thesis. The faculties in which the degree may be registered are Arts, Social Science or Commerce.

## **STATISTICS**

### **Associate Professor & Head of Department**

SE Radloff, MSc, PhD(Rhodes)

### **Professors**

P van der Watt, MSc, PhD(UNISA)

To be appointed

### **Associate Professor**

I Szyszkowski, MSc, PhD(Maria Curie-Skłod)

### **Senior Lecturer**

To be appointed

### **Lecturer**

JS Baxter, MSc (Rhodes)

### **Junior Lecturers**

LJ Bangay, BSc(Hons), HDE (Rhodes)

R Bhurtun, BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

LC Njovane (BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)

### **Senior Lecturer - Academic Development**

HM Coetzee, BA(Hons)(Pretoria), MEd(UOFS)

### **Senior Instructor (East London Campus)**

J Miles, BSc, NHED(Rhodes)

(AST) are four-semester subjects which may be taken as major subjects for the degrees of BSc, BSc(InfSys), BA, BSocSc, BCom, BBusSc and BEcon.

To major in Mathematical Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; MST 3. See Rule S.23.

To major in Applied Statistics a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: MAT 1 or MAT 1E; MST 2; AST 3.

The availability of both MST 3 and AST 3 in any year is subject to adequate staffing.

A matriculation pass in mathematics is a prerequisite for admission to all first-year courses in the Department.

Mathematical Statistics (MST) and Applied Statistics

If a candidate obtains a pass in a semester-course



offered by the Department, but fails to gain an aggregate pass for the full course in the following ordinary or supplementary examination, then that candidate is required to pass the semester-course failed in order to gain the full-credit.

Besides the major courses, the department offers various other courses in Statistics.

Statistics (STA 1) is a two-semester first-year course which may be taken for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce and Science.

Theory of Finance and Statistics is a two-semester course comprising a one-semester course: Theory of Finance (STA 140), and a one-semester course: Statistics 1D (STA 130). This course is taken for degree curricula in the Faculty of Commerce. See Regulation C.3(2).

Statistics 1F (STA 110) is a one-semester course taken primarily for the BPharm and BSc degrees.

Aggregated credit in any one of MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 and in either of STA 110 or STA 130 is deemed equivalent to a two-credit course Mathematics 1C, which is an allowed prerequisite for various other courses in the Faculty of Science and Commerce (see Rule S.23 and C.12 to C.15).

### Summer School

The Department normally offers Summer School programmes in Theory of Finance, Statistics 1D and Statistics 1F, but reserves the right not to offer a course in any year should it so decide. Summer Schools are held in mid-January each year. Each school lasts for two weeks. Summer School is intended for preparation for supplementary examinations in courses failed in the previous year.

See the Departmental Web Page <http://www.ru.ac.za/statistics/> for further details, particularly on the content of courses.

### First-year level courses in Statistics

There are two first-year courses in Statistics. STA 101 is held in the first semester and STA 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a

two-credit course STA 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. Adequate performance in STA 101 is required before a candidate may register for STA 102.

### STA 101 (One paper of 3 hours)

Graphical representations of data; measures of location, dispersion, skewness and kurtosis; simple classical probability theory; basic discrete and continuous distributions; expected values and moments; normal and chi-square approximations; principles of simple random sampling; point and interval estimation.

### STA 102 (One paper of 3 hours)

Deductive and inductive inference; hypothesis testing; distribution-free procedures; tests of goodness of fit; measures and tests of association. contingency tables; linear regression; analysis of variance.

Other first-year courses offered in the Department are as follows:

### STA 110 (One paper of 3 hours)

Descriptive statistics, permutations and combinations, elementary probability theory, Bayes' theorem, random variables and their distributions; hypothesis testing, inference for means and variances of one and two populations, inferences for categorical data, rxc contingency tables, distribution-free methods; regression and correlation, simple and multiple linear regression, point and interval estimation in multiple linear regression; analysis of variance.

### STA 130 (One paper of 3 hours)

Collection and tabulation of statistical data; approximation and limits of accuracy; graphs and diagrams; frequency distributions; measures of central tendency; dispersion; shapes and parameters of classical distributions (normal, binomial, Poisson); permutations and combinations; binomial theorem; elementary probability; conditional probability; analysis of time series. index numbers; correlation; sampling theory; sampling methods; confidence limits; significance tests based on the normal curve.

**STA 140** (One paper of 3 hours)

Simple interest and discount, compound interest and discounting, simple and complex annuities, loans, depreciation, securities, linear programming, elementary differentiation.

**Second-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics**

There are two second-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 201 is held in the first semester and MST 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 2, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. A supplementary examination may be recommended for MST 201, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department. No supplementary examination will be offered for MST 202.

Credit in Mathematics (MAT 101 or MAT 1E1 or MAT 1C1 or STA 140) is required before a student may register for MST 201 or MST 202. Adequate performance in MST 201 is required before a student may register for MST 202.

**MST 201** (One paper of 3 hours)

Axiomatic probability theory; conditional probabilities; random variables and standard univariate distributions; jointly distributed variates and distributions of functions of random variables; moments, characteristic functions, correlation, regression and correlation ratios.

**MST 202** (One paper of 3 hours)

Univariate normal sampling theory; point and interval estimation; tests of hypotheses; contingency tables; linear regression.

**Third-year level courses in Mathematical Statistics**

There are two third-year courses in Mathematical Statistics. MST 301 is held in the first semester and MST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course MST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2) and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or MST 302. Note that credit in MAT 101 or STA 140 is allowed for entry into MST 201 or MST 202, but is inadequate for entry into MST 301 and MST 302. Adequate performance in MST 301 is required before a student may register for MST 302.

**MST 301 / AST 301** (Two papers of 3 hours each)

Distribution theory; normal sampling theory, multivariate normal distribution, the general linear model, analysis of variance and covariance; principal components analysis, discriminant analysis, non-linear regression.

**MST 302** (Two papers of 3 hours each)

Limit Theorems; elementary stochastic processes; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Bayesian inference.

**Third-year level courses in Applied Statistics**

Applied Statistics 3 is comprised of the two third-year courses MST 301 and AST 302.

MST 301 is held in the first semester and AST 302 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course AST 3, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum in each component. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Credit in Mathematical Statistics (MST 2) and in Mathematics (MAT 1 or MAT 1E) is required before a student may register for MST 301 or AST 302. Note that credit in MAT 101 or STA 140 is allowed for entry into MST 201 or MST 202, but is inadequate for entry into MST 301 and AST 302. Adequate performance in MST 301 is required before a student may register for AST 302.

**AST 302**

(Two papers of 3 hours each)

A selection of topics from statistical quality and process control; elements of econometrics and time series analysis; sample survey theory and techniques.

**Mathematical Statistics Honours**

The degree may be taken with a bias towards Mathematical Statistics or Operations Research and

may, at the discretion of the Head of the Department, include topics from Pure Mathematics, Applied Mathematics, or Computer Science. Prospective candidates should consult the Head of the Department, who will guide them in their choice of topics.

#### **Master's and Doctoral degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to research degrees under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules. The Master's

degree may be taken either by examination or by thesis, or by a combination of examinations and a thesis, or examinations and extended essays, as directed by the Head of the Department. A candidate may also be required to take an oral examination.

#### **Master's in Operations Research**

This degree may be taken either by examination or by thesis, or by a combination of examinations, extended essays and projects as agreed on jointly by the Heads of the Departments of Computer Science and Mathematics (Pure and Applied) and Statistics.

## **ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY**

### **Professor of Zoology & Head of Department**

CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town)  
(to June 2000)

### **Associate Professor & Head of Department**

AJFK Craig, MSc(CapeTown), PhD(Natal)  
(from June 2000)

### **Professor of Entomology**

HR Hepburn, MS(Louisiana State), PhD(Kansas), FRSSAf

### **Professors of Zoology**

RTF Bernard, PhD(Natal)

CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town)

### **Associate Professor in Entomology**

PE Hulley, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Lond)

### **Associate Professor in Zoology**

AN Hodgson, BSc(Liverpool), PhD(Manchester)

### **Senior Lecturer in Zoology**

CR Brown, PhD(Cape Town)

### **Senior Lecturer in Entomology**

MH Villet, PhD(Witwatersrand)

### **Research Associates**

PW Froneman, PhD(Rhodes)

EA Pakhomov, PhD(Moscow)

### **Honorary Fellows**

BR Allanson, DSc(Natal), PhD(Cape Town),  
DSc(Rhodes), FRSSAf, SACNS

JRE Lutjeharms, PhD(Washington), DSc(Cape Town),  
FRSSAf

Zoology (ZOO) is a six-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of BSc, BCom and BJourn.

Entomology (ENT) is a four-semester subject which may be taken as a major subject for the degrees of

BSc and BJourn.

Biology (BIO) is a two-semester first-year subject, offered jointly by the departments of Botany, and Zoology & Entomology. This forms a compulsory part of a BPharm degree, and may also be taken for credit for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities, Education and Science. For details see the departmental entry for Botany.

To major in Zoology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 101; ZOO 102; ZOO 201; ZOO 202; and two of ZOO 301, ZOO 302, BIO 301 and ECL 301; provided that: credit in BIO 101 and BIO 102 may take the place of ZOO 101 and ZOO 102 at the discretion of the Head of Department, and that at least one third-year course must be ZOO 301 or ZOO 302. All students intending to major in Zoology and/or Entomology are strongly encouraged to take the first year Botany course in plant diversity (BOT 102).

To major in Entomology, a candidate is required to obtain credit in the following courses: CHE 1; ZOO 101; ZOO 102; ENT 201; ENT 202; BIO 301; and one of ECL 301, ENT 301 or ENT 302. Credit in BIO 101 and BIO 102 may take the place of ZOO 101 and ZOO 102 at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Two, or in some cases four, semester-credits in Zoology are allowed as credits for degree/diploma curricula in the Faculties of Humanities and Education.

Detailed information on course structures and the types of curricula involving Zoology or Entomology is available from the Head of Department.

See the Departmental Web Page  
<http://www.ru.ac.za/zoology> for further details, particularly on the contents of courses.

Students are required to attend all official field trips which form part of any semester-course for which they are registered.

All postgraduate students in attendance are required, if called upon, to assist as demonstrators in practical classes in the Department.

### **First-year level courses in Zoology**

There are two first-year courses in Zoology. ZOO 101 is normally held in the first semester and ZOO 102 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately and, in addition, an aggregate mark of at least 50% will be deemed to be equivalent to a two-credit course ZOO 1, provided that a candidate obtains the required subminimum (40%) in each component. However, students wishing to major in Zoology and/or Entomology must obtain credit in both components separately.

Supplementary examinations may be recommended in either course, provided that a candidate achieves a minimum standard specified by the Department.

#### **ZOO 101: Animal Diversity, Structure and Function**

This course provides an introduction to the evolution, systematics, structure and functional biology of the animal kingdom, both vertebrate and invertebrate.

#### **ZOO 102: Cell and Developmental Biology**

This course examines the structure and function of animal cells including cellular respiration and cell division. There is a short course of genetics followed by a detailed discussion of animal reproduction. The semester ends with an examination of the development of chordates.

### **Second-year level courses in Zoology**

There are two independent second-year courses in Zoology. ZOO 201 is normally held in the first semester and ZOO 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students

who wish to major in Zoology must obtain credit in both ZOO 201 and ZOO 202; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in Zoology (ZOO 101 and ZOO 102) or, at the discretion of the Head of Department, Biology (BIO 101 and BIO 102), and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before a student may register for ZOO 201 or ZOO 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with ZOO 201 and ZOO 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before such a student may register for the second semester. Other second or third year students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for second-year courses in Zoology at the discretion of the Head of Department.

#### **ZOO 201: Principles of Ecology**

This course concerns the general principles of ecology. Beginning with an initial module on micro- and macro-evolution, the course builds up from the level of the organism to that of the ecosystem. Topics covered include niche theory, biogeography, species interactions, succession and disturbance, biodiversity, stability and richness.

#### **ZOO 202: Environmental and Behavioural Physiology**

This course will examine the effects of environmental variables such as oxygen, carbon dioxide, ions, water, temperature, and other external stimuli on how animals function and how different groups of animals respond to different environmental conditions and stimuli.

### **Second-year level courses in Entomology**

There are two independent second-year courses in Entomology. ENT 201 is normally held in the first semester and ENT 202 in the second semester. Credit may be obtained in each course separately. Students who wish to major in Entomology must obtain credit in both ENT 201 and ENT 202; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations will be offered for either course.

Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests collectively comprise the class mark, which forms

part of the final mark.

When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in Zoology (ZOO 101 and ZOO 102) or Biology (BIO 101 and BIO 102), and in Chemistry (CHE 1) is required before such a student may register for ENT 201 or ENT 202. Permission may be granted to repeat CHE 1 concurrently with ENT 201 and ENT 202. Adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Other second or third year students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for second-year courses in Entomology at the discretion of the Head of Department.

#### **ENT 201: Professional Entomology: Insects and Man**

This course provides an overview of the biology of the major insect orders and their impact on humans, particularly in the context of major entomology career pathways such as agricultural entomology, medical and veterinary entomology, pesticides and biological control, aquatic entomology and biomonitoring. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based, and students must submit an insect collection and attend a short field trip.

#### **ENT 202: General Insect Biology**

This course provides an introduction to the anatomy, physiology, genetics, population biology, diversity, phylogeny, and conservation of insects. Practicals will be both field- and laboratory-based and students must submit an insect collection.

#### **Third-year level courses in Zoology and Entomology**

There are six independent third year courses in Zoology and Entomology. A student wishing to major in Zoology must obtain credit in one of ZOO 301 or ZOO 302 and either ZOO 302, ZOO 301, BIO 301 or ECL 301. A student wishing to major in Entomology must normally obtain credit in BIO 301 and either ECL 301, ENT 301 or ENT 302. Students who wish to major in two of Botany, Entomology, Environmental Science and Zoology should note that credit may not be obtained in either BIO 301 or ECL 301 towards more than one major subject. Credit may be obtained in each of these course separately; no aggregation of credit is possible. No supplementary examinations are offered in third-year courses. Practical reports, essays, seminars and class tests

collectively comprise the class mark, which forms part of the final course mark. A research project forms a component of each semester in both Zoology and Entomology. Students have the option of combining the first and second semester projects for submission in the second semester. In this case, the project mark for the first semester will be based on a seminar presentation and literature review. The examination may include an oral examination at the discretion of the examiners.

When the intention is to major in Zoology, credit in ZOO 201 and ZOO 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. When the intention is to major in Entomology, credit in ENT 201 and ENT 202 is required before a student may register for a third-year semester. For either major, adequate performance in the first semester is required before a student may register for the second semester. Other students without these prerequisites may be allowed to register for third-year courses at the discretion of the Head of Department, provided there is no intention to major in that subject.

#### **ZOO 301: African Zoology: land animals and life histories**

This course uses the African fauna to illustrate the principles of behavioural and physiological adaptation to terrestrial habitats. An introductory section on African biogeography is followed by an examination of the problems and solutions associated with life in particular environments. These include arid habitats, montane and forest habitats and grasslands/savanna.

#### **ZOO 302: Marine Biology**

The oceans have a profound effect on life on earth, providing food for man and influencing both weather and climate. This course emphasises the physical properties of the marine environment and how these shape species' interactions and food webs. Topics covered include ocean circulation, primary production, ecology of the deep sea, rocky shores, sandy beaches and estuaries, planktonic food webs and pelagic/demersal fisheries, and the behavioural and physiological ecology of intertidal invertebrates.

#### **BIO 301: Biodiversity**

This course is offered jointly by the staff of Zoology and Entomology and Botany, and may be taken as a component of a major in Botany, Environmental

Science, Entomology or Zoology. It examines patterns of biological diversity and the processes underlying them with a view to their application in resource management. Modules cover population genetics and macroevolution, applied systematics, terrestrial biogeography and conservation biology, using both plant and animal examples.

**ECL 301: Applied Freshwater Ecology**

This course is offered in conjunction with the staff of the IWR and the Albany Museum. It reviews freshwater ecology, concentrating on the fauna and the physical processes which govern their distribution and abundance, also methods of monitoring with a view to the management of freshwater as a sustainable resource.

**ENT 301: Applied Insect Ecology**

This course illustrates the application of ecological theory to applied problems in agricultural entomology, apiculture, weed biocontrol and forensic entomology.

**ENT 302: Special Topics in Entomology**

This course offers special topics in Entomology at an advanced level and is also a mechanism through which non-standard combinations of Entomology modules can be brought together. Students majoring in Entomology and another subject for which BIO 301 is also compulsory, may take ENT 302 as their Entomology semester.

**Honours in Zoology and Entomology**

The Department offers separate Honours courses in Zoology, Entomology and Marine Biology. The aims of these courses are to produce graduates who think in an analytical and critical way and who are capable of independent research, from project planning and experimental design to scientific writing. Students participate in a core course of statistics, scientific

writing and philosophy of science, and undertake a series of seminars, two major projects and a number of content-based courses. Whenever possible, students undertake a major field trip and attend a local scientific conference. Details of each Honours course are presented below.

**Zoology Honours**

The content-based courses include special topics in animal reproduction, cell biology, animal physiology, animal behaviour, disturbance ecology and evolutionary biology. Candidates undertake two research projects.

**Entomology Honours**

The course consists of advanced studies in Entomology, with special emphasis on insect ecology and physiology, economic entomology and evolutionary biology. Candidates undertake two research projects.

**Marine Biology Honours**

Candidates should have either Botany, Zoology or Ichthyology as major BSc subjects (exceptions may be made at the discretion of the Head of Department). The course consists of advanced studies in Marine Biology, with special emphasis on physical/chemical oceanography, planktonic food webs, benthic food webs, fringing communities, fisheries management and life history strategies. Candidates undertake two marine biological research projects. This course normally involves a 4-6 week field trip to sub-Antarctic Marion Island.

**MSc and PhD degrees**

Suitably qualified students are encouraged to proceed to the research degrees of MSc and PhD under the direction of the staff of the Department. Requirements for the MSc and PhD degrees are given in the General Rules.

## RESEARCH INSTITUTES AND UNITS

### THE ALBANY MUSEUM

#### Acting Director

L Webley, PhD (Cape Town)

#### Department of Entomology and Arachnology

Curator FW Gess, PhD(Rhodes)

#### Department of Freshwater Organisms

Curator FC de Moor, PhD(Witwatersrand)

#### Department of Freshwater Ichthyology

Curator JA Cambray, PhD(Rhodes)

#### Department of Higher Vertebrates and Earth Sciences

Curator WJ de Klerk, PhD(Rhodes)

**Herbarium:** (staffed jointly by Rhodes University and the Agricultural Research Council)

#### Range and Forage Research Unit

#### Officer-in-Charge

AR Palmer, PhD(Rhodes)

#### Curator

PB Phillipson, MSc(Reading), FLS

#### Department of Archaeology

Curator JNF Binneman, PhD(Witwatersrand)

#### Historical Anthropology

Curator A Schoeman, MA (Witwatersrand)

#### Department of History

Curator WF Way-Jones

#### Public Programmes Division Exhibitions Officer

To be appointed

#### Education Officer

M Cosser, MFA(Rhodes)

#### Honorary Curators

AJFK Craig, PhD(Natal) ; EL Pringle ; ME Anderson, PhD(William & Mary)

#### Honorary Research Associates

Professor JF Deetz, MA, PhD(Harvard)

Professor WP McCafferty, MA(Utah), PhD(Georgia)

CJ Skead, PhD(Rhodes)

The Albany Museum, the second oldest museum in southern Africa, was founded in September 1855. Mr Glanville, the Town Clerk, was the Museum's first Curator, from 1859 to 1882. He was succeeded by his daughter, Miss Mary Glanville, the Institutions's first paid Curator. Miss Glanville was succeeded by Dr Selmar Schonland, who became director in 1895. The Museum acquired its own building in 1902 when the core block of the present Natural Sciences Museum was built. The palaeontological and geological collections have their origins with the collections of Andrew Geddes Bain and Dr W

Guybon Atherstone; Dr Schonland built up the herbarium and the library.

With Dr Schonland, came the historic ties which the Museum has with Rhodes University. He addressed the Cape Parliament, speaking for the establishment of a university in Grahamstown, and persuaded the trustees of Cecil Rhodes's estate to pledge funds for the establishment of Rhodes University College. When the College was established in 1904 Dr Schonland became its first professor of Botany. Dr Schonland was succeeded as director by Dr John Hewitt.

John Hewitt's research lay in the fields of vertebrate zoology and archaeology. He undertook excavations at the Wilton and Howison's Poort type sites. During this period Grahamstown's longstanding affair with fishes started. In 1930 Dr JLB Smith, Senior Lecturer in Chemistry at Rhodes, identified and catalogued the Museum's marine fish collection. The following year Mr Rex Jubb sent the first small collection of freshwater fishes from Southern Rhodesia to the Museum.

On 6 September 1941 the Museum was burnt down. The library and most of the collections were saved but there was a great loss of exhibited material. The Museum was rebuilt and the displays were reconstructed.

In 1952 the Museum's collection of fishes was loaned to the University's Department of Ichthyology. Three years later the Museum celebrated its centenary and, in 1957, its staff became Provincial employees. Dr John Hewitt retired the following year, and was succeeded by Dr TH Barry.

During Dr Barry's tenure of five years the Hewitt and Rennie Wings were added to the Natural Sciences Museum and the 1820 Settlers Memorial Museum was built.

The period between 1965 and 1977, the directorship of Mr CF Jacot Guillarmod, was one of consolidation. The National Collection of Freshwater Organisms was transferred from the CSIR to the Museum.

The Early Stone Age site at Amanzi was excavated and re-excavations were done at Wilton and Howison's Poort. Fort Selwyn was restored by the Province and handed over to the Museum in 1977.

Under Mr Jacot Guillarmod's successor, Mr B Wilmot, the Museum entered a new period of growth. De Beers Consolidated Mines Limited purchased and restored the Observatory and the Priest's House and

donated them to the Museum. The Old Provost was restored by the Province. The Museum's Entomology Department became the pre-eminent centre for African aculeate wasp behavioural studies in the world.

The freshwater fish collections of the Transvaal and Cape Nature Conservation authorities, the Natal Museum and the South African Museum were transferred to the Albany Museum (the latter two on loan) making it the largest collection in southern Africa. Museum staff started teaching short courses at the University and, in 1983, the Museum became an Associated Research Institute of Rhodes University.

The Museum's close relationship with the University was expanded with the consolidation of the herbaria of the two institutions and the formation of the Selmar Schonland Herbarium, housed in the Museum.

## BIOPHARMACEUTICS RESEARCH INSTITUTE

### Director

I Kanfer, BSc(Pharm), BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

### Senior Research Officer

MF Skinner

The Biopharmaceutics Research Institute (BRI) is a Contract Research Organisation dedicated to conducting bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies in accordance with international specifications. A full range of services for the clinical, statistical and report generation aspects of bioavailability/bioequivalence and pharmacokinetic studies are undertaken according to Good Clinical Practice and standard operating procedures.

Studies are conducted in a custom-designed clinic staffed by experienced investigators with substantial international experience together with a resident medical practitioner, registered pharmacist and QA officer. In addition, the Institute has a pool of well-trained professional nurses who assist in general clinical activities. The on-site Rhodes University Ethical Standards Committee offers rapid review of BRI protocols for ethical approval according to GCP principles and in accordance with the requirements of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Motivated and responsible volunteers are recruited from the 2 500 male members of the Rhodes

University student body. Additionally, female volunteers may be recruited if required. The clinic is ideally situated on the Rhodes University campus and is within easy walking distance of volunteers residing in University residences or off-campus - over 50% of the student body reside on campus.

The BRI enjoys excellent working relationships with a number of internationally-renowned bioanalytical companies which provide the Institute with the opportunity to out source sample analysis for a vast range of validated assays. Excellent specialist international courier services ensure safe, rapid and efficient transport of biological samples under dry-ice with temperature monitoring to analytical sites around the world.

The Institute also provides facilities for postgraduate projects leading to MSc and PhD degrees.

## CENTRE FOR SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

### Director

T M Henderson, BA(Hons) (Witwatersrand), MSocSc (Rhodes)

### Early Childhood Division

DF Nkayi

R Botha PTC(GTC)

G Yili

R Nombewu

B Nkonce

M Quntu

J Teyise

### Bursaries Division

LP Bezuidenhout

LA Serb, BA (Stell)

A Coko

### GADRA Co-ordinators

JH van der Meulen, BA, HDE(UPE)

M Lancaster, MA, NHED(Rhodes)

### Administrative Staff

B Argent

N Shelle

The aim of the Centre is to assist people achieve and run their own community projects. Skills for administration, decision-making, fund-raising and community participation are learned through committee membership and involvement in projects. The Centre assists Black and Coloured groups to establish facilities required in their communities.

A programme has been developed for the training of



pre-school teacher-aides, the establishment of home care groups, pre-school and playgroups, the in-service training of existing staff, and the involvement of parents in their children's pre-school education.

The Shaw Hall Day and Raglan Road Child Care Centres cater for children of working mothers, and are used as the training centres for pre-school courses offered by the Centre. The Centre has established and continues to manage other urban pre-schools and pre-schools on farms in nearby districts. It also administers a feeding programme for 1000 rural pre-schools and provides support services to 76 rural pre-schools.

The administration of two large bursary programmes and all the projects of the GADRA Education Committee form a major part of the Centre's work. In 1999 over R300 000 was allocated to disadvantaged students studying at universities, technikons and teacher training colleges. The GADRA projects include the Matric School, Commercial Centre and the Adult Computer Literacy Project.

Increasingly the staff of the Centre are assisting existing community organisations to fundraise for new child care facilities and to improve the equipment in schools and educational centres.

The following projects have been handed over to be run and administered by the communities they serve: Heidi Nursery School in 1993; the Vezi Danga Organisation in 1994; and the Sun City Community Centre, Nursery School, Soup Kitchen and Play Park, St Philips Nursery School in 1996, and St Peter Clavers Nursery School in 1997.

### DICTIONARY UNIT FOR SOUTH AFRICAN ENGLISH

#### **Editor and Executive Director**

KP Kavanagh, MA(Oxon), MSc (Loughborough)

#### **Assistant Editors**

DME Mantzel, BA(Trans) (Rhodes)

B Schulz, BA(Hons)(Pretoria)

MK Wright, MA (Cantab)

CS Cowie, BA(Hons) (Cape Town), PhD (Cantab)

The Dictionary Unit for South African English began in 1969 with a pilot study under the auspices of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa. In 1970 a substantial grant from the Human Sciences Research Council and a contribution from Rhodes University enabled the University to make the first

full-time appointment to the Dictionary Unit staff. From 1970 to 1975 the project was funded by the Human Sciences Research Council, from 1 April 1975 to 1994 by the Department of National Education, and from mid-1994 by the Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology, with assistance from the University Council. In June 1991, the Dictionary Unit was registered as a Company (an association incorporated under Section 21). It is an associated institute of Rhodes University.

The holdings of the Dictionary Unit for South African English constitute a unique research resource for students of the English language in southern Africa. The database consists of computerised holdings, and an extensive file of cards showing contexts collected since 1969 for words and phrases in South African English. Sources range from early discoverers' and settlers' journals to printed books, contemporary newspapers, and oral sources. Black writers and the black press are strongly represented. The offices of the project are in the St Peter's building, together with the Institute for the Study of English in Africa and other research institutes. Limited teaching assignments are undertaken by the Dictionary Unit staff.

The unit is in regular e-mail contact with the staff of the *Oxford English Dictionary* in Oxford. The exchange of South African materials began with the *Supplement to the Oxford English Dictionary* (1972 to 1986), and continues for the third edition of the *Oxford English Dictionary*. Unit staff are working on a range of dictionaries for the South African market and are in contact with the staff of dictionary units for the other official languages.

Correspondence and enquiries about South African English are received from many parts of the world.

Control of the Dictionary Unit for South African English is in the hands of a national Board of Directors appointed by the Minister of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology and by the Rhodes University Senate and Council.

Correspondence on Dictionary Unit matters should be addressed to:

The Executive Director, Dictionary Unit for South African English, Rhodes University, PO Box 94, Grahamstown 6140.

#### **Major Publications by Dictionary Unit Staff**

Penny Silva and John Walker, with the Editorial Committee, *Voorloper: an Interim Presentation of Materials for a Dictionary of South African English*

on *Historical Principles* (1976) (issued in limited numbers for colleagues in lexicography, and no longer available). Companion text, Jean Branford and Margaret Britz, *Agterryer*, (also limited circulation) completed 1984. Jean Branford, *A Dictionary of South African English*, Oxford University Press, Southern Africa (1978); fourth edition (1991); William Branford, *The South African Pocket Oxford Dictionary* (1987); second edition 1994.

The Unit's major project over 25 years, *A Dictionary of South African English on Historical Principles*, was published in August 1996 by the Oxford University Press, Oxford. The *Francolin Illustrated School Dictionary for Southern Africa* (eds DME Mantzel and B Schulz) appeared in July 1997. An accompanying *Dictionary Skills Workbook* was published in 1999.

### EAST LONDON HEALTH RESOURCE CENTRE

**Acting Director Postgraduate Studies, and Chair Board of Management (Department of Health)**

C Lazarus, MBChB(Cape Town), FRCS(Eng), Principal Paediatric Surgeon: Frere and Cecilia Makiwane Hospitals  
**Centre Manager (University)**

HB van Niekerk, BA(Cape Town), DipLib (UNISA)

**Senior Library Assistant**

V Mzila, BBibI (UNITRA)

**Administrative Assistant**

P Maharaj

**Caretaker/Security Officer**

LM Mzilikazi

The East London Health Resource Centre, a Department of Health facility, which was opened in 1998, is the academic base of the East London campus of the Academic Health Services Complex of the Eastern Cape.

The major components of the Centre are its conference facilities and library. The conference facilities include an auditorium with capacity for seating 200 people, two seminar rooms and a large concourse with adjacent kitchen. The auditorium contains modern video projection equipment.

The library houses both print and electronic media, including internet facilities.

In terms of a memorandum of agreement, the

University administers the Centre on behalf of the Department of Health. The administrative staff of the Centre are employed by the University. The work of the Centre is directed by a Director of Postgraduate Studies employed by the Department of Health. The Department exercises authority over the Centre through a Board of Management appointed by and accountable to the Department. The University is represented on this Board of Management.

### THE HERMANN OHLTHAVER INSTITUTE FOR AERONOMY

**Director**

AWV Poole, BSc(Hons), PhD(Rhodes)

**Data Clerk**

LA Williscroft, BSc(Hons), MSc(Rhodes)

The Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for Aeronomy was established in 1984 on the basis of a five-year grant from the Hermann Ohlthaver Trust. The Institute concentrates on ionospheric research relating to modelling in the southern African region and HF communications. This involves a local field station that collects ionospheric data as part of a nation-wide network.

The Institute is making contributions to the International Reference Ionosphere and is a co-investigator in a project to put an ionosonde on the planet Mars.

The research programme is funded by Grinaker Systems Technologies and the THRIP component of the FRD.

### THE INSTITUTE FOR THE STUDY OF ENGLISH IN AFRICA

**Director**

LS Wright, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Warwick), DPhil (Oxon)

**Alan Macintosh Research Fellow**

LA Green, BA(Hons), MA(Cape Town)

**Adult Literacy Officers**

AM Bouwer, BA, MA, HDE(Rhodes)

DR Peo, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes)

**Junior Research Officer**

J Bleach, BA(Hons) (Cape Town), MA, PGCE (London)

**Editor, English in Africa**

CH MacKenzie, BA, BA(Hons), MA(Natal)

**Editor, New Coin Poetry**

RS Berold, BSc(Eng)(Witwatersrand), MA(Cantab)

### Honorary Research Fellow

FG Butler, MA(UNISA), MA(Oxon), DLitt(Natal), DLitt(Witwatersrand), DLitt(UNISA)

### Honorary Research Associate

CM Mann, BA(Witwatersrand), MA (Oxon), MA (London), DLitt (Durban-Westville)

### Administrative Officer

J King

### Publications Officer

M Baxter, BA(Hons)(UCRhodesia), MA(Rhodes)

### Secretary N Kelemi

The Institute was established in July 1964 during the Rhodes University Diamond Jubilee celebrations, to "sponsor research, collect information, provide liaison with South African and overseas scholarship and organise conferences and courses of training for teachers and others interested in language". The concept originated with Professor FG Butler, who stated at the outset: "The purpose of the Institute is to improve standards of spoken and written English for all sections of the community. We are particularly concerned with easing the difficulties of those whose home language is not English".

Since its inception the Institute has given rise to three independent organisations:

- The National English Literary Museum
- The Dictionary Unit for South African English
- The Molteno Project

The first two are separate, nationally funded institutions, while the Molteno Project, the largest and most successful research and implementation programme in black primary education in the southern African region, is now an independently funded project of Rhodes University.

Today the Institute fulfils the aims of its founders in large-scale research and development projects in English education, in the publication of journals devoted to the English language in South Africa, and by providing a research base for scholars in the field covered by the Institute. The **Secondary Schools' Language Project (SSLP)** sets out to improve pupils' writing skills in English in all subject areas, in secondary schools in the Eastern Cape. The **Shakespeare Schools' Text Project**, in co-operation with the Shakespeare Society of Southern Africa, is developing texts and teaching methodologies appropriate for South Africa's unitary education system.

The ISEA's **Adult Literacy Unit**, established in 1993, is co-operating with community-based

initiatives to develop a regional delivery network for Adult Basic Education. Its primary focus is on trainer-training, logistical support and research into large-scale literacy provision.

The ISEA is developing **WordFest** as a multilingual celebration of language and literature as part of the National Arts Festival.

Other projects include a poetry education project and an extra-curricular creative writing programme.

### Publications

Periodicals published by the ISEA include *English in Africa*, a scholarly journal devoted to African literature in English, and *New Coin Poetry*. The Shakespeare Society publishes its journal, *Shakespeare in Southern Africa*, with editorial assistance from the ISEA. Both *English in Africa* and *Shakespeare in Southern Africa* are academically accredited.

In addition, the ISEA publishes research reports, scholarly monographs, anthologies and collections of poetry. In recent years these have included Seithlamo Motsapi, *earthstepper/the ocean is very shallow* (1995); Olive Schreiner, *Diamond Fields* (1995); Sol T Plaatje, *Selected Shorter Writings* (1995); RRR Dhlomo, *Selected Short Stories* (1996); and Chris Mann and Julia Skeen, *The Horn of Plenty* (1997).

The ISEA is a research institute within the University subsidised largely by private donations and endowments, and it retains complete independence in its research. Members of staff participate in the teaching programmes in various departments of the University.

## INSTITUTE OF SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC RESEARCH

### Director

V Møller, LicPhil. PhD(Zurich)

### Director, International Library of African Music

ATN Tracey, MA(Oxon)m PhD *honoris causa* (Natal)

### Senior Research Officers

CW Manona, BA(Hons)(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

LJ Bank, MA (Cape Town)

### Research Officers

H Timmermans, BSc(Hons)(Cape Town)

M Cocks, MA(Rhodes)

S Seti, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

L Maqasho, BCom(Hons)(Rhodes)

### Ethnomusicologist, ILAM

D Thram, PhD (Indiana)

## Librarian ILAM

JP Fouché, BA(Hons) (Rhodes)

## Data Capturer

S Villet, BA(Hons), HDipLib (Rhodes)

## Administration

N de Villiers, BA(UNISA)

A Haller, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes)

CN Webstock, BMus, RULM (Rhodes), HDE (UNISA)

J Muller

## Honorary Fellows

SB Bekker, BSc(Hons)(Stell), MA(Wayne State), PhD(Cape Town)

J Opland, BSc, MA, PhD(CapeTown)

HH Smith, MCom(UNISA), PhD(Rhodes)

KD Helliker, BA(Hons)(Rhodes), MA(Newfoundland)

TRH Davenport, MA(UNISA), MA(Oxon), PhD(Cape Town), FRHistS History

PCJ Vale, BA(Hons)(Witwatersrand), PhD(Leicester)

TVR Beard, BA(Natal), MA(Oxon)

PA McAllister, BA(Hons)(Cape Town), PhD(Rhodes)

The Institute of Social and Economic Research (ISER) came into being as an indirect result of the pioneering Keiskammahoek Rural Survey, a joint project by several Rhodes Departments on the socio-economic structure, land tenure and natural history of a then little-known area.

The Rhodes Senate and Council, recognising the value of inter-disciplinary collaboration, founded the ISER in 1954 to pool the human and other resources of the University's social science departments. The ISER was to provide planning and co-ordination for social research in the Eastern Cape and elsewhere in the Republic, and to train new research workers. A generous grant from the Carnegie Corporation contributed to the establishment of the new Institute. The Institute is involved in a wide range of socio-economic research, with a strong Eastern Cape bias. Although funding comes from diverse international, national and local sources, including the private sector, the Institute retains complete independence in the conduct of its research.

The ISER has a multi-disciplinary research team with specialised training in fields such as sociology, anthropology, politics, law, music, ecology and development studies. Furthermore, Rhodes University staff members, representing a wide range of disciplines, are available for ISER projects. Research techniques employed include pilot studies, socio-economic and attitude surveys, ecological assessments, feasibility studies, household surveys

and participatory research methods.

The ISER in collaboration with the Carfax Publishing Company, United Kingdom, edits and publishes the *Journal of Contemporary African Studies*, an international journal covering events, developments and controversies on the continent. The ISER also publishes its research in a Working Paper and Occasional Paper series.

The ISER is an integral part of Rhodes University. Its Board of Management is a Standing Committee of Senate and the Director is a member of Senate. Institute staff members also participate in the teaching in various University departments. In 1997 the ISER formally established a branch at the East London Campus. The work of this branch, led by a senior research officer, is focused on socio-economic issues and problems in East London and its surrounding hinterland.

## The International Library of African Music

A major addition to the work and interest of the ISER in 1978 was the International Library of African Music founded in 1954 by the late Dr Hugh Tracey. The Library's unparalleled collections of recordings of music and musical instruments from central, eastern and southern Africa provide a resource centre for the rediscovery of African musical traditions. Dr Andrew Tracey, present Director of ILAM and son of the founder, teaches musicians and musicologists how to play African instruments, as well as the theory and transcription of African music. ILAM now occupies a large, new, purpose-built building with an outdoor performance area. The Library has produced some 250 long-playing records which will shortly be available on CD (almost half of the recordings of traditional African music available), organises an annual Ethnomusicology Symposium in different centres, and publishes a scholarly journal, *African Music*. ILAM is in the process of digitizing its entire music archive.

## THE INSTITUTE FOR WATER RESEARCH

**Associate Professor and Director (1998/99)** J

O'Keeffe, BSc(East Anglia), PhD(London)

## Associate Professor

DA Hughes, PhD(Wales), Sci Nat.

## Senior Research Officers

CG Palmer, BSc(Natal), PhD(Rhodes);

V Smakhtin, PhD(Moscow)

## Research Officers

S Carmichael, MA(Dundee), MSc(Cranfield)

P-A Scherman, PhD(Rhodes)

E Haigh, MSc(Rhodes)

WJ Muller, PhD(Rhodes)

## Honary Research Fellow

BR Allanson, PhD(Cape Town), DSc (Natal), FSSAf, Sci.Nat.

## Pretoria Office, CSIR campus,

## Research Officers

N Kemper, MSc(Witwatersrand)

D Louw, BSc (Hons)(Nat.Cons)

The Institute for Water Research (IWR) is a multi-disciplinary group which contributes to the understanding and sustainable management of water resources in southern Africa. These objective are achieved by fundamental research into the structure, function and components of natural water systems and the dissemination of the research results. Consulting services are offered to solve specific problems and the Institute also contributes to training and teaching at both the undergraduate and postgraduate level. Staff members of the Institute serve on various research, management and policy making committees. This includes involvement in the development of the new Water Law, particularly the environmental components, the National Aquatic Ecosystem Biomonitoring Programme and work on a decision support system for the design and implementation of rural water supply projects.

The staff of the Institute collaborate actively with other Departments and Institutes at Rhodes University and regular contact is maintained with the Departments of Geography, Zoology & Entomology, Geology, the JLB Smith Institute, the Albany Museum and the Institute for Social and Economic Research. The Institute also cooperates with other Universities, state departments and private consultancy companies both in South Africa and internationally. IWR staff are working, or have worked, on joint projects with groups from other African countries, Australia, UK, France and the USA.

The Institute has expertise in several areas within the broad field of water research, including physical hydrology, computer based analysis and modelling of hydrological systems, freshwater ecology and limnology, water quality and toxicology, biomonitoring and community education. The combination of research and practical problem

solving within the IWR allows state-of-the-art research methods to be applied to problem solving in the fields of hydrology, freshwater ecology and water resource management. A number of secretarial and technical support staff are available to assist with administration, computer programming and field, office or laboratory data collection. A full range of scientific equipment for field data and sample collection, data analysis and modelling is available. The staff of the ecology group focus mainly on understanding the processes and requirements of animals and plants that live in rivers. In particular the group concentrates on the effects of flow variability on riverine processes and biota, with recent projects on temporary rivers of the Eastern Cape, the biota of the Mzimvubu River (with the University of Transkei) and continuing work on the rivers of the Kruger National Park. Much of the work is aimed at the assessment of environmental flow requirements for rivers, a vital part of setting the Reserve for the protection of water resources, which will be required for all rivers under the new Water Act. This is one of the most fruitful areas for multi-disciplinary research within the IWR, since it involves an understanding of hydrology, geomorphology, water chemistry and the biology of rivers.

The hydrology section of the Institute is currently concentrating on research to improve the provision and analysis of hydrological information for various water resource development and management purposes. This includes the development of various techniques to characterise streamflow regimes (natural and modified) at daily and monthly time scales, as well as the development of improved software for the visualisation and presentation of streamflow data. Methods have been developed to assist in the planning and management of the environmental reserve. Other areas of expertise include surface/ground water interactions, the assessment of aquifer potential and the identification of water sources for developing communities.

Toxicology at the IWR focuses on determining the tolerances of indigenous riverine macroinvertebrates to selected water quality variables and complex effluents, under controlled laboratory conditions. Toxicity tests are conducted in three different designs of recirculating artificial stream systems. Large stream units which have been designed specifically for hydraulic research are housed in the Artificial

Streams Laboratory in Grahamstown, while smaller-scale designs are portable and used for site-specific testing. Ecotoxicology represents an integrated approach to assessing the water quality of a river and is being applied in a practical sense to evaluate the effects of industrial effluents on rivers.

The Institute has recently become involved in community education through the National Water Conservation campaign. The principle aim of the project is to raise the awareness of local communities about the value of water. The community is informed about the cost of a reticulated water supply, methods for reducing domestic water consumption and methods to improve the water management strategies of local authorities. The project is linked to the national Working for Water Campaign.

The IWR is largely self-funded and managed through its own Board of Control, made up of representatives of Rhodes University and private, government and other university groups who have an interest in water resources. It derives part of its income from relatively long term research contracts with agencies such as the Water Research Commission. The majority of the remaining income base is from shorter term consultancy projects. To further enhance the marketability of the Institute's expertise, a Pretoria based consultancy office (IWR Environmental) was established during 1997.

### JLB SMITH INSTITUTE OF ICHTHYOLOGY

#### **Director**

PH Skelton, PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Deputy Director**

AK Whitfield, PhD(Natal)

#### **Research:**

##### **Curator of Marine Fishes**

PC Heemstra, PhD(Miami)

##### **Curator of Freshwater Fishes**

R Bills, MSc(Rhodes)

#### **Research Scientists**

ME Anderson, PhD(College of William and Mary)

AJ vanL. Ribbink, PhD(Rhodes)

O Gon, MSc (Hebrew University, Jerusalem)

A Paterson, PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Research Assistants**

J Wright, BSc(Rhodes)

S Terry, BSc(Edinburgh)

J Stockwell

#### **Librarians**

V Clarke, Nat.Dip.Info.Lib.Serv. (PE Tech)

P Mpambani

#### **Education Officers**

V Twentyman-Jones, MSc(Rhodes)

K Jezi

#### **Honorary Fellows**

DS Henderson, PhD(Harvard), FCSSA, FRSSAf

BR Allanson, PhD(CapeTown), DSc(Natal), FRSSAf, SACNS

MN Bruton, PhD(Rhodes), FRSSAf

MED Courtenay-Latimer, PhD(Rhodes)

PBN Jackson, MSc(CapeTown)

#### **Honorary Associates**

EK Balon, PhD

AD Connell, PhD

H Fricke, PhD

PA Hulley, PhD

C Leveque, PhD

JE Randall, PhD

GG Teugels, PhD

D Tweddle, BSc

M Crampton, MPhil

M Smale, PhD

T Harrison, MSc

A Bok, PhD

P Cowley, MSc

A research Department of Ichthyology was established at Rhodes University in 1946 around the scholarship of Professor JLB Smith, the world-renowned ichthyologist. Professor Smith identified the first living coelacanth and wrote and co-authored a large number of books and scientific papers on fish.

After Professor Smith's death in 1968, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and Rhodes University established the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology to honour the founder of the original Department. Professor Margaret M Smith was appointed as the first Director, and a specially designed modern building was erected in Somerset Street to house the new Institute.

During the following decade and a half the Institute retained its central emphasis on taxonomic research on fishes, but also became involved in national and international research programmes on the distribution, anatomy, ecology, management and culture of marine, estuarine and freshwater fishes.

The remarkable expansion of the Institute, as well as the quality of its collections, library and research publications, led in April 1980 to its proclamation by

the South African government as a National Museum.

In January 1999 the Institute became a National facility of the Foundation for Research Development which transformed into the National Research Foundation (NRF) on 1 April 1999. Close ties have been retained with the University and the Director, Professor PH Skelton, is a professor of the University and a member of the Senate and Faculty of Science. The Institute is an Associated Research Institution of the University.

The Institute has world-famous collections of marine fishes from the Atlantic, Indo-Pacific and Antarctic Oceans, as well as freshwater fishes from Africa and adjacent islands. Besides the spirit-preserved material, the collection includes a large number of fish photographs, drawings, paintings and radiographs of fishes. A regular stream of ichthyologists from all corners of the world visit the Institute to study these collections.

Institute staff are involved in numerous international collaborative research programmes and serve on several national fisheries advisory committees.

JLB Smith's authoritative book on the 'Sea Fishes of Southern Africa' has recently been revised, and books on the freshwater fishes of southern Africa, of fishes of the southern ocean, and the biology and ecology of southern African estuarine fishes have been published. The Institute publishes a monograph series and two journals, the *Bulletin* and the *Special Publications of the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology*, to which authors from numerous overseas countries contribute.

After the Institute became a National Museum in 1980, the University established a Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science to continue the teaching of Ichthyology and the preparation of students for advanced degrees in theoretical and applied aspects of the study of fishes. The teaching Department is adjacent to the Institute building, and uses the Institute's facilities, library and fish collection.

### JOHNSON AND JOHNSON LEADERSHIP DEVELOPMENT INSTITUTE

**Director and Johnson & Johnson Professor of  
Leadership Studies**

To be appointed

#### **Deputy Director**

PM Kemp, HDE(Rhodes)

#### **Administrative Officer**

L Denison

The Institute was established in 1988 with foundation funding from Johnson and Johnson (Pty) Ltd. Its initial focus was upon human resource development in the Border area. As the processes of national and global transformation have created new needs, the focus of the Institute has shifted to the development of leadership capacity in South Africa. Johnson and Johnson has continued its funding support of the "new" Institute and the Johnson and Johnson Chair in Leadership Studies was created in 1997.

In addition to its research activities, the Institute offers a variety of university accredited, and non-accredited, courses in leadership development, such as the Industrial Leadership Development Programme and the recently launched Management Development Programme. In 1997 the Institute began offering, in conjunction with the Faculty of Commerce, the Diploma in Manufacturing Management. This three-year undergraduate diploma is the first course in South Africa that combines business strategy with manufacturing strategy. Its establishment was in response to requests from local manufacturing organisations for assistance in their efforts to succeed in a highly competitive global economy. It is anticipated that the diploma will be upgraded to degree status in the not too distant future.

### LIRI TECHNOLOGIES

#### **Director**

DJ Sweetnam, BCom (UNISA), CPIM

#### **Hides Skins and Biotechnology**

AE Russell, MSc(Rhodes), PhD(Leeds)

#### **Leather & Environmental Division**

JP Barnard, BSc(Stellenbosch), MBA

A Pratt

RA Rowsell, NatDipSurveyors&Draughtsmen

R Kohl

P Mawaba

N Swartboo

L Ntshoko

#### **Footwear Division**

R van der Merwe, PhD(Rhodes)

M Rose, ABSI(SA), CGLI

A Smout

## Education and Training

L Barnard

G Cobus

## Quality Assurance Division

C Cobus, BSc(Hons)

BE Stone, HNC(Chemistry)

G Daniels

E Burger

D Wessels

## Administration

J Westcott

C Barkhuizen

F Diko

R Zimmerman

M Diko

## Leather Craft Division

MC Ginn, BA(FineArt), HDE(PG(SEC)(Rhodes)

W Njadayi

J Abrahams

## Workshop

D Philipson

A Abrahams

N Jacobs

LIRI Technologies, formerly the Leather Industries Research Institute was established at Rhodes University in 1942 and provides the principal educational, research and development and technical support infrastructure for the Leather and Footwear industrial sector in Africa. It is internationally known for its scientific and technological contributions in the fields of hide and skin preservation, leather manufacture, footwear technology and environmental and waste-water management.

The Institute's ISO 9002 rated Materials Testing Laboratories are internationally recognised for method development research and quality control for the leather industry and for all synthetic materials and components used in footwear manufacture.

Medium-term near-market research projects for industrial application and short-term problem-solving for member industries form an important part of LIRI's work in support of its long-term fundamental and futures research.

LIRI enjoys full exchange of facilities with the University.

The Institute began as the pioneer Tanning, Hides and Skins Research Unit founded within the Rhodes University Chemistry Department in 1935, and in 1942 became the Leather Industries Research

Institute with Dr SG Shuttleworth, a graduate of Rhodes University, as its first Director. In 1945 LIRI became the first industrial research institute of the newly formed Council for Scientific and Industrial Research. It is now completely independent of the CSIR.

The Institute is financed primarily through the sale of its education and training, consultancy and laboratory service products but is also supplemented through membership and project grants from Skin Hide and Leather Council, Water Research Council and the SA Meat Industry Company.

LIRI education and training programmes provide career path developments for industry personnel from operatives to management. Courses are delivered in-factory by means of distance learning and include practical release courses at the Institute in Grahamstown. Students are accommodated in the new Rhodes Centre for Continuing Education.

The United Nations Industrial Development Organisation has identified the unique role to be played by the University in providing the appropriately trained human resources for its leather industry development programmes in Africa and indeed other parts of the world.

The educational programmes offered by the University and Institute include:

## Leather Science

Certificate courses in Leather Manufacture leading to the Leather Technician Qualification.

## University Diploma in Leather Science

Requirements for admission to the Diploma are the same as for the Rhodes University Faculty of Science i.e. a matriculation pass in Mathematics and Science. An aptitude test may be required and sponsored students will have undergone an in-company selection process. The course is composed of four modules which are covered over two years of intensive study.

The course is delivered principally through Distance Learning supported by twelve weeks of practical work at LIRI during the two years of study and mentored assignments.

## Chemistry

Science of Leather Manufacture

Technology of Leather Manufacture

Statistics and Statistical Process Control

Business Management

Quality Assurance



### **Footwear Technology**

A career path provides for technical education from operative level to skilled technologist; supervisory and other specialisation; and on to a Management Diploma Programme focused on the Footwear industry. Courses are presented by distance learning, backed by a structure of tasks and assignments, in-company mentors and Regional Co-ordinators. Selection screening is available, and assessment is by competency evaluation and examinations.

### **Environmental Management**

A career-path development programme for personnel in the waste-water environmental management fields is under current development.

### **Leather Craft**

The Institute provides support for training of leather craft skills focussed on rural and micro enterprise development, the formal arts, crafts and leather goods sector, and craft skills training in schools.

## **THE MOLTEÑO PROJECT**

Originally a project of Rhodes University, the Molteno Project is now an autonomous body. It is the most extensive research and implementation initiative in southern Africa in the field of language learning in black primary schools. At a conservative estimate, over 20 000 teachers have been trained by Molteno Project personnel. Currently a total of some 10 000 classes are using project materials.

The Project's Breakthrough to Literacy programme has become established as the best means of teaching initial reading and writing skills in the Republic.

Breakthrough to Literacy is followed by Bridge to English, the series which introduces the same skills in English. In 1987, the Project launched its follow-up course, Bridge Plus One, for Standards 1 and 2. An experimental version of Bridge Plus Two is being extensively used.

The head office of the Project is in Johannesburg (7th Floor, Field North Building, 23 De Beer Street, Braamfontein) and there are offices in Grahamstown (Gold Fields Centre for English, St Peter's Building, Somerset Street), Pietermaritzburg, Nelspruit and Mmabatho.

The Project is named after the Molteno Brothers' Trust whose grant to the Project in 1974 founded the Project, and whose subsequent annual support together with that from many companies, institutions and trusts, has contributed munificently to the Project's continued development.

All enquiries are to be addressed to the National Director, PO Box 30696, Braamfontein 2017, Telephone 011-339 6603, Telefax 011-339 3555

## **NATIONAL ENGLISH LITERARY MUSEUM**

### **Director**

MM Hacksley, BA(Hons), HDE(Rhodes)

### **Chief Curator**

WJM Fogg, BA(Witwatersrand), BEd, HDipLib(Cape Town), TTHD

### **Curators**

DS Landman, BJourn, HdipLib(Rhodes)

ACM Torlesse, MA (Rhodes)

The National English Literary Museum began as a project of the Institute for the Study of English in Africa to collect source material which was to form the Thomas Pringle Collection for English in Africa, founded and sponsored by the ISEA in 1972.

The collection became the nucleus of the independent National English Documentation Centre, established in 1974. This centre, renamed the National English Literary Museum and Documentation Centre, was gazetted a Declared Cultural Institution in 1980 and once again renamed the National English Literary Museum in 1982. Although the NELM is autonomous, it has maintained its close connection with the ISEA.

Materials collected and conserved by the Museum in the Priest's House, a national monument in Beaufort Street, include monographs, criticism, manuscripts, correspondence, proofs, photographs, recordings and personalia connected with writers of English in South Africa. In 1975 the Department of National Education deposited the Pringle Papers, a volume of manuscript correspondence of great historical importance amassed by Thomas Pringle between 1819 and 1826, in the Museum. In 1982 the Museum purchased, with the aid of a substantial Government grant, an outstandingly significant collection of Roy Campbell's verse and prose manuscripts. Among the major collections of the NELM are the papers of Guy Butler, James Ambrose Brown, Stuart Cloete, Jack Cope, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Athol Fugard, Leon Gluckman, Barney Simon, Joy Packer, Dennis Brutus, Anthony Akerman, Lionel Abrahams, Noel Brettell, Hugh Finn, Oswald Mtshali and the archives of several important literary journals.

The Museum's department of SA Printing and

Publishing History was established in 1981. There is a working reconstruction of the "Eastern Star" newspaper offices in 1871, in an historic building generously donated to the Museum by the Argus Printing and Publishing Company Ltd. The "Eastern Star" moved to Johannesburg in 1887 and was renamed "The Star". In 1986 the Museum opened the Schreiner House in Cradock which had been purchased for it by AA Mutual Life and restored by Cradock Municipality. The University declared the National English Literary Museum an associated research institution in 1981. The NELM is funded by the Department of Arts, Culture, Science and Technology.

The NELM, the Leather Industries Research Institute, the Albany Museum and the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology have a joint representative on the University Council. The research and library resources of the NELM are available for consultation by arrangement with the Director.

## THE POPULATION RESEARCH UNIT

### Director

RC-H Shell, BA (Hons) (Cape Town), MA (Rochester), PhD (Yale)

### Administration

To be appointed

The Population Research Unit came into being as the result of a grant by the Centre for Science Development in 1997, one of three new CSD sponsored national demographic units in the country. Research in human population has moved beyond the confines of pure demography and is now broadly conceived as population studies, which is concerned with the measurement of all human population data, vital rates (fertility and mortality), migration and all associated arenas of enquiry, whether these derive from sociological, geographical, anthropological or reproductive health insights. The PRU's research emphasis is resolutely quantitative and empirical.

The subject of population studies in South Africa presents the curious anomaly of major government concern for population matters in a radically changed and still highly charged ideological and political climate with little investment in the training of demographers. Whereas the organised activities in population policy development and reproductive health create employment for an unusually high proportion of government people, the number of

professional demographers throughout the country is very small. The training of graduate demographers is concentrated at the Universities of Pretoria and to a much lesser extent, Stellenbosch, Witwatersrand and Vista (Port Elizabeth). The new CSD Population Research Units at Rhodes (EL), University of Natal and the University of the North (shared with the University of Pretoria) will change the ethnic and gender characteristics of the upcoming generation of demographers.

The PRU is constituted in two main arenas: teaching and research. In short, the PRU is a capacity-building, research institution. The PRU is a politically non-aligned and non-profit-making organisation and is vigorously independent. All PRU projects are based on scientific and academic excellence and professionalism. The director is a council member of the Demographic Association of South Africa (DEMSA).

The PRU has adopted an inter-disciplinary and applied research approach and is orientated towards serving the community and the nation. The PRU is committed to promoting research skills among its staff and within all academic and professional communities in the Eastern Cape.

The PRU has established a consortium of researchers in the field of population studies in the Eastern Cape as a first step towards coordinating demographic initiatives in the Province. The PRU also has an intern and research assistantship programme which identifies promising students and provides some funding for them to pursue training and especially to initiate their own analytical research agendas.

## RHODES UNIVERSITY MATHEMATICS EDUCATION PROJECT (RUMEP)

### Director

J Stoker, BEd(Hons), Teacher's Cert (Rhodesia), MEd (Rhodes)

### Courses Co-ordinator

R Spanneberg, BPrimEd(Rhodes), MEd (Leeds)

### Farm School Co-ordinator

T Mboyiya, DE(Rhodes)

### Evaluator and Research Officer

T Penlington, BA(UPE), HDE(PE CofE)

### Materials Developer

B Brown, BSc (Witwatersrand), BSc(Hons), MSc (UNISA)

### Facilitator

K Manga, JPTD, BA(Vista), Remedial Education

## East London Campus

N Madubedube, BSc (Hons) (Fort Hare), HDE (Rhodes)

The Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project is an outreach programme of the University. RUMEP engages in the professional development of teachers, and researches and develops curriculum resources for use in schools. It publishes reports, articles and newsletters in the field of mathematics education, and the Project provides a centre for research in mathematics education.

RUMEP offers accredited courses in mathematics (FDE) for in-service teachers.

## SOUTHERN OCEAN GROUP

### Director

CD McQuaid, PhD(Cape Town)

### Research Officers

EA Pakhomov, PhD(Moscow)

PW Froneman, BSc(Hons) PhD(Rhodes)

### Technical Officer

V Mcaton

The Southern Ocean Group was established in the Department of Zoology and Entomology in 1981 under the directorship of Professor Brian Allanson. The group was the first unit in South Africa involved

in the study of biological oceanography in the Southern Ocean, Antarctica and in the vicinity of the Prince Edward Islands. Presently the group is involved in a 5-year co-operative programme with the Oceanography Department of the University of Cape Town.

This programme forms the oceanographic component of the South African National Antarctic Research Programme and is concerned with the interaction between physical environment and the Prince Edward Islands. The main objective of the Southern Ocean Group is to provide scientifically based information towards the formulation of management criteria for the islands. These concern the response of the ecosystem at the islands to environmental changes and allow the development of conservation policies. Present projects concern zooplankton community structure and grazing studies; the distribution and dynamics of phytoplankton and biogeographic studies in the Southern Ocean. This research provides opportunities for research towards Honours, Masters' and doctoral degrees, and postgraduates form a very active part of the group.

The group has close collaborative links with research institutes in other countries and is funded by the department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

# THE LIBRARY SERVICE

## University Librarian

FN Ubogu, MLibSc, Bed (Hons) (Ibadan), Cert Micro (Tokyo)

## Cory Librarian

S Rowoldt, BSocSc, CertSoc Work (Cape Town), HDipLib (Rhodes)

## Head, Collections and Technical Services

MAE Kenyon, BA(Cape Town), HDipLib

## Head, Public Services

VJ Botha, BA, UED(Natal), BBibI(Hons)(UNISA)

## Senior Librarians

DE Shepherd, BA(UNISA), HDipLib(Rhodes)

H B Sishuta, BA(Soc Work) (Fort Hare), MSocSc, HDipLib (Rhodes)

SJ van der Riet, BA, HDipLib, UED(Rhodes)

## Librarians

J Berger, BSc, HDE, HDipLib(Rhodes), BbibI (Hons) (UNISA)

CM Blight, BA, HDE(Rhodes), HDLS(UNISA)

LM Cartwright, BA, HDipLib(Rhodes)

J Cornwell, BA(UCT), HDipLib(Rhodes)

SM de Villiers, BA, HDipLib (Stellenbosch), BbibI (Hons) (Pretoria)

E de Wet, BA, HDipLib(UCT)

S Madolo, BbibI(Fort Hare)

CA Perold, BA, HDipLib(UCT), HDE(UNISA)

BA Rainier, BSc(Zimbabwe), HDipLib(Rhodes)

SA Stewart, BA, BbibI(UNISA)

## Systems Administrator

I Vermaak, BSc, HOD(Stellenbosch)

## Senior Administrative Assistant

S Jones, BCom(Witwatersrand), BA(UNISA)

## Principal Technical Officer

E Kleinhans

## Mission Statement

Rhodes University Library aims to be an excellent academic library through the provision of ready access to information resources, and by aiding in equipping people for lifelong learning.

The Library is committed to quality user-focused service, fairness, innovation and professional integrity.

To support its vision, the Rhodes University Library aims to:

- \* meet the information needs of the University students and staff members, to support and enhance high standards of teaching, research and scholarship, and thereafter support the needs of the wider community;
- \* provide ready access to information through

effective management of the library's resources;

- \* provide an information literacy programme;

- \* provide a personalised, non-discriminatory, user-friendly and high quality library and information service; and

- \* have library staff who are skilled, pro-active, and who display a commitment to realising Rhodes University Library's mission.

## Registration

A student or visitor shall be required to register to use the library, and renew the registration each year. Staff members of the University re-register from time to time as required by the University Librarian.

## Basic Lending Rules

1. The loan schedule of the Main Library is as follows:

a. Undergraduates may borrow up to 6 books for 14 days each.

b. Postgraduates may borrow up to 12 items for 28 days each.

c. University staff may borrow up to 12 items for 84 days each.

d. Visiting members may borrow up to 3 books for 14 days each.

2. A borrower is responsible for returning any item borrowed in good condition by the due date. No item may be transferred to any other person.

3. Items which are lost or damaged must be paid for or replaced. Items which are retained for longer than the stipulated loan period are subject to fines. The University requires all types of borrower to pay such fines.

4. The University Librarian may at his discretion restrict the loan period of any item or refuse its loan altogether. Any item on loan may be recalled at any time. Loans for the vacations are allowed at the University Librarian's discretion.

## Access

The Main Library is normally open for the following hours:

### Terms:

**Monday-Thursday** 08:30 to 22:30

**Friday** 08:30 to 18:00

**Saturday** 09:00 to 21:00

### Vacations:

**Monday - Friday** 08:45 to 17:00

**Saturday** 09:00 to 12:30

The hours of opening for departmental libraries are available from the departments concerned. Variations in Library hours, such as extended hours at examination times, are posted at the main entrance.

### **Borrower's Cards**

Library Borrowers' Cards must be produced whenever any item is borrowed from or returned to the Main Library. Students use their student identity cards (with bar codes) as Borrowers' Cards. Staff and Visiting members will be issued with their Cards on registration at the Library. Loss of a Card must be reported to the library immediately to prevent unauthorised use. A full statement of Rules laid down by the University for the use of the Library is obtainable from the University Librarian on request.

### **The Cory Library for Historical Research**

The Cory Library is a special collection in the field of southern African history and related fields. It collects material of all kinds to support research on South Africa and neighbouring countries. Its collections include manuscripts and other documents, Cape and other Government publications, rare and modern books, pamphlets, periodicals and newspapers, maps, microfilms and audio-visual recordings. Particular strengths are in the fields of mission and church history, Eastern Cape and Grahamstown studies, the history of education and mining, Xhosa history and literature, commercial and agricultural history. The Cory Library is open to all members of the University and to all other users on application.

## **ACADEMIC DEVELOPMENT CENTRE**

### **Director**

CM Boughiey, MA (St Andrew's), MA (Reading), PGCE (Wales)

### **Secretary**

TSG Malinga, BA(SocSc) (UNISWA), BA (SocSc) (Hons) (Rhodes)

### **Staff**

A Dison, BA (Cape Town) BA(Hons), MA(Rhodes)

M Mostert, BMus(Ed), BMus(Hons)(Free State)

RE Nelson, BA, HDE (UNISA), BA(Hons)(RAU), MA (Pretoria)

L Quinn, BA(Hons) HDE (Rhodes)

NC Tisani, BA(Hons) UEd(UNISA) MA(Birmingham)

J-A Vorster, BA(Hons) (Rhodes)

### **East London Campus**

#### **Co-ordinator**

ECS Thomen, BSc(Natal), HOD (Stellenbosch), BEd, MEd (Cape Town)

#### **Secretary**

E Conlon

#### **Staff**

EJK McKellar, BA(Cape Town), UED (Rhodes), HED Pre-Primary (UNISA), BEd, MEd (Rhodes)

P Maxakato, STD (Cape College), BA, BEd, MEd (UWC)

Over the years, the quality of the teaching and learning experiences offered to students has contributed to Rhodes University's reputation as a centre of academic excellence. As the University meets the challenges brought by the new millennium, it needs to ensure that the quality of those teaching learning experiences continues to grow. The Academic Development Centre contributes to the assurance of this quality by supporting staff in meeting the demands of on-going staff development programme and by providing assistance with curriculum development, assessment and evaluation.

### **Research and Publications**

*Discourse, ADapt.*

## **HUMAN RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT CENTRE**

(Business Computing) (*not currently active*)

The Human Resources Development Centre (HRDC) was established in the Department of Information Systems in February 1988.

The HRDC has three principal aims:

- i. the promotion of the effective and efficient use of computing;
- ii. the facilitation of professional research and consultation with a wide range of businesses, organisations, institutions and individuals;
- iii. the developing of careers in Information Systems and Computing for talented people who might otherwise not have had the opportunities or training.

### **Applied Information Systems Certificate**

The Applied Information Systems Certificate (AISC) course is a formal non-degree course offered by the HRDC. It has been designed primarily to develop technical and interpersonal skills in systems development in a Fourth Generation computer environment.

No initial educational requirement is prescribed.

Prospective candidates are interviewed.

Subjects covered include: Systems Analysis and Design, Accounting and Controls Communication Skills, Oral presentation, Interview Skills, Report Writing, Word processing and Systems Construction using a fourth generation application generator.

On-the-job practical work is required to be completed

between sessions in order to develop further the student's expertise.

A candidate must achieve an overall course aggregate mark of at least 50% to pass the course.

Other certificated courses are offered by the Centre from time to time. Please contact the Head of the Department of Information Systems for further details.

## ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

### REGISTRAR'S DIVISION

#### **Registrar**

S Fourie, BTh, BD(Rhodes), DTh(UNISA)

#### **Registrar's Assistant**

PAT Weldrick, TTD(JCE)

#### **Student Adviser**

MG Rainier, BA(Hons)(UPE), NHED,MA(Rhodes)

#### **Senior Faculty Officer**

MC Allen

**Committee Officer** LE Rautenbach, BA(Rhodes)

#### **Faculty Officers**

SE Cooling, BDS (Witwatersrand)

DM Pyle, BA, HDE, BA(Hons)(UPE), MEd(Rhodes)

#### **Examinations Officer**

AJ Cook, MA, PCE(Cantab), MA(Witwatersrand)

#### **Administrative Officer (Admissions)**

D Wicks

#### **Financial Aid Administrator**

M van Hille

### VICE-CHANCELLOR'S STAFF

#### **Academic Planning Officer**

SL Stephenson, BJourn (Rhodes)

#### **Vice-Chancellor's Secretary**

M Danckwerts

#### **Vice-Principal's Secretary**

C van Zuydam

### FINANCE DIVISION

#### **Registrar (Finance)**

HA Long, CA(SA)

#### **Financial Accountant**

L Kruiskamp, BCompt(UNISA)

#### **Cost Accountant**

JL Nel, BCom(Rhodes)

#### **Administrative Accountant**

RRJ Hamilton, BCompt(UNISA)

### EAST LONDON CAMPUS

#### **Director**

TA Marsh, MSc, STD,BEd(CapeTown), PhD(Rhodes)

#### **Secretary to the Director**

J Gibbons

### DEAN OF STUDENTS' DIVISION

#### **Dean of Students**

MA Motara, MSc(Punjab), PhD(Notre Dame)

#### **Assistant Dean of Students**

IN L' Ange, PhD (Rhodes)

#### **Functions Manager**

WG Heathcote

#### **Catering Manager**

J Pillay

#### **Administrative Manager**

D Ball

#### **Manager, Housekeeping Services**

JG Marlow

### INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

#### **Director** To be appointed

#### **Support Manager**

CA Watkins, BSc(Cape Town)

#### **Systems Manager**

FF Jacot-Guillarmod, BSc(Rhodes)

### ADMINISTRATIVE COMPUTING

#### **Director**

RA Scott, BSc(Natal)

### ESTATES DIVISION

#### **Director**

LM Reynolds, Bcom(Hons)(UNISA)

#### **Manager, Campus Protection**

DM Charteris

#### **Manager, Grounds and Gardens**

M Hazell, NDH(SA), NDPRA(SA), FIPRM

#### **Manager, Building Maintenance**

A Hatting

#### **Manager, Electrical Section**

HJ Rautenbach

#### **Manager, Engineering Works**

D Martin

#### **Acting Manager, Mechanical Works**

N Elliot

### PERSONNEL DIVISION

#### **Director of Personnel**

BMH Smith, BA,UED(Rhodes)

#### **Senior Personnel Officer**

A Orsmond

### MARKETING AND COMMUNICATIONS DIVISION

#### **Director**

RA de Villiers, BA(Hons), (HED)(Rhodes)

### SPORTS OFFICE

#### **Head of Sports Administration**

PH Andrew, BA(Phys Ed)(Rhodes)

---

## ADMINISTRATIVE SENIOR STAFF

---

### SANATORIUM

#### **Part-time Campus Medical Officer**

**AR Wright**, Msc,MB,ChB

#### **Sister-in-Charge**

**RM Büchner**, RNRM

### ACADEMIC DEVELOPMENT CENTRE

#### **Director**

**CM Boughey**, MA (St Andrews), MA (Reading), PGCE (Wales)

### HALLS OF RESIDENCE

#### **MEN'S HALL**

##### **THE FOUNDER'S HALL**

**Master MR Ndabeni**,

**Botha House** SN Mackinnon, BPE (New Brunswick), MSc (Dalhousie)

**College House** WL Kingsley, BCom(Stell). LLM(UNISA)

**Cory House** CLW Jones

**Matthews House** AM Cooper, BJourn(Rhodes)

#### **WOMEN'S HALLS**

##### **ORIEL HALL**

**Warden MJ Baker**

**Oriel House** MJ Baker

**Beit House** A Sinclair

**Jameson House** AC Ribbink

##### **ST MARY HALL**

**Warden J Wright**

**John Kotzé House** J Wright

**Lilian Britten House** SE Case

**Olive Schreiner House** RD Jackson

**Phelps House** MC Mokorosi

##### **HOBSON HALL**

**Warden PK Callaghan**

**Milner House** PK Callaghan

**Hobson House** LD Haschick

**Dingemans House** N Mhangwani

### HALLS FOR MEN AND WOMEN

#### **ALLAN WEBB HALL**

**Warden JB McNeil I**, BSc(Hons)(Rhodes). MS (SE) (Monmouth), MCSSA

**Winchester House** JB McNeil I

**Canterbury House** Dr KC Stringer

**Salisbury House** CT Upfold

**Truro House** A Warring, BA(Rhodes), NDPR (Co-ordinator)

#### **JAN SMUTS HALL**

**Warden WG Meintjes**, PhD, HDE(Rhodes)

**Adamson House** L Griffioen, BA(Rhodes)

**Atherstone House** P van der Linde, TLD

**Jan Smuts House** XL Nojoko

**Livingstone House** NC Ndzengu

**New House** K Gantscho

#### **DROSTDY HALL**

**Warden LE Rautenbach**, BA(Rhodes)

**Allan Gray House** LE Rautenbach, BA(Rhodes)

**Graham House** CP Shaw

**Oakdene House** SS Ndinga

**Prince Alfred House** DC Newton

#### **KIMBERLEY HALL**

**Warden MJ Oelschig**, BL, LLB(Rhodesia)

**Gold Fields House** MJ Oelschig

**FP Manford** (Assistant)

**Cullen Bowles House** RV Benyon

**Piet Retief House** GB Middleton, BA(Rhodes)

**Stanley Kidd House** D Sanyahumbi

**Thomas Pringle House** NJ Ferreira, DipGN&M

**Walker House** GJ Roodt, BCom(Potchefstroom), BCom(Hons)(Rhodes)

**S Roodt**, BA(Hons)(Rhodes) (Assistant)

**De Beers House** SB Malinga, BSc(Swaziland), BSc (Hons) (Rhodes)



# RHODES UNIVERSITY DEGREES, DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES

Full details of rules and regulations for the various degrees, diplomas and certificates may be found in the relevant Faculty sections.

## Minimum Duration

### FACULTY OF COMMERCE

#### Degrees

|             |                                    |             |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| BAcc        | Bachelor of Accounting             | four years  |
| BBusSc      | Bachelor of Business Science       | four years  |
| BCom        | Bachelor of Commerce               | three years |
| BCom(Hons)  | Bachelor of Commerce with Honours  | one year    |
| BEcon       | Bachelor of Economics              | three years |
| BEcon(Hons) | Bachelor of Economics with Honours | one year    |
| # BMM       | Bachelor of Marketing Management   | three years |
| MCom        | Master of Commerce                 | one year    |
| MEcon       | Master of Economics                | one year    |
| PhD         | Doctor of Philosophy               | two years   |
| DEcon       | Doctor of Economics                | four years  |

#### Diplomas

|               |   |          |
|---------------|---|----------|
| DipAcc(PG)    | Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy           | one year |
| DipEntMan(PG) | Postgraduate Diploma in Enterprise Management | one year |
| # DipInfSys   | Postgraduate Diploma in Information Systems   | one year |

### FACULTY OF EDUCATION

#### Degrees

|         |                               |            |
|---------|-------------------------------|------------|
| BPrimEd | Bachelor of Primary Education | four years |
| BEd     | Bachelor of Education         | one year   |
| MEd     | Master of Education           | one year   |
| PhD     | Doctor of Philosophy          | two years  |

#### Diplomas and Certificates

|              |   |          |
|--------------|---|----------|
| *DE(J/SP)    | Diploma in Education (Junior Primary and Senior Primary)        | one year |
| FDE (TEP)    | Further Diploma in Education (Technology Education (Primary))   | one year |
| FDE (PSM)    | Further Diploma in Education (Primary School Mathematics)       | one year |
| FDE(SE)      | Further Diploma in Education (Science Education) (Primary)      | one year |
| FDE(SE)(Sec) | Further Diploma in Education (Science Education) (Secondary)    | one year |
| HDE (J/SP)   | Higher Diploma in Education (Junior Primary and Senior Primary) | one year |
| HDE (PP)     | Higher Diploma in Education (Pre-Primary)                       | one year |
| HDE(SEC)     | Higher Diploma in Education (Non-graduate) (Secondary)          | one year |
| HDE(PG)(JP)  | Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Junior Primary)     | one year |
| HDE(PG)(SP)  | Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Senior Primary)     | one year |
| HDE(PG)(SEC) | Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate) (Secondary)          | one year |
| UED(SEC)     | University Education Diploma (Non-graduate) (Secondary)         | one year |
| UED(PG)(JP)  | University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Junior Primary)    | one year |
| UED(PG)(SP)  | University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Senior Primary)    | one year |
| UED(PG)(SEC) | University Education Diploma (Postgraduate) (Secondary)         | one year |

\* No first-year candidates are admitted to this diploma.

**FACULTY OF HUMANITIES**

|          |                               |             |
|----------|-------------------------------|-------------|
| BA       | Bachelor of Arts              | three years |
| BJourn   | Bachelor of Journalism        | four years  |
| BFineArt | Bachelor of Fine Art          | four years  |
| BMus     | Bachelor of Music             | four years  |
| BA(Hons) | Bachelor of Arts with Honours | one year    |
| MA       | Master of Arts                | one year    |
| MFineArt | Master of Fine Art            | one year    |
| MMus     | Master of Music               | one year    |
| DMus     | Doctor of Music               | four years  |
| DLitt    | Doctor of Literature          | four years  |
| PhD      | Doctor of Philosophy          | two years   |

|                 |  |             |
|-----------------|--|-------------|
| BSocSc          | Bachelor of Social Science               | three years |
| BSocSc(SocWork) | Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) | four years  |
| BSocSc(Hons)    | Bachelor of Social Science with Honours  | one year    |
| MSocSc          | Master of Social Science                 | two years   |
| DSocSc          | Doctor of Social Science                 | four years  |
| PhD             | Doctor of Philosophy                     | two years   |

|           |                                   |             |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| BTh       | Bachelor of Theology              | three years |
| BTh(Hons) | Bachelor of Theology with Honours | one year    |
| BD        | Bachelor of Divinity              | three years |
| MTh       | Master of Theology                | one year    |
| DD        | Doctor of Divinity                | four years  |
| PhD       | Doctor of Philosophy              | two years   |

**Diplomas and Certificates**

|                    |   |                |
|--------------------|---|----------------|
| #HDipPsychotherapy | Higher Diploma in Psychotherapy                       | one year (min) |
| # HDipTheaStud     | Higher Diploma in Theatre Studies                     | one year (min) |
| DipFineArt         | Diploma in Fine Art                                   | four years     |
| DipELT(PG)         | Postgraduate Diploma: English Language Teaching       | one year       |
| DipIS(PG)          | Postgraduate Diploma: International Studies           | one year       |
| • DipLGA(PG)       | Postgraduate Diploma: Local Government Administration | one year       |
| \$ RULM            | Licentiate Diploma in Music                           | three years    |
| DipESL(PG)         | Postgraduate Diploma in English Second Language       | one year       |
| HDipJourn(PG)      | Higher Diploma in Journalism (Postgraduate)           | one year       |
| • DipMedMgmt(PG)   | Postgraduate Diploma in Media Management              | one year       |
| DipPTh(PG)         | Postgraduate Diploma in Pastoral Theology             | one year       |
| DipSocWork (Adv)   | Advanced Diploma in Social Work                       | one year       |
| DipTheol           | Diploma in Theology                                   | three years    |
| CCW                | Certificate in Choral Work                            | two years      |
| # CAM              | Certificate in African Music                          | two years      |
| CCR                | Certificate in Change Ringing                         | two years      |

*\$ Tuition is given in the Department of Music and Musicology for the Licentiate Diplomas of the Associated Board of the Royal Schools of Music, London, Trinity College, London and the University of South Africa.*

*# pending Ministerial approval*

*• not currently offered*

## **FACULTY OF LAW**

### **Degrees**

|                 |                           |            |
|-----------------|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>**BProc.</b> | Baccalaureus Procuratoris | four years |
| <b>LLB</b>      | Bachelor of Laws          | four years |
| <b>LLM</b>      | Master of Laws            | one year   |
| <b>PhD</b>      | Doctor of Philosophy      | two years  |
| <b>LLD</b>      | Doctor of Laws            | four years |

**\*\* No new or transfer students have been accepted for this course since 1991.**

## **FACULTY OF PHARMACY**

### **Degrees**

|               |                      |            |
|---------------|----------------------|------------|
| <b>BPharm</b> | Bachelor of Pharmacy | four years |
| <b>MPharm</b> | Master of Pharmacy   | two years  |
| <b>MSc</b>    | Master of Science    | two years  |
| <b>PhD</b>    | Doctor of Philosophy | two years  |
| <b>DSc</b>    | Doctor of Science    | four years |

## **FACULTY OF SCIENCE**

### **Degrees**

|                     |   |             |
|---------------------|---|-------------|
| <b>BSc</b>          | Bachelor of Science                       | three years |
| <b>BSc(Inf Sys)</b> | Bachelor of Science (Information Systems) | three years |
| <b>BSc(Hons)</b>    | Bachelor of Science with Honours          | one year    |
| <b>MSc</b>          | Master of Science                         | one year    |
| <b>PhD</b>          | Doctor of Philosophy                      | two years   |
| <b>DSc</b>          | Doctor of Science                         | four years  |

### **Diplomas**

|                           |   |           |
|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| <b>DipFisheriesSc(PG)</b> | Postgraduate Diploma in Fisheries Science               | one year  |
| <b>DipLeatherSc</b>       | Diploma in Leather Science                              | two years |
| <b>DipC&amp;IS(PG)</b>    | Postgraduate Diploma: Computing and Information Systems | one year  |

**NB: The BEd, BD and LLB are postgraduate degrees.**

## THE RESIDENCES

*PLEASE NOTE that the policies and procedures detailed below are being discussed and re-evaluated by the University, and may change during the course of 2000.*

It is University policy that, provided accommodation is available, all first year students under 21 years of age must live in a University residence unless they are living with their parents or guardians, or are married, or have special permission to live out of residence. This permission is not normally given to first year students. In terms of the Rhodes University (Private) Act the Council has the right to require a student to live in a place of residence approved by the Council when the University is in session.

Residence accommodation is comfortable and attractive. Most of the older houses, some designed by Baker and Kendall, the original architects of Rhodes, have been restored externally and the interiors modernised. Generally, students have their own rooms. In a few cases students, usually the late applicants, share large double rooms. However, it is our experience that no student has been required to share a room beyond the first semester. Early application for residence accommodation is essential, and ensures a wider choice of residence. For details of residence fees see the Fees and Charges section. The 38 residences or 'houses' are grouped in eight halls, all with their own dining-halls, and all within easy walking distance of lectures and town. There is one men's hall, three women's halls, and four halls accommodating men and women in separate houses. Each hall governs its own internal affairs to a large extent. However, certain rules apply to all students in residence (see paragraph 11 of the Student Disciplinary Code). It is important to note that a student living in a University residence may at any time be required to leave that residence if the Vice-Chancellor, in consultation with the Hall Warden concerned, is satisfied that this is in the best interest of the residence or of the student concerned. Subject to conditions laid down from time to time by the Vice-Chancellor, Hall Wardens have the right to decide which returning or Oppidan students (who have previously lived in a Rhodes residence) they will admit to their respective halls, and may refuse to admit or readmit a student if they consider this advisable.

A Hall Warden is in charge of each hall (in the case of The Founders' Hall he is called the Master), and House Wardens, assisted by Subwardens and House

Committees, are in charge of individual houses. Senior members of the academic and administrative staff are elected as Fellows of the various halls, and play an active part in the life of their hall.

### **WARDEN'S POWERS OF SEARCH**

A Hall or House Warden has the right to search a student's room if they have reasonable grounds for believing that evidence of the commission or attempted commission of a disciplinary offence may be found in the room concerned.

### **RESPONSIBILITY FOR UNIVERSITY PROPERTY**

Each student allocated a room in residence must sign a statement as and when required to do so by the Hall Warden listing all University furniture and other property in the room and certifying that it is in good order. At the end of each term that students are required to clear their rooms, the house warden will check the rooms, and the students will be held responsible for leaving all the furniture, other property and the room itself, in the same good order in which it was found (fair wear and tear excepted). In the case of damage to, or loss of, University property, the student or students responsible, if known, are required to bear the cost. If not known, the cost of loss or damage will be charged either to a particular group of students or to the general funds of students in the house.

A student should report any damage or loss of University property in a room while he/she is in occupation, and for which he/she is not responsible, immediately, in writing, to the House Warden. If this is not done, it will be presumed that the loss or damage is the responsibility of the occupant of the room, who will have to bear the cost.

### **INSURANCE (ACCIDENT)**

**Students are not covered by university insurance while at Rhodes unless they are injured while engaged in activities for which they are remunerated by the University. All other insurance is the responsibility of each student.**

### LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO STUDENTS' PROPERTY

Students are strongly advised to ensure that they carry the necessary insurance against theft, housebreaking, fire and other similar risks.

The University will in no way hold itself responsible for any loss or damage by theft, fire or any other means to students' property kept in the residences either during term time or during vacations.

All students' room doors are fitted with locks. Student rooms should be locked at all times.

### PROPERTY LEFT IN RESIDENCE BOX ROOMS

Any property belonging to persons who no longer live in residence, which has been stored or left in residence box rooms, will be sold if it has not been removed from such box rooms by the end of the first vacation of each year. The proceeds will be paid into an official account of the relevant Hall Committee for the benefit of the students of the House concerned.

**Property left in residence box rooms is left entirely at the student's own risk.**

### RESIDENCE DURING VACATIONS

Accommodation in residence is available to undergraduate students for a specified fee during the April and September recesses, when one women's residence and one men's residence are open. No accommodation is offered during the mid-year recess or during December and January each year. Special arrangements are made for postgraduate students (excluding Master's and Doctoral students) at all times except in December and January, and June if these students are in undergraduate residences.

Students wishing to stay in the vacation residences during the April and September vacations must apply in writing to the Student Bureau one week prior to the start of the vacation in question.

Students remaining in residence during the vacations pay an extra fee for room and board (see Fees and Charges section).

***NB** University residences are used during most vacations for conferences etc. Students whose residences are in use during vacations must clear their rooms. The University has the right to close all, or any, houses and halls during a vacation, and determines when, for how long and on what conditions residential facilities are available during*

*vacations and at other times.*

**Residence fees do not cover accommodation during the vacations, except in the following cases:**

(a) Students may move into residence at the beginning of the academic year up to two days before the day on which they register, and one day before the beginning of the second, third and fourth terms.

(b) A student may remain in residence 24 hours after the end of the first and third terms, and two days after completing the June and November examinations. Students requiring to remain in residence for longer than this period of time must apply to the Student Bureau.

No reduction in fees is made if students finish their examinations before the official end of term.

**NB** *Students not writing examinations (including students who have not obtained DP certificates) must leave residence before the examination period begins. No reduction in residence fees will be granted.*

Accommodation in residence is normally available during the supplementary/aegrotat examinations in November and February, and students wishing to return to residence early for the purpose of writing such examinations must apply to the Student Bureau, on the form provided, by no later than the end of the second week in October and/or January each year for accommodation. A fee will be charged for such accommodation.

### Postgraduate Accommodation (excluding Master's and Doctoral students)

1. Postgraduate residences (Jan Smuts Annexe, Oriel Annexe, and Truro) are open to postgraduate students and to students in their fourth year, academically, or to those who are 26 years and over, and will remain open during the April, June/July and September vacations.

2. Postgraduate students resident in the residences mentioned in paragraph 1 during these periods will:

(a) not be required to pack up and clear their rooms;  
(b) be allowed to remain in their rooms during the April and/or September vacation on payment of the current daily rate for full board, ie postgraduate students wishing to remain in residence during the vacations **must** pay for meals;

(c) be allowed to remain in their rooms during the June/July vacation on payment of the current daily rate for full board. If no dining hall is open no charge

will be made;

(d) be required to make application to the Student Bureau should they wish to remain in their rooms in postgraduate residences in terms of paragraphs 2(b) and (c) above. This application must be made at least one week before the vacation in question. The Conference Manager will provide the Hall Warden concerned with a list of those authorised to remain in their rooms.

(e) disciplinary action will be taken against postgraduate students who remain in residence during the vacation but have not booked such accommodation.

3. Postgraduate students living in other residences will:

(a) be required to move into the residence which will remain open for vacation students (if any) for that period, and eat in that dining hall;

(b) be charged the current daily rate for full board;

(c) be required to make application to the Student Bureau for accommodation at least one week before the vacation concerned.

4. Postgraduate residences will not be used for any conferences during the year.

5. Postgraduate students who have been allocated accommodation in postgraduate residences and who are required to be in residence before the official start of the first term, must apply to the Student Bureau, in writing, by the end of the first week in January of each year for permission to move into residence early. The earliest date on which they may move in will be made known in a circular to be published by the Student Bureau in the fourth term of the preceding year. This will usually be on or about 20 January. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board (for the period from the date of admission until two days prior to the official start of the first term), but only if a dining hall is open.

6. Postgraduate students living in an undergraduate residence will not be permitted to move into their allocated residence before the official start of Orientation Week. They may, however, apply to the Student Bureau, in writing, by the end of the first week in January to be allowed to move into the residence which will accommodate students writing aegrotat or supplementary examinations. They will only be permitted to move into such residence when it opens to accommodate aegrotat/supplementary examination students. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board.

7. All postgraduate students, resident in postgraduate residences, are required to vacate their residence by no later than the end of the fourth term each year.

Postgraduate students living in undergraduate residences must leave such residences when they close for undergraduates. If possible they may be accommodated in a postgraduate residence until it closes.

8. Postgraduate students who wish to remain in residence during December and January (if a residence for this purpose is available) must apply in writing to the Student Bureau by the middle of October each year for permission to remain in residence. They will be charged the current daily rate for full board and lodging (from the first day after the official end of the fourth term until the beginning of Orientation Week the following year) if a dining hall is open. If no dining hall is open they will be charged the current daily rate for accommodation only. From the start of Orientation Week until two days prior to the official start of the first term they will be charged the current daily rate for full board only.

### POSTGRADUATE ACCOMMODATION FOR MASTER'S AND DOCTORAL STUDENTS

1. Full-time students will be accommodated in Oakdene House (males) and Lillian Britten House (females). The Dingemans Flat may also be used to accommodate a female student.

2. Students may remain in residence throughout the year.

3. Students will be charged a fee of R14 000 per annum in 2000. This will also allow them to have meals in a dining hall provided they have a credit balance in their meal account. In the event of all dining halls being closed the students will have to make their own arrangements for meals.

4. A pro-rata rebate will only be paid out in the *final* year of study upon provision of proof of submission of thesis.

5. Under no circumstances will cooking be permitted in residences, and subletting of rooms or permitting squatting shall result in exclusion from the residence.

### SANATORIUM

The Sanatorium is staffed by three qualified nursing sisters and two Sanatorium assistants. The Sisters attend to minor ailments, dispense medicines, do dressings to wounds, carry out first aid, run a contraception clinic and conduct health education

## THE RESIDENCES

during regular clinic hours. There is a 24-hour emergency service.

The Sanatorium has 16 beds for in-patients, such as those with infectious diseases in need of nursing care or isolation, depression or other psychological disorders, and post-operative cases.

Students may choose any medical practitioner they wish to attend them. They or their parents are responsible for the medical practitioner's charges, the cost of any prescriptions made up by local chemists, and the fees for any additional special nursing required by an individual student.

Students requiring operations or specialised attention not given in the Sanatorium are moved to hospital for treatment, and are responsible for any resultant charges.

A student who is admitted to the Sanatorium must comply with the Sanatorium rules and shall obey all lawful instructions by the Sanatorium sisters.

### MAIL TO RESIDENCES

Students should notify their correspondents that letters and telegrams must be addressed to the particular house they live in, and not merely to Rhodes University.

**The following is a list of the appropriate postal addresses and telephone numbers:**

*Hall and Residence*                      *Postal address*

**Allan Webb Hall** Private Bag 1027

**6223886/6038577**

Canterbury House                      6223886/6038577

Salisbury House                      6038010

Winchester House                      6038011

Truro House                      6038519

**Drostdy Hall**                      Private Bag 1025

**6324726/6038480**

Allan Gray House                      6038014

Graham House                      6038015

Prince Alfred House                      6038016

Oakdene House                      6038349

**Founders Hall**                      Private Bag 1028

**6324139/6038588**

Botha House                      6038019

College House                      6038020

Cory House                      6038021

Matthews House                      6038022

**Hobson Hall**                      Private Bag 1030                      **603 8578**  
Hobson House                      603 8026  
Dingemans House                      603 8025  
Milner House                      603 8578

**Jan Smuts Hall**                      **622422/6038589**

Atherstone House Private Bag 1029                      6038030

Adamson House Private Bag 1034                      6038029

Jan Smuts Hous Private Bag 1029                      6038031

Livingstone House Private Bag 1035

6224061/6038583

New House                      Private Bag 1034                      6038032

**Kimberley Hall**                      Private Bag 1026

**6228385/6038590**

Cullen Bowles House                      6038038

De Beers House                      6038040

Gold Fields House                      6228385

Ast House Warden                      6038040

Piet Retief House                      6038035

Stanley Kidd House                      6038037

Thomas Pringle House                      6038036

Walker House                      6038039

**Oriel Hall**                      Private Bag 1031

**6224339/6038575**

Beit House                      6038044

Jameson House                      6038045

Oriel House                      6224339

**St Mary Hall**                      Private Bag 1032

**6223036/6038576**

John Kotze House                      6223036/6038576

Olive Schreiner House                      6038049

Phelps House                      6038048

Lilian Britten House                      6038387

### DISCIPLINE IN THE RESIDENCES

The relevant rules and procedures are to be found in the Student Disciplinary Code and the Hall and House rules applicable in each house. Students should ensure that they are aware of these.

### SPECIAL DIETS

Meat, Vegetarian, Halaal, Hindu, African, Fast Food and Health Diets are offered.

### FEES FOR RESIDENCE ACCOMMODATION

(a) Fees payable for residence accommodation are set out in the "Fees" section of the Calendar.

**NB** *A student who has moved into residence but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.*

(b) Residence fees are currently set according to a facility-grading system.

(c) Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. The total amount is debited to the students' account.

### SHARING OF DOUBLE ROOMS

Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation, a 25% discount of the lodging fee may be claimed by the student for the period that the room was shared.

Application for the rebate must be made to the Dean of Students at the end of each term. Claims for rebate which have not been lodged by the end of the following term will be disallowed. Claims are to be supported by the recommendation of the Hall Warden. For the purpose of discount and adjustments the residence year is taken as 240 days.

### LINEN AND LAUNDRY

Bed linen is supplied and laundered free of charge. Washing machines and tumble driers are installed in each residence for students' personal laundry.

### REBATE ON RESIDENCE FEES

(a) No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study requires such absence.

(b) On application to the Registrar (Finance) supported by a letter from the relevant Head of Department, a rebate may be granted when the course of study necessitated an uninterrupted absence from the residence for more than 20 days.

### RESIDENCE MERIT SCHOLARSHIPS

A number of residence merit scholarships are available each year on application. Specific criteria are laid down for these scholarships.

Applications should be made to the House Warden concerned, who will pass them on to the Hall Warden for consideration by a committee consisting of Wardens and students.

### STUDENTS LEAVING RESIDENCE DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

(a) Students (or their parents/guardians) who wish to withdraw from residence before the end of the academic year, must give notice of such intention, in writing, to the Registrar.

(b) Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the scale set out in the section on "Fees and Charges".

### ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

No fridges, hot plates, snackwich makers, immersion heaters or other cooking appliances are permitted in residences. Kettles are allowed.

### RESIDENCE DEPOSIT

An annual residence deposit must be paid each year. The date for this payment will be determined and publicised by the Student Bureau.

**Please note that due to the demand for residence accommodation, the application must be submitted to the Student Bureau on or before the due date.**

### MEAL BOOKING SYSTEM

A computerised meal booking system operates in all dining halls. Students who have been awarded bursaries, TEFSA loans or full financial packages may not withdraw any credit balance from their account. Students will be refunded twice yearly (at the end of each semester) with the credit owing to them as a result of un-booking meals. Meal credits WILL NOT be paid out at other times.



# STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

## GENERAL RULES AND PROCEDURES FOR STUDENTS

In common with other communities of like size and complexity the University has rules which contribute to the smooth and harmonious running of the institution.

The rules and procedures which follow shall apply to every student of the University whether graduate or undergraduate. A student shall not breach any of these rules, any other rule of the University, any rule of the residences of the University, of the Oppidan Union, of the SRC or the Sports Council and a breach of any such rule shall be a disciplinary offence.

Any amendment or addition hereto made between the publication of one edition of the University Calendar and the next will be posted on a notice board designated by the Registrar and such posting will be deemed to serve as proper and sufficient notice thereof to all students. For the purposes of this chapter the term 'student' shall include the following persons during the periods stated:

(a) a person who, prior to his/her first registration as a student, has taken up residence at the University, or has commenced his/her studies, or is attending a Summer School or an Orientation Programme or any similar period of attendance at the University, however described, and

(b) a person who has registered as a student of the University, from the date of such registration to the date on which such student is required to renew registration in order to remain a student, or to the date on which the University accepts a notice of withdrawal from the University by a student, whichever is the later event.

### 1. Attendance

1.1 Students are required to be in attendance at the University throughout the academic terms subject to exceptions listed below. Late return from vacation without leave is an offence and renders students liable to disciplinary action.

#### Exceptions:

1.1.1 Members of clubs or societies may be granted leave of absence by the Head of Department on written application by the chairman of the club or society. In the case of sports teams, application must be made through the Head of Sports Administration. The granting of leave for the purpose of DP

certificates is subject also to the approval of the Heads of the Academic Departments in which the students are registered. Lists of students granted leave in such circumstances will be circulated to departments and, where necessary, to hall wardens.

1.1.2 A graduate or a student who is in the fourth year academically, or a student over 21 years of age may be absent from the University for not more than seven days in all during each term, provided that he/she informs the hall warden (or in the case of an Oppidan, the Dean of Students) and the heads of the departments in which he/she are studying.

1.1.3 Leave of absence which involves absence from class meetings (including examinations) may be granted by the Head of Department. Applications must be made on the prescribed form.

*Such leave of absence does not absolve the student from fulfilling all the departmental requirements for the award of DP certificates, and any other requirements that may affect the final examination result. Students must therefore consult heads of departments to ensure that they will not be penalised as a result of not handing in assignments on due date; not earning marks towards the class record; not writing June examinations and tests; or generally for not fulfilling any DP requirement.*

1.2 A student who is prevented by illness from attending the University must see that the Dean of Students is informed of the circumstances as soon as possible.

1.3 Students are required to attend class meetings regularly, and to perform the work of their classes as directed by the Head of the Department.

### 2. Change of Address

Students shall notify the Student Administration Bureau of any change in their home addresses as soon as

practically possible after such change has taken place. In the event of students altering their Grahamstown address they shall notify the Registrar within seven days of the change being effected.

### 3. Health

3.1 The University may at any time require any student forthwith to undergo a medical examination before a medical officer of its choice and submit to the University a medical certificate in respect thereof. Both pending the receipt by the University of the medical certificate and thereafter the University may take such action in the interests of the University as

it may consider desirable in all the circumstances.

3.2 A student who has a contagious or infectious disease or has recently had such a disease or who has been in contact with anyone suffering from such a disease, may not come to or return to or remain at the University unless a medical certificate is furnished to the Registrar to the effect that the student's condition does not in any way constitute a threat to the health of another person.

#### 4. Examinations

4.1 A student may not take into the examination room, or have in their possession whilst in such a room, any book, memoranda, notes, papers or other materials whatsoever, except answer books or such other books, or other materials as shall have been supplied by the Examinations Officer or authorised by the examiners.

4.2 A student may not aid or attempt to aid another candidate during an examination, or obtain or attempt to obtain aid from another candidate, or communicate or attempt to communicate in any way with any other candidate during such examination.

4.3 A student found guilty of a breach of these rules may, in addition to any other penalty which may be imposed in terms of these rules, be

4.3.1 disqualified by the Senate from writing the examination in question or any other examination or examinations which the Senate may specify; and

4.3.2 deprived of credit in the examination in question or in any other examination which the Senate may specify.

#### 5. Vehicles

5.1 A student possessing a vehicle in Grahamstown must register it with the Registrar when registering as a student each year, and the make, registration number and the student's address must be supplied. In the event of a student acquiring possession of a vehicle in Grahamstown after registration, he/she shall register it with the Campus Protection Unit within 72 hours of acquiring possession of it.

5.2 The Principal or the Proctor may require a student to immobilize his/her vehicle or remove it from Grahamstown if, in the opinion of either, it is undesirable that the student should continue to make use of the motor vehicle in Grahamstown, and this power may be invoked on the grounds of the student's unsatisfactory academic performance.

5.3 A student may not at any time park a vehicle in

any area in the precincts of the University reserved for other purposes.

5.4 The provisions of the Road Traffic Act of 1989, as amended, shall apply *mutatis mutandis* to all roads on the campus of the University which are not public roads.

5.5 Students charged with an offence under rule 5.3 or 5.4 may elect to admit their guilt and pay a fine in accordance with a schedule of fines as laid down from time to time by the Registrar. In such a case, no formal disciplinary proceedings will be instituted.

#### 6. Press Activity

A student who is the editor of any magazine or newspaper, and a student who is the author of a pamphlet news-sheet or similar publication (all of which forms of publication are hereafter referred to as "the publication"), shall supply the Registrar with a free copy of each issue of the publication, together with the name and address of the publisher, as soon as possible after the completion of the printing of such issue.

#### 7. Liquor

Liquor may not be taken into or consumed on any part of the University property without the permission of the Principal.

#### 8. Drugs

A student may not be in unlawful possession of any drugs for which a prescription is required by law, or of any drug the possession of which is forbidden by law.

#### 9. Firearms

Firearms (including air-rifles and air-guns) may not be brought into or used on any part of the University property without the permission of the Principal.

#### 10. Raiding and Initiation

Initiation of students and raiding are prohibited.

#### 11. Residence

11.1 A female undergraduate under 21 years of age may not reside in any place in which male boarders also reside without having previously obtained and presented to the Registrar the written and signed consent of her parent or guardian.

11.2 A student may not be in the precincts of a residence of students of the opposite sex other than

during official visiting hours: provided that this prohibition shall not apply to a male student escorting a woman student back to her residence.

11.3 Except as provided for in the rules of the hall concerned and except in a dining room by invitation, no visitor may be present at any time in a University residence if he or she is of the opposite sex to that of the students of the residence.

11.4 No female student under the age of 19 who is in her first year of study at the University shall spend a weekend or short vacation away from home and out of residence without the prior written permission of a parent or guardian and the consent of the hall warden concerned. All such students are obliged in addition to indicate their addresses whilst on leave in the appropriate book kept for this purpose in the residence concerned.

In addition to the above rules there are residence rules applicable to each hall of residence. Students are required to familiarize themselves with their own residence rules, and in addition male students escorting female students are expected to ascertain that their partners are complying with their residence rules, as, in terms of Rule 15 (below), they may be held to be aiding and abetting the female students concerned if a breach of residence rules occurs.

### **12. Authority**

12.1 The conduct of all students is subject to the control of all members of the academic and senior administrative staff, all hall and house wardens, assistant wardens, and sub-wardens, Campus Protection officers and guards, and members of the SRC. A student shall obey all lawful instructions by any of those persons concerning his/her conduct, including an order to proceed immediately to and remain at, his/her place of residence or the Campus Protection Unit office, which is given by any one of these officers.

12.2 Without derogating from the generality of the control referred to in 12.1 every member of the academic staff shall have the right to exclude from class any student guilty of misconduct or insubordination in such class. If the exclusion is for more than one lecture or other class meeting it shall be reported to the Head of the Department concerned, who may confirm or vary the order of exclusion. If the order of exclusion is for more than two weeks, it shall be reported by the Head of the Department to the Principal, who may confirm or vary the order, or

may refer the matter to some other person or board.

12.3 The lawful instructions referred to in 12.1 shall include an order by the Investigating Officer to furnish information to him/her (see rule 17.5) or to appear before any board or person charged with the duty of exercising discipline, provided that any student appearing before the Investigating Officer shall be cautioned that he/she need not answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to disciplinary proceedings and provided further that an accused student appearing before the Investigating Officer shall not be compelled to furnish him/her with a written statement. Such accused student may, however, furnish the Investigating Officer with a written statement if he/she so chooses.

12.3.1 Subject to the provisions of Rule 12.3, any student who fails to appear before the Investigating Officer or a board or person charged with exercising discipline or who fails to answer any relevant lawful question shall commit a disciplinary offence; provided that an accused student who appears before a disciplinary authority shall not be compelled to give evidence; and provided further that an accused student who elects to give evidence before a disciplinary authority shall not be asked or required to answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to disciplinary proceedings for any offence other than the offence with which he/she is being charged.

12.3.3 Any student other than the accused student appearing before any disciplinary authority shall not be asked or required to answer any question the answer to which is likely to expose him/her to any disciplinary proceedings.

12.3.4 It shall be a disciplinary offence for any student to answer untruthfully any relevant and lawful question put to him/her in the course of any disciplinary proceedings or put to him/her by the Investigating Officer in the course of an investigation into an alleged disciplinary offence.

### **13. Giving of Name and Address**

13.1 All University officers named in Rule 1.2 (above) shall have the right at any time to demand of any student his/her full name and place of residence, and to demand the production of his/her student card or any other satisfactory form of identification; provided that such power shall only be exercised where the officer seeking the information has

## STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

---

reasonable cause to believe that the student has committed, or is about to commit a breach of a rule, or that the student in question is in a position to give information as to the commission of the disciplinary offence. Failure by a student in these circumstances to answer promptly and truthfully will be regarded as a serious breach of discipline.

13.2 Subject to the provisions of the rule 13.1 all University officers named in rule 12 shall have the right to photograph or cause to be photographed any student for the purpose of identification; provided that such power shall only be exercised where the student refuses or is unable to produce his/her student card or any other proof of identification, or where there is any doubt as to the proof of the identification.

### 14. General Conduct

14.1 Students are required at all times to abstain from any conduct which may reasonably be regarded as unbecoming in a student of the University.

14.2 Without derogating from the generality of the above rule and solely for the guidance of students of the University the following examples are given of conduct which the University would regard as unbecoming in one of its students:

14.2.1 engaging in any conduct which disrupts or interferes with, or which may be likely to disrupt or interfere in any way with teaching or study or research or lectures or meetings or events of the University or of any constituent part of the University or of an associated research institute or the administration of the University or of any other of the normal processes and activities of the University;

14.2.2 engaging in any conduct which obstructs or interferes with or may be likely to obstruct or interfere in any way with any officer or any other member or servant of the University or with any other student in the performance of his/her duties or in the exercise of his/her rights;

14.2.3 damaging or defacing any property of the University or any property whatsoever within the precincts of the University;

14.2.4 Occupying or using any portion of the University premises otherwise than in accordance with the Rules and Regulations of the University or in any manner contrary to the purposes for which such premises are intended by the University to be used, or for which they are in fact normally used;

14.2.5 engaging in any conduct which is defamatory of any officer or any other member or servant of the

University, or which may reasonably be regarded as offensive;

14.2.6 engaging in any conduct which can reasonably be regarded as likely to bring the University into disrepute or contempt;

14.2.7 engaging in conduct which is disorderly whether on or off the University campus.

### 15. Aiding and Abetting

A student shall not aid or abet another student to break any rule.

### 16. Penalties

Any one or more of the following penalties may be imposed upon a student who has been found guilty of a breach of a Rule:

16.1 deprivation of a degree improperly obtained;

16.2 permanent exclusion from the University;

16.3 exclusion from the University and its premises and from participation in all University activity (which shall include all student activity) for a specified period;

16.4 exclusion from a University residence;

16.5 exclusion from attendance at certain classes and/or University examinations, either permanently or for a specified period;

16.6 exclusion from participation in such University activities or from such post or office in the University as may be specified, either permanently or for a specified period;

16.7 in the case of a student living in one of the University residences, confinement to that residence during such hours and for such period as may be specified, or confinement within the municipal boundary of Grahamstown for such period as may be specified;

16.8 imposition of a fine not exceeding 12.5 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee;

16.9 payment of such sum of money as may be required to make good any loss, damage or expense caused to the University or to another person as a result of the offence; or

16.10 any other appropriate penalty.

Provided that the penalties referred to in 16.1 and 16.2 shall not become of full effect until they have been confirmed by Council and provided further that pending decision by Council on the penalty in 16.2 the student concerned shall, unless the Principal rules otherwise, be excluded forthwith from any University premises and be suspended from participation in all

University activity (which shall include all student activity). If Council does not confirm the penalty in 16.1 or 16.2, whichever is in question, the matter shall be referred back to the disciplinary authority which imposed the sentence in order that some other penalty should be imposed. Any such penalty shall be subject to review in the ordinary way.

### **17. Disciplinary Officers and their powers**

#### **The Principal**

17.1 The Principal shall be the Chief Disciplinary Officer of the University and shall have the following powers:

17.1.1 He must take such interim action against any student as he in his discretion may consider desirable in any case of apparent breach of discipline or misconduct by such student, whether on or off the University premises. In the exercise of this power, the Principal may suspend the student concerned from attendance at classes and/or from participation in any other activities of the University, pending a final decision in the matter, provided that in the event of the Principal taking such interim measures he shall proceed to obtain a final decision on the apparent breach of discipline or misconduct as soon as it is reasonably practical to do so.

17.1.2 He may delegate all or any of his powers in connection with student discipline to the Vice-Principal.

17.1.3 Nothing herein contained shall in any way derogate from the Principal's powers and authority under the common law or such powers as may be vested in him by any other body or authority whatsoever.

17.1.4 Notwithstanding the terms of the appointment of the Investigating Officer/ Officers and a Proctor/ Proctors, the Principal shall be entitled at anytime to relieve them or either of them of the powers entrusted to them herein and may thereafter appoint another person or other persons as the case may be in his or their stead.

#### **The Acting Principal**

17.2 When the Principal is absent from the University, the Acting Principal, or if no acting appointment has been made, the Vice-Principal, shall take over the disciplinary powers vested in the Principal

#### **The Proctor**

17.3.1 The University may appoint a Proctor/Proctors to serve for such period as the Principal may from

time to time determine. This officer shall whenever possible be a member of the academic staff who has served as a judicial officer or practised as an officer of a superior court of law, and shall have jurisdiction, subject to the provisions of 17.4 (below), to adjudicate upon any breach of rule by a student and proceed to a decision in the matter including the imposition of any of the penalties contained in Rule 16; provided that whenever it is not possible for the University to appoint a Proctor/Proctors with the qualifications set out above, a Proctor/Proctors shall be appointed to exercise such powers as Council may determine at the date of appointment.

17.3.2 If, during a hearing before a Proctor, the Proctor becomes unable to continue to serve and it appears that the Proctor will be unable to resume participation within a reasonable time having regard to the circumstances of the case, the proceedings may be terminated and fresh proceedings commenced *de novo* before such disciplinary officer or board as the Investigating Officer may determine; provided that with the leave of all students summoned to appear in such proceedings the Investigating Officer may order that the proceedings continue before such replacement officer or board.

#### **The Disciplinary Board**

17.4.1 Where a student is to be charged with the breach of a rule before a Proctor sitting alone, the Investigating Officer shall advise the student that if he/ she so wishes he/ she may require to be charged before the Disciplinary Board. If the student then so requires the student shall appear before a Disciplinary Board.

The Disciplinary Board shall consist of a Proctor as chairman, one member chosen from a panel of members nominated by the Senate and approved by the Principal after consultation with a Proctor and a further member from a panel of students who have completed at least two years of full-time attendance at the University, nominated by the SRC and approved by the Principal after consultation with a Proctor. Whenever a Disciplinary Board is required to sit the Principal shall select the two members. If at any time no member of the panel chosen by the SRC is either available, willing or able to sit on the Disciplinary Board the Principal shall select an additional member from the panel nominated by the Senate. The Disciplinary Board shall have power to impose all penalties set out in Rule 16 above.

17.4.2 The Disciplinary Board shall exercise certain

powers to review the disciplinary decisions of a hall or house warden, a committee exercising disciplinary power in a hall or house, the SRC Disciplinary Board, the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee, the President of the Oppidan Union, or the Oppidan Union Disciplinary Committee. These powers appear more fully at Rule 19 (below); provided that in a review at a student's instance the powers conferred by this sub-rule may only be exercised if the student concerned satisfies a Proctor that he/she has previously exhausted all appeal or review remedies afforded him/her by the constitution of his/her hall or the Oppidan Union Constitution as the case may be by providing a certificate from his hall warden to this effect.

17.4.3 If the chairperson of the Disciplinary Board becomes unable to continue to serve in like circumstances to those set out in 17.3.2, the proceedings shall be terminated and commenced de novo before a newly-constituted Board provided that with the leave of all students summoned to appear in such proceedings, the Investigating Officer may order that the proceedings continue before a replacement chairman and the members of the Board who have acted to that point.

17.4.4 If, during a hearing before the Disciplinary Board, a member of such Board other than its chairperson becomes unable to continue to serve or absents him/herself in like circumstances to those set out in 17.3.2, the chairperson and remaining member shall have the power to proceed to a final determination of the matter in the absence of the unavailable member.

17.4.5 Where the Board is sitting as a Disciplinary Board or a Review Board it shall reach its decisions upon the verdict and the sentence by a majority vote. In the event of a failure to obtain a majority agreement on verdict or sentence, the members of the Disciplinary Board or Review Board shall reconsider the matter and in the event of their still being unable to reach a majority agreement, the Chairman shall determine the verdict and/or sentence as the case may be.

### **The Investigating Officer**

17.5.1 The University may appoint an Investigating Officer/Officers to serve for such period as the Principal may from time to time determine. This Officer shall whenever possible be a member of the academic staff who has served as judicial officer or practised as an officer of a superior court of law.

He/she shall have the power to investigate any alleged breach of a rule which is reported or referred to him/her or of which he/she becomes aware of his/her own knowledge. If it appears that a student has committed a breach of rule he/she may, in his/her discretion, summon such student to appear before any disciplinary authority of the University adopting in so doing such procedures as are fully set out in Rule 18 (below).

They shall further have the power to direct that proceedings already commenced before any of the disciplinary authorities referred to in 17.6 to 17.9 (inclusive) be suspended or terminated forthwith. The Investigating Officer shall report to the Principal before the end of the Fourth Term any disciplinary investigation pending against a student.

### **Hall and house wardens, committees exercising disciplinary powers in halls or houses, assistant wardens and subwardens**

17.6 Nothing contained in these Rules shall detract from the disciplinary powers and duties of the officers of the halls or residences of the University as provided for in the constitutions of the respective halls save and except that the sentencing powers of these officers shall be limited as follows:

17.6.1 a hall warden or the committee exercising disciplinary power within a hall may impose any of the penalties contained in 16.4, 16.7, 16.8, 16.9 and 16.10; provided that their powers under 16.4 shall be limited to their hall and the powers contained in 16.7 shall be limited to a period not exceeding 14 days and shall only be exercised in respect of a student of their hall; providing further that the power to fine contained in 16.8 shall be limited to a fine not exceeding 10 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee;

17.6.2 a house warden (or assistant warden, or sub-warden), or the committee exercising disciplinary power within a house may impose any of the penalties contained in 16.7, 16.8, 16.9 and 16.10; provided that their power under 16.7 shall be limited to a period not exceeding 14 days and shall only be exercised in respect of a student of their house; provided further that the power to fine contained in 16.8 shall be limited to a fine not exceeding 7.5 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee.

### **The SRC Disciplinary Board**

17.7 There shall be a Board of this title consisting of as many members as the SRC shall by resolution from time to time determine. This Board shall have the power to enquire into any breach of a rule

allegedly committed by a student within the precincts of the University or at any university function or occasion albeit held off the University premises, provided that as soon as it determines to take such action, it shall immediately report the matter to the Investigating Officer who may decide to refer the matter to any other person or Board in which case they shall immediately inform the SRC of the decision. The SRC Disciplinary Board shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter. The Board shall have the following powers to penalise any student found by it to have committed a breach of the Rules:

17.7.1 imposition of a fine not exceeding 10 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee;

17.7.2 exclusion from participation in SRC functions or facilities for a period not exceeding one month;

17.7.3 exclusion from entering the Union Building for a period not exceeding one month;

17.7.4 the Board may impose two or all three of the aforesaid penalties;

17.7.5 the Board may exercise the power contained in 16.9 (above).

### **The Sports Council Disciplinary Committee**

17.8 There shall be a Committee of the above title consisting of the chairman for the time being of the Sports Council or deputy and two further members nominated by the chairman or the deputy from the members of the University Colours Committee. This Committee shall have the power to enquire into any breach of a Rule allegedly committed by a student where the breach alleged has been either:

17.8.1 of a rule of the Sports Council or any of its constituent clubs, or

17.8.2 committed by the students on University property set aside by the Council for student activities under the control of the Sports Council, or

17.8.3 committed by students elsewhere than on University property but while members of a University team or touring party under the control of the Sports Council, provided that as soon as it determines to take disciplinary action, the Committee shall immediately report the matter to the Investigating Officer who may decide to refer it to another person or board in which case he/she shall immediately inform the Sports Council of the decision. The Sports Disciplinary Committee shall thereupon cease to have jurisdiction in the matter. The Committee shall have the power to suspend any

student found to have breached a rule from participation in any sporting activity of the University either totally or in part for a period not exceeding one month, or to impose a fine not exceeding 10 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee or it may impose both such penalties. In addition it may exercise the power contained in 16.9 (above).

### **Oppidan Union**

17.9 The disciplinary rights, powers, duties, and privileges of the President, of the Vice-Presidents, and of the Board of the Oppidan Union shall be those laid down in the Constitution of the Oppidan Union, as approved by Senate and Council in 1980 and amended from time to time.

### **18. Procedure**

#### *Notice*

18.1 Every student summoned to appear before an authority of the University to answer a charge of committing a disciplinary offence which he/she denies shall be entitled to at least 24 hours notice of the time and place of such enquiry, given sufficient particulars of the alleged disciplinary offence to enable him/her to prepare his/her defence, and shall be afforded an opportunity of being heard in his/her defence on all facts alleged against him/her.

#### *Effect of Failure to Appear*

18.2 If a student who has been summoned in terms of 18.1 fails to appear at the place and on the date and at the time specified in the notice or fails to remain in attendance or to attend any adjourned proceedings the authority before which he/she is appearing may continue or proceed in his/her absence provided that it is satisfied that the student concerned had no reasonable excuse for failing to attend or for failing to remain in attendance.

#### *Representation*

18.3 A student appearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, whether on trial or review may be assisted by any member of the academic staff, whether a member of the Senate or not, or by any warden, or by any registered student of the University other than a student summoned to answer charges in the same proceedings, or by an attorney or advocate who is engaged in the practice of law provided that such representation shall be at his/her own cost.

A person assisting a student by virtue of the provisions of these Rules will hereafter be referred to as their adviser.



### *Power to adjourn and alter forum*

18.4 If during the course of disciplinary proceedings before any person or board referred to in Rule 17, it appears to such person or board that the proceedings should more properly be adjudicated upon by some other person or board, it may adjourn the proceedings and refer the matter to the Investigating Officer, whereupon the Investigating Officer may refer the matter back to the same person or board to proceed to a final decision in the matter, or he/she may refer it to some other person or board to be heard *de novo*.

### *Addition of a fresh charge*

18.5 If, during the course of a hearing before a Proctor, or the Disciplinary Board it comes to the knowledge of the Investigating Officer that a student appearing at such hearing may have committed a disciplinary offence other than, or in addition to, that with which he/she has been charged, the Investigating Officer may forthwith charge the student concerned with such fresh disciplinary offence and provided that the provisions of 18.1 are satisfied, the enquiry may then proceed, the evidence led to that stage retaining its full force and effect.

### *Admissions*

18.6 Any admission made by a student charged with any disciplinary offence either before or during the course of any enquiry into such offence, shall be admissible in evidence against such student at the enquiry, and at any subsequent proceedings where such admission may be relevant. Any admission made by any witness at an enquiry shall be admissible against any such witness at any subsequent proceedings in which such admission may be relevant.

### *Admission to Proceedings*

18.7 In all hearings before any disciplinary authority of the University no person other than the Investigating Officer, the student summoned to appear, his/her adviser, if any, and any witness while giving evidence may attend save with the leave of the disciplinary authority concerned and provided the consent of the accused student and all witnesses has been obtained; and provided further that if the student is appearing before a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, the members of the SRC Disciplinary Board and the senior student of each of the University's halls of residence and the Chairman of the Oppidan Board may attend such proceedings in the capacity of observers, if at the commencement of the proceedings all students summoned to appear

and all witnesses appearing at the proceedings consent to their presence. The decisions of the students appearing and of the witnesses in this regard shall be signified to the Investigating Officer in confidence.

### *Disruptive or Insulting Behaviour*

18.8 If a student appearing at an enquiry before any disciplinary authority conducts him/herself in a manner which makes the continuance of the proceedings in his/her presence impossible or impractical, the officer presiding may direct that he/she be removed and that the proceedings be continued in his/her absence. If any student intentionally insults any member of a disciplinary authority during its sitting or any other person whose presence is necessary during attendance at such a sitting, or intentionally interrupts the proceedings of the authority or otherwise misbehaves during such a sitting, they shall, in addition to their liability to be excluded from the proceedings, be liable to be charged and punished there and then for such insulting or disruptive behaviour.

### *Records*

18.9 Within 48 hours of the imposition of a disciplinary penalty by a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board, a Proctor shall record the charges, any amendment made to the charge, the pleas, all of the material facts found proved, including aggravating or mitigating circumstances, if any, the verdict, the penalty imposed, and the reasons for the imposition of such penalty, and forward such record to the Registrar. A copy of this record shall be supplied to the penalised student upon request by him/her or the adviser.

A copy of such record from which the name of the student who appeared thereat and of any witnesses, has been deleted, shall be posted on a student notice board designated by the Registrar. A second such amended copy shall be filed in the Registrar's office. Such record may be made equally available to the Investigating Officer and any student summoned to appear before a Disciplinary Authority so that it may be referred to as a precedent in future enquiries or be used by such student in the preparation of his defence.

## **19. Review Powers and Procedure**

### **Definitions**

In this Rule the term 'convicted' shall refer to the findings by a disciplinary authority that a student has



breached a rule and the term 'sentence' shall relate to the penalty imposed for such breach.

#### **The right of review**

19.1 A student convicted and sentenced by a hall or house warden, a committee exercising disciplinary powers within a hall of house, the Sports Union Disciplinary Committee, the SRC Disciplinary Board, or the officers of the Oppidan Union shall have the right to have such decisions reviewed by a Proctor, or if the student requires it, by the Disciplinary Board as constituted in 17.4 on the following grounds only;

19.1.1 that the facts found proved by the convicting authority do not disclose the offence of which he/she was convicted; or

19.1.2 that the sentence imposed was so excessive as to be unjust; or

19.1.3 that he/she has been prejudiced by a material irregularity in the conduct of the proceedings against him/her.

#### **Noting procedure**

19.2 A student wishing to exercise the right of review set out in 19.1 shall within 24 hours of being sentenced advise the Disciplinary Officer, or the Chairman of the disciplinary authority which sentenced him/her, in writing that he/she wishes to have a copy of the record in the matter.

#### **Furnishing of the record**

19.3 The Officer or Chairman referred to in 19.2 shall within 48 hours of receipt of the notice from the student advising of a request for review furnish the student with a record of the proceedings containing the same details of the proceedings as those required of the record described in 18.9.

#### **The formal request for review**

19.4 If upon consideration of the record the student decides that he/she wishes the case reviewed, he/she shall furnish a written request to this effect to the Dean of Students within 48 hours of the receipt of that referred to in 19.3. In such request he/she shall set out with the help of the adviser, or so far as he/she is able to do so unassisted, the reasons he/she advances for alleging that the sentencing authority erred, or the prejudicial irregularity which he/she alleges was committed.

#### **Arranging for review hearing**

19.5 Upon receipt of the student's application for review the Dean of Students shall make all necessary arrangements for the hearing of the review and afford reasonable notice to the student concerned of the time

and place at which the review will be heard. The Investigating Officer shall represent the University at a review hearing. If a student fails without reasonable cause to appear at the time and place arranged by the Dean of Students, the Reviewing Authority may proceed to review the matter in the student's absence, or with the Investigating Officer's consent, dismiss the review; provided that a student may ask the leave of the Reviewing Authority to withdraw the request for review and this request may be granted if the Investigating Officer consents thereto.

#### **Further powers of the Investigating Officer**

19.6 If it should come to the attention of the Investigating Officer that the decision of a disciplinary authority of the University may be incorrect, or may not have been reached in accordance with these rules, or has led to the imposition of a penalty which in the view of this Officer may be unjust because it is either too harsh or too lenient, he/she shall be entitled to have such penalty reviewed. These review proceedings may be brought from decisions of hall wardens, house wardens, committees exercising disciplinary powers in a hall or a house, the SRC Disciplinary Board, the Sports Council Disciplinary Committee and the officers of the Oppidan Union to a Proctor or Disciplinary Board. The Investigating Officer in bringing review proceedings under this sub-rule shall follow *mutatis mutandis*, the procedures laid down in 19.2, 19.3, 19.4 and 19.5 provided that the Investigating Officer may request the sentencing authority to furnish him/her with a copy of the record within 10(ten) days of the imposition of the sentence.

#### **Powers upon Review**

19.7 Upon hearing a review a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board shall have the following powers: 19.7.1 to request the person or body whose decisions are being reviewed to advise the Review Committee whether any finding of fact was made in connection with any particular circumstance and, if so, to request that the Review Committee be furnished with a statement setting out that finding of fact;

19.7.2 to confirm, alter or quash the conviction, and in the event of the conviction being quashed, when the student was convicted on one of two alternative charges, convict the student on the alternative charge; 19.7.3 to confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sentence;

19.7.4 generally to give such judgement or to impose sentence or make such order consistent with the

powers of a Proctor and Disciplinary Board set out in 17.3 and 17.4 as a Proctor or Disciplinary Board deems fit, including the ordering of a re-trial, either before the original disciplinary authority or before a new one.

## **20. Review by the Principal Jurisdiction**

20.1 A student convicted and sentenced by a Proctor or the Disciplinary Board shall have the right to have such decisions reviewed by the Principal on the following grounds only:

20.1.1 that the facts found proved by the convicting authority do not disclose the offence of which he/she was convicted; or

20.1.2 that the sentence imposed was so excessive as to be unjust, or

20.1.3 that he/she has been prejudiced by a material irregularity in the conduct of the proceedings against him/her.

### **Noting Procedures**

20.2 The conduct of such a review by the Principal or a Disciplinary Review Committee shall, *mutatis mutandis*, follow the procedures set out in 19.1 to 19.5 inclusive. The Principal may either decide the outcome of such review or refer the matter for decision to a Disciplinary Review Committee comprised of a chairman who shall be a Professor of Law if one is available and any two further members of the Senate-nominated disciplinary panel referred to in 17.4 who have not previously adjudicated upon the matter in question. Should the Principal decide that he should determine the outcome of the review, he/she may do so solely upon a consideration of the record and the student's written request referred to in 19.4. However, the Principal may invite the student or his/her adviser or both to appear before him when the matter is to be determined. Should the Principal decide to refer the matter to a Disciplinary Review Committee the Committee shall decide the outcome of the Review solely upon a consideration of the record and the student's written request. If the student so requests he/she or the adviser or both may appear before the Committee.

### **Representation**

20.3 In the event of an oral hearing being ordered, the aggrieved student shall have the right to be represented thereat by any of the persons referred to in 18.3 but if he/she engages an advocate or attorney engaged in the practice of law, they shall bear all the

costs thereof.

### **Powers Upon Review**

20.4 Upon hearing a review, the Principal or the Disciplinary Review Committee, as the case may be, shall have the following powers:

20.4.1 to request the person or body whose decisions are being reviewed to advise the Review Committee whether any finding of fact was made in connection with any particular circumstance and if so, to request that the Review Committee be furnished with a statement setting out that finding of fact;

20.4.2 to confirm, alter or quash the conviction, and in the event of the conviction being quashed, when the student was convicted on one of two alternative charges, convict the student on the alternative charge;

20.4.3 to confirm, reduce, increase, alter or set aside the sentence;

20.4.4 generally to give such judgement or to impose such sentence or make such order as the Principal or the Disciplinary Review Committee deems fit, including the ordering of a re-trial, either before the original disciplinary authority or before a new one.

### **21. Disqualification of Disciplinary Officers**

A disciplinary officer or member of an authority referred to in Rule 17 hereof shall not be disqualified from exercising any of the functions or powers conferred upon him/her by these Rules in a disciplinary enquiry by reason only of the fact that he/she witnessed all or any of the conduct alleged to constitute the breach of a rule which forms the subject of the enquiry.

### **22. Computation of Time**

In computing whether an act has been performed within the period of time provided for by these Rules, no account shall be taken of Saturdays, Sundays, public holidays observed as such by the University during term time, or days falling outside the official University term. Provided that the provisions of this rule relating to Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays shall not apply to the giving of notice to the student to appear before a hall or house warden or a committee exercising disciplinary power in a hall or house.

### **23. Principal's Discretionary Powers**

23.1 The Principal may determine that the examination results of any student in respect of whom a report has been made to him by the

## STUDENT DISCIPLINARY CODE

---

Investigating Officer in terms of Rule 17.5.2 be withheld until the proceedings, if any, resulting from the investigation have been completed or withdrawn. 23.2 If at any time the Principal in his capacity as Chief Disciplinary Officer of the University, deems it necessary or desirable for any reason he may himself or through any person or body of persons conduct disciplinary proceedings in a manner not provided for by this Code. In the event of his so

acting he will inform the Senate and Council as soon as reasonably possible in order that, if necessary, amendments to this Code or a new Code may be formulated.

### **24. Principal's Clemency**

The Principal is at all times entitled in his discretion to exercise clemency.

## STUDENT AFFAIRS

### STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL

The Rhodes University Students' Representative Council (SRC) represents Rhodes students both on campus and outside the university, and negotiates with the university authorities on their behalf. When necessary, the SRC calls meetings of the student body.

The University Council allocates an annual budget to the SRC, and it may raise additional funds with the permission of the Senate and Council. The SRC finances, controls and co-ordinates the activities of registered societies and clubs on campus (see the Societies section which follows), and organises schemes benefiting students, such as the South African Students' Travel Service (see General Information). Grants are also made to various committees, to publications controlled by the SRC, and for student social functions.

SRC also arranges seminars and speakers on current social and political issues of particular interest to students.

Externally the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and university campuses, and is affiliated with outside organisations such as the South African Institute of Race Relations.

In terms of the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC Disciplinary Board has the power to exclude a student from SRC functions or facilities for a month and/or to impose a fine of up to 10 percent of the Bachelor of Arts fee. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

### SRC membership and elections

Only students who have been registered at Rhodes for at least one term may stand as candidates or vote in an SRC election.

The 16-member SRC is elected in August and takes office soon afterwards for one year.

Eight residence constituencies elect one member each, (Kimberley Hall elects 2 members), the Oppidan constituency elects two members, and the remaining five members are elected by the student body voting as a single constituency. There must be a 40% poll for a valid election, unless a candidate is unopposed.

**The SRC president** is appointed by consensus within the SRC, or, failing that, elected within two weeks after the general election. The whole student body elects the president from newly-elected SRC members nominated for the presidency. The

president is ex officio chair-person of the SRC and of all student body meetings and may vote at these meetings and, where necessary, may exercise a casting vote.

**SRC meetings** are held once a month during term. Meetings are advertised prior to the meeting and students are welcome to attend.

The following committees are represented on the SRC Executive: Finances, Delimitations, SRC Disciplinary Board, Senior Students' Council, Class Representative Council, Student Assembly, Orientation Committee and Student Visiting Lecturers' Trust Fund.

### SRC representatives on other University committees.

SRC members also serve on the following University committees: Student Services Council, Academic Freedom, Honorary Degrees, Joint Physical Planning, Board of Residences, Rhodes University Club, Vice-Chancellor's Distinguished Teaching Award, Adult Education, Examinations, and Academic Development Programme Committees.

The president attends Council meetings and with four other members is a member of the Senate.

### SRC Members

SRC members are available for consultation and discussion of student issues during SRC office hours. Elections are held annually during August.

### Harassment

The Student Services Council has requested the Assistant Dean of Students, Dr Iain L'Ange, to assume responsibility for administering and dealing with student harassment issues. Dr L'Ange is attempting to maintain a record of instances of harassment on campus, as well as to establish a network of counsellors and mediators to which victims of harassment may be referred.

## SOCIETIES, COUNCILS AND COMMITTEES

Arts and Social Sciences Faculty Council

Astronomy and HAM Radio

ACTS (Association of Catholic Tertiary

Students) Activate (Student Newspaper)

AIIESEC

AMS Alternative Media

ANSOC (Anglican Society)

Amnesty International

Assembly of God

AZASCO

Ballroom Dancing  
Bell Ringers  
Biochemistry and Microbiology  
Campus Players  
Chamber Choir  
Chemistry  
Choral  
Creative Arts  
Debating  
DEMSOC (Democratic Society)  
Divinity Faculty Council  
Early Music  
French  
Geography  
Geology Society  
HAS (Hellenic Students' Association)  
Heal the World  
HSS (Hindu Students' Society)  
His People Bible School  
Law Students' Council  
Literary  
METHSOC (Methodist Society)  
MSA (Muslim Students' Society)  
NAMSOC (Namibian Society)  
PASO (Pan Africanist Student Organisation)  
Photographic Society  
Reggae  
RUCUS Rhodes University Computer Users  
RUSO Rhodes University Student Community Organisation  
RUPSA (Rhodes University Pharmacy Students' Association)  
Rhodes University Wine cultural Society  
SASCO (South African Students' Congress Organisation)  
ROTE (Rotary Students' Exchange Students)  
SAUJS (South African Union of Jewish Students)  
STEP (Gay, Lesbian and Bisexual Society)  
SCO(Student Christian Fellowship)  
Stock Exchange Society  
Thinking Strings  
Rhodes Toastmasters  
Voice of Glory Choir (VOG)  
ZIMSOC (Zimbabwe Society)  
ZICUSA (Zimbabwe Cultural Students' Association)  
Zoology Society

For further information about societies and details of chairperson or representatives, please contact the Secretary in the SRC office. Telephone 27122.

### THE SPORTS COUNCIL

Sport and recreation, due largely to the residential

nature of the campus, play a very important role in the life of the student at Rhodes. 1987 saw the introduction of the new Sports Council (formerly Sports Union) constitution which seeks to provide the infrastructure and facilities to cater for all sporting groups on campus.

In order to accommodate these needs, the Sports Council has some thirty (30) affiliated clubs which cater for a wide range of interest at both the competitive and social/recreational levels.

Sport at Rhodes is unique in that all students are automatically members of the Sport Council and are thus free to make use of certain of the facilities without being obliged to join a particular club. However, students wishing to play sport or take part in recreational pursuits at a higher level do need to join clubs in order to take advantage of the structured programmes presented by the Sports Council.

The compact nature of the campus provides all sporting facilities within easy walking distance of the residences. The easy accessibility and availability of facilities are responsible for the very high participation rate (85%) in sport and recreation by the student population.

The student committees of the sports clubs take care of the day to day organisation of the club activities assisted by three professional Sports Officers who provide the infrastructure which allows the clubs to operate effectively.

The clubs generally provide for participation at two levels. Those students involved in competitive sport participate in the Eastern Province or Border leagues. The second important level of participation is the intra-mural programme which takes care of the needs of those sportsmen and women who wish to be involved on a more social basis.

It is the Sports Council's philosophy that sport and recreation play a vital role in the overall educational experience of every student. In an attempt to involve as many students as possible the Sports Council offers a wide range of activities which include: Aerobics, Aikido, Athletics, Badminton, Basketball, Chess, Cricket, Fly fishing, Golf, Hockey (Men and Women), Karate, Kung fu, Mountain and Hiking, Netball, Rifle, Rowing, Rugby, Sailing, Soccer, Squash, Surfing, Swimming, Table Tennis, Tennis, Underwater, Volleyball, Waterpolo, and Weight Training.

### OPPIDAN UNION

#### Oppidan Board Services

The Oppidan Board is responsible for initiating and maintaining a range of student benefits:

(1) The Oppidan Common Room consists of two rooms on the ground floor of the Rhodes Union building. These rooms contain study tables, easy-chairs, a TV set, M-Net decoder. Tea and coffee are served free of charge twice a day to all Oppidan students. Daily newspapers are available in the Common Room.

(2) Lawnmower and gardening equipment are available on loan. A deposit is required and a small fee is charged for the use of the lawnmower.

(3) A vacuum cleaner is available for use at a small fee. A deposit is required.

(4) The Board assists students in finding accommodation by keeping records of available accommodation. Lease guides, maps and other aids for finding accommodation are available from the Oppidan Secretary.

(5) The Oppidan Directory is compiled by the Oppidan Secretary and distributed free of charge to all Oppidans. The Directory contains information relating to the Board and the University in addition to the names and addresses of all Oppidan students.

(6) The 'Oppienion', which contains information relating to Oppidan Board activities, as well as the activities of Oppidan students generally, is produced once a term.

**The Oppidan Secretary** is on duty in the Oppidan Board offices in the mornings during term-time.

The secretary is responsible for co-ordinating all areas of the Board's activity, and is available to help and advise Oppidans wherever possible.

The structure and function of the Oppidan Board is currently being reviewed by the Assistant Dean of Students, Dr Iain L'Ange,

tel. 603 8188 (w) 082 801 1396 (cell), and the Oppidan Secretary, Mrs Joyce Allcock  
tel. 603 8229 (w).

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### ACADEMIC COSTUME

*Chancellor:* A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with gold lace. With this gown is worn a black velvet mortar-board cap with a gold tassel and gold lace edging.

*Vice-Chancellor and Principal:* A gown made of black brocade and trimmed with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and silver lace edging.

*Pro-Vice-Chancellor and Vice-Principal:* A gown made of black silk and having the facings and sleeve-openings edged with silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a silver tassel and a narrow silver lace edging.

*Chairman of Council:* A gown made of black silk and having a collar and facings of gold trimmed with black braid. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a tassel of threads of gold to match the facings.

*Members of Council:* A black gown, the front facings and bottom of the sleeves of which are trimmed with gold ribbon 25mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

*President of Convocation:* A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple edged with narrow silver lace. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a purple tassel.

*Registrar:* A black gown faced down each side in front and on the sleeves with purple 150mm wide, and with the lower half of each sleeve covered with purple, with the addition of a 10mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and between the purple and black on each sleeve. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board with a purple and white tassel.

*Registrar (Finance):* A black gown faced down each side in front with purple 60mm wide, and 150mm wide cuffs on the lower part of each sleeve, with the addition of a 5mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing and at the top of each sleeve cuff. With this gown is worn a black mortar board with a purple and white tassel.

*Director, East London Campus:* A black gown faced down each side in front with purple 60mm wide, with the addition of a 5mm wide white cloth piping down the outer side of each front facing. With this gown is worn a black mortar board with a purple and white tassel.

*Bedellus:* A plain black gown with wrist-length sleeves. Each sleeve is trimmed with four horizontal

bands of purple velvet and has at the top a purple velvet wing edged with narrow silver lace. A black mortar-board cap.

*Graduates:* Bachelors and Masters wear a black gown of the same design as that worn by Masters of Arts in the University of Oxford. Doctors of Philosophy wear a scarlet gown of the same design as that worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge. Doctors other than Doctors of Philosophy, wear a scarlet gown of the same design as the scarlet full-dress gown of Doctors in the University of Oxford.

*Licentiates:* A black gown of the same design as worn by Bachelors of Arts in the University of Cambridge faced down each side in front with royal blue 50mm wide. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

*Undergraduates:* A black gown of the design worn by scholars in the University of Oxford. With this gown is worn a black mortar-board cap with a black tassel.

*Undergraduate Education graduates:* Undergraduate gown with a black stole 110mm wide. The length of the stole alternates with bands of white and purple stripes each 10 mm wide. The left end carries a Rhodes University crest, and the right end is embroidered with the letters R U in purple. The stole awarded to fourth-year diplomands has gold tassels and the stole awarded to third-year diplomands has black tassels.

### Hoods

Bachelors' hoods are made in an Oxford simple shape. Master's and Doctors' hoods are made in the full shape used in the University of London.

Where a Bachelor's hood is bound with a second colour, the binding is placed over the anterior and posterior sides of the hood and is 13mm wide on the inside and on the outside. The facing on the hood for the degree of Bachelor of Pharmacy is 50mm wide inside the anterior side at the bottom, tapering to nothing at the centre of the neckband. The edging of the Masters' and Doctors' hoods is 7mm wide on the outside of the cowl and the cape.

### HOODS FOR DIFFERENT DEGREES

#### BA

Black lined with white and bound with purple

#### BA(Trans)

Black lined with white and bound with honey bird blue

## GENERAL INFORMATION

|                    |   |                           |   |
|--------------------|---|---------------------------|---|
| <b>MA</b>          | Black lined and edged with white                                      | <b>BCom</b>               | Black lined with primrose yellow              |
| <b>DLitt</b>       | Scarlet lined and edged with white                                    | <b>MCom</b>               | Black lined and edged with primrose yellow    |
| <b>BFineArt</b>    | Black lined with ultramarine blue                                     | <b>BEcon</b>              | Black lined with buttercup yellow             |
| <b>MFineArt</b>    | Black lined and edged with ultramarine blue                           | <b>MEcon</b>              | Black lined and edged with buttercup yellow   |
| <b>BJourn</b>      | Black lined with cherry red   | <b>DEcon</b>              | Scarlet lined and edged with buttercup yellow |
| <b>BMus</b>        | Black lined with adonis blue  | <b>BSocSc</b>             | Black lined with silver-grey                  |
| <b>MMus</b>        | Black lined and edged with adonis blue                                | <b>BSocSc(Soc Work)</b>   | Black lined with silver grey                  |
| <b>DMus</b>        | Scarlet lined and edged with adonis blue                              | <b>MSocSc</b>             | Black lined and edged with silver grey        |
| <b>BSc</b>         | Black lined with bottle green   | <b>DSocSc</b>             | Scarlet lined and edged with silver grey      |
| <b>BSc(InfSys)</b> | Black lined with light green  | <b>BTh</b>                | Black lined with lilac                        |
| <b>MSc</b>         | Black lined and edged with bottle green                               | <b>MTh</b>                | Black lined and edged with lilac              |
| <b>DSc</b>         | Scarlet lined and edged with bottle green                             | <b>BD</b>                 | Black lined with purple                       |
| <b>BPharm</b>      | Black lined with chartreuse and faced with bottle green               | <b>DD</b>                 | Scarlet lined and edged with purple           |
| <b>MSc(Pharm)</b>  | Black lined with bottle green and bound over with chartreuse          | <b>PhD(all Faculties)</b> | Black lined and edged with scarlet            |
| <b>MPharm</b>      | Black lined with chartreuse and bound over the cowl with bottle green |                           |   |
| <b>DSc(Pharm)</b>  | Scarlet lined and edged with chartreuse                               |                           |   |
| <b>BProc</b>       | Black lined with pale orange  |                           |   |
| <b>LLB</b>         | Black lined with old gold   |                           |   |
| <b>LLM</b>         | Black lined and edged with old gold                                   |                           |   |
| <b>LLD</b>         | Scarlet lined and edged with old gold                                 |                           |   |
| <b>BPrimEd</b>     | Black lined with white and bound with light brown                     |                           |   |
| <b>BEd</b>         | Black lined with terra cotta  |                           |   |
| <b>MEd</b>         | Black lined and edged with terra cotta                                |                           |   |
| <b>DLitt</b>       | Scarlet lined and edged with terra cotta                              |                           |   |
| <b>BAcc</b>        | Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with dark red              |                           |   |
| <b>BBusSc</b>      | Black lined with primrose yellow and faced with lapis lazuli          |                           |   |

The hood for the degree of Bachelor with Honours is the hood for the corresponding Bachelor's degree piped down the anterior side with white cord 5mm wide.

The cap for Bachelor and Master is a black mortar-board with a black tassel. All Doctors wear a round black velvet bonnet of the design worn at Cambridge University and trimmed with gold cord and tassels.

### Academic costume to be worn by staff members who hold qualifications from universities which do not prescribe their own academic costume:

1. The gown is of black stuff, and of the same pattern as the Bachelor's, Master's or Doctor's gown of Rhodes University, according to the qualification of the person concerned e.g. a Doctor from such a university wears a Doctor's gown and a licentiate wears a Master's gown. The gown must have a facing, 50mm wide down each side in front, in the colour distinctive of the Faculty of which the person concerned is a member.
2. There is no hood.
3. The cap is a plain black mortar-board, with a black silk tassel.



### Academic costume and the dress worn with it on particular occasions

**Full ceremonial occasions:** Full academic costume as prescribed above. Doctors wear scarlet gowns. Men wear a dark suit, black shoes and socks, a white shirt and a plain black tie. Women wear a long-sleeved white or black dress or a white or black evening dress, black or white shoes, and stockings.

**Academic occasions:** Costume and dress as prescribed for full ceremonial occasions (see above), except that Doctors wear black gowns.

**Other occasions:** Black gowns are worn without hoods or caps.

Messrs T Birch and Co, Ltd, Grahamstown, have been appointed official robe-makers to the University, and have undertaken to keep adequate stocks and sell them at reasonable prices.

### AWARD OF COLOURS

**Academic colours** are awarded in recognition of academic achievement by undergraduate and honours students. Awards are made on three levels: Half colours, Colours and Honours for degrees completed in the normal period. The general criteria are:

#### *Half Colours:*

A first class and an upper second class for major subjects in the final year; or three first class and one upper second class in any year other than the final year; or a first class in at least half the courses taken for a degree with at least a second class in both majors in the final year; or a first class pass in three second-year courses where three courses form the normal second-year load for the degree.

#### *Colours:*

A first class in both major subjects in the final year and a first class in at least half of the courses taken for a degree, or first class honours; or, in the case of a degree without major subjects, if the degree is awarded in the first class or with distinction.

In the Faculties of Pharmacy and Education, slightly different criteria apply for the award of Colours and Half Colours. With regard to Pharmacy, the attention of students is directed to Pharmacy Regulation P.8. In Education:

(i) To qualify for the award of Colours, a Bachelor of Education candidate must achieve first-class passes (75 percent and above) in at least four of the six courses taken for the degree, as well as an aggregate first class over all six courses.

(ii) To qualify for the awards of full Colours and/or

Half Colours, a Bachelor of Primary Education candidate must meet the following requirements:

#### *Half Colours*

(a) In the first year, three first-class passes (75 percent and above), and one upper-second class pass (70-74 percent) in any combination of the subjects set out under Regulation E.44(a)-(c) of the Calendar.

(b) In the second year, three first-class passes (75 percent and above) as follows:

Education 1                      Professional Studies 1

(c) In the third year, a first-class pass in each of the following:

Education 2                      Professional Studies 2

#### *Colours*

In the fourth and final year of the degree, a candidate will be awarded Colours for a first-class pass in each of the following:

Education 3                      Professional Studies 2  
(necessarily achieved in the third year)

at least half the other courses detailed in (ii)(a)-(c) above.

#### *In the Faculty of Law:*

(i) To qualify for an award of half colours a candidate must have passed at least three full courses or the equivalent thereof, in either the Intermediate or Final Year of study and an aggregate of at least 70% in all the courses in the academic year for which the candidate had been registered.

(ii) To qualify for an award of colours a candidate must have been awarded the LLB degree with distinction.

(iii) To qualify for an award of Honours a candidate must have been awarded the degree of LLB with distinction and have obtained an aggregate of at least 75% in all the Intermediate Year and Final Year courses for which the candidate had been registered.

#### *Honours*

For academic achievement which, in the opinion of the Head of Department and Dean of the Faculty, is markedly better than that required for the award of colours. The award is made in the form of a certificate, which entitles the student to buy the relevant blazer badge from an approved stockist.

### FINANCIAL AID

An explanatory booklet on Financial Aid may be obtained on request from the Financial Aid Administrator, provided that the student has been

allocated a Rhodes University student number. The attention of women graduates who wish to undertake postgraduate studies at an overseas university is drawn, in particular, to the prestigious Patrick and Margaret Flanagan Scholarship.

### THE CHAPEL OF ST MARY AND ALL THE ANGELS

The chapel is used by Christian groups and societies, and for official University services. Past and present students of the University and the former Grahamstown Training College, and anyone else closely connected with the University, may apply to the Head of the Department of Religion and Theology for permission to hold a religious service in the chapel. Anyone wishing to visit the chapel may ask the secretary of the Department of Religion and Theology to arrange for it to be opened.

### CONVOCATION

Convocation is a statutory body which meets at least once a year to discuss any matters affecting the University, and to convey its resolutions to the University Council and the Senate. All graduates of Rhodes University, the Vice-Chancellor, the Vice-Principal, Registrar, University Librarian, all permanent full-time members of the teaching staff, and the directors of the research institutes of the University, are members of Convocation. The Registrar is secretary *ex officio*. Old Rhodians who graduated from the University of South Africa while studying at Rhodes University College may apply to the Registrar to join Rhodes University Convocation. All members are entitled to vote for office-bearers. Convocation elects three of its members to the Council.

*President:* Dr TSN Gqubule *Secretary:* Dr S Fourie

### THE OLD RHODIAN UNION

The Old Rhodian Union was founded in 1911 by Professor Cullen Bowles and Sir George Cory to form a link between past and present students and staff of Rhodes University. Today there are over 22 000 members in all parts of southern Africa and abroad. All past students who have attended Rhodes University or Rhodes University College for at least a year, all members of Convocation, past and present Chancellors and Vice-Chancellors, Council members and academic and senior administrative staff are automatically members of the Old Rhodian Union.

There is no subscription for membership.

All Old Rhodians receive the half-yearly Rhodes Newsletter and the annual Rhodes Review, published and distributed by the Marketing and Communications Division on behalf of the Old Rhodian Union. The Old Rhodian Union annual general meeting is held at the University as close as possible to every Founders' Day (12 September), together with the annual meeting of Convocation. Old Rhodian reunions are held annually in all centres where there are branches of the Union. Besides Grahamstown, these include Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth and Pretoria. There are also branches in Bulawayo, Harare, Windhoek, the United Kingdom and Australia.

The Old Rhodian Union administers a bursary fund from which it annually awards at least three bursaries and a number of grants preferably to first-year students.

*President:* Mr M Cooper

*Hon Secretary:* Mrs L Rautenbach

*Hon Treasurer:* Mr JL Nel

### THE SPORTS COUNCIL AND SPORTS FACILITIES

The Rhodes University Sports Council was established in 1905. The Council promotes sport and physical recreation, and provides and maintains sports facilities and equipment on campus. The Head of Sports Administration and staff are responsible for the day-to-day administration of University sport and sports clubs, and for carrying out the policies of the Sports Council.

The use of sports facilities is restricted to all bona fide students of Rhodes University, members of Council and full-time members of staff, who are honorary members of the Sports Council.

Facility tickets may be purchased from the Sports Administration office by the following persons:

- wives/husbands of members of staff and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- Old Rhodians, their wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over;
- students' wives/husbands and their dependants of 16 years and over.

Swimming pool tickets may also be purchased from the Sports Administration by the above persons as well as their children of under 16 years.

Whilst all bonafide students, Council members and permanent staff have free access to facilities, official club practices, matches and competitions take priority in the use of all facilities.

### **Sports facilities**

Heated swimming pool  
2 Rugby fields (Floodlit)  
2 Cricket fields  
1 Netball court (Floodlit)  
1 Outdoor Basketball court  
3 Soccer fields (Floodlit)  
9 Squash courts  
1 Rowing tank  
1 Athletics track (Floodlit)  
10 Tennis courts (Floodlit)  
Rifle range  
Karate dojo  
Weights room  
Aerobics hall  
Climbing wall  
Golf practice area

Basketball, Volleyball & Badminton hall  
Rowing & Sailing clubhouse at Settlers Dam  
2 Hockey fields (Floodlit) - one artificial surface, one grass

### **Sports activities**

Aerobics; Aikido; Athletics; Badminton; Basketball; Chess; Cricket; Fly fishing; Golf; Hockey; Karate; Kung fu; Mountain-climbing; Netball, Rifle; Road running; Rowing; Sailing; Rugby; Soccer; Squash; Surfing; Swimming and Water Polo; Table Tennis; Tennis, Underwater (SCUBA, Spear fishing, Underwater Hockey); Volleyball; Weights.

### **Sports Scholarships**

Merit Sports Scholarships are awarded each year to prospective and current students who have achieved exceptional standards of performance in sport. Holders must meet the normal entrance requirements of the University.

Development Sports Bursaries may be awarded to students who have potential but whose sporting development has been disadvantaged due to social, political or economic factors.

Sports Bursars must meet the normal academic entrance requirements of the University.

## **THE STUDENTS' REPRESENTATIVE COUNCIL**

The Students' Representative Council, elected by the student body, represents the students of Rhodes

University both on campus and externally. The SRC negotiates with the University authorities on behalf of students and administers funds allocated by the Council for student activities.

All student clubs and societies, except sports clubs, are financed by the SRC, which makes grants to student societies, to its various committees, to the publications under its control, and for student social functions.

The SRC assists in the organisation of Orientation Week.

Externally the SRC maintains contact with other educational institutions and arranges seminars and speakers on issues of general interest to students.

In terms of the Student Disciplinary Code, the SRC may take disciplinary action against students who break University rules. All disciplinary action is reported to the Vice-Chancellor, who deals with more serious offences.

## **THE STUDENT SERVICES COUNCIL (SSC)**

In accordance with recent tertiary education legislation, a Student Services Council, which is chaired by the Dean of Students, has been established on the University campus. In compliance with this legislation, the SSC has equal university staff and student representation. Being a subcommittee of Senate, the SSC makes recommendations directly to Senate, and thereby to Council.

The SSC has been given the task of examining every aspect of student life with the goal of integrating every student of the University into campus life as quickly as possible, so that each student may become academically productive in the shortest possible time. This will be achieved by ensuring that students from different backgrounds feel socially and culturally at ease in all aspects of campus life.

Currently, the SSC has established three task groups which broadly cover all areas of student life on campus. They are:

1. Academic task group;
2. Living task group (which will be looking at residences, student health, sport facilities, etc);
3. Finance task group.

Students are encouraged to approach the Dean of Students, or indeed any member of the SSC, with recommendations, complaints, etc about any aspect of student life on the Rhodes campuses.

## RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE FOR 2000

All LLB, BProc, BMus, RULM, BFineArt, DipFineArt and Education diploma courses not shown on the timetable below are arranged departmentally.

In some courses with small numbers of students such as Afrikaans 2 and 3, Afrikaans en Nederlands 2 & 3, Music 1, etc. it is sometimes possible for departments to eliminate timetable clashes by arranging lecture times different to those shown here. No guarantee can be given in advance, however, that such clashes can be eliminated without consulting the heads of the departments concerned.

### KEY

Unbracketed numbers refer to period numbers which are accommodated in the times shown below. Numbers in *curly brackets* { } are period numbers for alternative lectures; what is given in one period

shown in a curly bracket is repeated on the same day in the other period in a curly bracket. Numbers in *square brackets* [ ] are period numbers for alternative tutorials or alternative practicals; e.g. for Psychology 2 two practical sessions are shown; since these are shown in square brackets, only one session need be attended weekly.

The same applies to all practicals shown as [7-9] on one day and [7-9] on one or more other days; only one of these practicals need be attended in a week. Numbers in *round brackets* ( ) are period numbers for compulsory practicals and tutorials. All such tutorials and practicals must be attended. In all cases where practicals/tutorials are not shown on the timetable, it should be taken for granted that these are arranged departmentally at the beginning of each year.

The numbers in and out of brackets refer to periods which are at the following times:

**Period 1:** 07:45 to 08:30

**Period 3:** 09:35 to 10:20

**Period 5:** 11:25 to 12:10

**Period 7:** 14:15 to 15:00

**Period 9:** 16:05 to 16:50

**Period 2:** 08:40 to 09:25

**Period 4:** 10:30 to 11:15

**Period 6:** 12:20 to 13:05

**Period 8:** 15:10 to 15:55

**Period 10:** 17:00 to 17:45

Your attention is also drawn to the notes at the end of the timetable.

| Course         | Monday | Tuesday     | Wednesday   | Thursday | Friday |
|----------------|--------|-------------|-------------|----------|--------|
| *Accounting 1  | {1}{2} | {1}{3}[8-9] | [2]{4}[8-9] | [7-8]    | [7-8]  |
| *Accounting 2  | 5      | 6[7-8]      | 4[7-8]      | 6[7-8]   | -      |
| *Accounting 3  | [8-9]  | 7           | 5[8-9]      | 3[7-8]   | 5      |
| ++Accounting 4 | 2,3    | 2,3         | 3,4         | 4,5      | -      |
| *Af History 3  | 3      | -           | 7           | 3        | -      |
| Afr Ndl 2      | 5      | -           | 4           | 7        | 1      |
| Afr Ndl 3      | -      | 7,8         | 5           | 5,6      | 7      |
| *Afrikaans 1   | 3      | 1           | 8           | -        | 3      |
| *Afrikaans 1P  | 3      | 1           | 8           | -        | 3      |
| Afrikaans 2    | 5      | -           | 4           | 7        | 1      |
| Afrikaans 3    | -      | 7,8         | 5           | 5,6      | 7      |
| Anat & Physio  | 5      | 6           | 5           | -        | 6      |
| Anthrol        | 3      | 1           | 8           | -        | 3      |
| Anthro2        | 5      | -           | 4           | 7        | 1      |
| Anthro3        | -      | 7,8         | -           | 5,6      | 7,8    |
| \$ Appl.P&A 2  | 5      | 6           | 5           | 6        | (7-9)  |
| Appl. Maths 2  | 2(7-9) | 4           | 3           | 1        | 2      |

## RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE FOR 1999

| Course                     | Monday               | Tuesday              | Wednesday            | Thursday             | Friday               |
|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Appl. Maths 3              | 3                    | 1                    | 2[7-9]               | 4                    | 3[5-6]               |
| Auditing 1                 | 4                    | 2                    | 1,4                  | -                    | 1                    |
| ++Auditing 2               | -                    | 5,6                  | 2                    | -                    | 3,4                  |
| Basic Art                  | -                    | 5,6                  | -                    | -                    | 4,5                  |
| Bib Studs 300              | -                    | 4,5                  | 4,5                  | 5,6                  | -                    |
| Biochem 2                  | 2(7-9)               | 4                    | 3                    | 1                    | 2                    |
| Biochem 3                  | 3                    | 1                    | 2(5-9)               | 4                    | 3                    |
| #Biology 101 (semester 1)  | 1                    | 3                    | 4                    | 2                    | 1                    |
| #Biology 102 (semester 2)  | 2                    | 4                    | 3                    | 1                    | 2                    |
| #Botany 1                  | 1                    | 3                    | 4                    | 2                    | 1                    |
| Botany 2                   | 5                    | 6                    | 6                    | 5,6(7-9)             | -                    |
| Botany 3                   | 6                    | 5                    | 5                    | -                    | 5,6(7-9)             |
| Chemistry 1                | 5                    | 6[7-9]               | 5[7-9]               | 6[7-9]               | 6                    |
| Chemistry 2                | 4                    | 2                    | 1                    | 3                    | 4(5-9)               |
| Chemistry 3                | 2                    | 4(5-9)               | 3                    | 1                    | 2                    |
| Class. Civ.1               | -                    | 8                    | 7                    | 5                    | 6                    |
| Comm. Law 1                | 7                    | 10                   | -                    | 7                    | 6                    |
| Comm. Law 2                | 3                    | 5                    | 7                    | 5                    | -                    |
| Comp. Sci.101 (semester 1) | {3}{4}<br>[7-8][8-9] | {1}{2}<br>[7-8][8-9] | {2}{1}<br>[7-8][8-9] | {4}{3}<br>[7-8][8-9] | {3}{4}<br>[7-8][8-9] |
| Comp. Sci.101 (semester 2) | 3                    | 1<br>[5-6]           | 2                    | 4<br>[5-6][7-9]      | 3<br>[7-9]           |
| Comp. Sci.102 (semester 2) | 4[7-9]               | 2[7-9]               | 1[7-9]               | 3[7-9]               | 4                    |
| Comp. Sci..1B              | 4                    | 2                    | 1                    | 3(8-9)               | 4                    |
| Comp. Sci..2               | 3[7-9]               | 1[7-9]               | 2[7-9]               | 4                    | 3                    |
| Comp. Sci. 3               | 1                    | 3                    | 4                    | 2[7-9]               | 1[7-9]               |
| Custom Law                 | -                    | 3                    | -                    | 8                    | 1,2                  |
| **Drama 1                  | -                    | 7                    | -                    | 3                    | 5                    |
| **Drama 2                  | 6                    | 5                    | 2                    | -                    | 7                    |
| **Drama 3                  | 9                    | -                    | 6                    | 4                    | 4                    |
| Economics 1                | -                    | {6}{4}               | {5}{7}               | {6}{4}               | {5}{6}               |
| Economics 2                | {1}{6}               | {1}{3}               | {2}{6}               | {2}{3}               | -                    |
| Economics 3                | 4,7                  | 2                    | 1,8                  | {10}                 | {4}                  |
| Econ. 3 & 3B               | 5                    | 5                    | 9                    | -                    | -                    |

## RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE FOR 1999

| Course   | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday     |
|--|--------|---------|-----------|----------|------------|
| Em. Med. Asst.                                 | -      | -       | -         | -        | 3-9        |
| English 1                                      | 5      | -       | 4         | 7        | -          |
| English 1 (Alt)                                | 5      | {5,6}   | {3,4}     | 7        | -          |
| English 2                                      | 4      | 2       | 9         | -        | 4          |
| English 2 (Alt)                                | 4      | -       | -         | 6        | -          |
| English 3                                      | 3,8    | 1       | 2,7       | 3        | -          |
| Eng. in Africa                                 | 2      | 4       | -         | 4,8      | -          |
| *ELanAP (Gp1)                                  | 7,8    | -       | 2,3       | 6        | {1,2}{7,8} |
| *ELanAP (Gp2)                                  | 7,8    | -       | 2,3       | 7        | {1,2}{7,8} |
| *ELanAP (Gp3)                                  | 7,8    | 3       | 4         | 2        | {1,2}{7,8} |
| *ELanAP (Gp4)                                  | 7,8    | -       | 3,4       | 7        | {1,2}{7,8} |
| Eng.L&Ling. 1                                  | 7      | {2}{5}+ | 7         | {2}{5}+  | -          |
| Eng.L&Ling. 1A                                 | -      | {2}{5}+ | 7         | {2}{5}+  | -          |
| Eng.L&Ling. 1B                                 | 7      | {2}{5}+ | -         | {2}{5}+  | -          |
| Eng.L&Ling. 2                                  | 3      | 1       | {8}{9}    | -        | {3}{5}     |
| Eng.L&Ling. 3                                  | 1      | 3       | 4         | 2,7      | 1          |
| Fine Art 2                                     | -      | 7,8,9   | -         | 7,8,9    | -          |
| Fine Art 3                                     | 7,8,9  | -       | -         | -        | 8,9,10     |
| French 1                                       | 1      | 3       | 6         | 2        | -          |
| ++French<br>(Prac & Comm)<br>(semester 2 only) | 2      | 4       | -         | 4        | 3          |
| French Prelim.                                 | 1      | 3       | 6         | 2        | -          |
| Gen. Hist. Art                                 | -      | 10      | -         | 10       | -          |
| Geography 1                                    | 4{7-9} | 2       | 1         | -        | 4{7-9}     |
| Geography 2                                    | 3      | 1{7-9}  | 2         | 4        | 3          |
| Geography 3                                    | 1      | 3       | 4         | 2{7-9}   | 1          |
| Geology 1                                      | 6      | 5       | 6         | 5{7-9}   | 5          |
| Geology 2                                      | 2{7-9} | 4       | 3{4-6}    | 1        | 2          |
| Geology 3                                      | 3{4-6} | 1       | 2{7-9}    | 4        | 3          |
| ++German 1                                     | {2}{6} | {4}{6}  | {3}{5}    | -        | {2}{3}     |
| ++German 2                                     | 7      | -       | 3         | 1        | 2          |
| ++German 3                                     | 5,6    | 5,6     | -         | -        | 5,6        |
| Hellen.Greek                                   | 4      | -       | 4         | 2        | 5          |
| History 1                                      | -      | 6       | 5         | 6        | 8          |
| History 2                                      | 1      | 3       | 6         | 2        | -          |
| History 3                                      | 4,7    | 2       | 1,8       | -        | 3          |

## RHODES UNIVERSITY LECTURE TIMETABLE FOR 1999

| Course                     | Monday     | Tuesday   | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday    |
|----------------------------|------------|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Hist.&Apprec.<br>of Music  | 10         | -         | 10        | -        | -         |
| ++HistChrist 300           | -          | 7,8       | 7,8       | 8        | -         |
| HKE 1                      | 1          | 3         | 6         | 2{8,9}   | -         |
| \$HKE 2                    | 6          | 5         | 6         | -        | 6{7-9}    |
| HKE 3                      | 9          | {7-9}     | 5,6       | 4,5,6    | -         |
| Ichthyology 2              | 5          | 6         | 6         | 5,6{7-9} | -         |
| Ichthyology 3              | 6          | 5         | 5         | -        | 5,6{7-9}  |
| Ind.Psycho 2               | 9          | -         | 1         | 3{7-9}   | 5{7-9}    |
| Ind.Psycho 3               | 2          | 4{7-9}    | 3{7-9}    | 1        | 2         |
| * Ind.Sociol. 2            | 2          | 4         | -         | 4        | 9         |
| Ind.Sociol. 3              | 3,8        | 1         | 2,7       | 3        | -         |
| Inf.Systems 2              | 2          | 4         | 3         | 1        | 2         |
| Inf..Systems 3             | 3          | 1         | 2,3       | 4        | 3         |
| Intro. to Philos.          | 4          | 2         | 9         | -        | 4         |
| *Journalism 1              | 2          | 4         | -         | 4        | 1         |
| *Journalism 2              | 7          | -         | 3         | 1        | 2         |
| *Journalism 3              | 5,6        | 5,6       | -         | -        | 5,6       |
| Latin 1B                   | 1          | 3         | 6         | 2        | {9}       |
| Legal Theory 1             | 8          | 7         | -         | 3        | 5         |
| Legal Theory 2             | -          | 9         | 2,8       | -        | 7         |
| Legal Theory 3             | 5,6        | 5,6       | 9         | -        | 6         |
| Logic<br>(semester 1 only) | -          | 6         | 5         | 6        | 6         |
| Management 1               | {7}{8}{9}  | -         | {3}{6}    | {1}{6}   | {1}{3}{7} |
| ## Managemt 2              | 4          | 2{7,8}    | -         | 9        | 4         |
| Management 3               | 1{2}{3}{5} | 3         | 4         | 7,8      | 1         |
| Man.Acc&Fin 1              | 5{7-8}     | 6{8-9}    | {7-8}     | 1        | 4         |
| ++Mn.Ac&Fin 2              | 4          | 4         | 5,6       | 6        | -         |
| Maths.Stats. 2             | -          | 5,6{7-9}+ | 1         | 3        | 5{7-9}+   |
| Maths.Stats. 3             | 2          | 4{7-9}+   | 3         | 1        | 2{7-9}+   |
| Maths. 101<br>(semester 1) | 3          | 1{7-8}    | 2         | 4{7-8}   | 3{7-8}    |
| Maths. 101<br>(semester 2) | 6          | 5{7-8}    | 6         | 5{7-8}   | 5{7-8}    |
| Maths. 102<br>(semester 1) | 6          | 5{7-8}    | 6         | 5{7-8}   | 5{7-8}    |



| Course                      | Monday   | Tuesday | Wednesday | Thursday | Friday |
|-----------------------------|----------|---------|-----------|----------|--------|
| Maths. 102<br>(semester 2)  | 3        | 1[7-8]  | 2         | 4[7-8]   | 3[7-8] |
| #Maths. 1E(1)               | 3        | 1       | 2         | 4(7-9)   | 3      |
| #Maths. 1E(2)               | 6        | 5[7-8]  | 6         | 5[7-8]   | 5[7-8] |
| Maths. 2                    | 5,6[7-9] | -       | 5         | 5,6      | [5,6]  |
| Maths. 3                    | -        | 5,6     | 5,6(7-9)  | -        | 5,6    |
| Micro. 2                    | 3        | 1(7-9)  | 2         | 4        | 3      |
| Micro. 3                    | 1        | 3       | 4         | 2(5-9)   | 1      |
| ++ Mod Fiction              | 6        | 5       | -         | 9        | 6      |
| Music, Prac.<br>Studies     | -        | -       | -         | -        | 7      |
| Past.Theol 300              | 3,4(7-9) | 1,2     | -         | 3,4      | -      |
| Pharmaceut. 2               | 4        | -       | 1         | 5        | 4      |
| Pharmaceut. 3               | 2        | 4       | 3         | 1        | 2      |
| Pharmaceut. 4               | 1        | -       | 4         | 2        | -      |
| Pharm. A&P 2                | 1        | -       | 4         | 2        | -      |
| Pharm. A&P 3                | 3        | 3       | -         | 4        | 3      |
| Pharm. A&P 4                | 2        | 4       | 3         | 1        | 2      |
| Pharm. Bioch.               | -        | 3       | -         | 3        | 1      |
| Pharm. Chem. 2              | 2        | 4       | 3         | 1        | 2      |
| Pharm. Chem. 3              | 1        | -       | 4         | 2        | 5      |
| Pharm. Chem. 4              | 4        | -       | -         | -        | 4      |
| Pharmacol. 3                | 4        | 5       | 1         | 3        | 1,4    |
| Pharmacol. 4                | 3        | 1       | 2,5       | 4        | 3      |
| Pharm. Elect.               | 5        | 3,5     | 1,6       | 3,5      | 1,5    |
| Pharm.Seminar               | -        | 2       | -         | -        | -      |
| Philos. 2                   | 5        | -       | 4         | 7        | 1      |
| Philos. 3                   | -        | 7,8     | -         | 5,6      | 7,8    |
| Physics 1E1<br>(semester 1) | 3[7-9]   | 1       | 2[7-9]    | 4        | 3[7-9] |
| Physics 1E2<br>(semester 2) | 3[7-9]   | 1       | 2[7-9]    | 4        | 3[7-9] |
| Physics 1                   | 2        | 4       | 3         | 1[7-9]   | 2[7-9] |
| Physics 2                   | 1(6)     | 3       | 4(7-9)    | 2(7-9)   | 1      |
| Physics 3                   | 4(7-9)   | 2       | 1         | 3(5)     | 4(7-9) |
| Physiology                  | 2        | -       | 3         | 4        | 1      |
| Politics 1                  | 6        | 5       | 2         | 8        | -      |

| Course  | Monday | Tuesday | Wednesday    | Thursday | Friday       |
|---|--------|---------|--------------|----------|--------------|
| Politics 2  | 8      | -       | 7            | 5        | 6            |
| Politics 3  | -      | -       | 5,6          | 4,8,9    | 4            |
| ++Pract. and<br>Comm. French<br>(semester 2 only) | 2      | 4       | -            | 4        | 3            |
| Professional<br>Communic.<br>(semester 1)         | 6      | -       | [2][3][4][5] | -        | [2][3][4][5] |
| Psychology 1                                      | {1}[4] | {3}[2]  | {10}[9]      | -        | {6}[4]       |
| Psychology 2                                      | 9      | -       | 1            | 3[7-9]   | 5[7-9]       |
| Psychology 3                                      | 2      | 4[7-9]  | 3[7-9]       | 1        | 2            |
| Social Work 1                                     | 9      | (7-9)   | 4            | 5        | 6            |
| Sociology 1                                       | {5}[7] | -       | {4}[3]       | {1}[2]   | {3}[1]       |
| * Sociology 2                                     | -      | 6       | 5            | 6        | 8            |
| Sociology 3                                       | 9      | 9       | 6            | 8,9      | 4            |
| #Statistics                                       | 1      | 3       | 4            | 2        | -            |
| Stats1D(STA130)<br>(semester 2)                   | {5}[6] | {5}[6]  | {5}[6]       | {5}[6]   | [4-5][8-9]   |
| #Stat1F (STA110)<br>(semester 1)                  | 6      | 5       | -            | 5        | 5            |
| Syst. Theol 300<br>(semester 1)                   | 5,6    | 9       | -            | -        | 1,3,4        |
| Syst. Theol 300<br>(semester 2)                   | -      | 6       | 2,6          | 2        | 3,4          |
| Taxation 1  | -      | 1       | 2            | 6        | -            |
| ++Taxation 2                                      | 5,6    | -       | -            | 2,3      | 2            |
| *Theory Art 1                                     | 9      | 9       | 9            | 9        | -            |
| Theory Art 2                                      | -      | 5,6     | -            | 5,6      | -            |
| Theory Art 3                                      | 2      | 2       | -            | 2        | 2            |
| Theory Art 4                                      | -      | -       | 5            | -        | 5            |
| Theory Finance                                    | 6      | 5       | {5}[6]       | 5        | [4-5][8-9]   |
| Visual Comm.                                      | -      | 7       | 4            | 7        | 1            |
| *Xhosa 1(NMT)                                     | {3}[4] | {1}[2]  | {8}[9]       | -        | {3}[4]       |
| Xhosa 2   | 1      | 3       | 6            | 2        | -            |
| #Zoology 1  | 2      | 4       | 3            | 1        | 2            |
| Zoology 2   | 1      | 3       | 4(7-9)       | 2        | 1            |
| Zoology 3   | 4(7-9) | 2       | 1            | 3        | 4            |

+ Alternative times are arranged by the Department.

++ For guidance only and subject to change.

# Practicals/tutorials for these first-year courses in the Faculty of Science are arranged departmentally. Students will be required to attend at least one 3-hour practical per week in these first-year courses.

## For one term of the second semester, two of these periods will be rescheduled at periods 8 and 9 on Fridays.

\$ Periods (7,8,9) on Friday scheduled for Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 2 and Applied Anatomy and Physiology 2 is a laboratory period common to both courses and does not represent a timetable clash. The lecture periods shown for Human Kinetics & Ergonomics 2 and Applied Anatomy & Physiology 2 are for guidance only, and subject to change.

\* Classes or additional class meetings for the following subjects are arranged by the Departments concerned:

Accounting 1, 2 and 3 (alternative tutorial times are available)

Afrikaans 1, Afrikaans 1P, (one additional period each per week)

African History 3 (three additional periods coinciding with History 3)

Applied Statistics 3

Classical Civilization 2

Commercial Law 3

English Language for Academic Purposes (one additional period per week)

Est.&Int.Tax (three additional lectures coinciding with times for Accounting 3)

French 2 and 3

Greek 1, 2 and 3

Hebrew 1,2 and 3

History and Appreciation of Music

Industrial Sociology 2 (one double period for research practicals)

Journalism & Media Studies (two practicals)

Latin 1A, 2 and 3

Mathematics Statistics 2 and 3 (alternative practical times)

Music 1,2 and 3

Musical Education 1 and 2

Sociology 2 (one double period for research practicals)

Sotho 1 *not offered at present*

Theory of Art 1 (one additional period per week)

Translation 1 and 2

Xhosa 1 (MT) (one additional period per week)

Xhosa 1 (NMT) (one additional period per week)

Xhosa 3

\*\* Practicals and Tutorials will be arranged by the Department concerned.

# FEES AND CHARGES

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Liability for fees

Liability for all fees begins as soon as completed application forms are submitted to the University and the student is accepted. The signing of the application form establishes the legal liability of the student and his/her parent or guardian for the payment of all fees as determined by the Council. This can vary according to the student's circumstances. These fees are published in the annual Rhodes University Calendar. They are also published as a loose-leaf fees schedule available from the University's Student Bureau. In any discussions or negotiations about fees, it will be assumed that a student and his/her parent or guardian have made themselves aware of the provisions of this section and of the equivalent fees schedule. Ignorance of the fees payable does not provide grounds for avoiding liability for any fees due and payable.

### Alteration of fees

The University Council reserves the right to alter all fees payable to the University, or to impose a fees surcharge if circumstances require it. In the case of an alteration of fees or the imposition of a fees surcharge, notice will be sent to all registered students. Non-receipt of such a notice does not provide grounds for avoiding liability for the contents of the notice.

### Arrears

Any student whose fees are not paid by the due dates or who has outstanding fines and/or other accounts due may be excluded from attendance at classes or from residence unless satisfactory arrangements have been made with the Registrar (Finance) for the payment of his/her account. Furthermore, he or she will not be accepted as a candidate for University examinations. A statement signed by the Registrar (Finance) is full, final and conclusive evidence of fees payable and the state of a student's account. The University will not issue certificates of any description to candidates who are in arrears with the payment of any fees, outstanding fines, or any other accounts.

### Fee remissions, concessions and special arrangements (full-time students only).

Where a parent has more than one child attending the

University at the same time, as full-time students, an application may be made to the Registrar (Finance) in the year in which it applies for a **remission of 30%** of the normal tuition fees for each child after the first. The Council may also make any concession or special arrangement regarding the amount of fees paid by a student, or the payment of fees, at its discretion.

### East London Students

East London students should refer to the paragraphs below or to the fees schedule which affects them.

### Merit Award Scheme

Special merit awards are automatically made by the University to eligible students enrolling for the first time for an undergraduate degree. The awards, **ranging from R4 500 to R10 000**, are based on the matriculation examination results.

In order to qualify for one of these awards you would have to obtain an A or a good B aggregate (i.e. at least 40 Swedish points) in your matriculation examination. Merit Awards may be held in addition to other awards provided the total value of bursaries and scholarships held **does not exceed R32 500**.

### Holders of scholarships, bursaries or loans

Fees due to the University are a first charge on any scholarship, bursary or loan granted by the University, or paid to the University from other sources, for a student. If the total amount awarded or paid exceeds the fees payable, the student may draw the balance, on application to the Dean of Students.

Please note that it is the responsibility of the student to ensure that bursary donors make payments timeously and in accordance with the University regulations. Students who hold full bursaries are reminded that they will require funds on arrival at the University for the purchase of books etc, as it is not University policy to make loans or advances against bursaries prior to the funds being received.

### Caution

Please ensure that payments made to the University are paid only by direct deposits to the University bank account, or cheques, bank drafts or money orders made payable to "Rhodes University" marked "Not transferable". No responsibility is accepted for bank notes or other forms of remittance missing from letters



addressed to the University or to members of the University using its address. Payments made by way of drafts drawn on foreign banks will attract a clearance charge of R45.

### NEW STUDENTS

#### Application Fee

A new student is defined as a student not previously registered at the University, or, a student not registered for the year preceding the current year of registration. The closing date for applications from new students for admission to the University is 30 September.

Initial applications for admission to the University must be accompanied by a **non-refundable application fee of R50.**

#### Late applications will be considered.

Applications submitted after September 30 must be accompanied by a non-refundable application fee of **R100.**

#### Academic Deposit

**R200**

This deposit is payable on acceptance of an academic place at the University.

*This deposit must be paid by a date specified in the letter of acceptance. The deposit is non-refundable and will be forfeited should the student choose not to register at the University.*

#### Residence Deposit - New Students

On acceptance of a place at the University, a **R265** residence deposit must be paid before you can be allocated to residence.

The deposit is non-refundable and will be forfeited to the University should the student fail to register and move into residence for at least one term.

### RETURNING STUDENTS

No deposits are required for booking of residence accommodation. However, if you cancel your application for accommodation between 30 September and 31 January you will be levied with a cancellation fee of R265-00. If you cancel your residence accommodation after 31 January you will be levied with a cancellation fee of R1 000.

Only students who are excluded or are not accepted for postgraduate studies will not be levied with a cancellation fee.

If you fail to move into residence by 15 February, without informing the Student Bureau in writing of

your intention to do so, your place will be cancelled and the cancellation fee of R1 000 will be levied.

### PAYMENT OF FEES

#### New and returning students

Tuition and residence fees for new and returning students are due and payable prior to registration but as a concession may be paid by either:

1. paying the Minimum Initial Payment for tuition fees and where applicable residence fees, by 31 January as set out below, the balance of fees to be paid by 31 May; or
2. making a single cash or cheque payment of the full tuition fee and if applicable the full residence fee prior to registration. A 5% discount may be claimed in this instance; or
3. arranging payment by debit order with 10 monthly instalments from January to October. The debit order form, obtainable from the Student Bureau, must be signed by the person whose bank account is to be debited and returned to the Registrar (Finance) by 15 January. In the event of any instalment being dishonoured, the debit order facility may be cancelled by the University, in which event the conditions contained in paragraph 1. above will apply, and fees must be paid in full by 31 May.

The University may, at the discretion of the Registrar (Finance), decline to make this facility available to any student. **This option is not available to foreign students.**

4. Recipients of Rhodes University financial packages are required to pay the Minimum Initial Payment stipulated in their agreement, prior to registration. This will normally be 50% of the amount due as the student's own contribution towards the fees.

5. Master/Visa credit card facilities are available for all payments. No discounts may be claimed if this method of payment is used.

#### Penalty charge

Dishonoured cheques and/or debit orders will attract a fee of R25 per transaction.

#### Foreign students

Students from countries whose borders are not contiguous with South Africa are required to pay their tuition and residence fees for the year in full prior to registration. Where such fees are to be paid with bursary funds these must be received by the University prior to registration. Registration may be refused to

## FEES AND CHARGES

any foreign student whose tuition and residence fees have not been paid in full by the date of registration.

### **Fee surcharge for international undergraduate students**

Foreign students who enter Rhodes University for the first time will be required to pay an annual surcharge. The surcharge will be R300.

### **MINIMUM INITIAL PAYMENTS**

#### **Full-time Bachelor, Honours and Diploma Students**

Minimum initial payment of tuition and residence fees which must be paid before a student will be allowed to enter residence or to register for any degree, diploma or certificate are:

|                                   |                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| Tuition fees                      | <b>R 5 800</b> |
| Residence fees - where applicable | <b>R 6 500</b> |
| Total by January 31               | <b>R12 300</b> |
| Balance of fees due by May 31     |                |

**Holders of recognised bursaries or scholarships (other than those granted by Rhodes University)** which are payable directly to the University and which are valued at R12 000 or more, and who produce written proof that they hold such bursaries or scholarships may reduce the MIP to:

|                                   |               |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| Tuition fees                      | <b>R2 900</b> |
| Residence fees - where applicable | <b>R3 300</b> |
| Total by January 31               | <b>R6 200</b> |
| Balance of fees due by May 31     |               |

**Rhodes University scholarships and merit awards** may be offset against your liability for minimum initial payments required prior to registration.

#### **Part-time students, Master's and PhD Students**

Minimum initial payment of **50% of tuition fee** plus residence fees where applicable.  
Balance of fees due by May 31.

### **EAST LONDON CAMPUS STUDENTS**

*Please see the information above under the heading **Minimum Initial Payment**.*

With the exception of students enrolled for the Diploma in Management who are required to pay the full fee of **R14 110** prior to registration, the Minimum Initial Payment for all other East London Campus students is 50% of the amount due to be paid by the student. This amount may be calculated

by subtracting the amount of any Rhodes University loans and bursaries awarded and TEFSA loans awarded from the total annual tuition fees due by the student.

Balance of fees due by May 31.

#### **Late registration and late admission to residence**

Tuition and residence fees are required to be fully paid in advance prior to a student being allowed to register or be admitted to residence after May 31.

### **PLEASE NOTE**

It is the responsibility of students negotiating loans with financial or other institutions to ensure that all payments are made to the University by the dates specified above.

The minimum initial payment may **NOT** be reduced by virtue of a student having negotiated a loan with a financial or other institution.

Monies once paid into a student account will not be refunded unless all fees have been paid and a credit balance is reflected on the account irrespective of any bursaries held or meal refunds due to the student.

### **ALL STUDENTS: Penalties for non-compliance**

Students whose fees are outstanding may be excluded from attendance at classes and/or residence and they will not be accepted as candidates for University examinations.

The University will not issue certificates of any description to students whose fees are in arrears.

The above regulations regarding payment apply to tuition and residence fees. All other charges are due immediately.

Unpaid accounts are subject to an interest charge at the rate of 2% per month on amounts outstanding as from June 1.

### **TUITION FEES**

#### **Block fees**

The regulations of the various faculties prescribe the number of courses full-time students are normally expected to take in each year of their curriculum.

Unless otherwise stated, the annual block fees include tuition fees for classes and laboratories, fees for ordinary University examinations and library fees for the normal number of courses.

Full-time students taking fewer than the normal number of courses in any given year, will still be liable for the full block fee.

## FEES AND CHARGES

### Additional courses

Subject to the regulations of the various Faculties, **undergraduate** students may take in any year one course more than the normal number prescribed for that year of their curriculum without extra charge.

**Full-time postgraduate** students may take in any year one undergraduate course free of charge, provided that they have obtained the prior approval of their head of department and of the Dean of the Faculty, and provided also that a postgraduate student in Law may take first year courses in Latin, Afrikaans and English in any year without extra charge.

### Single course fees

Single course fees may be paid only by part-time students who are registered for an undergraduate degree or diploma or certificate.

### Payments made to students

A student who is to be paid for employment at Rhodes, or to whom an advance is made, or to whom residual funds are to be disbursed, is required to furnish the University with details of a valid Bank

account to which any monies owing would be paid through electronic funds transfer to their account.

### STUDENTS LEAVING UNIVERSITY DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

#### Notice of withdrawal

All students, both postgraduate and undergraduate, or their parents or guardians must give notice of intention to discontinue attendance, in writing, to the Registrar. A separate letter requesting a refund of any monies due must be sent to the Registrar (Finance).

Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves during the year is liable for fees according to the following scales:

#### Tuition fees

##### if student leaves

#### Percentage fees payable

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Before March 1   | 25%  |
| March 1 to the beginning of the third term                                   | 50%  |
| After the beginning of the third term  | 100% |
| Registration and amenities fees  | 100% |
| Oppidan fee  | 100% |
| Masters' and PhD degree candidates who cancel their provisional registration | 100% |

| GENERAL FEES   |                    |                 |
|--|--------------------|-----------------|
| <b>New students</b>  |                    |                 |
| Application fee:   | up to September 30 | 50              |
|  | after September 30 | 100             |
| Academic deposit   |                    | 200             |
| Residence deposit  |                    | 265             |
| Minimum Initial Payment  |                    | see prior pages |
| <b>Returning students</b>                                      |                    |                 |
| Minimum Initial Payment  |                    | see prior pages |
| <b>Registration Fees</b>                                       |                    |                 |
| Master's Internship research: Psychology                       |                    | 810             |
| PhD retrospective registration (per year)                      |                    | 3 850           |
| <b>Late registration: not in attendance on prescribed date</b> |                    |                 |
| With the Registrar's written permission                        |                    | 240             |
| Without the Registrar's written permission                     |                    | 1 000           |
| <b>Examination fees</b>  |                    |                 |
| Special case examinations (per course)                         |                    | 300             |
| Supplementary examinations                                     |                    |                 |
| Per course   |                    | 300             |

## FEES AND CHARGES

|   |                       |        |
|---|-----------------------|--------|
| Per half course                                 |                       | 180    |
| Per subsidiary course (HDE)                     |                       | 75     |
| Extended DP examinations                        |                       | 300    |
| Extended DP examinations, per half course       |                       | 180    |
| Exams written away from University (per course) | (see note 7)          | 920    |
| <b>Aegrotat examinations</b>                    |                       |        |
| Per course                                      |                       | 160    |
| Per half course                                 |                       | 160    |
| Honours   |                       | 520    |
| Re-examination per script                       | (see note 4)          | 445    |
| Re-count per script                             |                       | 155    |
| <b>BLOCK FEES FOR TUITION PER ANNUM</b>         |                       |        |
| <b>FULL-TIME BACHELORS' DEGREES</b>             |                       |        |
| BA  | (see also other fees) | 11 000 |
| BA Foundation Course                            |                       | 7 880  |
| BA (HKE) Third year                             |                       | 11 470 |
| <b>BAcc</b>                                     |                       |        |
| First three years                               | per year              | 12 050 |
| Fourth year                                     |                       | 12 110 |
| <b>BBusSc</b>                                   |                       |        |
| First three years                               | per year              | 12 050 |
| Fourth year                                     |                       | 9 590  |
| BCom  |                       | 12 050 |
| BCom Foundation Course: first two years         | per year              | 8 580  |
| BD  |                       | 8 460  |
| BEcon   |                       | 12 050 |
| BEd   |                       | 7 910  |
| BFineArt  | (see also other fees) | 11 000 |
| <b>BJourn</b>                                   |                       |        |
| First year                                      |                       | 11 000 |
| Second year                                     |                       | 12 550 |
| Third year                                      |                       | 13 050 |
| Fourth year                                     |                       | 13 250 |
| <b>BMus</b>                                     |                       |        |
|   | (see also other fees) |        |
| First and second year of study                  | per year              | 11 640 |
| Third year (provided half-course prac complete) |                       | 11 640 |
| Fourth year (provided the practical complete)   |                       | 10 460 |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|  |             |        |
|--|-------------|--------|
| BPharm                                     |             |        |
| First year                                 |             | 11 640 |
| Second year (inclusive of hand outs)       |             | 12 520 |
| Third year (inclusive of hand outs)        |             | 13 110 |
| Fourth year (inclusive of hand outs)       |             | 13 880 |
| BSc  |             | 11 470 |
| BSc Foundation Course: first two years     | per year    | 8 260  |
| BSc (Inf Sys)                              |             | 12 050 |
| BSocSc                                     |             | 11 000 |
| BSocSc (SocWork)                           |             |        |
| First year                                 |             | 11 000 |
| L.L.B                                      |             | 11 000 |
| BTh (three-year degree)                    | per year    | 11 000 |
| BTh (four-year degree)                     |             |        |
| First, second and third years              | per year    | 11 000 |
| Final year                                 |             | 8 460  |
| BTh Hons preliminary 1                     |             | 4 830  |
| BTh Hons preliminary 2                     |             | 4 830  |
| <b>FULL-TIME DIPLOMAS AND CERTIFICATES</b> |             |        |
| PG Dip in International Studies            |             | 8 460  |
| PD Dip in Enterprise Management            |             | 8 460  |
| DipAcc(PG) (Preliminary)                   |             |        |
| 1 or 2 courses                             |             | 11 640 |
| DipAcc(PG) (Preliminary) 3 or more courses |             | 11 640 |
| DipAcc(PG)                                 |             | 12 110 |
| Advanced Dip Soc Work                      |             | 8 460  |
| PG Dip English Language Teaching           |             | 8 460  |
| Dip Fine Art                               |             | 11 000 |
| Dip Fisheries Sc                           |             | 11 640 |
| Univ Dip Leather Sc:                       | First year  | 10 500 |
|  | Second year | 11 500 |
| Dip Theol                                  |             | 10 820 |
| Dip Pastoral Theol                         |             | 8 460  |
| FDE (Mathematics)                          |             | 6 000  |
| FDE (Technology)                           |             | 6 000  |
| FDE (Science)                              |             | 6 000  |
| HDG (PG)(SEC)                              |             | 8 460  |
| HDN (SEC)                                  |             |        |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|   |                       |                        |
|---|-----------------------|------------------------|
| First, second and third years   | per year              | 11 000                 |
| Final year  |                       | 8 460                  |
| HDipJourn (PG)  |                       | 13 050                 |
| Instrumental Teachers & Performers (RULM)   | (see also other fees) |                        |
| First & Second years  |                       | 11 640                 |
| RULM Third year (provided prac completed)   |                       | 11 640                 |
| RULS/PP   |                       | 8 460                  |
| School Music (RULM)   |                       | 12 700                 |
| UDS   |                       | 8 460                  |
| UDPS  |                       | 8 460                  |
| UDPP  |                       | 8 460                  |
| <b>PART-TIME DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS</b>   |                       |                        |
| BD  |                       |                        |
| First, second, third & fourth years of study  | per year              | 4 120                  |
| Additional years  |                       | 1 530                  |
| BEd: first & second years of study  | per year              | 3 960                  |
| Additional years of study   |                       | 1 530                  |
| BTh (Pastoral Theology 3)   |                       | 4 120                  |
| PG Dip English Lang Teaching  |                       | 5 060                  |
| FDE (Mathematics)   |                       | 3 000                  |
| FDE (Technology)  |                       | 3 000                  |
| FDE (Science)   |                       | 3 000                  |
| <b>SINGLE COURSE FEES</b>   |                       |                        |
| Science (incl. Geography & Psychology)  |                       | 4 240                  |
| Final course in major or principal subjects   |                       | 5 410                  |
| Other (including Mathematics)   |                       | 4 000                  |
| Half courses  |                       | 60% of full course fee |
| (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course: not 2 X 60%)                                     |                       |                        |
| <b>FULL-TIME HONOURS DEGREE</b> (see note 1)  |                       |                        |
| Laboratory facilities used (Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems) |                       |                        |
| First year  |                       | 10 110                 |
| Additional years  | per year              | 4 000                  |
| Accounting  |                       |                        |
| First year  |                       | 12 110                 |
| Additional years  | per year              | 4 000                  |
| Journalism  |                       |                        |
| First year  |                       | 11 640                 |
| Additional years  | per year              | 4 000                  |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|  |              |        |
|--|--------------|--------|
| Other  |              |        |
| First year   |              | 8 230  |
| Additional years   | per year     | 4 000  |
| <b>PART-TIME HONOURS DEGREE</b>  |              |        |
| Laboratory facilities used<br>(Science, Pharmacy, Psychology, Geography & Information Systems)         | per year     | 6 230  |
| Accounting   |              | 7 990  |
| BTh Hons   |              | 4 710  |
| Journalism   |              | 6 230  |
| Other Honours degrees  |              | 4 520  |
| <b>MASTER'S DEGREES</b>  |              |        |
| <b>If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.</b>                  |              |        |
| Tuition and supervision  | (see note 2) |        |
| <b>All Faculties other than Education</b>  |              |        |
| <b>Students Full Time:</b> First two years of registration   | per year     | 5 300  |
| Additional years   | per year     | 3 300  |
| <b>Students Part Time:</b> First two years of registration   | per year     | 2 640  |
| Third year (thesis year)   |              | 1 650  |
| Additional years   | per year     | 3 300  |
| <b>Education (incl. English Second Language in the Department of English Language and Linguistics)</b> |              |        |
| <b>Students Full Time:</b> First two years   | per year     | 3 530  |
| Subsequent years   | per year     | 5 060  |
| <b>Students Part Time:</b> First two years   | per year     | 2 640  |
| Subsequent years   | per year     | 4 120  |
| <b>SPECIAL MSc DEGREES</b>   |              |        |
| <b>MSc (Environmental Biotechnology)</b>   |              |        |
| First year of registration   |              | 15 000 |
| Additional years   | per year     | 8 000  |
| <b>MSc (Leather Science)</b>   | per year     | 12 000 |
| <b>MSc (Exploration Geology)</b>   |              |        |
| Full-time students completing the degree within one year   |              | 8 200  |
| Field courses (4 @ 2 350)  |              | 9 400  |
| Part-time students registering for one or more modules per annum                                       |              |        |
| Per module   |              | 2 125  |
| Field courses per course   |              | 2 350  |
| Attendance of modules for non-degree purposes  |              |        |
| Per week   |              | 2 300  |
| Students not in attendance, per year of registration   |              | 1 500  |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|   |              |                             |
|---|--------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>MSc (Economic Geology)</b>   |              |                             |
| Full-time students completing the course component of the degree in one year          |              | 4 100                       |
| Field courses (2 @ 2 350)   |              | 4 700                       |
| Per module (part-time students)   |              | 2 125                       |
| Field courses per course  |              | 2 350                       |
| Thesis supervision & laboratory fees  |              | 2 600                       |
| Students not in attendance, per year of registration                                  |              | 1 500                       |
| <b>PhD CANDIDATES</b>   |              |                             |
| <b>If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied.</b> |              |                             |
| Tuition, supervision and examination fees   | (see note 2) |                             |
| <b>All Faculties other than Education</b>   |              |                             |
| First two years of registration   | per year     | 5 300                       |
| Additional years  | per year     | 3 300                       |
| <b>Education</b>  |              |                             |
| <b>Students Full Time:</b> first two years  | per year     | 3 530                       |
| subsequent years  | per year     | 5 060                       |
| <b>Students Part Time:</b> first two years  | per year     | 2 640                       |
| subsequent years  | per year     | 4 120                       |
| <b>SENIOR DOCTORATES</b>  |              |                             |
| Examination fee. No other fees are payable  |              | 5 300                       |
| <b>AD EUNDEM GRADUM CANDIDATES</b> As for Masters' degrees above                      |              |                             |
|   |              |                             |
| <b>EAST LONDON STUDENTS</b> (see note 3)  |              |                             |
| <b>Tuition fees per subject per year</b>  |              |                             |
| BA  |              | 2 640                       |
| BAcc  |              | 2 640                       |
| BBusSc  |              | 2 640                       |
| BCom  |              | 2 640                       |
| BSocSc  |              | 2 640                       |
| BSocSc (SocWork)  |              | 2 640                       |
| BSocSc (SocWork) Fourth year  |              | 5 590                       |
| <b>Occasional students</b>  |              |                             |
| DipAcc(PG) (Preliminary)  |              | 2 640                       |
| BPrimEd First three years   | per year     | 9 990                       |
| BPrimEd Fourth year   |              | 8 460                       |
| HDE(PG)Primary  |              | 8 460                       |
| Half courses:   |              | 60% of the full subject fee |
| (Two half courses = cost of 1 full course: not 2 X 60%)                               |              |                             |



## FEES AND CHARGES

|  |              |        |
|--|--------------|--------|
| BEd, part-time: first two years  | per year     | 3 960  |
| BEd, part-time: additional years   | per year     | 1 530  |
| Cert in Inf Technology   | per module   | 820    |
| Dip in Manuf Management  | per year     | 14 110 |
| <b>Part-time degrees and diplomas</b>  |              |        |
| FDE(Mathematics)   | per year     | 3 000  |
| FDE(Technology)  | per year     | 3 000  |
| FDE(Science)   | per year     | 3 000  |
| HDE (J/SP), HDP and Hdip   | per year     | 3 000  |
| DE, DE(JP/SP), DEIF and DEIP   | per year     | 3 000  |
| <b>Full-time Honours degrees</b>   | per year     | 8 230  |
| <b>Part-time Honours degrees</b>   | per year     |        |
| Information Systems  |              | 6 230  |
| <b>All other Honours degrees</b>   |              | 4 520  |
| <b>Masters' degrees</b>  | per year     |        |
| <b>If a thesis is submitted before the end of June, a pro-rata fee may be levied</b> |              |        |
| <b>Tuition and supervision</b>   | (see note 2) |        |
| <b>All Faculties other than as specified below</b>                                   |              |        |
| Students Full Time: First two years of registration                                  | per year     | 5 300  |
| Additional years (including Psychology internship)                                   | per year     | 3 300  |
| Students Part Time: First two years of registration                                  | per year     | 2 640  |
| Third year (thesis year)   |              | 1 650  |
| Additional years (including Psychology internship)                                   | per year     | 3 300  |
| <b>Education</b>   |              |        |
| Students Full Time: First two years of registration                                  | per year     | 3 530  |
| Subsequent years   | per year     | 5 060  |
| Students Part Time: First two years of registration                                  | per year     | 2 640  |
| Subsequent years   | per year     | 4 120  |
| <b>Psychology Counselling: First year</b>  |              | 8 230  |
| <b>Social Work: First year</b>   |              | 4 500  |
| <b>Examination fees</b>  |              |        |
| Aegrotat examinations (per course or half course)                                    |              | 160    |
| Supplementary examinations (per course)  |              | 300    |
| Supplementary examinations (per half course)   |              | 180    |
| <b>MISCELLANEOUS FEES</b>  |              |        |
| Registration fee: Extended DP  |              | 145    |
| Registration fee: Special categories including upgrading NCP's                       |              | 145    |
| Misreading examination timetable   |              | 1 100  |

## FEES AND CHARGES

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| Special examinations   | Candidate pays full cost        |
| Late submission of thesis (plus costs incurred by University)                    | 520                             |
| Oppidans   | 25                              |
| Admission to status  | 125                             |
| <b>Exemptions</b>  |                                 |
| Per course   | 155                             |
| Per half course  | 85                              |
| Exemptions DE(J/SP), per course  | 110                             |
| <b>Certificates</b> (see note 6)   |                                 |
| Certified statements of course on application: Pre-1982                          | 100                             |
| Certified statements of course on application: Other                             | 40                              |
| Replacement degree or diploma certificate  | 180                             |
| Amended degree parchment   | 180                             |
| Supporting transcript documentation (Fee on application to Faculty Office)       |                                 |
| Student identity and meal cards  | 15                              |
| Dallas Chip  | 25                              |
| Field courses  | Students to contribute pro-rata |
| All other field trips  | Fees determined each year       |
| Cost of binding two copies of thesis   | 110                             |
| <b>ART SCHOOL STUDENTS</b> (see note 5)  |                                 |
| Full-time  | 7 640                           |
| Part-time  |                                 |
| One session (approx. 4 hours per week)   | 1 770                           |
| Two sessions (approx 8 hours per week)   | 3 060                           |
| Three sessions (approx 12 hours per week)  | 3 530                           |
| Photography  | 4 000                           |
| <b>ADDITIONAL MUSIC INSTRUCTION</b>  |                                 |
| Registered music students taking instruction beyond that required by regulation  | 1 770                           |
| All students not registered: music degree/diploma                                | 2 460                           |
| <b>DRAMA STUDENTS</b>  |                                 |
| All students: additional fee to cover cost of Theatre instruction and equipment  | 480                             |
| <b>OCCASIONAL STUDENTS</b> per course:   | as for single course fees       |
| <b>CONTINUING EDUCATION AND CASUAL STUDENTS</b> per course:                      | 1 060                           |
| <b>ADDITIONAL CHARGES</b>  |                                 |
| A student not registered for a BJourn degree who takes the Journalism 2, 3, or 4 | 12 050                          |

# FEES AND CHARGES

## ESTIMATED DEPARTMENTAL CHARGES FOR 2000 FOR COURSE MATERIAL, HANDOUTS, FIELD TRIPS, ETC.

NOTE: These charges are provisional only and may be revised during the year, however, charges for hand-outs (as determined) are compulsory.

|   |      |                  |
|---|------|------------------|
| <b>ACCOUNTING</b>                           |      |                  |
| Accounting 101, 102, 1F and 1G              | each | per semester 100 |
| Accounting 201, 202                         | each | per semester 100 |
| Accounting 301, 302                         | each | per semester 100 |
| Auditing 301, 302                           | each | per semester 60  |
| Management Accounting 301, 302              | each | per semester 60  |
| Principles of Income Tax and EIT            | each | per semester 60  |
| Postgraduate Diploma in Accountancy         |      | 600              |
| <b>AFRICAN LANGUAGES</b>                    |      |                  |
| Xhosa 1 (NMT)                               |      | 50               |
| Xhosa 1 (MT)                                |      | 40               |
| Xhosa 2, 3                                  |      | 25               |
| <b>AFRIKAANS &amp; NETHERLANDIC STUDIES</b> |      |                  |
| Afrikaans 1P                                |      | 140              |
| Afrikaans 1P repeat                         |      | 70               |
| Afrikaans 1P A                              |      | 110              |
| Afrikaans 1                                 |      | 130              |
| Afrikaans & Nederlands 2                    |      | 120              |
| Afrikaans & Nederlands 3                    |      | 120              |
| Afrikaans Honours                           |      | 120              |
| Joint Honours                               |      | 70               |
| Modern Fiction                              |      | 75               |
| <b>ANTHROPOLOGY</b>                         |      |                  |
| All courses                                 |      | 20               |
| <b>BIOCHEMISTRY</b>                         |      |                  |
| Biochemistry 2 and 3 course material        | each | 110              |
| Locker fee                                  |      | 200              |
| All postgraduate students computer paper    |      | 100              |
| Honours Field Trip                          |      | 500              |
| <b>BIOTECHNOLOGY</b>                        |      |                  |
| Master's student computer paper             |      | 100              |
| Honours Field Trip                          |      | 500              |
| <b>BOTANY</b>                               |      |                  |
| Botany 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302         | each | 50               |
| Breakages                                   |      | 30               |
| Field Trip                                  | each | 175              |
| Plant press deposit (refundable)            |      | 30               |
| <b>CHEMISTRY</b>                            |      |                  |
| Chemistry 101,102,201,202,301,302           | each | 80               |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|   |                 |                                    |
|---|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>CLASSICS</b>   |                 |                                    |
| Classical Civilisation 1                                      |                 | 390                                |
| Classical Civilisation 2                                      |                 | 470                                |
| Greek 1   |                 | 350                                |
| Greek 2 and 3   | each            | 60                                 |
| Hellenistic Greek   |                 | 100                                |
| Latin 1B  |                 | 350                                |
| Latin 1, 2 and 3  | each            | 65                                 |
| <b>COMPUTER SCIENCE</b>                                       |                 |                                    |
| Computer Science 1B   |                 | 170                                |
| Computer Science 1L, 1P                                       | each            | 70                                 |
| Computer Science 1  |                 | 140                                |
| Computer Science 2  |                 | 290                                |
| Computer Science 3  |                 | 260                                |
| Computer Science Honours & P/G Dip                            | each            | 400                                |
| <b>DRAMA</b>  |                 |                                    |
| All courses   |                 | 60                                 |
| <b>ECONOMICS</b>  |                 |                                    |
| Economics 1   | Semesters: each | 50                                 |
| Economics 2   | 4 Modules: each | 40                                 |
| Economics 3   | 4 Modules: each | 35                                 |
| Economics 3B  | 2 Modules: each | 35                                 |
| Economics Honours   | 8 Modules: each | 25                                 |
| Joint Honours   | 4 Modules: each | 25                                 |
| <b>EDUCATION</b>  |                 |                                    |
| FDE   |                 | 550 (or less, depending on course) |
| HDE   |                 | 760                                |
| BEEd  |                 | 360                                |
| MEd   |                 | 880 (or less, depending on course) |
| <b>ENGLISH</b>  |                 |                                    |
| English 1, 2, 3   | each            | 105                                |
| English in Africa   | per semester    | 25                                 |
| English Honours   | per paper       | 30                                 |
| Applied English 1, 2, 3                                       | each            | 50                                 |
| Combined English 2, 3   | each            | 50                                 |
| Exchange students (one-semester students)                     |                 | 50                                 |
| <b>ENGLISH LANGUAGE &amp; LINGUISTICS</b>                     |                 |                                    |
| ELAP  |                 | 120                                |
| English Language & Linguistics 101, 102                       | each            | 68                                 |
| English Language & Linguistics 201, 202, 301, 302             | each            | 25                                 |
| Applied English Studies 201, 202, 301,302                     | each            | 13                                 |
| English Language Teaching (Honours and Joint Honours)         |                 | 70                                 |
| English Language Teaching Part Time                           |                 | 35                                 |
| Professional Communications                                   |                 | 60                                 |
| Postgraduate courses  |                 | 55                                 |
| <b>ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE</b>                                  |                 |                                    |
| Undergraduate course: handouts and field trips, all courses   |                 | 225                                |
| Environmental Science Honours: handouts and local field trips |                 | 175                                |
| Specialist course in Environmental Impact Assessment          |                 | 250                                |
| All courses: Major field trips may incur additional charges   |                 |                                    |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|  |                 |       |
|--|-----------------|-------|
| <b>FINE ART</b>  |                 |       |
| Material costs:  |                 |       |
| <i>Please NOTE that these are average costs, as costs vary from student to student</i> |                 |       |
| Basic Art  |                 | 955   |
| Painting 1   |                 | 1 950 |
| Painting 2   |                 | 2 540 |
| Painting 3   |                 | 1 740 |
| Graphics 1   |                 | 2 370 |
| Graphics 2   |                 | 2 630 |
| Graphics 3   |                 | 3 500 |
| Sculpture 1, 2, 3  | each            | 2 550 |
| Photography 1  |                 | 4 950 |
| Photography 2  |                 | 4 650 |
| Photography 3  |                 | 4 880 |
| <b>FRENCH</b>  |                 |       |
| French Preliminary, 1, 2, 3, and Honours   | each            | 100   |
| French 101   | per semester    | 50    |
| <b>GEOGRAPHY</b>   |                 |       |
| All courses: course materials and local field trips                                    |                 | 175   |
| <b>GEOLOGY</b>   |                 |       |
| Geology 101, 102, 201, 202, 301, 302   | each            | 40    |
| Geology Honours: course material   |                 | 90    |
| Field Trips: first year 101, 102   | each            | 40    |
| second and third years   | each            | 140   |
| Field Trips: Honours   |                 | 250   |
| <b>HISTORY</b>   |                 |       |
| History 1  |                 | 40    |
| History 2  |                 | 30    |
| History 3  |                 | 40    |
| <b>HUMAN KINETICS AND ERGONOMICS</b>   |                 |       |
| HKE 1, 2 and 3, Applied Physiology & Anatomy 2   | each            | 150   |
| Honours  |                 | 350   |
| <b>ICHTHYOLOGY</b>   |                 |       |
| Ichthyology 2: course materials and field trips  |                 | 350   |
| Ichthyology 3: course materials and field trips  |                 | 400   |
| Honours: course materials and field trips  |                 | 700   |
| <b>INFORMATION SYSTEMS</b>   |                 |       |
| Information Systems 201, 202   | each            | 50    |
| Information Systems 301, 302   | each            | 65    |
| Information Systems Honours: Grahamstown   |                 | 240   |
| Information Systems Honours: East London   |                 | 120   |
| <b>JOURNALISM &amp; MEDIA STUDIES</b>  |                 |       |
| All courses: hand outs   | each            | 210   |
| Journ 2, Radio and TV consumables  | additional cost | 55    |
| Journ 3 and Higher Diploma   | additional cost | 320   |
| Journ 4/Honours  | additional cost | 320   |
| Material cost: cyberpublishing, design, photojournals                                  | each            | 500   |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| <b>LAW</b>   |         |
| LLB students will be charged a basic hand-out fee according to their year of registration. Students who register for specific electives will be charged an addition amount. Law students who are not registered for the LLB degree will be charged per subject registered. |         |
| <b>Basic Charges</b>   |         |
| LLB Undergraduate year   | 330     |
| LLB Preliminary year   | 410     |
| LLB Intermediate year  | 495     |
| LLB Final year   | 550     |
| <b>Course Charges for LLB students in addition to Basic LLB charges</b>  |         |
| Administration of Estates  | 40      |
| Negotiation & Mediation  | 60      |
| Legal Practice   | 20      |
| Women & the Law  | 20      |
| <b>Course Charges for students not registered for the LLB degree</b>   |         |
| Administration of Estates  | 110     |
| Business Structures B  | 40      |
| Business Structures A  | 45      |
| COL 101  | 70      |
| COL 102  | 55      |
| COL 201  | 80      |
| COL 202  | 65      |
| COL 301  | 175     |
| COL 302  | 110     |
| Constitutional Law A and B   | each 20 |
| Copyright & Trademarks   | 50      |
| Criminal Law   | 65      |
| Customary Law A and B  | each 20 |
| Environmental Law  | 50      |
| Foundations of Law/Legal Systems   | 65      |
| Introduction to Law  | 60      |
| Jurisprudence A  | 65      |
| Jurisprudence B  | 55      |
| Labour Law   | 55      |
| Law of Lease & Agency  | 70      |
| Law of Contract A  | 65      |
| Law of Contract B  | 20      |
| Law of Persons   | 35      |
| Law of Husband & Wife  | 35      |
| Law of Property & Security B   | 35      |
| Law of Tax & Estate Planning   | 20      |
| Law of Property & Security A   | 35      |
| Legal Interpretation   | 45      |
| Negotiation & Mediation  | 115     |
| Patents & Designs  | 35      |
| Public International Law   | 10      |
| Women & the Law  | 75      |
| <b>LEATHER SCIENCE</b>   |         |
| MSc Materials  | 3 000   |



# FEES AND CHARGES

|  |                |                               |
|--|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>MANAGEMENT</b>  |                |                               |
| Management 101 and 102   | each           | 45                            |
| Management 201 and 202   | each           | 65                            |
| Management 301,302,303,304   | each           | 75                            |
| Management Honours   |                | 700                           |
| Field Trips  |                | 750                           |
| Postgraduate Dip Enterprise Management   |                | 800 (plus 600 for text books) |
| <b>MATHEMATICS (PURE &amp; APPLIED)</b>  |                |                               |
| Mathematics 101, 102   | each           | 35                            |
| Mathematics 1E(1), 1E(2)   | each           | 35                            |
| Mathematics 2 and 3  | each           | 55                            |
| Applied Mathematics 2 and 3  | each           | 55                            |
| <b>MICROBIOLOGY</b>  |                |                               |
| Microbiology 2 and 3 course material   |                | 110                           |
| Locker fee   |                | 200                           |
| Microbiology 2 Field Trip  |                | 120                           |
| Microbiology 3 Field Trip  |                | 100                           |
| Honours Field Trips  |                | 500                           |
| All postgraduate students computer paper   |                | 100                           |
| <b>MUSIC</b>   |                |                               |
| BMus, Diploma, BA (Music), BSc( Music)   | each           | 295                           |
| HAM students   |                | 295                           |
| <b>PHILOSOPHY</b>  |                |                               |
| Introduction to Philosophy   |                | 85                            |
| Philosophy 2   |                | 90                            |
| Philosophy 3 and postgraduate students   |                | 100                           |
| <b>PHYSICS</b>   |                |                               |
| Physics 1E2  | each           | 50                            |
| Physics 101,102,1E1  | each           | 45                            |
| Physics 201,202  | each           | 60                            |
| Physics 301,302  | each           | 60                            |
| Physics Honours  |                | 140                           |
| <b>POLITICAL STUDIES</b>   |                |                               |
| Politics 1   |                | 150                           |
| Politics 2   |                | 160                           |
| Politics 3   |                | 180                           |
| Diploma, Honours, Master's in International Studies and Politics (Democratisation): students in receipt of bursaries from the Department |                | 1 180                         |
| Joint Honours, including students without financial support from the Department  | per course     | 55                            |
| Master's field trip: students without bursary support from the Department  |                | 200                           |
| <b>PRIMARY EDUCATION</b>   |                |                               |
| BPrimEd 1  |                | 350                           |
| BPrimEd 2  |                | 400                           |
| BPrimEd 2 Environmental excursions   |                | 135                           |
| BPrimEd 3  |                | 500                           |
| BPrimEd 4  |                | 450                           |
| DE (U), HDE (U), Part Time (two-year course)   | each, per year | 250                           |

# FEES AND CHARGES

|   |      |     |
|---|------|-----|
| <b>PSYCHOLOGY (East London Campus)</b>        |      |     |
| Psychology 1                                  |      | 110 |
| Psychology 2                                  |      | 110 |
| Psychology 3                                  |      | 110 |
| Psychology Honours                            |      | 110 |
| Counselling Master's Resale                   |      | 370 |
| <b>PSYCHOLOGY (Grahamstown Campus)</b>        |      |     |
| Psychology 1                                  |      | 80  |
| Psychology 2                                  |      | 175 |
| Psychology 3                                  |      | 200 |
| Psychology Honours                            |      | 500 |
| Industrial Psychology Honours                 |      | 450 |
| Clinical Psychology Professional fee          |      | 950 |
| Clinical Psychology Resale                    |      | 450 |
| Master's in Research Psychology by coursework |      | 250 |
| PhD in Psychotherapy                          |      | 100 |
| <b>RELIGION AND THEOLOGY</b>                  |      |     |
| Church History 303, 304                       | each | 50  |
| Pastoral Theology 301, 302, 303               | each | 15  |
| Pastoral Theology 305                         |      | 25  |
| Pastoral Theology Honours                     |      | 40  |
| Systematic Theology 302                       |      | 20  |
| Systematic Theology 303                       |      | 25  |
| <b>SOCIAL WORK</b>                            |      |     |
| Social Work 1, 3, 4                           | each | 100 |
| Social Work 2                                 |      | 130 |
| Master's: Coursework                          |      | 150 |
| <b>SOCIOLOGY</b>                              |      |     |
| <b>Grahamstown</b>                            |      |     |
| Sociology 1                                   |      | 110 |
| Sociology/Industrial Sociology 2              | each | 110 |
| Sociology/Industrial Sociology 3              | each | 130 |
| Sociology/Industrial Sociology Honours        | each | 110 |
| <b>East London</b>                            |      |     |
| Sociology 1                                   |      | 130 |
| Industrial Sociology 2                        |      | 130 |
| Industrial Sociology 3                        |      | 130 |
| <b>STATISTICS</b>                             |      |     |
| Theory of Finance                             |      | 100 |
| Statistics 1F                                 |      | 30  |
| Statistics 1D                                 |      | 100 |
| Statistics 101, 102                           | each | 30  |
| Mathematical Statistics 201, 202              | each | 40  |
| Mathematical Statistics 301, 302              | each | 50  |

## FEES AND CHARGES

|   |   |        |
|---|---|--------|
| <b>ZOOLOGY AND ENTOMOLOGY</b>   |   |        |
| Biology 102   | each, per semester                                      | 50     |
| Zoology 1, 2 and 3  | each  | 100    |
| Zoology Honours   |   | 135    |
| Marine Biology Honours  |   | 135    |
| Entomology 2 and 3  | each  | 100    |
| Entomology Honours  |   | 135    |
| Field Trip: Zoology 2 and Entomology 2  |   | 100    |
| Field Trip: Zoology 3   |   | 150    |
| <b>RESIDENCE FEES</b>   |   |        |
| <b>Grade A</b>  |   |        |
| Allan Gray, Atherstone, Beit, Canterbury, De Beers, Dingemans, Gold Fields, Jameson, John Kotzé, Livingstone, Milner, Olive Schreiner, Oriel, Phelps, Salisbury |   | 13 520 |
| <b>Grade B</b>  |   |        |
| Cullen Bowles, Graham, Hobson, Jan Smuts, New, Oriel Annexe, Piet Retief, Thomas Pringle, Walker, Winchester  |   | 12 845 |
| <b>Grade C</b>  |   |        |
| Adamson, Botha, College, Cory, Jan Smuts Annexe, Matthews, Prince Alfred, Stanley Kidd (females, males, p/g flat), Truro  |   | 11 900 |
| <b>Master's and Doctoral Residences</b>   |   |        |
| Dingemans Flat (female), Lillian Britten (female), Oakdene (male)   |   | 14 000 |
| <b>Residence fees during vacations:</b>   |   |        |
| Undergraduate students  | per day   | 65     |
|   | whole of April or September recess: each, all inclusive | 390    |
| <b>Miscellaneous fees</b>   |   |        |
| Loss of room key  |   | 40     |
| Failure to return room key: end of 2 and 4 terms  |   | 50     |
| Loss of cupboard key  |   | 10     |

### NOTES

- Candidates for Honours degrees may attend an introductory language course without extra charge.
- (i) These registration and tuition fees must be paid even if candidates in a particular year make no call on their supervisor's time.  
(ii) The additional costs incurred by the University, together with a fee of R520 must be paid on late submission of thesis.  
(iii) The normal period of study for a Master's degree is two years after a Bachelors degree (if permitted) or one year after an Honours degree.  
(iv) The normal period of study for a PhD degree is three years after an Honours degree or two years after a Master's degree. The University makes provision for the award of bursaries to postgraduate students who are in financial need.
- The provisions of the Calendar apply *mutatis*

*mutandis* to students attending the lectures conducted by the University in East London.

- The fee is refundable if re-examination changes the classification of the result to the student's advantage.
- These fees apply to students not taking a degree, diploma or certificate, or students taking a degree, diploma or certificate with additional art or craft work courses. Pottery students will be charged for the firing of their examples, the amount depending on the nature of the examples.
- Degree certificates are handed to candidates when they graduate, or posted as soon as possible after the graduation ceremony to those graduating *in absentia*. Other certificates are posted to candidates as soon as possible after the results are issued. A duplicate certificate is issued on production of an affidavit or the damaged original certificate. An amended degree parchment: issued as a result of student error or

negligence in providing information such as the spelling of names, etc.

7. An invigilation fee per paper may also be payable.

### EXAMINATION FEES

Must be paid by August 15 for ordinary examinations written by students returning to write on extended DP certificates, or by January 10 for supplementary and aegrotat examinations. For entries accepted after August 15 or January 10, as the case may be, a late fee is payable. Except with the special permission of the Vice-Chancellor, no entries are accepted for ordinary examinations after September 1, and for supplementary examinations after January 20.

### RESIDENCE FEES

1. Residence fees differ because discounts are allowed on some residences which lack certain facilities.

2. Students' accommodation is based on single rooms. Adjustments are made in fees where students change residences. All residence fees are levied at the full rate for a single room in the appropriate residence at the beginning of the year. The total amount is debited to the student account. Where, for University convenience, students are permitted to share accommodation a 25% discount of the residence fees may be claimed by the student for the period that the room was shared. Application for the rebate must be made to the Registrar (Finance) at the end of each term. Claims for rebate which have not been lodged by the end of the following term will be disallowed. Claims are to be supported by the recommendation of the hall warden. For the purpose of discounts and adjustments the residence year is taken as 240 days. A student does not have the right to claim an allowance for sharing a room where single accommodation in the residence is available.

3. No charge is made for linen supplied or for laundry services. Students must provide their own towels and

toilet soap.

4. No deduction is made from residence fees if a student is away from residence because of illness, or for any other reason, other than where the prescribed course of study required such absence.

5. On application to the Registrar (Finance), a rebate may be granted when the course of study necessitates an uninterrupted absence from the residence for more than 20 days.

### RESIDENCE BURSARIES AND FEES REMISSIONS

A number of residence bursaries are available to assist students in meeting residence fees. Applications should be made to the Dean of Students via the Hall Warden concerned.

### STUDENTS LEAVING RESIDENCE DURING THE ACADEMIC YEAR

Students or their parents or guardians must give notice of intention to discontinue attendance, in writing, to the Dean of Students. Any student who has registered for a course of study and who, for any reason, leaves the residence during the course of the year, is liable for fees according to the following scale, if he or she leaves during:

|                 | <i>Percentage fees payable</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| The first term  | 70%                            |
| The second term | 80%                            |
| The third term  | 90%                            |
| The fourth term | 100%                           |

**NB** A student who has moved into residence, but who leaves before registering for a course of study, will be charged such residence fees as the University determines. The fee normally payable is a daily rate fixed by the Council.

# INDEX

## A

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Abbreviations of degrees, diplomas and certificates    | 253        |
| Academic Colours                                       | 277        |
| Academic Costume                                       | 275        |
| <b>Academic Departments and Staff</b>                  | <b>113</b> |
| Accounting   | 113        |
| African Language Studies                               | 115        |
| Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies                       | 116        |
| Anthropology   | 119        |
| Biochemistry and Microbiology                          | 120        |
| Botany   | 124        |
| Chemistry  | 126        |
| Classical Studies                                      | 128        |
| Computer Science                                       | 129        |
| Drama  | 133        |
| Economic & Management Sciences<br>(Investec) School of | 134        |
| Economics and Economic History                         | 134        |
| Education  | 136        |
| English  | 142        |
| English Language and Linguistics                       | 145        |
| Environmental Science Programme                        | 149        |
| Fine Art   | 152        |
| French and Italian Studies                             | 154        |
| Geography  | 156        |
| Geology  | 159        |
| German Studies   | 162        |
| History  | 163        |
| Human Kinetics and Ergonomics                          | 165        |
| Ichthyology and Fisheries Science                      | 167        |
| Information Systems                                    | 169        |
| Interdepartmental Studies                              | 171        |
| Journalism and Media Studies                           | 175        |
| Languages, School of                                   | 181        |
| Law  | 181        |
| Management   | 189        |
| Mathematics (Pure and Applied)                         | 191        |
| Music and Musicology                                   | 196        |
| Pharmaceutical Sciences (School of)                    | 201        |
| Philosophy   | 204        |
| Physics and Electronics                                | 205        |
| Political Studies                                      | 208        |
| Primary Education (East London Campus)                 | 211        |
| Psychology   | 213        |
| Religion and Theology                                  | 216        |
| Social Work  | 225        |
| Sociology and Industrial Sociology                     | 226        |
| Statistics   | 228        |
| Zoology and Entomology                                 | 231        |
| Academic Development Centre                            | 249        |
| <b>Academic Staff and Departments</b>                  | <b>113</b> |
| Accident Insurance                                     | 256        |
| Addresses, useful                                      | 6          |
| <i>Ad Eundem Gradum</i> degrees                        | 37         |
| <b>Administrative Senior Staff</b>                     | <b>251</b> |
| <b>Admission and Registration of Students</b>          | <b>26</b>  |
| Aegrotat cases   | 36         |
| Attendance and Work                                    | 31         |

## B

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| <b>Board</b>       |     |
| Disciplinary       | 265 |
| Disciplinary, SRC  | 279 |
| East London        | 18  |
| Board of Governors | 22  |

## C

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Chancellors of the University                                | 22        |
| Chapel of St Mary and all the Angels                         | 278       |
| Chronicle of Rhodes University                               | 12        |
| Colours, award of  | 277       |
| <b>Commerce Faculty Rules</b>                                | <b>41</b> |
| Constitution of the University                               | 19        |
| Convocation  | 278       |
| Cory Library, see Library Services                           | 248       |
| Council of Rhodes University                                 | 20        |
| <b>Courses, see Academic Departments and Faculty Rules</b>   |           |
| Courses, closing dates for change                            | 26        |
| <b>Curricula, see Academic Departments and Faculty Rules</b> |           |

## D

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Dates of Terms                                   | 11         |
| Dean of Research                                 | 21         |
| Dean of Students                                 | 20         |
| Deans of Faculties                               | 21         |
| Dedication - Academic Freedom                    | 19         |
| <b>Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates</b>        |            |
| Rhodes University                                | 253        |
| Diary for 2000                                   | 7          |
| <b>Discipline, see Student Disciplinary Code</b> | <b>261</b> |
| Distinguished Research Award                     | 23         |
| Distinguished Teaching Award                     | 23         |
| Duly Performed Certificates                      | 28         |

## E

|                                |           |
|--------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>East London Campus</b>      | <b>17</b> |
| <b>Education Faculty Rules</b> | <b>53</b> |
| <b>Examinations</b>            |           |
| Admission to                   | 33        |
| Examiners                      | 33        |
| Fees and Charges               | 290       |

## F

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Facilities - Sport                       | 278 |
| <b>Faculty Rules</b>                     |     |
| Commerce                                 | 41  |
| Education                                | 53  |
| Humanities                               | 65  |
| Bachelor of Fine Art                     | 74  |
| Bachelor of Music                        | 76  |
| Bachelor of Social Science (Social Work) | 78  |
| Bachelor of Journalism                   | 79  |

# INDEX

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Law   | 92         |
| Pharmacy                                    | 97         |
| Science                                     | 101        |
| <b>Fees and Charges</b>                     | <b>287</b> |
| Examination Fees                            | 305        |
| Foreign Student                             | 288        |
| Holders of scholarships, bursaries or loans | 289        |
| Minimum Initial Payments                    | 289        |
| New Students                                | 288        |
| Residence Fees                              | 304        |
| Returning Students                          | 288        |
| Schedule of Fees                            | 290        |
| Single Course Fees                          | 290        |
| Students leaving the University             | 290        |
| Students leaving residence                  | 305        |
| Financial Aid                               | 277        |
| Firearms                                    | 262        |
| Freedom - Academic Dedication               | 19         |
| Full-time students - definition             | 27         |

## G

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| <b>General Information</b>                     | <b>275</b> |
| Academic Costume                               | 275        |
| Award of Colours                               | 277        |
| <b>General Rules</b>                           | <b>30</b>  |
| <i>Ad Eundem Gradum</i> Students               | 37         |
| Admission and Registration                     | 26         |
| Completion of Courses                          | 31         |
| Equivalent Status                              | 33         |
| Examiners                                      | 33         |
| Examinations                                   | 33         |
| Exemptions                                     | 35         |
| Degree of Master (All Faculties)               | 37         |
| Degree of Doctor of Philosophy (All Faculties) | 38         |
| Grahamstown Campus                             | 12         |
| Guidelines for Senior Doctorates               | 40         |
| Graduation, dress                              | 275        |

## H

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Honorary Graduates              | 24        |
| <b>Humanities Faculty Rules</b> | <b>65</b> |

## I

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Institutes</b>                            |     |
| Albany Museum                                | 235 |
| Biopharmaceutics Research                    | 236 |
| Centre for Social Development                | 236 |
| Dictionary Unit for South African English    | 237 |
| East London Health Resource Centre           | 238 |
| Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for Aeronomy     | 238 |
| Johnson & Johnson Leadership Development     | 243 |
| Institute for Social and Economic Research   | 239 |
| Institute for the Study of English in Africa | 238 |
| JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology           | 242 |
| LIRI Technologies                            | 243 |
| Molteno Project                              | 245 |
| National English Literary Museum             | 245 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Population Research Unit                        | 246 |
| Rhodes University Mathematics Education Project | 246 |
| Southern Ocean Group                            | 247 |
| Water Research                                  | 240 |
| International Library of African Music          | 240 |
| Investigating Officer                           | 266 |

## L

|                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Law Faculty Rules</b> | <b>92</b> |
| Lecture Timetable        | 280       |
| Liability of Fees        | 287       |
| Library Services         | 248       |
| Liquor                   | 262       |

## M

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Mail to residences                      | 259 |
| Matriculation requirements - additional | 26  |
| Merit Award Scheme                      | 287 |

## N

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| Notice of withdrawal | 290 |
|----------------------|-----|

## O

|                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| Occasional Students               | 27        |
| <b>Officers of the University</b> | <b>20</b> |
| Old Rhodian Union                 | 279       |
| Oppidan Union                     | 274       |

## P

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| Part-time students, definition                                      | 27        |
| Penalties   | 264       |
| <b>Pharmacy Faculty Rules</b>                                       | <b>97</b> |
| <b>Postgraduate studies, see Academic Departments and Faculties</b> |           |
| Proctors  | 265       |
| Professors of the University  | 21        |

## R

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Research Institutes and Units                            | 235        |
| Registration, see Admission and Registration of Students | 26         |
| <b>Residences</b>  | <b>256</b> |
| Insurance (Accident)                                     | 256        |
| Linen and Laundry  | 256        |
| Mail to Residences                                       | 259        |
| Postgraduate Accommodation                               | 257        |
| Responsibility for University property                   | 256        |
| Sanatorium   | 258        |
| Students leaving residence                               | 305        |
| Vacation   | 257        |
| Wardens, power of search                                 | 256        |

## S

|            |     |
|------------|-----|
| Sanatorium | 258 |
|------------|-----|

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Senate                                 | 20         |
| <b>Science Faculty Rules</b>           | <b>101</b> |
| Societies, Councils and Committees     | 272        |
| Sports Council                         | 273        |
| Sports Facilities                      | 278        |
| SRC - Students' Representative Council | 279        |
| SSC - Student Services Council         | 279        |
| <b>Student Affairs</b>                 | <b>272</b> |
| <b>Student Disciplinary Code</b>       | <b>261</b> |
| Aiding and Abetting                    | 264        |
| Attendance                             | 261        |
| Authority                              | 263        |
| Board, Disciplinary                    | 265        |
| Board, SRC, Disciplinary               | 265        |
| Disciplinary Officers                  | 265        |
| Drugs                                  | 262        |
| Examinations                           | 262        |
| Firearms                               | 262        |
| General Conduct                        | 264        |
| Giving Name and Address                | 263        |
| Investigating Officer                  | 266        |
| Liquor                                 | 262        |
| Oppidan Union                          | 274        |
| Penalties                              | 264        |

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Press Activity         | 262 |
| Proctor                | 265 |
| Raiding and Initiation | 262 |
| Vehicles               | 262 |

|                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>T</b>                              |          |
| <b>Telephone and telefax numbers,</b> |          |
| <b>useful addresses</b>               | <b>6</b> |
| Timetable: Lecture                    | 280      |
| Transport Office: see map of Campus   | E T      |

|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| <b>U</b>                |          |
| <b>Useful addresses</b> | <b>6</b> |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| <b>V</b>                               |    |
| Vice-Chancellors of the University     | 20 |
| Vice-Principal and Pro-Vice-Chancellor | 20 |

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| <b>W</b>                 |     |
| Wardens, power of search | 256 |

## Index to Map of Rhodes University

D = academic department.

|                                      |        |                                       |        |                                      |              |
|--------------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| Accounting (D)                       | A2     | Great Hall                            | H23    | Olive Schreiner House                | A24          |
| Adamson House                        | D20    | Grounds & Gardens Section             | G15    | Oriel Hall                           | A18          |
| Administration Building              | A1     | Gymnasium                             | G4     | Oriel House                          | A19          |
| African Languages                    | A5     | Hermann Ohlthaver Institute for       | A5     | Oriel House Annexe                   | E3           |
| Afrikaans & Nederlandse Studies (D)  | A5     | Aeronomy                              | A4     | Pharmaceutical Sciences (School) (D) | C9           |
| Alec Mullins Sports Hall             | G1     | History (D)                           | A5     | Phelps House                         | A27          |
| Allan Gray House                     | H44    | Hobson Hall                           | E8     | Philosophy (D)                       | H9           |
| Allan Webb Dining Hall               | B12    | Hobson House                          | E6     | Physics & Electronics (D)            | A4           |
| Anthropology (D)                     | H21    | Human Kinetics & Ergonomics           | G2     | Piet Retief House                    | F12          |
| Art School (Fine Art D)              | C1     | Ichthyology & Fisheries Science(D)    | H8     | Political Studies (D)                | H8           |
| Academic Development Centre          | A8     | Ichthyology (JLB Inst)                | H5     | Prince Alfred House                  | H13          |
| Atherstone House                     | D13    | Information Systems (D)               | A5     | Printing Unit                        | A10          |
| Beit House                           | A16    | Institute: Social & Economic          |        | Prospect Field Facilities            | G29          |
| Biochemistry (D)                     | D1     | Research                              | H17/17 | Prospect House Playing Fields        | G30          |
| Botany (D)                           | A13/14 | Institute: Study of English in Africa | B3     | Psychology (D)                       | A15          |
| Botha House                          | D2     | Institute: Water Research             | D1/A10 | Psychology Clinic                    | E4           |
| Campus Protection Unit               | E5     | International Library, African Music  | H42    | Residency, The                       | B27          |
| Canterbury House                     | B13    | Jameson House                         | A17    | Religion & Theology (D)              | B17          |
| Centre for Social Development        | B19    | Jan Smuts Hall                        | E19    | Rhodes Theatre                       | C3           |
| Chapel of St Mary and All the Angels | B8     | Jan Smuts House                       | D14    | Rhodes Union                         | H26          |
| Chemistry & Pharm. Sciences (D)      | C9     | Jan Smuts Annexe                      | D16/18 | Rhodes University Club               | H27          |
| Classics (D)                         | A5     | JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology    | H5     | Rhodes University Museum             | B4           |
| College House, The                   | D6     | John Kotze House                      | A29    | Rifle Range                          | E24          |
| College House Annexe, The            | D7     | Journalism & Media Studies (D)        | C2     | Rowing Practice Tank                 | H33          |
| Computer Science (D)                 | C7     | Kaif                                  | H27    | Rowing Club House                    | H32          |
| Cory House                           | D5     | Kimberley Hall                        | F14    | St Mary Hall                         | A25          |
| Cullen Bowles House                  | F15    | King Field                            | G31    | St Peter's Tennis Court              | B7           |
| Day Kaif                             | A12    | Law (D) Lincoln House                 | B9     | Salisbury House                      | B5           |
| Dean of Students House               | A1     | Law Library                           | B9     | Sanatorium                           | A21          |
| De Beers House                       | F26    | Law Annexe                            | B10    | School of Languages (D)              | A5           |
| Dictionary Unit for South African    |        | Leather Industries Research Institute | F5-F9  | Security Office                      | E5           |
| English                              | B3     | Legal Aid Clinic                      | K2     | Soccer Sports Room                   | G39          |
| Dingemans House                      | E9     | Library                               | A23    | Selwyn Castle                        | H21          |
| Drama (D)                            | C2     | Lillian Britten House                 | A26    | Social Work (D)                      | H22          |
| Drostdy Hall                         | C5     | Linguistics & English language (D)    | A6     | Sociology & Industrial Sociology (D) | H22          |
| Economics & Economics History (D)    | A3     | Livingstone House                     | E18    | Sports Office                        | G28          |
| Eden Grove                           | B28    | Main Building (Old Arts Block)        | A1     | Student Flats                        | K3-K6/G36    |
| Education (D)                        | B11    | Main Building East Wing               | A2     | Squash Courts (Union)                | H31          |
| Electron Microscopy Unit             | D1     | Main Building South Wing              | A3     | Squash Courts (King)                 | G5           |
| English (D)                          | A11    | Management (D)                        | A2     | Stanley Kidd House 1-6               | G34/45/46/48 |
| Entomology & Zoology (D)             | D1     | Marketing & Communications            | A2     | Standly Kidd House Warden            | G33          |
| Estate Division                      | G12    | Martial Arts Centre                   | G41    | Stockenstrom Place                   | G36          |
| Finance Division                     | A1     | Mathematics Education Project         | B3     | Students Photography Workshop        | H20          |
| Fine Art (D)                         | C1     | Mathematics Pure & Applied (D)        | C4     | SRC Office                           | H26          |
| Fine Art: Painting School            | F1     | Matthews House                        | D3     | SRC Society Rooms                    | H24          |
| Fine Art: Photography                | B6     | Microbiology (D)                      | D1     | Statistics (D)                       | C9           |
| Fine Art: Graphics & Sculpture       | B1     | Molteno Project                       | B3     | Swimming Pool                        | H30          |
| Founders Hall, The                   | D4     | Mother Cecile Hall                    | B12    | Tennis Courts (King)                 | G32          |
| Founders Lodge                       | D8     | Milner House                          | E7     | Tennis Court Pavilion                | G32a         |
| French (D)                           | A5     | Music & Musicology (D) Beethoven      |        | Thomas Pringle House                 | F11          |
| General Lecture Theatre              | A7     | House                                 | B15    | Transport Office                     | E T          |
| Geography (D)                        | A10    | New Arts Block                        | A5     | Truro House                          | B2           |
| Geology (D)                          | A9     | New House                             | F27    | Walker House                         | F10          |
| German (D)                           | A5     | Oakdene House                         | H1     | Winchester House                     | B20          |
| Gold Fields Centre for English       | B3     | Oakdene House Annexe                  | H2/3   | Winchester Swimming Pool             | B24          |
| Gold Fields House                    | F25    | Old Arts Block                        | A1     | Zoology & Entomology (D)             | D1           |
| Graham House                         | C6     | Old Mutual Pavilion                   | G28    |                                      |              |
| Great Field                          | H41    |                                       |        |                                      |              |

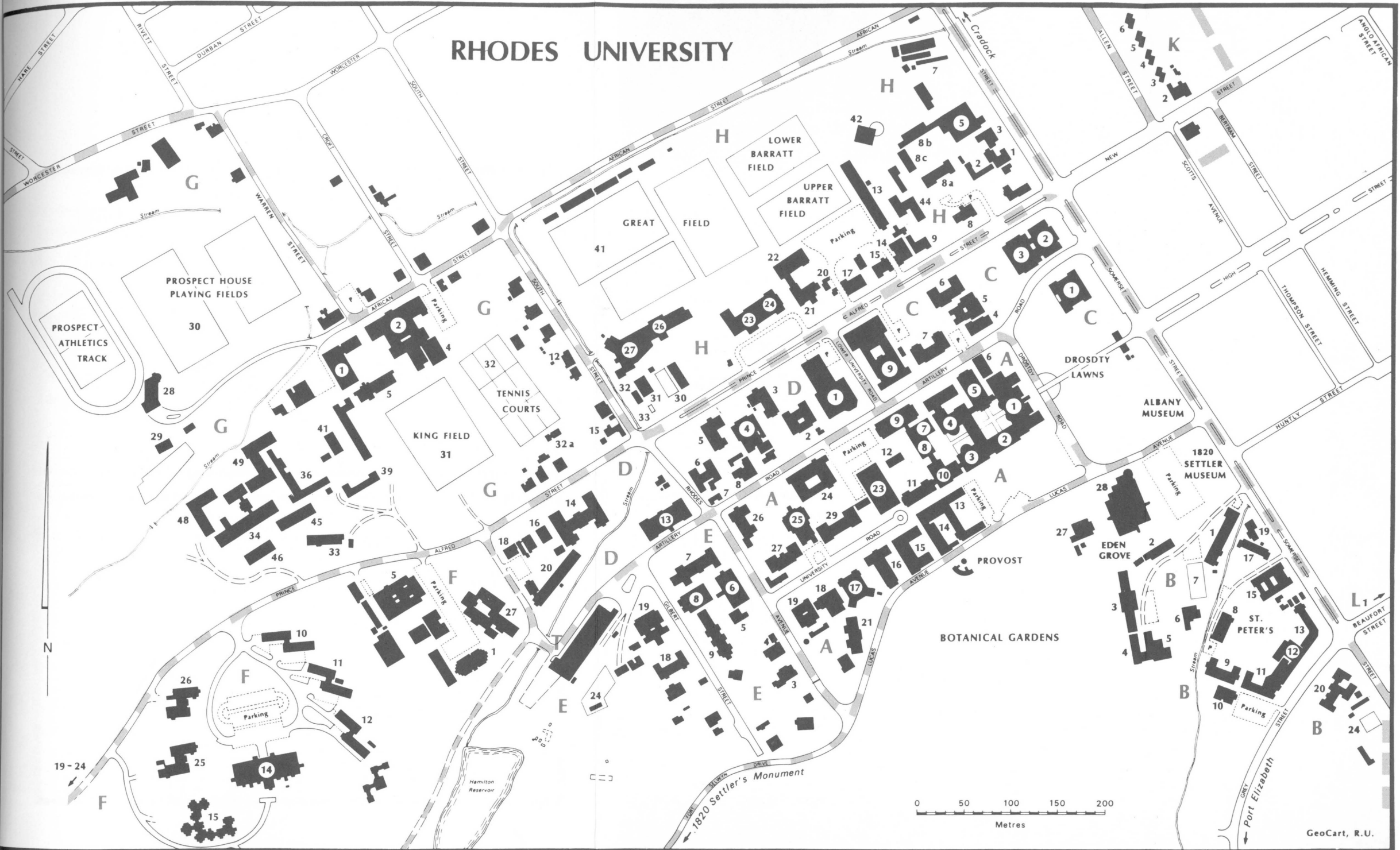
## Index to Map of Rhodes University

Listed by alphabetical block. D = academic department.

|        |                                      |        |                                      |              |                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| A1     | Old Arts Block                       | B7     | St Peters Tennis Court               | F5-F9        | Leather Industries Research Unit     |
| A1     | Finance Division                     | B8     | Chapel of St Mary & All the Angels   | F10          | Walker House                         |
| A1     | Main Building                        | B9     | Law Library                          | F11          | Thomas Pringle House                 |
|        | (Old Arts Block)                     | B9     | Law (D) Lincoln House                | F12          | Piet Retief House                    |
| A1     | Dean of Students House               | B10    | Law Annexe                           | F14          | Kimberley Hall                       |
| A1     | Administration Building              | B11    | Education (D)                        | F15          | Cullen Bowles House                  |
| A2     | Accounting (D)                       | B12    | Mother Cecile Hall                   | F25          | Gold Fields House                    |
| A2     | Main Building East Wing              | B12    | Allan Webb Dining Hall               | F26          | De Beers House                       |
| A2     | Management (D)                       | B13    | Canterbury House                     | F27          | New House                            |
| A2     | Marketing & Communications           | B15    | Music & Musicology (D)               | G1           | Alec Mullins Sports Hall             |
| A3     | Economics & Economic                 |        | Beethoven House                      | G2           | Human Kinetics & Ergonomics (D)      |
|        | History (D)                          | B17    | Religion & Theology (D)              | G4           | Gymnasium                            |
| A3     | Main Building South Wing             | B19    | Centre for Social Development        | G5           | Squash Court (King)                  |
| A4     | Physics & Electronics (D)            | B20    | Winchester House                     | G12          | Estate Division                      |
| A4     | Hermann & Olthaver Institute         | B24    | Winchester Swimming Pool             | G15          | Grounds & Gardens Section            |
|        | for Aeronomy                         | B27    | Residency, The                       | G28          | Old Mutual Pavilion                  |
| A5     | Information Systems (D)              | B28    | Eden Grove                           | G28          | Sports Office                        |
| A5     | German (D)                           | C1     | Fine Art (D)                         | G29          | Prospect Field Facilities            |
| A5     | French (D)                           | C2     | Drama (D)                            | G30          | Prospect House Playing Fields        |
| A5     | School of Languages (D)              | C2     | Journalism & Media Studies (D)       | G31          | King Field                           |
| A5     | New Arts Block                       | C3     | Rhodes Theatre                       | G32          | Tennis Courts (King)                 |
| A5     | Classics (D)                         | C4     | Mathematics Pure & Applied (D)       | G32a         | Tennis Court Pavilion                |
| A5     | Afrikaans & Netherlandic Studies (D) | C5     | Drostdy Hall                         | G33          | Stanley Kidd House Warden            |
| A5     | African Languages (D)                | C6     | Graham House                         | G34/45/46/48 | Stanley Kidd House 1-6               |
| A5     | History (D)                          | C7     | Computer Science (D)                 | G36          | Stockenstrom Place                   |
| A6     | Linguistics & English Language (D)   | C7     | Information Technology               | G39          | Soccer Sports Room                   |
| A7     | General Lecture Theatre              | C9     | Chemistry (D)                        | G41          | Martial Arts Centre                  |
| A8     | Academic Development Programme       | C9     | Pharmaceutical Sciences (School) (D) | H1           | Oakdene House                        |
| A9     | Geology (D)                          | C9     | Statistics (D)                       | H2/3         | Oakdene House Annexe                 |
| A10    | Printing Unit                        | D1     | Microbiology (D)                     | H5           | JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology   |
| A10    | Geography (D)                        | D1     | Zoology & Entomology (D)             | H8           | Political Studies (D)                |
| A11    | English (D)                          | D1     | Biochemistry (D)                     | H8           | Ichthyology & Fisheries Science (D)  |
| A12    | Day Kaif                             | D1/A10 | Institute for Water Research         | H9           | Philosophy (D)                       |
| A12    | Botany (D)                           | D1     | Electron Microscopy Unit             | H13          | Prince Alfred House                  |
| A13/14 | Psychology (D)                       | D2     | Botha House                          | H15/17       | Institute: Social &                  |
| A15    | Beit House                           | D3     | Matthews House                       |              | Economic Research                    |
| A16    | Jameson House                        | D4     | Founders Hall, The                   | H20          | Students' Photography Workshop       |
| A17    | Oriel Hall                           | D5     | Cory House                           | H21          | Anthropology (D)                     |
| A18    | Oriel House                          | D6     | College House, The                   | H21          | Selwyn Castle                        |
| A19    | Sanatorium                           | D7     | College House Annexe                 | H22          | Social Work (D)                      |
| A21    | Library                              | D8     | Founders Lodge                       | H22          | Sociology & Industrial Sociology (D) |
| A23    | Olive Schreiner House                | D13    | Atherstone House                     | H23          | Great Hall                           |
| A24    | St Mary Hall                         | D14    | Jan Smuts House                      | H24          | SRC Society Rooms                    |
| A25    | Lillian Britten House                | D16/18 | Jan Smuts House Annexe               | H26          | SRC Office                           |
| A26    | Phelps House                         | D20    | Adamson House                        | H26          | Rhodes Union                         |
| A27    | John Kotze House                     | E3     | Oriel House Annexe                   | H27          | Rhodes University Club               |
| A29    | Fine Art: Graphics & Sculpture       | E4     | Psychology Clinic                    | H27          | Kaif                                 |
| B1     | Truro House                          | E5     | Campus Protection Unit               | H30          | Swimming Pool                        |
| B2     | Molteno Project                      | E5     | Security Office                      | H31          | Squash Courts (Union)                |
| B3     | Dictionary Unit for South African    | E6     | Hobson House                         | H32          | Rowing Club House                    |
| B3     | English                              | E7     | Milner House                         | H33          | Rowing Practice Tank                 |
| B3     | Institute for the Study of           | E8     | Hobson Hall                          | H41          | Great Field                          |
| B3     | English in Africa                    | E9     | Dingemans House                      | H42          | International Library, African Music |
| B3     | Gold Fields Centre for English       | E18    | Livingstone House                    | H44          | Allan Gray House                     |
| B3     | Mathematics Education Project        | E19    | Jan Smuts Hall                       | K2           | Legal Aid Clinic                     |
| B4     | Rhodes University Museum             | E24    | Rifle Range                          | K3-K6/G36    | Student Flats                        |
| B5     | Salisbury House                      | E T    | Transport Office                     |              |                                      |
| B6     | Fine Art: Photography                | F1     | Fine Art: Painting School            |              |                                      |



## RHODES UNIVERSITY



# UNIVERSITY



## RHODES UNIVERSITY

Grahamstown • 6140 • South Africa

### Almanac 2000

| JANUARY                       |                               |      |     |      |     |     | FEBRUARY |     |      |     |      |     |     | MARCH                         |                               |      |     |      |     |     | APRIL                         |     |      |     |      |     |     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------|-----|------|-----|-----|----------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------|-----|------|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-----|
| SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
|                               |                               |      |     |      |     | 1   |          |     |      | 1   | 2    | 3   | 4   | 5                             |                               |      |     |      | 1   | 2   | 3                             | 4   |      |     |      |     | 1   |
| 2                             | 3                             | 4    | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   | 6        | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10   | 11  | 12  | 5                             | 6                             | 7    | 8   | 9    | 10  | 11  | 2                             | 3   | 4    | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   |
| 9                             | 10                            | 11   | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15  | 13       | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17   | 18  | 19  | 12                            | 13                            | 14   | 15  | 16   | 17  | 18  | 9                             | 10  | 11   | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15  |
| 16                            | 17                            | 18   | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22  | 20       | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24   | 25  | 26  | 19                            | 20                            | 21   | 22  | 23   | 24  | 25  | 16                            | 17  | 18   | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22  |
| <sup>23</sup> / <sub>10</sub> | <sup>24</sup> / <sub>11</sub> | 25   | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29  | 27       | 28  | 29   |     |      |     |     | 26                            | 27                            | 28   | 29  | 30   | 31  |     | <sup>23</sup> / <sub>10</sub> | 24  | 25   | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29  |
| MAY                           |                               |      |     |      |     |     | JUNE     |     |      |     |      |     |     | JULY                          |                               |      |     |      |     |     | AUGUST                        |     |      |     |      |     |     |
| SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
|                               | 1                             | 2    | 3   | 4    | 5   | 6   |          |     |      |     | 1    | 2   | 3   |                               |                               |      |     |      | 1   |     |                               | 1   | 2    | 3   | 4    | 5   |     |
| 7                             | 8                             | 9    | 10  | 11   | 12  | 13  | 4        | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10  | 2                             | 3                             | 4    | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   | 6                             | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10   | 11  | 12  |
| 14                            | 15                            | 16   | 17  | 18   | 19  | 20  | 11       | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17  | 9                             | 10                            | 11   | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15  | 13                            | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17   | 18  | 19  |
| 21                            | 22                            | 23   | 24  | 25   | 26  | 27  | 18       | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24  | 16                            | 17                            | 18   | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22  | 20                            | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24   | 25  | 26  |
| 28                            | 29                            | 30   | 31  |      |     |     | 25       | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29   | 30  |     | <sup>23</sup> / <sub>10</sub> | <sup>24</sup> / <sub>11</sub> | 25   | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29  | 27                            | 28  | 29   | 30  | 31   |     |     |
| SEPTEMBER                     |                               |      |     |      |     |     | OCTOBER  |     |      |     |      |     |     | NOVEMBER                      |                               |      |     |      |     |     | DECEMBER                      |     |      |     |      |     |     |
| SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
|                               |                               |      |     |      | 1   | 2   | 1        | 2   | 3    | 4   | 5    | 6   | 7   |                               |                               | 1    | 2   | 3    | 4   |     |                               |     | 1    | 2   |      |     |     |
| 3                             | 4                             | 5    | 6   | 7    | 8   | 9   | 8        | 9   | 10   | 11  | 12   | 13  | 14  | 5                             | 6                             | 7    | 8   | 9    | 10  | 11  | 3                             | 4   | 5    | 6   | 7    | 8   | 9   |
| 10                            | 11                            | 12   | 13  | 14   | 15  | 16  | 15       | 16  | 17   | 18  | 19   | 20  | 21  | 12                            | 13                            | 14   | 15  | 16   | 17  | 18  | 10                            | 11  | 12   | 13  | 14   | 15  | 16  |
| 17                            | 18                            | 19   | 20  | 21   | 22  | 23  | 22       | 23  | 24   | 25  | 26   | 27  | 28  | 19                            | 20                            | 21   | 22  | 23   | 24  | 25  | 17                            | 18  | 19   | 20  | 21   | 22  | 23  |
| 24                            | 25                            | 26   | 27  | 28   | 29  | 30  | 29       | 30  | 31   |     |      |     |     | 26                            | 27                            | 28   | 29  | 30   |     |     | <sup>24</sup> / <sub>11</sub> | 25  | 26   | 27  | 28   | 29  | 30  |

### Almanac 2001

| JANUARY                       |     |      |     |      |     |     | FEBRUARY |     |      |     |      |     |     | MARCH    |     |      |     |      |     |     | APRIL                         |                               |      |     |      |     |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-----|----------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-----|----------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------|-----|------|-----|-----|
| SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
| 1                             | 2   | 3    | 4   | 5    | 6   |     |          |     | 1    | 2   | 3    |     |     |          | 1   | 2    | 3   |      |     |     | 1                             | 2                             | 3    | 4   | 5    | 6   | 7   |
| 7                             | 8   | 9    | 10  | 11   | 12  | 13  | 4        | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10  | 4        | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10  | 8                             | 9                             | 10   | 11  | 12   | 13  | 14  |
| 14                            | 15  | 16   | 17  | 18   | 19  | 20  | 11       | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17  | 11       | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17  | 15                            | 16                            | 17   | 18  | 19   | 20  | 21  |
| 21                            | 22  | 23   | 24  | 25   | 26  | 27  | 18       | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24  | 18       | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24  | 22                            | 23                            | 24   | 25  | 26   | 27  | 28  |
| 28                            | 29  | 30   | 31  |      |     |     | 25       | 26  | 27   | 28  |      |     |     | 25       | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29   | 30  | 31  | 29                            | 30                            |      |     |      |     |     |
| MAY                           |     |      |     |      |     |     | JUNE     |     |      |     |      |     |     | JULY     |     |      |     |      |     |     | AUGUST                        |                               |      |     |      |     |     |
| SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
| 1                             | 2   | 3    | 4   | 5    |     |     |          |     | 1    | 2   |      |     |     | 1        | 2   | 3    | 4   | 5    | 6   | 7   |                               |                               | 1    | 2   | 3    | 4   |     |
| 6                             | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10   | 11  | 12  | 3        | 4   | 5    | 6   | 7    | 8   | 9   | 8        | 9   | 10   | 11  | 12   | 13  | 14  | 5                             | 6                             | 7    | 8   | 9    | 10  | 11  |
| 13                            | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17   | 18  | 19  | 10       | 11  | 12   | 13  | 14   | 15  | 16  | 15       | 16  | 17   | 18  | 19   | 20  | 21  | 12                            | 13                            | 14   | 15  | 16   | 17  | 18  |
| 20                            | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24   | 25  | 26  | 17       | 18  | 19   | 20  | 21   | 22  | 23  | 22       | 23  | 24   | 25  | 26   | 27  | 28  | 19                            | 20                            | 21   | 22  | 23   | 24  | 25  |
| 27                            | 28  | 29   | 30  | 31   |     |     | 24       | 25  | 26   | 27  | 28   | 29  | 30  | 29       | 30  | 31   |     |      |     |     | 26                            | 27                            | 28   | 29  | 30   | 31  |     |
| SEPTEMBER                     |     |      |     |      |     |     | OCTOBER  |     |      |     |      |     |     | NOVEMBER |     |      |     |      |     |     | DECEMBER                      |                               |      |     |      |     |     |
| SUN                           | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN      | MON | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT | SUN                           | MON                           | TUES | WED | THUR | FRI | SAT |
|                               |     |      |     |      | 1   |     | 1        | 2   | 3    | 4   | 5    | 6   |     |          |     | 1    | 2   | 3    |     |     |                               |                               |      | 1   |      |     |     |
| 2                             | 3   | 4    | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   | 7        | 8   | 9    | 10  | 11   | 12  | 13  | 4        | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8    | 9   | 10  | 2                             | 3                             | 4    | 5   | 6    | 7   | 8   |
| 9                             | 10  | 11   | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15  | 14       | 15  | 16   | 17  | 18   | 19  | 20  | 11       | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15   | 16  | 17  | 9                             | 10                            | 11   | 12  | 13   | 14  | 15  |
| 16                            | 17  | 18   | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22  | 21       | 22  | 23   | 24  | 25   | 26  | 27  | 18       | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22   | 23  | 24  | 16                            | 17                            | 18   | 19  | 20   | 21  | 22  |
| <sup>23</sup> / <sub>10</sub> | 24  | 25   | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29  | 28       | 29  | 30   | 31  |      |     |     | 25       | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29   | 30  |     | <sup>23</sup> / <sub>10</sub> | <sup>24</sup> / <sub>11</sub> | 25   | 26  | 27   | 28  | 29  |